



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

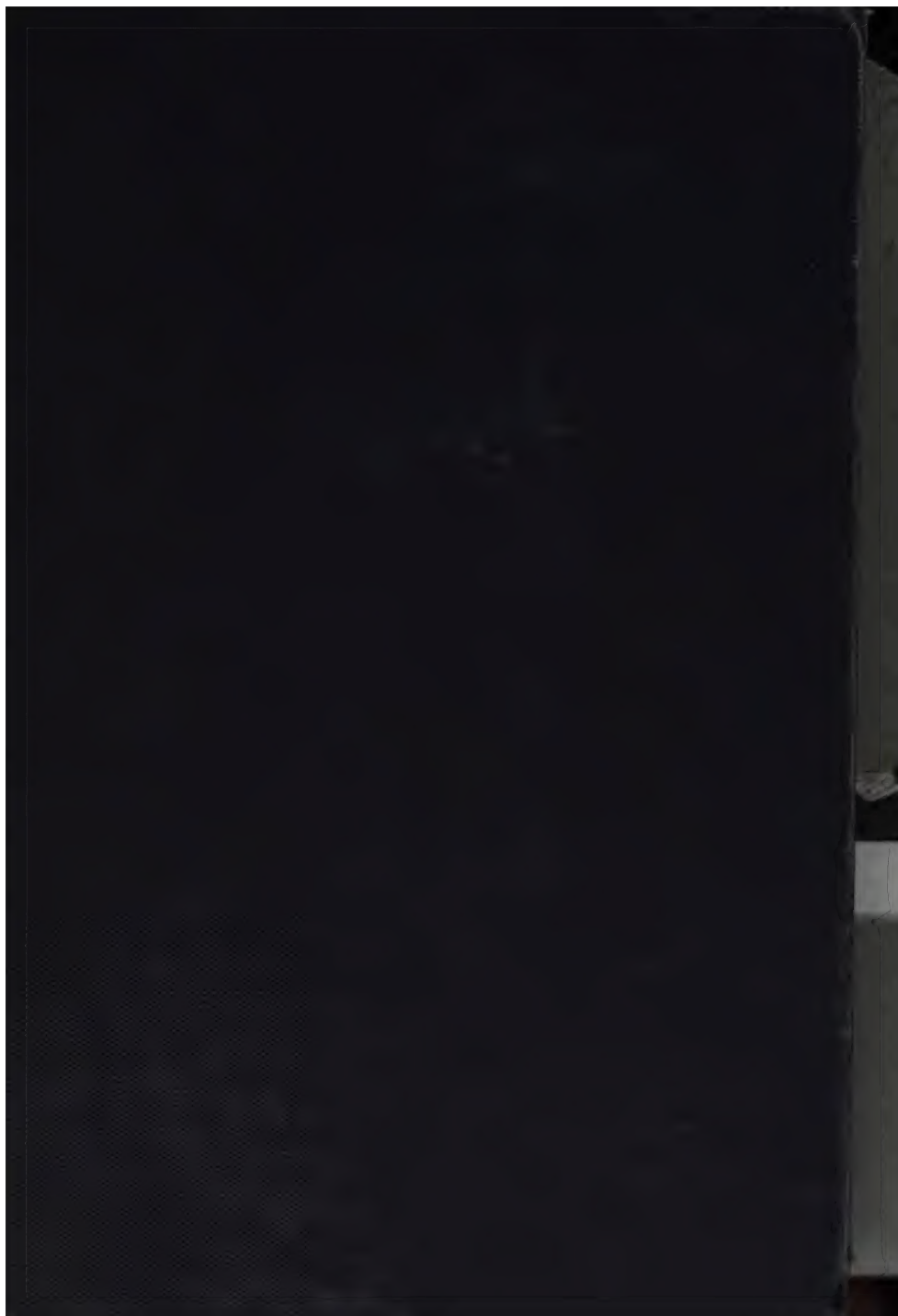
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Lc 7.239.520



HARVARD  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY









**Morris and Morgan's Latin Series**

*EDITED FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES*

UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF

EDWARD P. MORRIS, L.H.D.,  
PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN YALE UNIVERSITY

AND

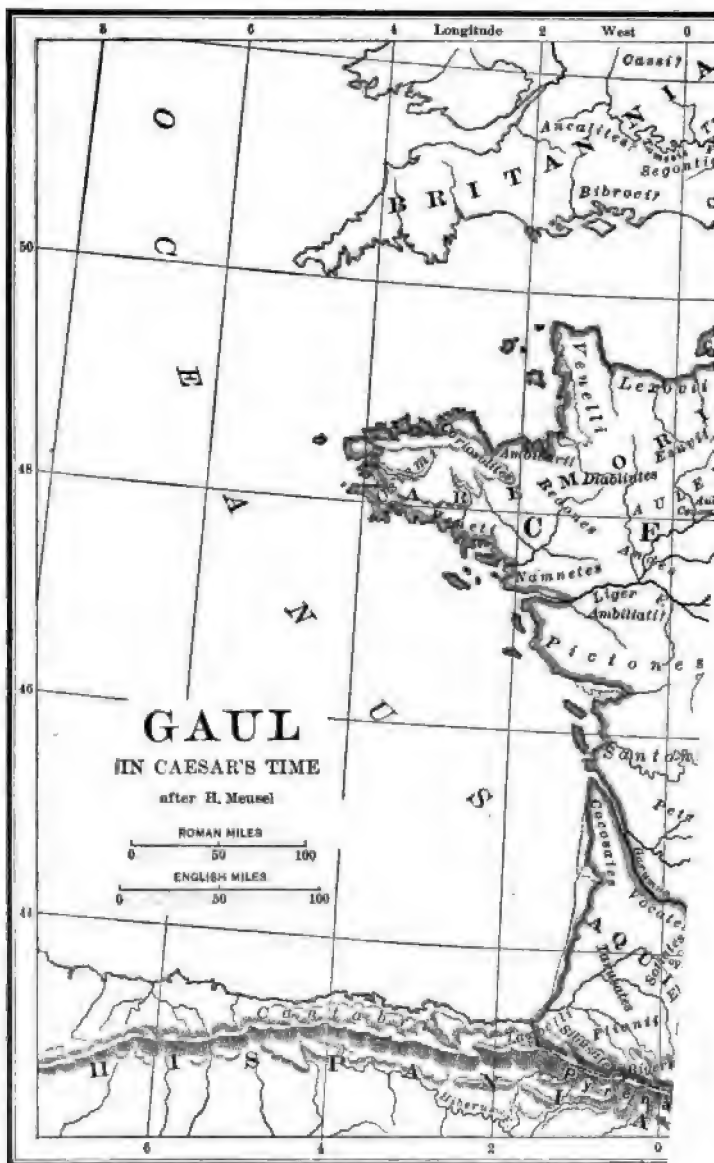
MORRIS H. MORGAN, PH.D.  
PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

## VOLUMES OF THE SERIES

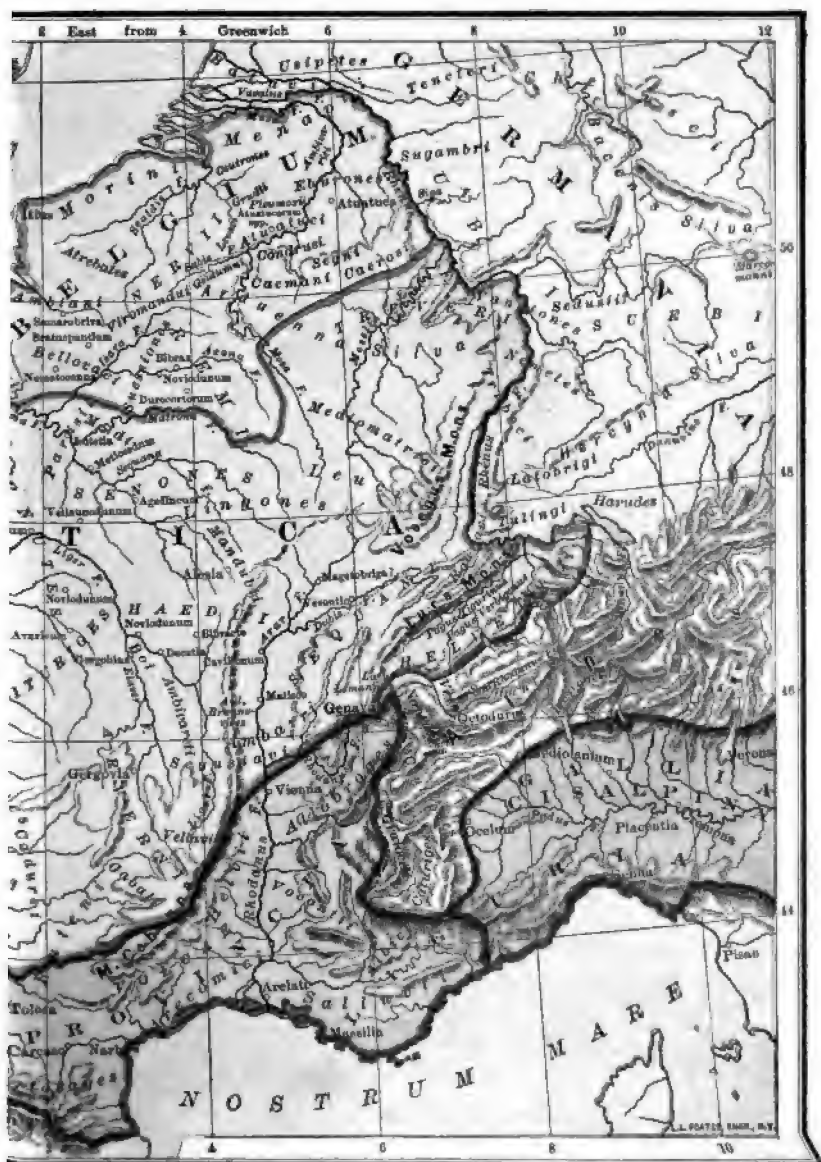
- Essentials of Latin for Beginners.** Henry C. Pearson, Teachers College, New York. 90 cents.
- A School Latin Grammar.** Morris H. Morgan, Harvard University. \$1.00.
- A First Latin Writer.** M. A. Abbott, Groton School. 60 cents.
- Connected Passages for Latin Prose Writing.** Maurice W. Mather, Harvard University, and Arthur L. Wheeler, Bryn Mawr College. \$1.00.
- Caesar. Episodes from the Gallic and Civil Wars.** Maurice W. Mather, Harvard University. \$1.25.
- Cicero. Select Orations with Extracts from the Epistles to serve as Illustrations.** J. Remsen Bishop, Walnut Hills High School, Cincinnati, and Frederick A. King, Hughes High School, Cincinnati.
- Selections from Latin Prose Authors for Sight Reading.** Susan Braley Franklin and Ella Catherine Greene, Miss Baldwin's School, Bryn Mawr. 60 cents.
- Cicero. Cato Maior.** Frank G. Moore, Dartmouth College. 80 cents.
- Cicero. Laelius de Amicitia.** Clifton Price, University of California. 75 cents.
- Selections from Livy.** Harry E. Burton, Dartmouth College. \$1.25.
- Horace. Odes and Epodes.** Clifford H. Moore, Harvard University. \$1.50.
- Terence. Phormio and Adelphoe.** Edward P. Morris, Yale University.
- Pliny's Letters.** Albert A. Howard, Harvard University.
- Tibullus.** Kirby F. Smith, Johns Hopkins University.
- Lucretius.** William A. Merrill, University of California.
- Latin Literature of the Empire.** Alfred Gudeman, University of Pennsylvania.
- Vol. I. Prose: Velleius to Boethius . . . . . \$1.80
- Vol. II. Poetry: Pseudo-Vergiliana to Claudianus . . . . . 1.80
- Selections from the Public and Private Law of the Romans.** James J. Robinson, Yale University. \$1.25.

*Others to be announced later.*





(Frontispiece, Mather's Caesar)





CAESAR  
=

EPISODES FROM

THE GALLIC AND THE CIVIL WARS

WITH AN INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND VOCABULARY

BY

MAURICE W. MATHER, PH.D.

FORMERLY INSTRUCTOR IN LATIN IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY



NEW YORK ·· CINCINNATI ·· CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

L.c 7.239.52.0



*American Book Company.*

COPYRIGHT, 1905, BY  
EDWARD P. MORRIS AND MORRIS H. MORGAN.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

MATHER. CAESAR.

W. P. 1

## PREFACE

A BOOK of selections from Caesar's *Commentaries on the Gallic and the Civil Wars* will be welcomed by many teachers. In most schools the reading of the whole of Caesar's extant writings is quite out of the question. A selection must be made, and the method of selection which is most likely to produce the best results with the pupil is to take from the different books those episodes which are of greatest interest and importance.

It is still customary in many schools to limit the study of Caesar to the *Gallic War*, or even to the first four books of this work. Some of the most interesting portions of Caesar's writings are thus entirely neglected. The description of Britain and the Britons in the Fifth Book of the *Gallic War* and the comparison of the Gauls and the Germans in the Sixth Book are not only instructive, as the earliest sources of information on these peoples, but entertaining as well. No more amusing fairy tale can be found in any Latin serviceable for schools than Caesar's sober account of some of the animals in the Hercynian Forest. The failure at Gergovia — the only repulse suffered by Caesar's army in Gaul when led by him in person — and the successful siege of Alesia against an overwhelming force from without and a strong army from within, commanded by the intrepid Vercingetorix, greatest of all the Gauls, are episodes of the utmost interest.

The *Civil War* is often altogether unknown to pupils. And yet no work of antiquity is of greater historical importance or merit, and few narratives are more interesting than the story in the Third Book of the struggle between Caesar and Pompey.

Many teachers who would be glad to devote to the *Civil War* a part of the time spent on the study of Caesar have been deterred by the necessity of buying an additional text-book, an expense which they have felt to be unwarranted, owing to the short time during which it could be used.

In this volume some of the most interesting and important parts of both the *Gallic* and the *Civil War* are presented. The selections from the *Gallic War* are equivalent in amount to the first four books. From the *Civil War* about two thirds as much is taken. To facilitate reference, all chapters are numbered as in complete editions of Caesar.

The notes on the last three books of the *Gallic War* and on the *Civil War* are specially full, for the greater assistance of those who may find themselves, in these selections, on unfamiliar ground. The notes on the First and the Second Books of the *Gallic War* have been prepared with an eye to the needs of those classes which begin their study of Caesar with either book. Preceding the notes on each book is a summary of the entire book. The summaries of those parts not included in this volume are inclosed in brackets.

The Latin text of the *Gallic War* is in the main that of Meusel's school edition (Berlin, 1894), and of the *Civil War* that of Ellger's revision of Paul (Leipzig, 1898). The principal variations from either of these authorities are in details of spelling. In the *Civil War*, 2, 29, Menge's reading *iactaverant* has been inserted to avoid a lacuna; and the conjectures accepted by Ellger in 3, 6, of *iumenta* for *impedimenta* of the Mss., and in 3, 97, of *locis aequis* for the usual reading *iugis eius*, have not been adopted.

"Hidden quantities" are marked in accordance with the revised edition of Lane's Grammar. A decided advance has been made in this troublesome subject by the agreement which was reached in the marking of almost all words by the editors of the revised Lane, the new Allen and Greenough, and the Hale and Buck grammars, all of which appeared in 1903.

It is believed that all teachers and pupils will welcome the innovation in the Vocabulary of printing in full the principal parts of verbs and the genitive of nouns, except in the first conjugation of verbs and in such nouns of the first, second, and fourth declensions as offer no possibility of mistake.

For the long indirect quotations of the *Gallic War*, 1, 13, and 14, and for the more difficult passages earlier, the direct discourse has been given in the Notes; but this help has not been supplied in later passages, as it is desirable for the pupil to be thrown on his own resources a little even in the early stages of his study, and it is easily possible to make indirect discourse too much of a bugbear.

On the Plan of the battle with the Nervii (*B.G.* 2, 18 ff.) the positions usually assigned to the xth and the ixth legions have been reversed, so that the ixth shall be stationed on the extreme left. This harmonizes better with the statement in Chapter 21 that Caesar, when he first started out to encourage his troops, came by chance first to the xth legion; for we may assume that he had been engaged up to that moment about the site of the camp. It is also at least probable, from the order in which Caesar mentions the legions in Chapter 23 (namely, ix and x, xi and viii, xii and vii), that this was their arrangement in the line; for it is clear from Chapters 25 and 26 that the viiith legion was on the extreme right (see Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, p. 660).

In the brief treatment of Caesar's army no attempt has been made at completeness. Only such information has been supplied as is needed to make the selections in this book intelligible. Probably not one in a hundred of the readers of Grant's *Memoirs* has even an elementary knowledge of army tactics. Why should it be considered any more necessary to be thoroughly posted in Roman military antiquities in order to read Caesar with appreciation and enjoyment?

The sources of the illustrations are sufficiently indicated, for the most part, in the list, pp. 11 ff. Figures 8, 24, and 38 are

photographs of casts in the Scott Collection at Harvard University. Figure 26 has been drawn specially for this book by Mr. Gleeson. Figure 35, a photograph of the bust of Caesar in the British Museum, has been included because of the fame which this head has long enjoyed, although its authenticity as a likeness of Caesar is doubtful.

It is a pleasure to acknowledge with gratitude the many helpful suggestions and criticisms received from the editors of the series to which this book belongs. Cordial thanks are also due Mr. Eugene W. Harter, of the Erasmus Hall High School, Brooklyn, and Mr. H. T. Rich, of the Boston Latin School, from whose experience and scholarship the Notes have derived valuable improvements. Mr. N. W. Helm, of the Phillips Exeter Academy, has given generous assistance in proof-reading.

M. W. M.

CAMBRIDGE,  
April, 1905.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
ILLUSTRATIONS . . . . .	11
MAPS AND PLANS . . . . .	14
INTRODUCTION:	
Life of Caesar . . . . .	15
Life of Pompey . . . . .	31
Caesar's Army . . . . .	37
A Few Useful Books for the Study of Caesar . . . . .	48
SELECTIONS FROM THE GALLIC WAR:	
Book I, 1, Main Divisions of Gaul . . . . .	51
2-29, The Helvetian War . . . . .	52
Book II, 15-28, Defeat of the Nervii . . . . .	72
Book III, 1-6, War with Alpine Tribes . . . . .	81
7-19, Revolt of the Aremorian States . . . . .	84
20-27, The Campaign in Aquitania . . . . .	94
28-29, Expedition against the Morini and the Menapii . . . . .	98
Book IV, 1-19, Campaign against the Germans . . . . .	100
20-36, First Expedition to Britain . . . . .	111
37-38, Second War with the Morini and the Menapii . . . . .	121
Book V, 1, 2, 8-23, Second Expedition to Britain . . . . .	123
44, Two Brave Centurions . . . . .	134
Book VI, 11-24, Customs of the Gauls and of the Germans . . . . .	135
25-28, The Hercynian Forest and its Fauna . . . . .	143
Book VII, 43-53, Caesar's Disastrous Engagement at Gergovia . . . . .	146
69-90, Conflict at Alesia with an Allied Army of all the Gauls . . . . .	154

	PAGE
SELECTIONS FROM THE CIVIL WAR:	
Book II, 23-44, Curio's Disastrous Campaign in Africa . . .	170
+ Book III, 1-5, Preparations for the Campaign in the East . . .	187
<sup>112</sup> 6-8, 10-19, 23-30, The Eastern Campaign until Antony's Union with Caesar . . . . .	190
39-40, Destruction of Caesar's Fleet . . . . .	205
41-44, 47-55, 58-72, Caesar's Unsuccessful Blockade of Pompey near Dyrrachium . . . . .	207
73-99, The Campaign in Thessaly . . . . .	224
102-104, Pompey's Flight and Death . . . . .	243
105-107, Caesar in Asia and Alexandria . . . . .	245
ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	248
NOTES . . . . .	249
VOCABULARY . . . . .	449

## ILLUSTRATIONS

### BOOKS USED

- Baumeister*, Denkmäler des Klassischen Altertums.  
*Bernouilli*, Römische Ikonographie.  
*Brunn and Arndt*, Griechische und Römische Porträts.  
*Chatelain*, Paléographie des Classiques Latins.  
*Daremberg and Saglio*, Dictionnaire des Antiquités Grecques et Romaines.  
*Duruy*, History of Rome.  
*Froehner*, La Colonne Trajane.  
*von Göler*, Caesars Gallischer Krieg.  
*Lanciani*, New Tales of Old Rome.  
*Lindenschmit*, Tracht und Bewaffnung des Römischen Heeres.  
*Napoleon III*, History of Julius Caesar, Atlas.  
*Oehler*, Bilder-Atlas zu Caesars Büchern de Bello Gallico.  
*Rüstow*, Heerwesen und Kriegführung Caesars.  
*Schreiber*, Atlas of Classical Antiquities.

FIG.		PAGE
1.	Julius Caesar, bust in the Campo Santo, Pisa. <i>Photograph</i> <i>Facing</i>	17
2.	Coin of Augustus's Time, showing the Civic Crown. <i>Duruy</i>	17
3.	The Spot where the Body of Caesar was Cremated. <i>Lanciani</i>	25
4.	Pompey the Great, bust in Copenhagen. <i>Brunn and Arndt</i> <i>Facing</i>	32
5.	Plan of a Roman Camp, for five legions. After <i>Rüstow</i>	43

FIG.	PAGE
6. Caesar, statue in the Palace of the Conservatori, Capitoline, Rome. <i>Photograph</i> . . . . . Facing	52
7. A Roman Legionary, from a grave monument in the museum at Bonn. <i>Lindenschmit</i> . . . . .	57
8. Caesar, cast of bust No. 107, Chiaramonti Gallery in the Vatican, Rome. <i>Photograph</i> . . . . . Facing	61
9. Gallic Armor and Standards, from the Roman arch at Orange. <i>Duruy</i> . . . . .	66
10. A Legionary in Full Armor, from a grave monument in the museum at Wiesbaden. <i>Lindenschmit</i> . . . . .	68
11. Vexillum, from the arch of Claudius in Rome, 43 A.D. <i>Schreiber</i> . . . . .	75
12. Galea, found in a Roman fort at Niederbiber, Germany. <i>Lindenschmit</i> . . . . .	76
13. A Centurion, from a grave monument at Verona <i>Lindenschmit</i> . . . . .	78
14. A Standard-bearer, from a grave monument in the museum at Bonn. <i>Lindenschmit</i> • . . . .	79
15. Beginning of the Third Book of the Gallic War, from a manuscript of the tenth century (Parisinus 5763). <i>Chatelain</i> . . . . .	81
16. A Ship of War, from a Pompeian wall-painting. <i>Schreiber</i> .	86
17. Vineæ. <i>von Göler</i> . . . . .	95
18. Caesar's Bridge over the Rhine . . . . .	109
19. A Transport, from a Pompeian tomb relief. <i>Schreiber</i> .	113
20. The Eagle-bearer, from a grave monument in the museum at Verona. <i>Lindenschmit</i> . . . . .	115
21. Iugum, from a wall-painting in Nero's Golden House. <i>Darremberg and Saglio</i> . . . . .	119
22. Testudo, from Trajan's Column. <i>Froehner</i> . . . . .	125
23. Coin of Caesar, owned by Professor M. H. Morgan. <i>Photograph</i> . . . . .	127

## FIG.

24. Caesar, cast of bust in Parma. <i>Photograph</i> . . .	<i>Facing</i> 132
25. Caesar, basalt bust in Berlin. <i>Brunn and Arndt</i> . . .	<i>Facing</i> 141
26. Reindeer and European Elk, drawn by Gleeson . . .	144
27. The Defenses on Caesar's Rampart before Alesia. <i>Napoleon III</i> . . . . .	156
28. Outline of Caesar's Works before Alesia. <i>von Göler</i> . . .	157
29. Liliun. <i>Napoleon III</i> . . . . .	157
30. Stimulus. <i>Napoleon III</i> . . . . .	158
31. Conjectural Appearance of Caesar's Works before Alesia. <i>Oehler</i> . . . . .	158
32. Glans, found at Asculum in Italy. <i>Baumeister</i> . . .	164
33. A General, wearing the Cloak, from Trajan's Column. <i>Duruy</i> . . .	168
34. Caesar, bust in the museum at Naples. <i>Brunn and Arndt</i> . . .	<i>Facing</i> 177
35. Caesar, bust in the British Museum, London. <i>Photograph</i> . . .	<i>Facing</i> 192
36. Coins of Antony. <i>Bernouilli</i> . . . . .	204
37. Coins of Pompey. <i>Bernouilli</i> . . . . .	211
38. Caesar, cast of bronze statuette in Besançon. <i>Photograph</i> . . .	<i>Facing</i> 213
39. Iumentum, from Trajan's Column. <i>Froehner</i> . . .	216
40. Mark Antony, bust in the Vatican, Rome. <i>Bernouilli</i> . <i>Facing</i> . . .	220
41. Attack on a Walled Town, from Trajan's Column. <i>Froehner</i> . . .	230
42. Coins of Caesar. <i>Bernouilli</i> . . . . .	242

## MAPS AND PLANS

Gaul in Caesar's Time, after Meusel . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
	PAGE
Caesar's Defenses along the Rhone . . . . .	56
The Battle with the Helvetii . . . . .	67
The Battle with the Nervii . . . . .	74
The War with the Veneti . . . . .	90
The Siege of Gergovia, after Holmes . . . . .	147
The Siege of Alesia, after Holmes . . . . .	153
Curio's Campaign in Africa . . . . .	171
Macedonia and Thessaly, after Paul-Ellger . . . . .	191
Oricum . . . . .	205
Caesar's Siege of Pompey near Dyrrachium . . . . .	218
The Battle of Pharsalus . . . . .	236

## INTRODUCTION

### LIFE OF CAESAR

"That Julius Caesar was a famous man." — SHAKSPERE, *Richard III*, 3, 1, 84.

**Caesar's many-sided greatness.** I. In beginning the study of Caesar, it is well to remember that we are dealing with one of the greatest characters of all time. He not only laid the foundations of the Roman Empire, which survived, with various changes, until the abdication of Francis II, in 1806; but by his conquest of Gaul, which Freeman (*General Sketch of European History*, 1874, p. 77) calls "one of the most important events in the history of the world," he paved the way for Roman civilization in western Europe, and is properly considered the founder of modern France. Although we are tempted to think of him principally as a successful general, he is distinguished above Alexander, Hannibal, Napoleon, or Grant, in that he showed unusual ability in many other lines as well. As an orator he had gained favorable notice before he was twenty-five years of age, and in the judgment of Quintilian (10, 1, 114), an excellent Roman critic, he might have rivaled even Cicero, if he had devoted himself to the art of oratory. His style as a writer is given high praise by Cicero (*Brutus*, 262), and yet his literary productions were composed rapidly, and in the midst of an exceedingly busy life of affairs. It is as a statesman and practical politician, however, that Caesar deserves the greatest renown. He appears to have been the only man of his time to see the impossibility of holding the Roman government together under the old senatorial rule, in which corruption and violence often rode supreme over all justice or right. Caesar's strongest claim to honor rests on the clear-

sighted, firm course he pursued in restoring order out of the chaos of civil war, and in securing a just and wise reform administration in many departments of the Roman domain.

The word *Caesar* is perpetuated in the German *Kaiser* and possibly in the Russian *Czar*, both of which mean 'emperor.' The name of the month in which Julius Caesar was born was changed, in his honor, from *Quinctilis* to *Julius*, and is preserved in English, French, and several other modern languages.

**Birth and boyhood.** 2. *Gaius Julius Caesar* was born July 12, probably in the year 102 B.C.<sup>1</sup> On his father's side he claimed descent from the mythical founders of the Roman state, and his paternal grandmother's family traced its ancestry to Ancus Marcius, reputed to be the fourth king of Rome.

Caesar was fortunate in having a good mother, who watched over her boy and guided his education so carefully that she is named by Tacitus (*Dialogus*, 28) side by side with Cornelia, the mother of the Gracchi, as a model of motherly devotion. It may have been due to her wisdom that he was not, like most Roman boys at that time, intrusted to the instruction of a Greek slave, but was given a tutor from Gaul (probably Cisalpine Gaul, now northern Italy), a well-educated, refined man, named Gniphio, to whose influence he may have partly owed his lifelong interest in the Gallic peoples. It is easy to suppose, too, that many of Caesar's gentler characteristics, which distinguished him from most men of his day, were inherited from his mother.

**Early democratic tendencies.** 3. Caesar's political activities were early enlisted by the democratic party against the nobility of the senate. He must have been somewhat influenced by the career of his uncle, the great Marius, through whose support

<sup>1</sup> This is the year for which Mommsen (*History of Rome*, edition of 1895, IV, 278-280) argues, chiefly on the ground that if we accept the traditional date, 100 B.C., Caesar held the aedileship, praetorship, and consulship, two years before the legal age. Had this been the case, we should expect some reference to it in ancient writers. It seems unlikely too; for at that time Caesar had not attained to such distinction as to make it probable that he was exempted from the regular workings of the law.





FIG. 1. — CAESAR : PISA

he was appointed a priest of Jupiter when a mere boy, and still more by his marriage in 83 B.C. to Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, a prominent democratic politician. His loyalty to his wife. young wife when Sulla, the head of the senatorial party, ordered him, the next year, to put her away, illustrates two traits of his character which were often displayed throughout his life; namely, his strong will, and his faithfulness to friends. He was outlawed and obliged to go into hiding for a time. Once he was caught, and escaped with his life only by bribing his captor. But influential friends interceded, and Sulla finally pardoned him, prophesying that he would one day be the ruin of the aristocracy, for in him there were many Mariuses.

**Wins the civic crown.**

4. Feeling that there was no security for him in Rome, Caesar went to Asia Minor, where he gained his first military experience, and won the civic crown, equivalent to a medal of honor, for saving the life of a fellow-soldier. Upon Sulla's death, in 78 B.C., he returned to Rome, and soon attracted public attention by the skill with which he conducted the prosecution, for extortion, of two provincial governors.

**Studies oratory.** In 76 B.C., wishing to perfect his oratorical talent, he studied at

Rhodes under the famous teacher Molon. On his way thither he was captured by pirates near Miletus, and for thirty-eight days, while the ransom money was being collected, he was held a prisoner. He joined in their sports, wrote verses and speeches for their amusement, and if they failed to admire his



FIG. 2. — Coin showing Civic Crown.

efforts, called them to their faces barbarous and illiterate, and threatened to crucify them. Upon his release, he procured ships at Miletus, took the pirates by surprise, recovered his ransom money, and carried out the threat which he had jestingly made when he was in their power.

**Pontiff, military tribune, quaestor, aedile.** 5. In 74 B.C., after being chosen to the religious office of pontiff, he returned to Rome, and was soon elected to his first public magistracy, the military tribunate. In 70 B.C. he supported the democratic measures of the consuls Pompey and Crassus, whereby the Sullan constitution, which had made the senate supreme, was overthrown. In 68 B.C. he served as quaestor in Further Spain. Three years later, as curule aedile, he had control of public festivals, and improved to the utmost the opportunity of winning the favor of the populace by giving lavish exhibitions and elaborate gladiatorial contests. He also restored the statue and trophies of Marius, which had been destroyed by Sulla. When he laid down the aedileship, he was the hero of the democratic party, and was practically certain of being elected, at the earliest legal age, to the highest offices of the government.

**Chief pontiff. The Catiline conspiracy.** 6. In 63 B.C. Caesar was elected chief pontiff, and thus became the head of the Roman religion. This office was held for life, and was considered a great prize. It kept a man constantly before the eyes of the people, and enabled him to exert no little control over the government through the management of the calendar. When Caesar left home on the morning of the election, he kissed his mother and told her he should return as chief pontiff or not at all. This was the year of Cicero's consulship, made forever memorable by the overthrow of Catiline's conspiracy. Caesar was charged by some of his political enemies with being implicated in it, and may very well have sympathized with the attempt to weaken the rule of the aristocracy; but the most radical schemes of the revolutionists, involving murders and arson, can hardly have been

countenanced by a man of his usually humane and merciful character. In the end, he stood with his party in advising against the adoption of the unconstitutional death penalty for the conspirators.

**Praetor.** 7. After holding the praetorship, a judicial office, for the year 62 B.C., Caesar served as propraetor in Further Spain. There he gained much useful military experience and won such successes that he was entitled to celebrate a triumph upon his return to Rome. This honor he renounced, however, owing to certain legal difficulties, in order to stand as a candidate for the consulship for 59 B.C. His election to this office was effected partly by his great popularity with the common people, and partly by a masterly stroke of politics, by which he formed the so-called First Triumvirate,<sup>1</sup> a union of himself with Pompey, the greatest general, and Crassus, the wealthiest man of Rome, for the purpose of promoting their own interests in spite of the obstructive senate. Bibulus, Caesar's colleague in the consulship, representing the aristocrats, strove to thwart all his plans, until utterly beaten at every turn he at last shut himself up at home for the rest of the year, thus giving the wits a chance to say that the consuls were Julius and Caesar, instead of Caesar and Bibulus. Laws were then passed ratifying Pompey's acts in the East and granting farms to his discharged veterans. Through Caesar's influence, abstracts of all debates in the senate were posted in the forum, and more stringent laws against extortion in the provinces were carried. Other important legislative work was accomplished, by the aid of the popular assembly, regardless of the inefficient and jealous senate. During the year the union with Pompey was strengthened by his marriage to Caesar's beautiful and accomplished daughter Julia. At about the same time Caesar married his third wife. Cornelia (§ 3) had died nine years before, and a second wife, owing to a

<sup>1</sup> This was not a board established by law, but a "steering committee" privately arranged by these three politicians.

scandalous report, was divorced in 62 B.C., with the well-known remark, "Caesar's wife must be above suspicion."

**Proconsul in Gaul.** 8. The senate hoped that at the end of his consulship Caesar could be buried in obscurity and his legislation undone. But the triumvirate, which had been formed to guard against any such contingency, obtained for him, through the vote of the people, an appointment for five years, with the command of three legions, to the governorship of Cisalpine Gaul (northern Italy above the Rubicon) and Illyricum. The senate, seeing the way in which the wind of popular favor was blowing, added the Roman province in Transalpine Gaul (southern France, called *Provincia* on the map) and one legion. Nobody realized that this last appointment was to open the way for one of the most successful and famous military careers in history. The command to defend the province against attacks from without gave him the excuse for his campaigns in central and northern Gaul during the next eight years, which resulted in the complete subjugation of the whole territory. Caesar himself described the campaigns of the years 58-52 B.C.,<sup>1</sup> but the exploits of 51 B.C., which made the victory secure, were narrated by Hirtius, one of Caesar's faithful lieutenants. During these years both Britain and Germany were entered for the first time by a Roman army.

**The conference at Lucca.** 9. In the spring of 56 B.C. Caesar met his colleagues of the triumvirate at Lucca, on the frontier of his Cisalpine province, to lay plans for a continuance of their policies. This conference was attended by all the principal men of the democratic party. It was decided that Caesar's governorship of Gaul should be extended for another term of five years, while Pompey and Crassus, after holding the consulship for 55 B.C., were each to receive a governorship for five years, Pompey in Spain, Crassus in Syria.

<sup>1</sup> For these campaigns, see the summary at the head of the notes on each book of the *Gallie War*.

**End of the triumvirate.** 10. In 54 B.C. Crassus departed for Syria, and was killed the next year at the battle of Carrhae. Pompey intrusted his province to a lieutenant, and remained, contrary to all precedent, at Rome. In this year his beloved wife Julia died, and thus a strong bond of sympathy and interest between him and Caesar was broken. With the death of Crassus the triumvirate was at an end, and the gulf separating the two survivors constantly widened. In 52 B.C. Pompey was made sole consul to restore order from the anarchy which had prevailed in the city the past few years. He thus found himself the champion of the senatorial party, which was opposed to Caesar and hoped to get him out of the way, as soon as his term of office should expire, by overthrowing his political measures and even bringing him to trial for his unconstitutional proceedings during his governorship.

**Efforts to prevent Caesar's second consulship.** 11. Caesar's only safeguard against the attacks of his political foes lay in his election as consul for 48 B.C.; for, according to Roman law, so long as a man held office he could not be tried for his official acts. As early as 56 B.C., at the Lucca conference, the triumvirs had arranged that upon the expiration of his command in Gaul he should at once enter the consulship, and a law was put through in 52 B.C. exempting him from the requirement by which all candidates for office had to declare themselves in person seventeen days before the election; for during his proconsulship he could not legally come into Italy from his province. This exemption was annulled, however, a little later through Pompey's influence, and Caesar's enemies in the senate endeavored during the years 51 and 50 B.C. to deprive him of his proconsulship before the legal expiration of his term at the close of 49 B.C. At the same time the army under Pompey's command was strengthened by various measures.

**Civil war begun.** 12. Caesar made more than one attempt to come to a compromise with the senate, and even offered to give

up his governorship and disband his army if Pompey would do likewise. He would then come to Rome and stand for the consulship in the regular way. His proposals were met by the senate early in January, 49 B.C., with the demand that he give up his provinces and dismiss his troops before a certain day on pain of being declared a traitor. A few days later, by a decree of the senate, the country was declared to be in danger, and Pompey and other magistrates were given full power to provide for its defense. The Caesarean tribunes, one of whom was Mark Antony, finding their right of veto overridden and their very lives endangered, fled in disguise to Caesar; and this violation by the senate of the sacred office of tribune gave Caesar the opportunity, which he was not slow to seize, to pose as the protector of the constitution against the lawless attacks of the senate. Seeing that war or political ruin were the alternatives before him, Caesar, being assured of the allegiance of his soldiers (only Labienus, his ablest and most trusted officer, deserted him), crossed the Rubicon, the little stream separating his province from Italy, and civil war was begun.

**The Civil  
War.  
Caesar  
supreme.**

**13.** Caesar's clear-sighted grasp of a situation and his rapidity of action were never better displayed than in the first year of the Civil War. By October, 49 B.C., Italy, Sicily and Sardinia, Spain, and Marseilles had all been won to his side. In August of the next year he completely defeated Pompey at Pharsalus in Thessaly. Going to Alexandria in Egypt in pursuit of Pompey, he was detained until the summer of 47 B.C. by an uprising which, though insignificant in itself, nearly cost him his life.<sup>1</sup> While there he came under the spell of the famous Cleopatra. Before returning to Rome he settled affairs in Asia, winning at Zela in Pontus such an easy victory that he sent home the well-known message, "Veni, vidi, vici." Arriving in Italy before anybody dreamed of his approach, he set

<sup>1</sup> For these campaigns, see the summaries of the three books of the *Civil War*, pp. 382-384, 397-398.

about restoring order and confidence in the government and in business lines. But in a few weeks he had to take the field again, this time in Africa, where the Pompeians had gathered a strong army. In the battle of Thapsus, fought in April, 46 B.C., Caesar won a decisive victory. Labienus, his old friend and lieutenant, with Pompey's son Sextus and other survivors, escaped to Spain, where at Munda, in March, 45 B.C., the final conflict of the war resulted in the complete overthrow of the Pompeians. Caesar was now the undisputed master of the whole Roman dominion.

**Caesar's  
wise and  
just rule.**      **14.** The senate and people lavished honors and titles upon the conqueror. He was made dictator for life, having already thrice received the appointment for shorter terms. The title of Imperator was given him, signifying that he held supreme military and civil power throughout the empire. He controlled all legislation through the tribunician powers which were conferred upon him. The censorial power gave him complete management of the senate, and oversight of the conduct of all the citizens. He used his prerogatives for the most part wisely and well. The senate, which in its old form had outlived its usefulness, was remodeled, its numbers were largely increased, and even provincials and worthy men of low rank were admitted to its membership. A beginning was made in the disbanding of the legions and settling them on farms in Italy and the provinces. Bankruptcy laws were passed, granting justice both to debtors and creditors. Free distribution of corn, which helped to pauperize thousands of the poor, was better organized, and the number of recipients reduced by more than a half. For the relief of Rome and Italy colonization was projected on a large scale. Carthage and Corinth, which had been destroyed by Rome a hundred years before, were rebuilt shortly after Caesar's death in accordance with his plans. An effort was made to reduce the evils of slavery and provide for the employment of a greater number of free men. Provincial administration was much improved and a just system of

taxation was inaugurated. As early as 49 B.C. Caesar gave to the Gauls between the Po and the Alps the full Roman citizenship, and he afterwards conferred the same or similar rights on more distant communities, as Cadiz in Spain and some districts in Transalpine Gaul. The calendar, which was nearly two months out of the way, was reformed on scientific principles, and with only slight modification remains in use to-day. And these are only a few of the many projects which he had in mind for the betterment of the government in many parts of the empire. His rule promised a great improvement over the senatorial system of government, which had too often fostered the interests of the aristocratic and capitalist classes and neglected the welfare of the people taken as a whole.

**Caesar's assassination.** 15. Although Caesar had shown the utmost generosity and clemency towards the men who had fought against him in the Civil War, there were naturally many among them who could not accept peaceably the idea of an absolute monarchy. Disgruntled politicians, too, who felt that they had been slighted in the distribution of the offices, capitalists and others whose dreams of wealth had been balked by his financial legislation, unpractical lovers of the old republican forms, and some who could not forgive him because he had reduced them to the necessity of being forgiven by him, were all restless under the new yoke. A conspiracy comprising about sixty men, among them several of his intimate friends, was finally formed, and on the Ides (the 15th) of March, 44 B.C., he was assassinated at a meeting of the senate.<sup>1</sup> An act more useless or less justified by results the world has seldom seen. The empire was plunged once more into civil war, from which it was liberated only after thirteen years of strife and bloodshed, when Caesar's grandnephew and heir became sole ruler and established firmly the principle of absolutism which the greatest of the Caesars had set up.

<sup>1</sup> Shakspeare's *Julius Caesar* gives an interesting imaginative account, based upon Plutarch, of the plot and assassination.

**Personal  
appear-  
ance.  
Character.  
Religious  
views.  
Deifica-  
tion.**

16. Caesar is said by Suetonius (*Life of Caesar*, 45) to have been tall and of light complexion. He had a commanding presence, dark eyes, large mouth, and a high forehead. He was extremely fastidious about his dress and personal appearance. A premature baldness gave him not a little uneasiness. He was strong and active, excelled in athletics, and was capable of an astonishing amount of work without relaxation.

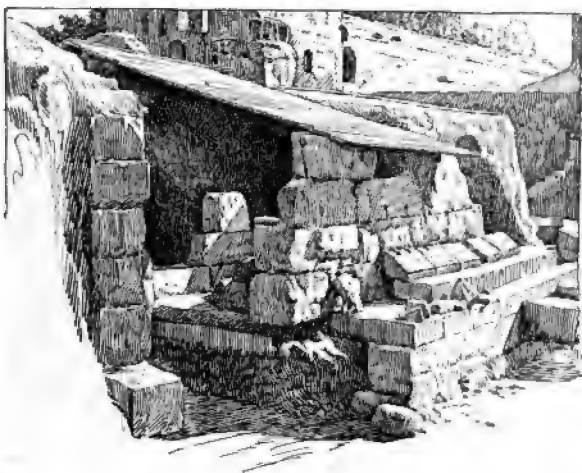


FIG. 3.—The Spot where the Body of Caesar was Cremated. From Lanciani's *New Tales of Old Rome*.

By permission of Messrs. Houghton, Mifflin & Co.

In energy and swiftness of action he has never been surpassed, frequently appearing in front of an army when he was supposed to be hundreds of miles away. Even in hardship and disaster his courage was firm, and he inspired his men with perfect confidence in his judgment and ability as a commander. He won their devotion, too, by his willingness to share their dangers and privations, his hearty commendation of merit, and his interest in their

personal welfare. More than once he saved the day by leaving his horse and fighting side by side with his men. Although in accordance with the custom of the time he allowed his soldiers occasionally to indulge in unnecessary cruelty against a vanquished foe, yet he is distinguished above all his contemporaries for his mercy and readiness to forgive his fellow-countrymen who took sides against him. His fairness is seen in his writings, where he praises even his barbarian enemies, as the Helvetii and the Nervii.

Although the republican constitution was overthrown by Caesar, he cannot be regarded as a usurping tyrant seeking power merely to satisfy his own ambition. It was only after exhausting every means to obtain a peaceable settlement with Pompey and the senate that he began the Civil War. The alternative to fighting was complete political ruin for himself, and the triumph of the senatorial party, which had been showing itself for years less and less worthy of conducting the government. When victory placed the sole power in his hands, he saw clearly and truly that the only way to effect the reforms which the just interests of the whole people, poor as well as rich, provincials or Romans, demanded, was to keep the reins in his own hands and to use the officials and the senate simply as functionaries to carry out his will. That he rose to absolute power in accordance with a well-matured plan formed years before is not likely; but he was a constructive statesman, capable of taking advantage of circumstances and of directing them towards the end which his discernment saw was essential for the public welfare.

In religion Caesar was a freethinker. Like most educated men of the time he could not believe in the national gods, Jupiter, Juno, and the rest. Although he showed favor to the Jews at Alexandria and elsewhere, it is not to be supposed that he knew anything of their God, in whom modern civilized peoples believe; and the Christian religion was not yet founded. He appears, however, to have trusted somewhat in an overruling power, which he called Fortune. Death he thought should not be feared, as it

brings no misery, but sets men free from the troubles of this life. He laughed at the signs which worried the superstitious. When he was disembarking in Africa for the brief campaign which was ended with his victory at Thapsus, he stumbled and fell, but giving a good turn to what others considered an unlucky omen he said, "I seize thee, Africa."

In the year after his death by a solemn vote of the senate this freethinker was enrolled among the gods and given the name Divus Iulius. The people thought that he was proved to have become a god by the appearance of a comet in the heavens at the celebration, in his honor, of the games of Venus Genetrix, who was considered to be the ancestral goddess of the Julian family.

**Caesar's writings.** 17. Caesar's literary activity covered a wide field. In his early years and again near the close of his life he dabbled in poetry, although not with marked success. His only extant verses are in praise of the comic poet Terence. In oratory Caesar was surpassed only by Cicero, who praises his style highly (*Brutus*, 252). One winter during a journey from Cisalpine Gaul to his army he composed a grammatical treatise. He wrote a book on astronomy, probably in connection with the reform of the calendar. After the suicide of the sturdy but narrow-minded republican, Cato of Utica, Caesar attacked him in a pamphlet replying to Cicero's panegyric. A collection of notable and witty sayings was also published by Caesar, and for many years after his death his official despatches and many of his private letters to Cicero, Balbus, and other friends, were extant. Of all these works only the merest fragments are preserved.

By great good fortune we have, however, Caesar's most important works, namely, the Commentaries on the Gallic and the Civil Wars. The *Gallic War* describes Caesar's campaigns in Gaul during the years 58-52 B.C., and was probably published in 51 B.C. The events of each year are related in a single book. The campaign of 51 B.C., in which the Gauls were completely subjugated, was described by Hirtius, one of Caesar's officers, who

also recounts the attempts made at Rome in 50 B.C. by Caesar's opponents to prevent his having a second consulship in 48 B.C. The *Civil War*, which was published after Caesar's death, treats in detail the events of 49 and 48 B.C., from the outbreak of the war till the Alexandrine uprising. It thus includes Caesar's conquests in Italy, Spain, and Thessaly, the capture of Marseilles, the loss of Curio's army in Africa, and the unsuccessful blockade of Pompey near Dyrrachium. The narrative ends abruptly, and doubtless Caesar meant to carry it farther with the account of the Alexandrine, Asiatic, African, and Spanish campaigns, which had occupied him intermittently through 47-45 B.C.

Caesar's account of the Gallic and the Civil wars is one of the most valuable military histories ever written. The style is singularly clear and direct, free from all rhetorical or literary artifices, and from the time of Cicero to the present day has been considered the best model of simple unaffected Latinity. Caesar's purpose was not so much to write history himself as to furnish historians with the materials for writing ; but Cicero says (*Brutus*, 262) that by his pure and clear brevity he discouraged others from attempting to improve on his work. Doubtless he wished to make his exposition favorable to himself, and presumably he concealed some of his mistakes. Apparently, too, he was sometimes misled by the reports of others, and in a few details his memory may have played him false ; but for the most part his statements can be accepted with confidence.

The Commentaries have always been read and studied by military men. Napoleon recommended them to all aspiring officers, and Lord Wolseley, recently commander-in-chief of the British army, says that the words of Caesar will suggest to a soldier of to-day "reflections that he may afterwards recall with advantage as applicable to modern campaigns." At the battle of San Jacinto (April, 1836), by which Texas won its independence from Mexico in a victory strikingly like some of Caesar's achievements, the commander of the Texans was the picturesque old frontiersman,

General Sam Houston, who had been a diligent student of Caesar's Commentaries.

"A wonderful man was this Caesar !

\* \* \* \* \*

Who could both write and fight, and in both was equally skillful!"

— LONGFELLOW, *The Courtship of Miles Standish*, Part II.

**Caesar in later literature.** 18. In English literature Caesar holds only an obscure place. Even in Shakspeare's *Julius Caesar*, the most important work in which he appears prominently, he can hardly be called the hero of the play. While Brutus, Cassius, and Antony are all idealized, Caesar is pictured as weak, vacillating, and superstitious. And yet Shakspeare held no mean opinion of him, as can be seen from such lines as

"Caesar was mighty, bold, royal, and loving." — *Julius Caesar*, 3, 1, 127.

"There be many Caesars ere such another Julius." — *Cymbeline*, 3, 1, 11.

Chaucer, in the *Monk's Tale*, tells of Caesar's murder, wrongly putting it on the Capitol, a detail in which he is followed by Shakspeare, who makes Polonius say (*Hamlet*, 3, 2, 97), "I did enact Julius Caesar: I was killed i' the Capitol; Brutus killed me." There is a record as early as 1562 of a performance at Whitehall of a play entitled *Julius Caesar*, but this entry is possibly mythical. In 1582 a Latin play, *Caesar Interfectus*, by Dr. Eedes, was acted at Oxford. It is to this performance that Polonius refers in *Hamlet*; and probably the familiar "Et tu, Brute" first occurred in the Latin play, although Shakspeare is more likely to have taken it from the *True Tragedy of Richard, Duke of York* (1595).

After Shakspeare's play appeared (probably 1600-1601), an unsuccessful counterblast, called *Caesar's Fall*, was written by Webster, Middleton, Munday, and Drayton. In 1604 Alexander's *Julius Caesar* appeared. A puppet-play of 1605 was founded on Shakspeare's play. In 1719 Davenant and Dryden altered

Shakspeare's play to conform to the tastes of the day. No play of Shakspeare is more popular or has been translated into more languages than *Julius Caesar*. The Duke of Buckingham's two plays, *The Tragedy of Caesar* and *The Tragedy of Brutus*, were printed in 1722, but neither was ever acted.

A different period of Caesar's life is presented in Fletcher's tragedy *The False One* (about 1620), which deals with Caesar's experiences in Egypt after the battle of Pharsalus (§ 13). His relations with Cleopatra give the principal interest to the plot. An adaptation of this play was produced in 1724 by Colley Cibber, whose *Caesar in Egypt* shows a nobler and more idealized characterization of both Caesar and Cleopatra. Pompey's murder and Caesar's narrow escape from destruction in the war with Ptolemy are important episodes of both plays.

The only novel in which Caesar holds a prominent part is *A Friend of Caesar* (1900), written by an American, Mr. William Stearns Davis, and even here the interest of the story centers round other characters.

In the literatures of other languages Caesar has exerted even less influence than in English. In 1550 the French scholar Muret (generally called Muretus) published a poem in Latin called *Julius Caesar*, which consisted largely of anecdotes taken from Suetonius. Among Voltaire's early tragedies are his *Brutus* and *La Mort de César*, neither of which compares favorably with Shakspeare's play. A German school teacher, Nicodemus Frischlin, produced in 1588 a Latin play, the *Helvetiogermani*, which relates the story, given in the first book of the *Gallie War*, of the campaigns against the Helvetii and the Germans under Ariovistus. In the comedy *Julius Redivivus*, Frischlin represents Caesar and Cicero visiting the upper world in his own day at Strassburg. It contains passages based on Caesar's account of the Germans in the sixth book of the *Gallie War*. Petrarch, the Italian poet of the fourteenth century, wrote a life of Caesar, which follows closely the ancient sources, and in the account of the Gallic and the Civil wars is

based on Caesar's own books. Louis XIV of France translated the first twenty-nine chapters of the first book of the *Gallie War*, containing the narrative of the Helvetian campaign. Auguste Barbier's play, *Jules César* (1848), is of no special merit. A patriotic and historical poem, *Vercingétorix et César*, by J. Pautet, was published in 1865.

Though his influence in literature has been small, Caesar has always been a familiar name to school children in all lands where Latin forms an essential part of the educational system. The simple, clear style of his writings, as well as the interest of the narrative itself and the greatness of the author, make it improbable that Caesar's influence in this direction will ever wane.

"O Julius Caesar, thou art mighty yet!" — *Julius Caesar*, 5, 3, 94.

## LIFE OF POMPEY

**Birth.**

**Early exploits.**  
**Joins the senatorial party.**

**19.** Pompey's career illustrates the extremes of fortune. Rising in the height of his successes to such honor as no Roman before him had ever won, he finally became a fugitive, seeking safety wherever it might be found, and met death at the hands of a cowardly assassin.

Gnaeus Pompey was born September 29, 106 B.C., not quite nine months after the birth of his friend and political supporter, Cicero, and about four years earlier than his rival and conqueror, Caesar. While a mere boy he saw service in his father's army, and at the age of twenty-three so distinguished himself as an independent commander, in behalf of the senatorial or aristocratic party, that Sulla, the greatest general of the time, saluted him with the complimentary title of Imperator, a most extraordinary honor for a man so young. During the next two years, he commanded with such success against the popular or democratic forces in Italy, Sicily, and Africa, that Sulla greeted him on his return

with the surname of Magnus, or the Great, and after some reluctance permitted him to celebrate a triumph. This was the first time that such an honor was granted a man who had not held any public office, and who, consequently, was not a member of the senate.

**Commands against Lepidus and Sertorius.** 20. Upon Sulla's death, in 78 B.C., the democratic consul, Lepidus, tried to overthrow the Sullan constitution, which had put all the government in the hands of the aristocratic party. Pompey was given command against Lepidus and soon drove him out of Italy. In the next year he was sent by the senate to aid Metellus in the war against Sertorius in Spain. Sertorius declared that a ferule was the only weapon he should need with which to whip this lad, if he were not afraid of the old woman Metellus; and in fact he would have worsted Pompey in pitched battle more than once if Metellus had not come to the rescue. Finally in 72 B.C. Sertorius was treacherously assassinated by his own officers, and Pompey found no difficulty in defeating his successor and bringing the war to a close. On his return to Italy he met and cut to pieces five thousand fugitive slaves from the army of Spartacus, who had been overthrown by Crassus. For this exploit he egotistically claimed that, while Crassus had conquered the slaves in battle, he had plucked up the whole war by the roots.

**First consulship.** 21. Although he had not yet reached the legal age, and had held none of the lower offices, Pompey was elected consul with Crassus for the year 70 B.C. He won the favor of the popular party by restoring to the tribunate the powers it had possessed before Sulla's reforms, and by taking away from the senate the exclusive right of sitting on juries in the law courts. Caesar supported these democratic measures and was glad to see the senate alienated from the popular hero. During this year Pompey received his formal discharge from military service, declaring at the ceremony that he had served the full number of campaigns prescribed by law, and all under himself as general.

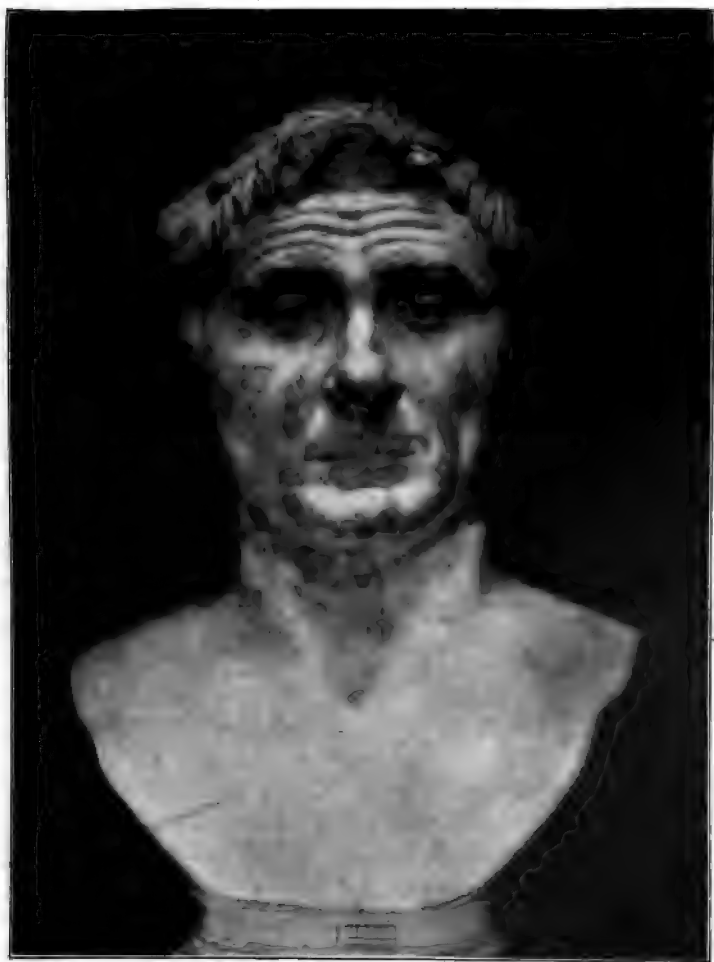


FIG. 4.—POMPEY : COPENHAGEN



**Wars with  
the pirates  
and with  
Mithrida-  
tes.**

**22.** For the next two years Pompey lived in retirement, but in 67 B.C., upon the proposal of the tribune Gabinius, he was given by vote of the people, in spite of strong opposition from the senate, an extraordinary command against the pirates, with absolute control over the whole Mediterranean and its shores for fifty miles inland. The pirates had carried things with a high hand for many years, destroying fleets, plundering cities and temples, taking Roman officials prisoner, and above all cutting off Rome's corn supply from the provinces. In three months Pompey cleared the sea of pirates, making commerce secure once more and restoring plenty and cheap prices to the capital.

Through this astonishing success Pompey became by far the most distinguished man of the time. The following year the tribune Manilius proposed that he should be given charge of the war against Mithridates, king of Pontus in Asia Minor, who had been warring with the Romans for more than twenty years. Pompey brought this troublesome and dangerous war to an end in 63 B.C., and reorganized the states of Asia, adding several new provinces to the Roman domain and increasing the revenues of the treasury by more than a half. One of his achievements was the capture of Jerusalem and the reduction of Judea to a Roman dependency. When he returned home in 62 B.C., he might easily have seized the supreme power with the help of his army and the political support of the people. But shrinking from such violation of the constitution, he dismissed his legions as soon as he landed in Italy, and was thus left at the mercy of the jealous senate, which long refused to grant him a triumph, to ratify his acts in the East, or to assign farms to his veterans.

**Friendly  
relations  
with  
Caesar.**

**23.** When Caesar returned from Spain in 60 B.C., his chief ambition was to secure the consulship for the following year. Taking advantage of the feud between his friend Pompey and the senate, he formed the First Triumvirate (§ 7) with Pompey and Crassus for the purpose of

forwarding their own interests in spite of senatorial opposition. Early in his consulship he secured the ratification of Pompey's settlement of the East and the assignment of lands for his veterans.

The friendship of the two men was sealed by the marriage of Pompey to Caesar's daughter Julia. When the people had voted to Caesar the governorship of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum for five years, it was Pompey who proposed in the senate that Transalpine Gaul should be added to Caesar's province.

In 57 B.C. Pompey was made commissioner for five years of the corn supply throughout the empire, a position of high honor but little power. His request to be intrusted with the restoration of the exiled Ptolemy Auletes to the throne of Egypt was refused by the senate.

At the Lucca conference in 56 B.C. (§ 9) Pompey and Crassus were designated as consuls for 55 B.C., and Pompey was to receive the governorship of Spain for the five years following. He appears to have felt, however, that his influence, which had been waning as Caesar's had been growing during the last few years, would be endangered if he left Italy. Consequently, under the pretext of administering the corn supply, and disregarding all precedent, he committed his province to lieutenants and remained near Rome.

**The break with Caesar.** 24. When Julia died in September, 54 B.C., a strong tie between Pompey and Caesar was broken, and with the death of Crassus the next year the community of interests which had held the triumvirate together was at an end (§ 10). Still no open rupture occurred, and in 53 B.C. Pompey loaned Caesar a legion to be used in Gaul. Anarchy prevailed at Rome, elections even could not be held regularly, and at the beginning of 52 B.C. such disorder followed the murder of Clodius, Caesar's demagogue supporter, that Pompey was made sole consul by the senate.

This action made him the leader of the senatorial party, and put an end to the union of eighteen years' duration with Caesar.

During the year Pompey married Cornelia, daughter of Metellus Scipio, a bitter enemy of Caesar, and on August 1 he made his father-in-law his colleague in the consulship for the rest of the year. In the next two years Pompey and the enemies of Caesar in the senate were intriguing to prevent Caesar from receiving a second consulship in 48 B.C., and refusing all of Caesar's overtures for peaceable settlement of the rivalry between himself and Pompey (§§ 11, 12).

In the fall of 50 B.C., upon the false report that Caesar was collecting his troops in upper Italy, the consul Marcellus with both consuls elect, all fanatically opposed to Caesar, ordered Pompey, on their own responsibility and therefore unconstitutionally, to defend his country, using the forces then under his command and, if necessary, levying more. Pompey was so overconfident, being deceived partly by extravagant demonstrations throughout Italy over his recovery from a severe illness, and partly by the assertions of certain officers that Caesar's soldiers would desert as soon as war began, that he neglected all proper precautions, boasting that, whenever he stamped with his foot in any part of Italy, troops enough would arise in an instant.

**The civil war.** **Pompey's defeat.** 25. When, in January, 49 B.C., the implacable senate, refusing all of Caesar's proposals, declared the country to be in danger, and summoned Pompey and the other magistrates to its defense (§ 12), Pompey was found to be far less ready for action than his rival. Upon learning that Caesar had crossed the Rubicon and that town after town was passing into his hands, all Rome was filled with the wildest confusion. Wholly unprepared for fighting, Pompey and his supporters fled in hot haste to Brundisium, whence the two consuls and part of the army at once embarked for Dyrrachium, and Pompey himself with the rest of his troops followed a few weeks later, when Caesar arrived before the town.

Making his headquarters at Dyrrachium, Pompey spent the year 49 B.C. in strengthening his fleet and collecting men and

supplies of every sort from all the countries of the East, where his name had been one to conjure with ever since his exploits in the Mithridatic War. When Caesar, after his victorious campaigns in Italy and Spain,<sup>1</sup> arrived in Epirus at the beginning of the next year, his little army was no match for Pompey's in numbers or equipment. But while Caesar's troops were veterans, who had learned to put implicit confidence in their general and were ready to do and dare the utmost in his behalf, Pompey was hampered by the jealousies and feuds of the many nobles and magistrates in his suite, each one of whom wanted a share in the direction of affairs.

Although Caesar's daring attempt to blockade Pompey near Dyrrachium was a failure, he amply atoned for this reverse a few weeks later by his crushing defeat of the Pompeians at Pharsalus (August 9, 48 B.C.).

**Flight and death.** 26. Pompey himself fled with a handful of companions. Coming to the sea, he spent the night in a fisherman's cottage, and next morning obtained passage in a merchant ship for Lesbos, where his wife and younger son were sojourning during the war.

The pathetic meeting with his wife is related by Plutarch. She had been led to believe that his success at Dyrrachium had decided the war in his favor. When she learned that he had come as a fugitive with a single ship, and that not his own, she fell in a swoon. Upon recovering her senses, she was brought to Pompey, who tried to console her with philosophical reflections. "It behooves us, who are mortals born," he said, "to endure these events, and to try fortune yet again; neither is it any less possible to recover our former state than it was to fall from that into this."

Taking his wife and a few friends on board, Pompey proceeded on his way. After mature deliberation he decided to seek refuge with the Egyptian king, whose father had been restored to his

<sup>1</sup> See the summary of Book First of the *Civil War*, p. 38a f.

throne through Pompey's favor. The young king's ministers, hoping to win Caesar's favor, had him treacherously murdered before the eyes of his wife and friends, as he was stepping ashore. The body, which was left lying on the sand, was burned by a freedman of Pompey, who had accompanied him to land. The funeral pile was made from planks of an old fishing boat. The head was reserved as a trophy for Caesar, who, when he saw it, turned away in disgust and sorrow, and afterwards had two of the guilty ministers punished with death.

Pompey died September 28, 48 B.C., the thirteenth anniversary of his triumph for the victory over Mithridates, and one day before he would have been fifty-eight years old. He was an honest man in an age of corruption and crookedness, a good husband and father, and a capable military officer. But he was not gifted with Caesar's strong character and power of leadership, and if he had been victorious at Pharsalus, there can be no doubt that he would have been the mere tool of the bloodthirsty, unscrupulous aristocrats, who were eager only to enrich themselves at the expense of their political and personal enemies, in utter disregard of the welfare of the state as a whole.

## CAESAR'S ARMY

**The legion.** 27. The tactical unit in the Roman army was the legion, the full strength of which was theoretically 6000 men. But, as in modern armies, the effective fighting strength was constantly changing, owing to sickness, desertions, or losses in battle. It is estimated that Caesar's legions never much exceeded 5000 men, and at the battle of Pharsalus, as we know from his own statement (*B.C.* 3, 89), they averaged only 2750. Like modern corps and regiments, the legions were designated by numbers, as first, tenth, etc.

The legionary soldier was a Roman citizen of the lower classes. He enlisted for twenty years, and at the expiration of his term

was rewarded with money, often with a farm, thus being assured of a competence for the rest of his days, just as in our own times veterans are given pensions and government positions. Veterans were often invited by a general to reënter the service for one or more campaigns. They were exempt from all the harder duties, and received liberal pay and rewards. Caesar paid his legionaries at first 120, afterwards 225, denarii (about \$40) a year, but the purchasing value of money was greater then than now. In addition to their pay, soldiers received a share of the booty, and gifts from the general, after successful campaigns. They were trained to a variety of duties, and could fortify a camp, build bridges, or repair ships, as readily as they could fight. They constituted the heavy infantry of the army.

**Divisions of the legion.** 28. The legion was divided into ten tactical units called cohorts, each cohort comprising three maniples, or companies, and each maniple being again subdivided into two centuries, or platoons. Accordingly, there were thirty maniples and sixty centuries in each legion. The best men of the legion were in the first cohort.

**The auxiliaries.** 29. While the brunt of the fighting fell on the legions, there was a considerable body of light infantry (*peditēs levis armātūrae*) always attached to the army. These were never Romans, but were furnished by allied or subject states upon the requisition of the commander, or were hired from independent nations. They comprised the slingers (*funditōrēs*) and archers (*sagittariī*). They had only light defensive armor or none at all. In battle they were stationed at the wings, and were depended on merely to make a show of numbers or to help in confusing the enemy at the first attack.

**The cavalry.** 30. The cavalry also belonged to the auxiliaries, being raised altogether from allied and subject states. Caesar's cavalry was composed of Gauls, Germans, and Spaniards. The Germans were by far the most effective. Horsemen were no match for infantry in actual conflict, but they were useful for

defending the legions from flank attacks, for reconnoitring, and especially in the pursuit of a defeated enemy.

**The general.** 31. Caesar as governor of a province had absolute command of his army. Although he possessed the *imperium*, or supreme power, from the moment of entering upon his office, the title of *imperātor*, general-in-chief, was given by his soldiers after his first victory, which was won over the Helvetians in 58 B.C.

**The lieutenants.** 32. The lieutenants (*lēgātī*) were members of the Roman senate, appointed by that body on the nomination of the general. They could be detailed by the general for any service, civil or military. Caesar appointed his lieutenants to the command of single legions. Occasionally a lieutenant was given temporarily an independent command of two or more legions, with the title of *lēgātus prō praetōre* ('lieutenant acting as commander'). Among Caesar's most capable lieutenants were Labienus, who deserted him at the beginning of the Civil War, Publius Crassus, son of the triumvir, Quintus Cicero, the orator's brother, and Mark Antony, who afterwards shared with Octavian the rule of the Roman world.

**The quaestor.** 33. Every governor of a province had a quaestor assigned to him by lot. These officials, elected annually at Rome, had charge of the finances of the province, the pay, equipment, and supplies of the army, and the management of the booty. Caesar occasionally put a quaestor in command of one or more legions.

The commander-in-chief with his lieutenants, quaestor, and a large number of aids and guards, formed the general staff of the army.

**The tribunes.** 34. The tribunes were young men of equestrian rank, who obtained appointment from the general himself through family and political influences. Being without military experience and usually remaining with the army only a short time, they were of less value than the lieutenants. Their command in

battle was apparently limited to small detachments of one or more cohorts. They presided over courts-martial and took part in the councils of war. They also had numerous administrative duties, such as maintaining the discipline of the camp, attending to the levying or discharge of troops, and assisting the quaestor in providing supplies and equipment. There were six tribunes to each legion.

**The centurions.** 35. Most important of the subordinate officers were the centurions. Unlike the superior officers they were professional soldiers, having been promoted from the ranks through merit. As their name implies they were commanders of centuries. Accordingly there were sixty in each legion, six in each cohort, and two in each maniple (§ 28).

Of the six centurions in each cohort the two belonging to the first maniple were called *pīlus prior* and *pīlus posterior*; the two belonging to the second maniple, *prīnceps prior* and *prīnceps posterior*; and the two of the third maniple, *hastātus prior* and *hastātus posterior*. The *pīlus prior* must have commanded the whole cohort, and within each maniple the *prior*, or senior, centurion was doubtless in charge.

The cohort to which a centurion belonged was indicated by prefixing the proper numeral. The lowest centurion of the tenth cohort of any legion was *decimus hastātus posterior*, the fourth centurion of the fifth cohort was *quīntus prīnceps posterior*, the first centurion of the first cohort was *prīmus pīlus prior*, generally abbreviated to *primipīlus*.

The *primipīlus* was the chief centurion of the legion and ranked next to the lieutenant, its commanding officer. This was the highest rank to which any centurion could aspire. The six centurions of the first cohort, called *centuriōnēs primōrum ordinum*, outranked all the others and enjoyed the special confidence of their superiors, being the only centurions invited to the councils of war. The centurions of the tenth cohort were the lowest in rank (*centuriōnēs infimōrum ordinum*), and the order of promotion was probably

through the six grades of the tenth cohort, then of the ninth, the eighth, and so on to the first. Men of special bravery were sometimes promoted over the heads of their superiors. Caesar tells of advancing a worthy centurion from a position in the eighth cohort to the rank of *primipilus*, the highest in the whole legion.

**The council of war.** 36. The commanding officer frequently invited to a council of war his lieutenants, quaestor, tribunes, and centurions of highest rank. This body could merely advise. The general was perfectly free to go contrary to its judgment.

**The prefects.** 37. The prefects were officers of the auxiliary troops, whether infantry or cavalry. The subordinate prefects were generally of the same nationality as their men, but the highest prefects were Romans. The engineering operations of the army were also in charge of an officer called prefect of engineers.

**Armor.** 38. The legionary soldier was protected by a helmet (*galea* or *cassis*), which was adorned with a crest, and left the face exposed; a leather cuirass (*lōrica*), reinforced with strips of metal; and a shield (*scūtum*) of cylindrical shape, made of wood covered with hide. Probably a greave (*ocrea*) was worn on the right shin, the left was sufficiently protected by the shield.

**Weapons.** 39. The weapons of the legionary were the javelin (*pīlum*) and the sword (*gladius*). The javelin, which was about six feet long, consisted of a wooden shaft in which was fitted a long slender iron hardened only at the point. When the weapon struck, the iron bent and thus made it unserviceable for the enemy's use. The javelins were hurled with great force and accuracy by the charging soldiers when they were about seventy-five or one hundred feet from the enemy. In the hand-to-hand encounter which followed, the weapon used was the sword, about two feet long, double-edged, and sharp-pointed. It was carried on the right side suspended from a belt passing over the left shoulder.

**The standards.** 40. The standard of the legion was a silver or bronze eagle (*aquila*), with outstretched wings, carried on a

long pole. It was borne by the *aquilifer* under the special charge of the chief centurion (*primipilus*).

Each maniple had its standard (*signum*), of varying forms so that the soldiers could easily distinguish their own. Animals were the commonest devices, and streamers or metal ornaments were often attached. The cohort had no separate standard.

The cavalry and the auxiliary infantry had rectangular flags or banners (*vexilla*) of different colors. A *vexillum* was also kept flying at the general's quarters.

**41.** Wheat was the favorite food of the Roman soldiers, about two pounds forming one day's ration. On one occasion in the Civil War, rations for three weeks were issued, but ordinarily the soldier received his allowance every fortnight. The grinding and cooking were the work of the soldiers themselves. Variety of diet could be obtained by trading with the sutlers, who attended the army in considerable numbers. Meat was only sparingly eaten.

**The baggage.** **42.** On the march each soldier carried his own personal baggage, containing rations, clothing, cooking and intrenching utensils, arms, etc., all tied in a secure bundle (*sarcina*) and fastened to a forked stick slung over the shoulder. This pack must have weighed, according to the amount of rations, from thirty to sixty pounds.

The general baggage of the legion, including tents, artillery, provisions, hand-mills for grinding the grain, etc., was carried by pack-animals (*iumenta*) or on wagons. From four hundred to five hundred pack-animals must have been required for each legion. The baggage train was such a hindrance to the army on the march that it was called *impedimenta*.

**The camp. Its fortifications.** **43.** The Roman army always spent the night in a carefully built camp (*castra*). The shape of the camp was as nearly square or rectangular as the nature of the ground allowed. The favorite site was a gently sloping hill, which would give a commanding position against an enemy, and near which

could be found an abundance of water and fodder, with wood for fuel and for fortification. The place was selected, and the plan of the camp marked out, by scouts sent on ahead. When the army came up, men were at once detailed to complete the work.

A ditch (*fossa*) was dug round the outer line of the camp, the dirt being thrown up on the inner side to form a rampart (*vallum*).

The dimensions of ditch and rampart varied according to circumstances, but ordinarily the ditch was about nine feet wide at the top and seven feet deep, the rampart about six feet high and six feet broad at the top. On the outer edge of the rampart stakes (*valli*) were planted close together, making a fence, some four feet high, from behind which the defenders hurled their weapons down upon their assailants. Towers and other defenses were sometimes added to the rampart.

**Interior of the camp.** 44. In the middle of the camp was a roomy open space, in which were the general's quarters (*praetorium*), the tribunal from which he addressed his troops, and the altar for sacrificing. The quaestor's quarters were just behind the *praetorium*. From the *praetorium* a street ran to the main entrance of the camp (*porta praetoria*) in the middle of the front rampart. Directly opposite this entrance, in the rear wall of the camp, was the *porta decumana*. Each of the side walls also had an entrance connected by a wide street passing in front of the

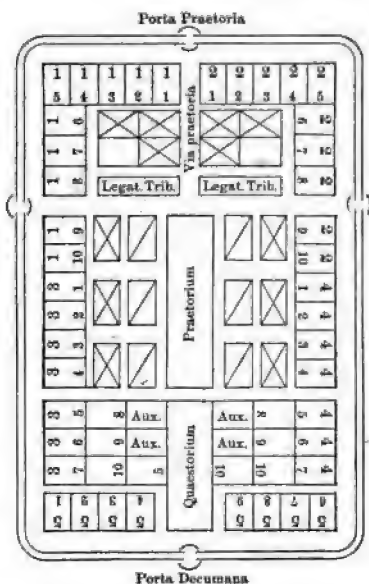


FIG. 5. — Plan of a Roman Camp.

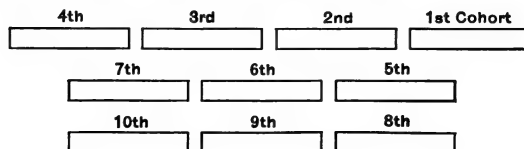
*praelorium*. All the troops, both infantry and cavalry, had their regular positions in camp, so that every man could find his own quarters without any confusion.

The winter camp (*hiberna*) was constructed on the same plan, but as it was a permanent home of the soldiers for several months, its fortifications were ordinarily stronger, and thatch-covered huts took the place of tents.

The gates were always securely guarded, and their defense was made easier by the arrangement of the entrance, whereby any one attempting to enter exposed his right side, which was unprotected by the shield.

**45.** The day's march usually began at sunrise and was completed about noon. Sixteen or seventeen miles made an ordinary march, but Caesar's army was famous for forced marches (*magna itinera*), of twenty-five miles or more, by which the enemy were often taken completely by surprise. The vanguard (*primum agmen*) consisted of cavalry and light infantry. The legions followed at a suitable distance, each legion preceding its own baggage (*impedimenta*), except in times of danger, when the baggage of the whole army was united. A strong force of infantry brought up the rear (*novissimum agmen*). Occasionally, in the immediate proximity of the enemy and over level ground, the army marched in three parallel columns, and could thus be quickly formed into the triple line of battle (*triplex acies*).

**46.** The legion was generally drawn up for battle in three lines (*triplex acies*). The number of cohorts in each line varied according to circumstances, but the normal arrangement was probably with four cohorts, side by side, in the first line, and three in each of the other two.



The three maniples of each cohort stood side by side, the second century of each maniple behind the first. If two or more legions were in line, they stood beside each other, perhaps with a slight interval between, but it is unlikely that there was any interval between the cohorts in the first line of a single legion. Cavalry and auxiliaries were generally stationed on the extreme wings of the army.

Occasionally the army was drawn up in a double line (*duplex acies*), with five cohorts in each, and more rarely, as at Pharsalus (*B.C.* 3, 89), a fourth line was formed as a special reserve. Other formations were occasionally adopted as circumstances demanded.

The first line began the battle, charging the enemy at full speed. When they came within range, the soldiers hurled their spears upon the enemy's line, and then fought hand to hand with the sword. The men of the second line gradually worked their way into the fight, taking the places of the killed and wounded. As a man became exhausted he fell back, giving way to a fresh man of the second line until rested enough to resume fighting. The third line was held as a reserve to be launched on the enemy at a critical moment or to support the first two lines in any way desired.

**The siege.** 47. The Romans exercised great ingenuity in taking walled towns. If the fortifications were weak, an assault was tried at once. The walls were cleared of defenders by showers of well-aimed missiles, the ditch round the town was filled with earth and brush, the gates and walls were demolished at the most convenient points, or scaling-ladders were run up, and the capture (*expugnatio*) of the town was speedily accomplished.

Some towns were so strong in their position that they could be taken only by a blockade (*obsidio*), which might continue until the besieged were starved into submission. Caesar's investment of Alesia, in 52 B.C., was one of the most remarkable military operations of all time.

If a town was strongly defended, but not inaccessible in loca-

tion, a regular siege (*oppugnātiō*) was begun, with elaborate preparations culminating in an assault. A siege mound (*agger*) of timber and earth was built, starting from a point nearly, or quite, out of range of the enemy's missiles, and rising in height as it approached the wall of the town. The builders were protected by high movable fences and by rows of sheds (*vīneae*) along the sides of the mound. Stronger sheds (*mūscoli*) were used as the work came near the wall. Archers and slingers, and sharpshooters with artillery for hurling stones or shooting darts, also endeavored to prevent the enemy from manning the walls. Sometimes the mound equaled the height of the wall; in this case the invaders rushed along the mound and entered the town without much difficulty. Sometimes it was raised only high enough to admit more easily of using scaling-ladders (*scālae*) or towers (*turrēs*). The towers were huge structures on wheels, built up, story upon story, to overtop the enemy's wall. From them missiles could be hurled into the town, or drawbridges thrown out, on which soldiers passed across to occupy the wall and seize the town. Mines (*cuniculi*) were sometimes dug to give entrance to the town. Whenever a breach had been made in the wall, ranks of men, holding their shields so that they overlapped and formed a tortoise-covering (*testūdō*) above their heads, ran up and tried to force an entrance.

The besieged tried in every way to thwart the assailant. Sometimes the siege mound was undermined or set on fire. The sheds, too, unless they were well protected by strong coverings and green hides, were liable to be destroyed by fire or heavy stones. The implements for demolishing the walls were occasionally caught in nooses and hauled into the city. Sorties were made when possible in the effort to drive the enemy away and to destroy his works.

**The fleet.** 48. The Romans had no distinct naval service, but the fighting men of a fleet, both officers and privates, were drawn from the legions. The tactics were comparatively simple, consisting mainly of ramming an enemy's vessel with the

sharp metal-covered beak (*rōstrum*) and sinking it, or of running alongside and grappling it while the legionaries sprang on board and engaged in a hand-to-hand combat. Towers were sometimes erected on a ship from which missiles could be sent down on the enemy.

The ships of war (*nāvēs longae*) were about eight times as long as broad. They had only one or two sails, being propelled mainly by rowers, and were capable of high speed. The commonest form was the trireme (*trirēmis*), in which the rowers sat on three levels or banks. The rudders were two large oars, one on each side, at the stern. For carrying troops or supplies, transports (*nāvēs onerariae*) were used. These were only about four times as long as broad, and were consequently steadier, but far slower, than the ships of war. They were propelled mainly by sails.

## A FEW USEFUL BOOKS FOR THE STUDY OF CAESAR

- Fowler, W. W.** *Julius Caesar*. Heroes of the Nations series, N.Y. and London, 1892. The best account of Caesar's life and influence, popular but scholarly.
- Froude, J. A.** *Caesar, a Sketch*. N.Y., 1879 and (Harper, cheap edition) 1881. An interesting but partisan history of Roman politics and of Caesar. Unfair towards Cicero.
- Trollope, A.** *The Commentaries of Caesar*. Edinburgh and London, 1870, Philadelphia, 1875. An account, book by book, of the Gallic and the Civil wars.
- Dodge, Col. T. A.** *Caesar*. Boston and N.Y., 1892. A history of the art of war among the Romans, with a detailed description of Caesar's campaigns.
- Holmes, T. R.** *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. London and N.Y., 1899. An excellent narrative of the Gallic War, with abundant discussions of many knotty points.
- Napoléon III.** *Histoire de Jules César*. Paris and N.Y., 1865-1866; translation, London and N.Y., 1865. To be used with caution. Has a valuable atlas, containing maps of Gaul in sections, and plans of battles.
- Stoffel, Col. E. G. H. C.** *Histoire de Jules César, Guerre Civile*. Paris, 1887. Continues Napoleon's work.
- Heuzey, L.** *Les Opérations Militaires de Jules César*. Paris, 1886. A study of Caesar's operations in Macedonia, Illyricum, Epirus, and Thessaly, in the Civil War. Good maps.
- Scott, F. J.** *Portraits of Julius Caesar*. London and N.Y., 1903. Has a brief sketch of Caesar's life, followed by a description of all the known coins, busts, and statues which purport to give his likeness. Many plates and cuts.
- Baring-Gould, S.** *Tragedy of the Caesars*. London, 1892. Vol. I gives an entertaining narrative of Caesar, with the most important busts and statues of Caesar, Pompey, and others.
- Boissier, G.** *Cicero and his Friends*. N.Y. and London, 1897. Pages 209-302 treat of Caesar's relations with Cicero.
- Suetonius.** *Lives of the Caesars*. Alexander Thomson's translation, revised by T. Forester. London, 1896. The life of Julius Caesar is one of the most reliable of the ancient sources.

- Plutarch.** *Lives*, Vol. IV. Clough's translation. Boston, 1881. The life of Caesar is interesting, but not to be depended on where it conflicts with other sources.
- Mommsen, T.** *History of Rome*. N.Y., 1895. Vols. IV and V have a full and highly laudatory account of Caesar, who is Mommsen's hero.
- Holm, A.** *History of Greece*. London and N.Y., 1894-1898. Vol. IV, Ch. 28, and especially Note 2, may be read as an antidote to Mommsen.
- Oehler, R.** *Bilder-Atlas zu Caesars Büchern De Bello Gallico*. Leipzig, 1890. Has useful pictures and maps.
- Kraner-Dittenberger.** *De Bello Gallico*. Berlin, 1890. Includes the eighth book by Hirtius. The best annotated edition for those who can read German.
- Kraner-Hoffmann.** *De Bello Civili*. Berlin, 1890. Similar in plan to the last-named book.
- Benoist et Dosson.** *Jules César, Commentaires sur la Guerre des Gaules*. Paris, 1899. Useful for its notes on history, geography, and antiquities.
- Meusel, H.** *Lexicon Caesarianum*. Berlin, 1887-1893. A list of all words in Caesar's writings, including proper names, and stating all the passages in which each word occurs.
- Davis, W. S.** *A Friend of Caesar*. N.Y., 1900. A novel of the time of the Civil War. Gives a satisfactory picture of Caesar, and will be read with interest and profit.



# C. IVLI CAESARIS BELLI GALLICI

## LIBER PRIMVS

---

### I. MAIN DIVISIONS OF GAUL

I. GALLIA est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis  
5 Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dividit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximique  
10 sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānis ?  
proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

15 Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur;

pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumnā flumine ad Pyrēnaeos montes et eam partem Oceanī quae est ad Hispaniam pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

2-29. THE HELVETIAN WAR, 58 B.C.

*Plots of Orgetorix, a Helvetian noble*

*The Helvetii plan a migration into Gaul.* 2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditātē inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et civitātī persuāsit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri. Id hōc facilius iis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur: unā ex parte flumine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium a Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flumine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētīis dividit. His rēbus frēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandi cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitudīne autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem millia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

3. His rēbus adductī et auctōritātē Orgetorigis permōti cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, iumentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere



FIG. 6.—CAESAR : CAPITOLINE



cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs civitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eas rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

5 Orgetorix dux dēligitur. Is lēgatiōnem ad *Intrigues of*  
civitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Cas- *Orgetorix*  
ticō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater *with Gallic*  
rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū *nobles.*  
populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in civi-  
10 tātē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerit; itemque  
Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciāci, quī eō tempore prīnci-  
pātum in civitatē obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat,  
ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eiūque filiam suam in mā-  
trimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta  
15 perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae civitātis imperium  
obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quā tōtius Galliae plū-  
rimum Helvētiī possent; sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū  
illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. Hāc ōratiōne adductī  
inter sē idem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per  
20 trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē  
potiri posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūtiāta. *Trial and*  
Mōribus suis Orgetorīgē ex vinculis causam *death of*  
dicere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī opor- *Orgetorix.*  
25 tēbat ut ignī cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis  
Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum  
millia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerā-  
tōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem  
condūxit; per eōs nē causam diceret sē ēripuit. Cum  
30 civitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārē-

tur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quā ipse sibi mortem cōsciverit.

*Preparations of the Helvetii for departure*

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum  
10 reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mēnsū molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis, utī eōdem ūsī cōsiliō, oppidis suis vicisque exustis, ūnā cum iis proficiscantur; Bōiōsque, quī  
15 trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile,  
20 inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum  
25 et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullis locis vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allo-

*The route  
through the  
Roman  
Province is  
chosen.*

brogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coactūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis diem dicunt quā diē ad  
 5 rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

*Caesar opposes the Helvetian plans*

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem con-  
 10 tendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī.

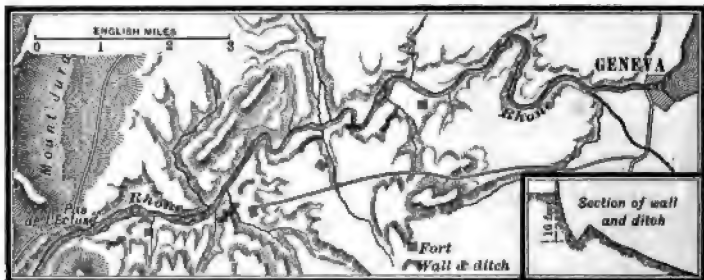
Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī  
 15 sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvī-  
 tātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius  
 prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent sibi  
 esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere,  
 proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius  
 20 voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā  
 tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem occīsum exercitumque eius  
 ab Helvētīis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum  
 nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte  
 per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā  
 25 et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere  
 posset dum militēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātis  
 respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid  
 vellent, ad Īd. Apr. revertērentur.

*The Helvetii ask Caesar's permission to go through the Province.*

*An attempted invasion of the Province is repulsed.*

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dividit, millia passuum XVIII mūrū in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populi Rō-



Caesar's Defenses along the Rhone.

mānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibētūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complūribus factis, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

*The Sequanian route is granted them through the intercession of Dumnorix.*

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. His cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgē Haeduum mit-

tunt, ut eō dēprecātore ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dum-  
 norix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat,  
 et Helvētiūs erat amicus quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis  
 filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adduc-  
 5 tus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō  
 beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat.  
 Itaque rem suscipit, et ā Sēquanīs  
 impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvē-  
 tiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque uti  
 10 inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī,  
 nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant;  
 Helvētiū, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā  
 trāseant.

10. Caesarī nūtiātūr  
 15 *Caesar brings more troops from Italy.* Helvētiūs esse in animō  
 per agrum Sēquanōrum  
 et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum  
 finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsā-  
 tium finibus absunt, quae civitās est  
 20 in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegē-  
 bat magnō cum periculō prōvinciae  
 futurum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī  
 Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus

maximēque frūmentāriīs finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās  
 25 eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit;  
 ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi  
 legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemā-  
 bant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem  
 Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quinque legiōnibus ire  
 30 contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāiocelī et Caturigēs locīs



FIG. 7. — A Roman Legionary.

superiōribus occupātis itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab  
 5 Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

*The Haedui and others ask Caesar's protection from the Helvetii.*  
 10 11. Helvētīi iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab iis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omni tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida  
 15 expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessārii et cōsanguinei Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiorē faciunt sēsē dēpopulātis agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem reci-  
 20 piunt, et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expectandum sibi statuit dum omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōsūptis in Santonōs Helvētīi pervenirent.

*Caesar annihilates one canton of the Helvetii at the Saône.*  
 25 12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibīlī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id  
 30 flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen

Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopinantes adgressus magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliqui sēsē  
 5 fugae mandarunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est.

Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōnsulem interfecerat et eius exerci-  
 10 tum sub iugum miserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immortalium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitatem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās sed etiam privātās iniuriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pisōnis avum,  
 15 L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī eodem proeliō quō Cassium interfecerant.

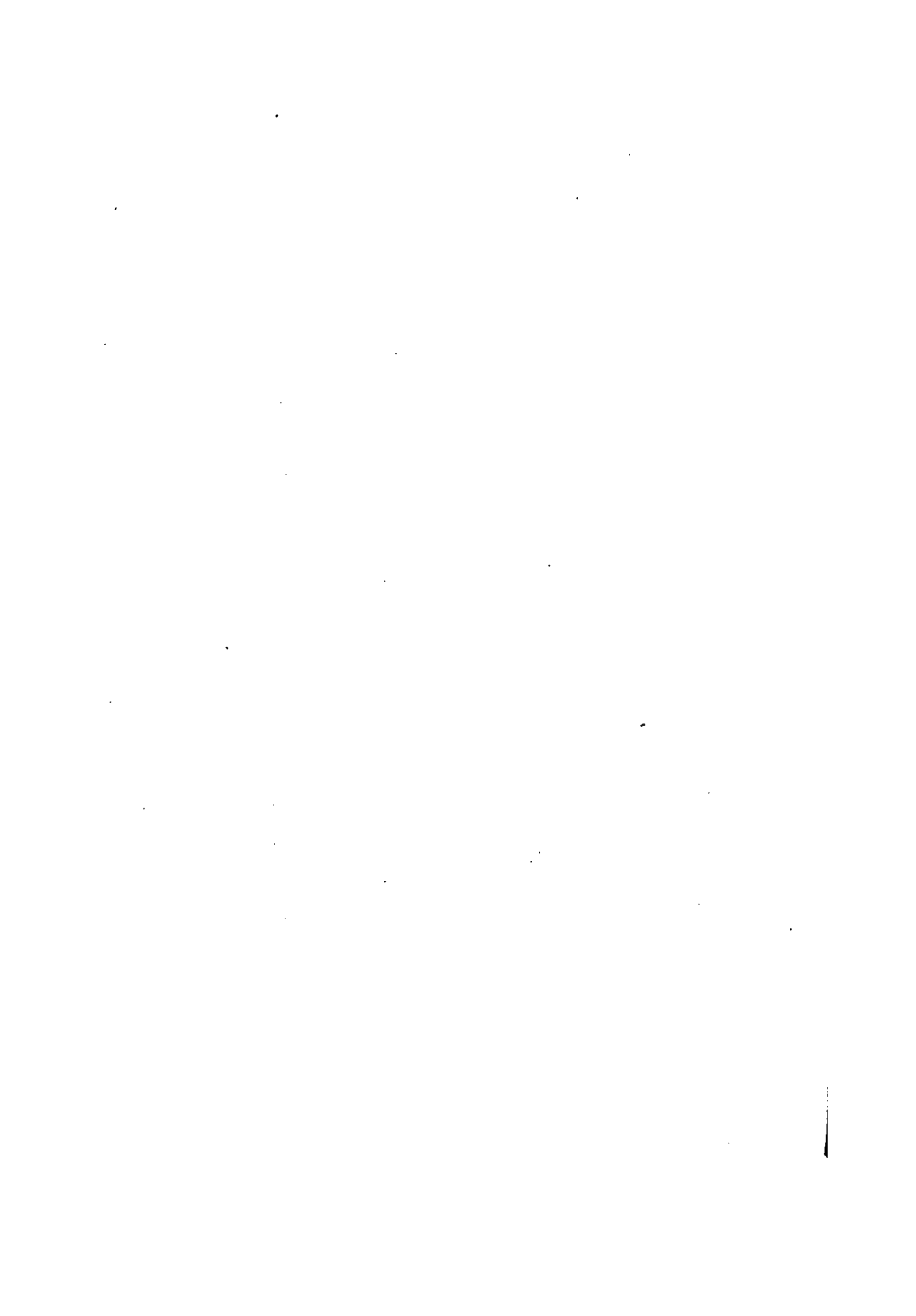
13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvē- *The Helvetii*  
 tiōrum ut cōsequi posset, pontem in Ararī *send an em-*  
*bassy to*  
 faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. *Caesar.*

20 Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōti, cum id quod ipsi diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfecerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellexerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī  
 25 pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequi perseverāret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprō-  
 30 vīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ii quī flūmen trāns-

issent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē  
 5 committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

*Caesar's terms and Divico's proud*  
 10 *reply.* 14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnsciū fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellexeret quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum  
 15 putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriarū, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam  
 20 diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortalēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturiōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī  
 25 obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriis quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum.

Divicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs  
 30 esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērīnt; eius rei



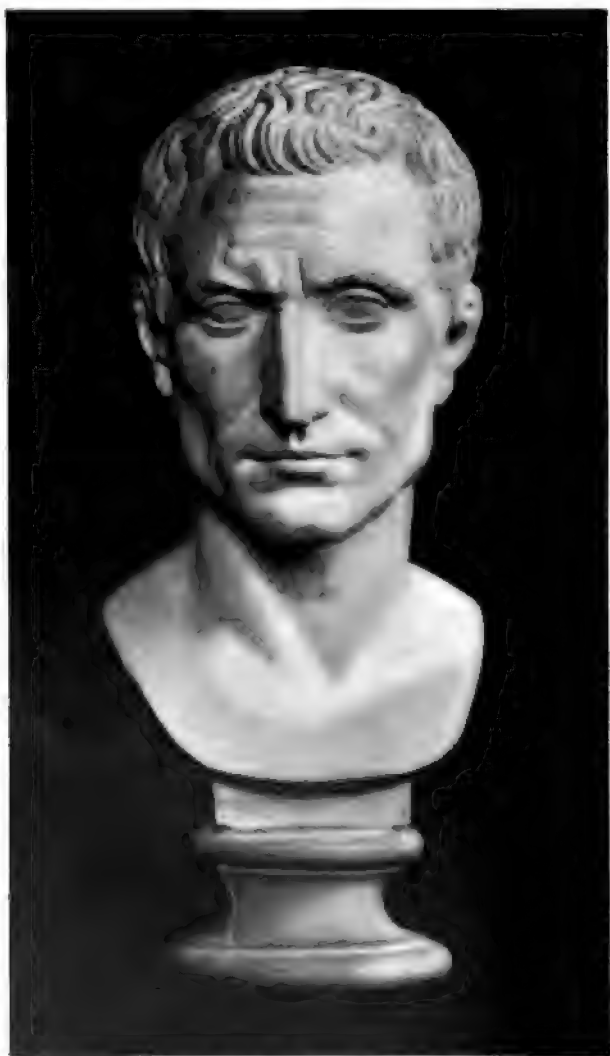


FIG. 8.—CAESAR : CHIARAMONTI

populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. *The Helvetii continue their march followed closely by Caesar.*  
 Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad  
 5 numerum quattuor millium, quem ex omnī prō-  
 vinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum  
 habēbat, praemittit, quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter  
 faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen Insecūtī aliēnō  
 locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et  
 10 paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētīi,  
 quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum  
 prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novis-  
 simō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar  
 suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentia  
 15 hostem rapīnis populātiōibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs cir-  
 citer xv iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen  
 et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs millibus  
 passuum interesset.

*Hostility to Caesar among the Haedui*

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmen- *The Haedui fail to furnish grain.*  
 20 tum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre. Nam  
 propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus,  
 ut ante dictū est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs  
 mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia  
 suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus  
 25 subvēxerat proptereā utī minus poterat, quod iter ab  
 Ararī Helvētīi āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat.  
 Diem ex diē dūcere Haedui; cōnferri, comportāri, adesse  
 dicere.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem instāre quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātis eōrum principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, — in his Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātui praeerat, quem ‘vergobretum’ appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vitae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, — graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agris sūmī possit, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis nōn sublevētur, praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum  
 10 precibus adductus bellum suscēperit; multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

*Liscus explains that there is an anti-Roman faction among the Haedui.* 17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod antea tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōn nūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plurimum valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiosā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere nē frūmentum cōferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam principātum Galliae obtinere nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum  
 20 imperia perferre; neque dubitare dēbere quā, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab isdem nostra cōsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus ēnūtiārī; hōs ā sē coercērī nōn posse. Quā etiam, quod necessariam rem coactus Caesarī  
 25 ēnūtiārīt, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fecerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

*Dumnorix is the chief of this faction.* 18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciāci frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat,  
 30 celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex

sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat; dīcit liberius atque audā-  
cius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra :  
Ipsū esse Dumnorigem, summā audāciā, magnā apud  
plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novā-  
rum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaue omnia Haedu-  
ōrum vectigālīa parvō pretiō redempta habēre, proptereā  
quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. His rēbus et  
suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum  
magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō  
10 sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque solum  
domī sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter posse;  
atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī  
illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse; ipsum ex Hel-  
vētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās  
15 nūptum in aliās civitātēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere  
Helvētiīs propter eam adfinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine  
Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius  
dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātie  
atque honoris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs,  
20 summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre;  
imperio populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē  
eā quam habeat grātiā, dēspērāre.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium  
equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium  
25 fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque eius equitibus, — nam  
equitātūi quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī miserant Dumnorix  
praeerat; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs  
certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum  
30 Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs

cūrasset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitatīs sed etiam īnscentibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistratū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitatē animadvertere iubēret.

- His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod
- Caesar pardons Dumnorix out of regard for his brother Diviciacus.* Dīviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntatē, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat; nam
- 10 nē eius suppliciō Dīviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum
- 15 fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā, statuatur vel cīvitatē statuere iubeat.
- 20 20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vērā, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dōlōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adu-
- 25 lēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid ei ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae
- 30 apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā volun-

tāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōsōlātus rogat finem  
5 orandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit utī et reī pūblīcae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgē ad sē vocat, frātre  
adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in  
10 reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviaciō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

*Subjugation of the Helvetii*

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōsēdisse millia passuum  
15 ab ipsius castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus quī cōgnōscerent mīsīt. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsiliī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā  
20 vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī militāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postēā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.
- 25 22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mille et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut  
20 postēā ex captivīs comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni

*Caesar prepares for battle.*

*A battle is prevented by the mistake of Considius.*

cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus cōgnōvisse.

Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem

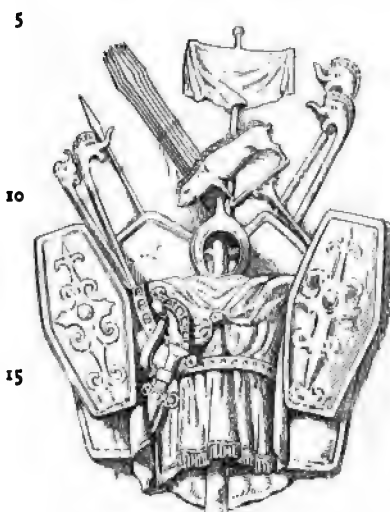


FIG. 9. — Gallic Armor and Standards.

instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō

diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et millia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

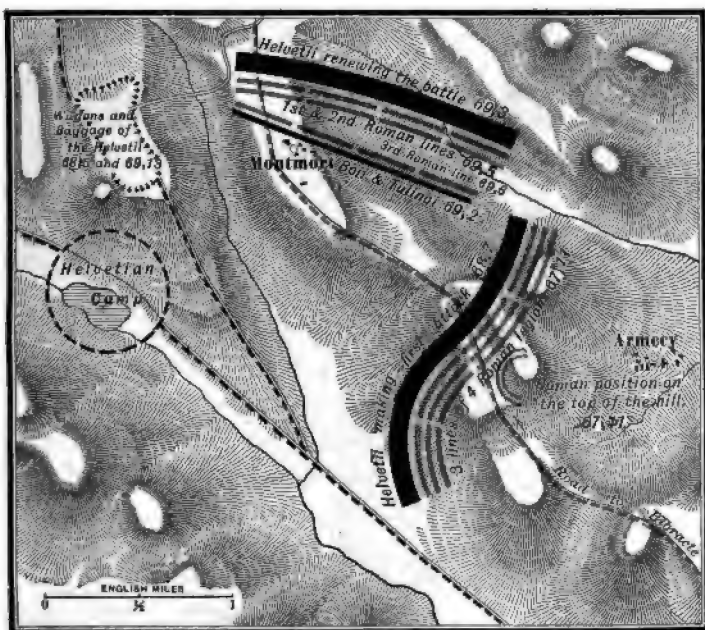
23. Postridiē eius diē, quod omnīno bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius millibus passuum xviii aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemili, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Hel-

Caesar  
marches  
away for sup-  
plies and is  
followed by  
the Helvetii.

vētīi, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod pridīe superiōribus locīs occupātis proelium nōn commisissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō, atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārū; in summō iugō

*Caesar offers battle. The Helvetii make a brave stand, but are defeated and sue for peace.*



The Battle with the Helvetii.

duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia conlocārī, sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab iīs quī in superiōre aciē cōstiterant mūniri iussit. Helvētī cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī, cōfertissimā aciē reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

25. Caesar, primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae



FIG. 8. — A Legionary in Full Armor.

tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Milites ē locō superiōre pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfrēgerunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt.

Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtis ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et conligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessi et pedem referre et, quod

mōns aberat circiter mille passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt.

Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Bōi et Tulingī, qui  
30 hominum millibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant

et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressi circumvenire, et id cōspicātī Helvētiī, qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rursus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertitō  
5 intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac summōtis resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

26. Ita ancipiti proeliō diū atque ācritē pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alteri sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alteri ad  
10 impedimenta et carrōs suos sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs veni-  
15 entēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nulli inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum millia cxxx superfuērunt  
20 eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī eōs sequi nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque misit, nē eōs frumentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; qui si iuvisent, sē  
25 eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequi coepit.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adducti lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum misērunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locuti  
30 flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum

essent suum adventum exspectâre iussisset, pâruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit.

*Six thousand  
5 Helvetii, en-  
deavoring to  
escape to Ger-  
many, are put  
to death.* Dum ea conquiruntur et cōferuntur, circiter hominum millia vi eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō adficerentur, sive spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitudīne dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescīit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; *15 The rest are  
ordered to  
return home.* reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iīs *20* frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcīt, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finibus in *25* Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in finibus suis conlocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiōnem atque ipsī erant *30* recēpērunt.

29. In castris Helvētiōrum (tabulae repertae *Census of the Helvetii before and after the migration.*  
sunt litteris Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem  
relatae, quibus in tabulis nōminatim ratiō cō-  
fecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset eōrum quī  
5 arma ferre possent, et item sēparatim quot puerī, senēs  
mulierēsque. Summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum millia  
CCLXIII, Tulingōrum millia xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiiii,  
Rauracōrum xxiii, Bōiōrum xxxii; ex his, quī arma ferre  
possent, ad millia xcii. (Summa omnium fuērunt ad millia  
10 CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō ut  
Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus millium c et x.

## LIBER SECVNDVS

### 15-28. DEFEAT OF THE NERVII, 57 B.C.

*Caesar learns  
that the Ner-  
vii and their  
allies are  
defiant.*

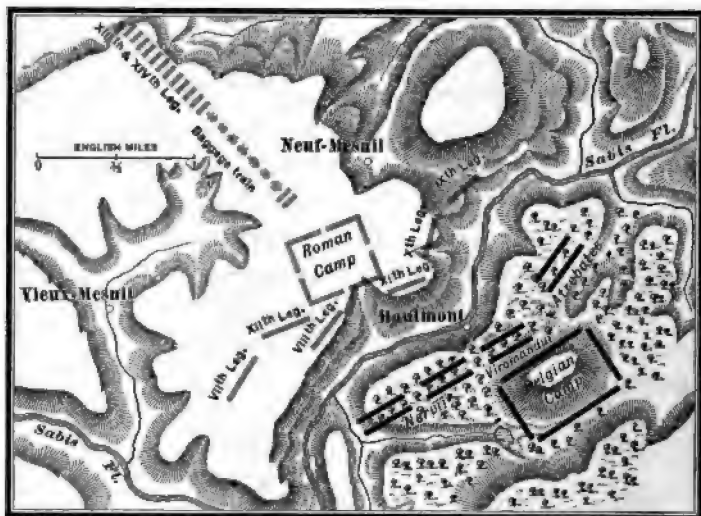
15. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum  
dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret,  
sic reperiēbat: Nūllum esse aditum ad eōs mer-  
cātōribus; nihil patī vinī reliquārumque rērum  
ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod hīs rēbus relan-  
guēscere animōs et remitti virtūtem exīstimārent; esse  
hominēs ferōs magnaēque virtūtis; increpitāre atque in-  
cūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidis-  
sent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē  
neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis  
acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniē-  
bat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castris suis nōn amplius  
millia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervīōs  
cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā  
cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimīs suis (nam hīs  
utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortunam experīren-  
tur); exspectārī etiam ab iis Atuaticōrum cōpiās atque  
esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam  
inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter  
palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriō- *The Nervii*  
nēsque praemittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dē- *plan to attack*  
ligant. Cum ex dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquisque *the Romans*  
Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter fa- *before they*  
cerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea ex captīvīs cō- *can pitch*  
gnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī *camp.*  
exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nervios pervēnērunt, atque  
hīs dēmōstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentō-  
rum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam  
negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque  
legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs  
adoriri; quā pulsā impedimentisque direptīs futurum ut  
reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam  
eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiqui-  
tus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus  
eī rei student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent  
cōpiīs), quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī  
causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incīsīs  
atque inflexīs, crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs enātīs, et  
rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effēcerant ut instar mūrī hae  
saepēs mūnimentum praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn in-  
trārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter  
agminis nostrī impedirētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium  
Nervii existimāvērunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs  
dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclivis ad flūmen  
Sabim, quod suprà nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine  
parī acclivitate collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrā-  
rius, passūs circiter cc infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte  
silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eas

silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitudō pedum circiter trium.



The Battle with the Nervii.

*The Nervian assault  
throws the  
Romans into  
confusion.*

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar vi legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eas tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārāt; inde duae legiōnēs  
10 quae proximē cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suos reciperent ac rūsus ex silvā in nostrōs im-

petum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs īnsequi auderent, interim legiōnēs VI quae primae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.

5 Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ordi-  
nēsque cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō  
10 omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equi-  
tēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibili  
celeritātē ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore  
et ad silvās et in flūmine hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem  
celeritātē adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in  
opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

15 *Discipline of  
Caesar's  
army.*

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tem-  
pore erant agen-  
da : vexillum prōpōnendum,  
sīgnum tubā dandum, ab  
20 opere revocandī militēs, quī  
paulō longius aggeris pe-  
tendī causā prōcesserant ar-  
cessendī, aciēs īstruenda,  
militēs cohōrtandī, sīgnum  
25 dandum. Quārum rērum  
magnam partem temporis  
brevitās et incursus hostium  
impediēbat. Hīs difficultā-  
tibus duae rēs erant subsidīō,

30 — scientia atque ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proeliis



FIG. II. — Vexillum.

exercitātī quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propin-

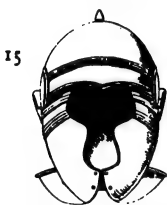
quitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

*Caesar encourages his men. Difficulties of their position.*

10

21. Caesar, necessariīs rēbus imperātis, ad cohortandōs militēs, quam partem fors obtulit, dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit.

Militēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adigī pos-



15

FIG. 12. — Galea.

20

set, proeli committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmican- dum animus ut nōn modo ad insīgnia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma sīgna cōspēxit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendis suis pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

22. Instrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectis prōspectus impedirētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī

30

poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum iniquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōstiterant, pilis ēmissis  
 5 cursū ac lassitudīne exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvenerat)  
 celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulserunt, et trānsire cōnantēs insecūtī gladiis magnam partem  
 eōrum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsī trānsire flūmen nōn  
 10 dubitāverunt, et in locum iniquum prōgressī rūsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, undecima et octāva, prōfligātis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre, in ipsis flūminis rīpīs proeliā-  
 15 bantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātis, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervallō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, qui summam imperi tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab  
 20 apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenire, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, qui cum iīs unā fuerant, quōs  
 primō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē  
 25 in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, qui ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respēxissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs  
 30 versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul

*The Atre-  
bates and Vi-  
romandui are  
routed, but  
the Nervii  
gain the Ro-  
man camp.*

*Panic of the  
Roman cav-  
alry and  
camp-follow-  
ers. Deser-  
tion of the  
Treveri.*

eōrum quī cum impedimentis veniebant clamor fremitusque oriebatur, alique aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Trēveri, quorum inter Gallōs virtutis opinio est singularis, quī auxili causā  
 5 ā civitate missi ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudine hostium castra compleri, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas dispersos dissipatosque in omnes partes fugere viderent, desperatis nostris rebus domum contendunt; Romanos  
 10 pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos civitati renuntiaverunt.



FIG. 13. — A Centurion.

25. Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu  
*Caesar enters the battle in person.*

profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum conlatis duodecimae legionis confortos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimentum vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis, signifero interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus ferē centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo P. Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto, ut iam se sustinere non posset, reliquos esse tardiores et non nullos ab novissimis deserto loco proelio

excedere ac tela vitare, hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore  
 30 loco subeuntē intermittere et ab utroque latere instare et

rem esse in angustō vidit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod  
summitti posset; scūtō ab novissimis militi detractō, quod  
ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam  
aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nō  
5 minātīm appellātis reliquōs cohortā-  
tus militēs signa inferre et manipulōs  
laxāre iussit, quō. facilius gladiis ūti  
possent. Cuius adventū spē inlātā  
militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum  
10 prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperā-  
tōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus  
operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hos-  
tium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar, cum septimam legiō-  
15 nem, quae iūxtā cōstitērat, item  
urgēri ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs  
militum monuit ut paulātīm sēsē  
legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa  
signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō,  
20 cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent neque  
timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius re-  
sistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt.

Interim militēs legiōnum duārum quae in  
novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fue-  
25 rant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō in summō  
colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus  
castris hostium potitus et ex locō superiōre quae  
rēs in nostris castris gererentur cōspicātus,  
decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris misit. Quī cum ex  
30 equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque



FIG. 14. — A Standard-bearer.

*Reinforce-  
ments from  
Labiēnus  
turn the tide  
of battle, and  
the Nervii  
are almost  
annihilated.*

in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent, 5 scūtīs innixī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandō sē legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem prae- 10 stitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiectis et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī 15 dēbēret ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

*Submission  
of the Ner-  
vian sur-  
vivors.* 28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciō-  
nem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrēs  
20 nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrarētur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdiderunt; et in commemorandā 25 cīvitātis calamitāte ex DC ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum millibus LX vix ad D quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dixerunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidis ūtī iussit, et finitimīs imperāvit ut ab 30 iniuriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

## LIBER TERTIVS

### 1-6. WAR WITH ALPINE TRIBES, END OF 57 B.C.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legione duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum periculō magnisque cum portōriīs mercātōrēs ire cōsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrāretur, utī in hīs

*Galba is sent into the Alps to open a road for trade. He establishes winter quarters.*

INCIPIT LIBER III. FELICITER  
Cum in Italia proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbā cū legione xii.  
et parte equitatus in nantuatos veragros sedunosque misit, qui

FIG. 15.— Beginning of the Third Book of the Gallic War, from a manuscript of the tenth century. Reduced one half.

locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā conlocāret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānitīē, altissimīs

montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem eius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuum ab hīs relictam cohortibus ad hie-mandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

<sup>5</sup> *Uprising of the mountain tribes.* 2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsīs-  
sent, frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset,  
subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā  
parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnēs noctū disces-  
sisse, montēsque quī impendērent ā maximā multitudīne  
<sup>10</sup> Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs  
acciderat, ut subitō Galli belli renovandī legiōnisque oppri-  
mendae cōnsilium caperent : primum, quod legiōnem, neque  
eam plēnissimam, dētractīs cohortibus duābus et complūri-  
bus singillatim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant,  
<sup>15</sup> absentibus, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam,  
quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in  
vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem  
impetum suum posse sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdēbat  
quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs obsidum nōmine dolē-  
<sup>20</sup> bant, et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā sed etiam per-  
petuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea  
loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habē-  
bant.

*A council of the Romans votes to fortify the camp.* 3. His nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque  
<sup>25</sup> opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent  
perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque com-  
meātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidi-  
busque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat,  
cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit.  
<sup>30</sup> Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentinī periculī praeter

opīnionem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca  
 multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur, neque  
 subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs  
 itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nullae  
 5 eius modi sententiae dīcēbantur, ut, impedimentīs relictīs  
 ēruptiōne factā, isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad  
 salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen partī placuit hōc  
 reservātō ad extrēmum cāsum cōsiliō interim rei ēventum  
 experīrī et castra dēfendere.

- 10 4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut iīs rēbus *The Gauls*  
 quās cōstituissent conlocandīs atque adminis- *make a sud-*  
 trandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus *den attack*  
 partibus signō datō dēcurre, lapidēs gaesaque *and are all*  
 in vāllum conicere. Nostrī primō integrīs vīribus *but success-*  
 15 fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō  
 superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta  
 dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium  
 ferre, sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs  
 dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdē-  
 20 bant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem ferī  
 nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā excēdendī,  
 sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōstiterat relinquiendī  
 ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs vi continenter pugnārētur  
 25 ac nōn solum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque  
 hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum  
 scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad  
 extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī pilī  
 centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum  
 30 vulneribus diximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus mili-

tum, vir et cōsili magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter milītēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent; post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī quid fieret neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortunā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum mīllibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque exūtis sē intrā mūnitiōnēs suās recipiunt.

Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortunam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hīberna cōsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rēbus vīderat, maximē frūmentī comēātusque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē omnibus eius vicī aedificiis incēnsis in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

7-19. REVOLT OF THE AREMORICAN STATES, 56 B.C.

*Subjugation of the Veneti*

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātā Galliam exīstimāret, atque ita initā hieme in Īllyri-

Though  
finally  
victorious,  
10 Galba re-  
treats to the  
Province.

cum profectus esset quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adire et regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est.

Eius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adu- *Causes of the outbreak.*  
 5 lēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare *The Veneti take the lead.*  
 Oceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in  
 hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīli-  
 tum complūrēs in finitimās civitātēs frūmentī causā dīmī-  
 sit; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs,  
 10 M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō  
 in Venetōs.

8. Huius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis  
 orae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent  
 Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuē-  
 15 runt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticarū cēterōs ante-  
 cēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī paucīs  
 portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē quī eō  
 marī ūtī cōnsuērunt habent vectigālēs. Ab hīs fit initium  
 retinendī Silī atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs  
 20 quōs Crassō dedissent recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum  
 auctōritāte finitimī adductī — ut sunt Gallōrum subita et  
 repentinā cōnsilia — eādē dē causā Trebium Terrasidi-  
 umque retinent; et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīn-  
 cīpēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs  
 25 eundemque omnēs fortunae exitum esse lātūrōs; reliquās-  
 que civitātēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte quam ā maiōribus  
 accēperint permanēre, quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem per-  
 ferre mālint. Omnī orā maritimā celeriter ad suam sen-  
 tentiam perductā, communem lēgatiōnem ad P. Crassum  
 30 mittunt: Sī velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

*Both sides  
prepare for  
war.*

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod īfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā institui, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. His rēbus celeriter administrātis ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

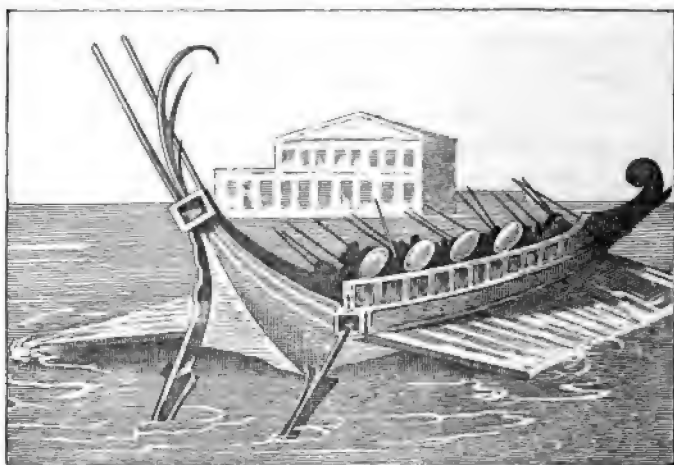


FIG. 16. — A Roman Ship of War.

Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs, cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admīsissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs — quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō magnitūdine periculī bellum parāre et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre instituunt, hōc maiōre spē quod multum nātūrā loci cōfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriis,

nāvigātiōnem impeditam propter inscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfidēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, 5 tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, insulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs initis 10 cōnsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmū bellum gestūrum cōstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; 15 auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebellio 20 facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvītatū coniūratiō, in primīs nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellexeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque exci- 25 tārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvītātēs cōspirārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

*Caesar's  
measures to  
prevent a  
spread of the  
defection.*

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī 30 proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic

mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat, Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessītī dicēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriis XII et  
 5 magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex his nātiōibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas, Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum  
 10 adulēscētem classī Gallicis nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquīsque pācātis regiōnibus convenire iusserat, praeficit et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficisci iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

*Situation of  
 15 the Venetan  
 towns.* 12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiis neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod accidit semper hōrārū XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuenta aestū nāvēs in vadīs adflictārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō  
 20 impediēbātur; ac sī quandō, magnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque his oppidi moenibus adaequātīs, dēspērāre fortunīs suis coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima  
 25 oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūsus isdem opportunitātibus loci dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinebantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nullīs portibus, difficultās  
 30 nāvigandī.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum *Comparison*  
 factae armātaeque erant: carinae aliquantō *of the Vene-*  
 plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō faci- *tan and the*  
 lius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae *Roman ships.*  
 5 admodum ērēctae, atque item puppēs, ad magnitudinem  
 fluctuum tempestātumque accommodatae; nāvēs tōtae  
 factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferen-  
 dam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitudinem trabibus, cōfixa  
 clāvis ferreis digitī pollicis crassitudine; ancorae prō fūni-  
 10 bus ferreis catēnīs revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque  
 tenuiter cōfectae, sive propter inopiam linī atque eius  
 ūsūs inscientiam, sive eō, quod est magis vēri simile, quod  
 tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum  
 sustinēri ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis nōn satis com-  
 15 modē posse arbitrābantur.

Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eius modī congressus  
 erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret; reliqua  
 prō loci nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum, illis essent aptiōra et  
 accommodatiōra. Neque enim iīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre  
 20 poterant (tanta in iīs erat firmitūdō), neque propter altitū-  
 dinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādē dē causā minus com-  
 modē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevire  
 ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem  
 ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōsisterent tūtius et ab aestū  
 25 relictāe nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum om-  
 nium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

14. Complūribus expugnātis oppidīs Caesar, ubi intel-  
 lēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam  
 captīs oppidīs reprimī neque iīs nocērī posse, statuit ex-  
 30 spectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab



mūrālium falcium. His cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs  
dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigio rēmīs  
incitātō prærumpēbantur. Quibus abscisis antemnae ne-  
cessariō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs  
5 in vēlis armāmentisque cōsisteret, his ēreptis omnis ūsus  
nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen  
positum in virtūte, quā nostrī milītēs facile superābant,  
atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis  
exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum  
10 latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde  
erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Dēiectis, ut diximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae  
ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, milītēs summā vī tran-  
scendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam  
15 barbari fieri animadvertērunt, expugnātis complūribus nāvi-  
bus, cum eī rei nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salūtem  
petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversis in eam partem  
nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tran-  
quillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae  
20 quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum maximē fuit oppor-  
tūna; nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut  
perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram  
pervenirent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occā-  
sum pugnārētur.

25 16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque *Submission of*  
ōrae maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis *the Veneti.*  
iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus *Their severe*  
aliquid cōsili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum *punishment.*  
nāvium quod ubique fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; qui-  
30 bus āmissis reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad

modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesari dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū  
5 necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

*Collapse of the Aremoric revolt*

*Sabinus  
among the  
Venelli.  
He avoids an  
engagement.*

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titū-  
rius Sabīnus cum iis cōpiis quās ā Caesare  
accēperat in fīnēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His  
praeerat Viridovix ac summam imperi tenēbat  
10 eārum omnium civitatum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exer-  
cītum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucis diēbus  
Aulerci Eburovices Lexoviique senātū suō interfectō, quod  
auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum  
Viridovice coniūnxērunt; magnaue praeterea multitudō  
15 undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque con-  
venerat, et quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab  
agri culturā et cotidiānō labōre sēvocābat.

Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castris sēsē tenēbat,  
cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum millium spatiō cōnsēdis-  
20 set cotidiēque prōductis cōpiis pugnandī potestātem faceret,  
ut iam nōn solum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus  
veniret, sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil  
carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebeuit ut iam  
ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē  
25 causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitudīne hostium, prae-  
sertim eō absente quī summam imperi tenēret, nisi aequō  
locō aut opportunitate aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmicandum nōn  
existimābat.

18. Hāc cōfirmatā opīniōne timōris, idōneum *By pretending fear he encourages the enemy to an attack.*  
 quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum,  
 ex iis quōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic  
 magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōibusque persuādet  
 5 utī ad hostēs trānseat, et quid fieri velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō  
 perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit;  
 quibus angustiis ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet,  
 neque longius abesse quā proximā nocte Sabīnus clam  
 ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendi  
 10 causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant  
 omnēs occāsionem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn  
 esse; ad castra īrī oportēre.

Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur; superi-  
 ōrum diērum Sabīnī cūctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia  
 15 cibāriōrum, cui rei parum dīligenter ab iis erat prōvīsum,  
 spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod  
 volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem  
 reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab iis sit  
 concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā  
 20 rē concessā laetī ut explōratā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultis-  
 que collēctīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad  
 castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātīm *His victory is followed by the surrender of all the rebellious states.*  
 ab imō acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc  
 25 magnō cursū contendērunt ut quam minimum  
 spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs  
 darētur, exanimātique pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus  
 cupientibus sīgnum dat. Impeditīs hostibus propter ea quae  
 ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet.  
 30 Factum est opportunitate locī, hostium īnscentiā ac dēfatī-

gatiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus milites nostri cōsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs  
 5 equitēs cōsecūtī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, reliquērunt.

Sic unō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victoriā Caesar est certior factus, civitatēque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sic  
 10 mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitatēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

20-27. THE CAMPAIGN IN AQUITANIA, 56 B.C.

*Crassus is  
 attacked by  
 the Sotiates.*

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitāniam pervēnisset, quae, ut ante dictum est, et regiōnum lātitudīne et multītūdīne homi-  
 15 num est tertia pars Galliae aestimanda, cum intellexeret in iīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde Mānlius prōcōsul impedimentīs āmissīs profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhi-  
 20 bendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multis praetereā vīris fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt civitatēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminatim ēvocātīs, in Sōtiātium finēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū  
 25 cōgnitō Sōtiātēs magnīs cōpiīs coactīs equitātūque, quō plūrimū valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī primum equestre proelium commiserunt; deinde, equitātū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostrīs, subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās

in convalle in insidiis conlocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācritēr, cum *He defeats*  
 Sōtiātēs superiōribus victōriis frētī in suā virtūte *them and cap-*  
 5 tōtius Aquītāniae salūtem positam putārent, *tures their*  
 nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiō- *town.*  
 nibus adulēscentulō duce efficere possent perspicī cuperent;  
 tandem cōfectī vulneri-  
 bus hostēs terga vertē-  
 10 runt. Quōrum magnō  
 numerō interfectō Crassus  
 ex itinere oppidum Sōtiā-  
 tium oppugnāre coepit.  
 Quibus fortiter resistenti-  
 15 bus vineās turrēsque ēgit.

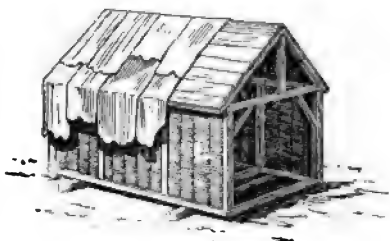


FIG. 17. — Vinea.

Illī aliās ēruptiōne temp-  
 tātā, aliās cuniculīs ad aggerem vineāsque āctīs (cuius  
 rei sunt longē peritissimī Aquītānī, proptereā quod multis  
 locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā  
 20 nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōfici posse īntellēxērunt, lēgātōs  
 ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditionem ut recipiat petunt.  
 Quā rē impetrātā arma trādere iussī faciunt.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum *Adiatunus*  
 intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunus, *and his de-*  
 25 quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum dc dēvōtīs, *voted follow-*  
 quōs illī ‘solduriōs’ appellant, — quōrum haec est con-  
 diciō, ut omnibus in vitā commodis unā cum iis fruan-  
 tur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint; sī quid hīs per vim  
 accidat, aut eundem cāsum unā ferant aut sibi mortem  
 30 cōnsciscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est

quisquam quī, eō interfectō cuius sē amīcitiae dēvōisset, mortem recūsāret, — cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma milītēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum  
 5 esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen utī eādem dēditiōnis condi-  
 ciciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in  
*Crassus de-  
 termines to  
 strike another  
 blow before  
 10 the enemy get  
 too strong.* finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est.  
 Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et  
 nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucis diēbus qui-  
 bus eō ventum erat expugnātum cōgnōverant,  
 lēgātōs quōque versus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē  
 dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās  
 civitatēs lēgātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae  
 15 Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum  
 adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā hominum multi-  
 tudine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō īī dēliguntur  
 quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque  
 scientiam rei milītāris habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōnsuē-  
 20 tūdine populi Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, com-  
 meātibus nostrōs interclūdere īstituunt. Quod ubi Crassus  
 animadvertit suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile  
 dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castris satis  
 praesidi relinquare, ob eam causam minus commodē frū-  
 25 mentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium  
 numerum augērī, nōn cūctandum exīstimāvit quīn pugnā  
 dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem  
 sentire intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōstituit.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiis, duplici acie  
 30 institūtā, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostēs

- cōsili caperent expectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitatemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrabantur obsessis viis commeātū interclūsō sine ūllō vulnere victoriā  
 5 potiri, et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs infirmiorēs animō adoriri cōgitābant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō, ab ducibus prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs, sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā  
 10 cūctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs milites alacriorēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur expectārī diūtius nōn oportere quā ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.  
 15 25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multis tēlis coniectis dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōfidēbat, lapidibus tēlisque sumministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opīniōnem pugnantium  
 20 praeberent, cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitis hostium castrīs Crassō renūtiāvērunt nōn eādē esse diligentia ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum habere.  
 25 26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri vellet ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, ēductis iīs cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictāe intritae ab labōre erant et longiōre itinere circumductis, nē ex hostium castrīs cōn-  
 30 spici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam

*The camp of the enemy is taken and three-fourths of them are slain.*

intentis, celeriter ad eas quas diximus munitiōnēs pervēnērunt, atque his prōrutis prius in hostium castris cōstitērunt quam plānē ab his vidēri, aut quid rei gererētur cōgnōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostrī redin-  
 5 tegrātis viribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventi, dēspērātis omnibus rēbus, sē per munitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimis campis cōsectātus, ex millium L numerō,  
 10 quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

*Most of the  
Aquitanian  
tribes submit.*

27. Hāc auditā pugnā maxima pars Aquitāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsīt; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnēs,  
 15 Ptiāniī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Ausci, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfisae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

28–29. EXPEDITION OF CAESAR AGAINST THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII, 56 B.C.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omni Galliā pācātā Morinī Mena-  
 20 piique supererant quī in armis essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Galli bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās  
 25 nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaeque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvā-

*The enemy  
take refuge in  
forests and  
swamps,  
whence they  
harry the  
Romans.*

rum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque  
5 in silvās reppulērunt et, complūribus interfectis, longius impeditiōribus locis secūtī paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

29. Reliquis deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit; et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam māteriam quae  
10 erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibili celeritāte  
magnō spatiō paucis diēbus cōfectō, cum iam  
pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostris tenē-  
rentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī  
15 sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtae utī opus necessariō  
intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pelli-  
bus militēs continēri nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus  
eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis, Caesar exercitum  
redūxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis item cīvitatibus  
20 quae proximē bellum fēcērant, in hibernis conlocāvit.

*Caesar is forced by continuous rains to retire. He goes into winter quarters.*

## LIBER QVARTVS

### 1-19. CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS, 55 B.C.

#### *War with the Usipetes and Tencteri*

*Supremacy  
of the Suebi  
in Germany.  
Their cus-  
toms.*

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus  
Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs  
Germānī et item Tēncterī magnā multitudīne  
hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē  
5 ā marī quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab  
Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī  
cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Ger-  
mānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex  
10 quibus quotannis singula mīllia armātōrum bellandī causā  
ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque  
illōs alunt; hī rūsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illi  
domī remanent. Sic neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque  
ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud  
15 eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō  
colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maxi-  
mam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in  
vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitā-  
tione et libertate vitae,—quod ā puerīs nullō officiō aut  
20 disciplinā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faci-  
unt,—et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitudīne

hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs frigidissimīs neque vestitūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

5 2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quin etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Galli dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātis nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs  
10 nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius  
15 quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvis paucī adire audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

20 3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs; hāc rē significārī magnum numerum civitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter millia passuum c agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubī,  
25 quōrum fuit civitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; īī paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum  
30 Suēbī multis saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem

gravitātemque civitātis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēsq̄ue redēgērunt.

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tēnc-  
*The Usipetes*  
 5 *and Tencleri,* terī, quōs suprà diximus, quī complūrēs annōs  
*driven from*  
*home by the*  
*Suebi, cross*  
*the Rhine and*  
*occupy the*  
*Menapian*  
*territory.*  
 10 flūminis agrōs, aedificia, vicōsque habēbant; sed  
 tantae multitudinis adventū perterritī ex iīs aedificiīs quae  
 trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dis-  
 positīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. Illī  
 omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam  
 15 nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custodiās Menapiōrum  
 possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsq̄ue simulāvērunt,  
 et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt atque, omnī hōc  
 itinere unā nocte equitātū cōfectō, insciōs inopinantēsq̄ue  
 Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per  
 20 explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in  
 suōs vicōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum  
 occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhē-  
 num erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt, atque omni-  
 bus eōrum aedificiīs occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē  
 25 eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

*Caesar,*  
*knowing the*  
*inconstancy*  
*of the Gauls,*  
*determines to*  
*prevent their*  
*alliance with*  
 30 *the Germans.* 5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et in-  
 firmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōn-  
 siliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērūmq̄ue rēbus  
 student, nihil hīs committendum existimāvit.  
 Est enim hoc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis, utī et

viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidis vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint prōnūnti-  
 5 āre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōtī dē sum-  
 mīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstigiō  
 paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et  
 plēriq̄ue ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

6. Quā cōnsuetūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō  
 10 occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat ad exercitum profi-  
 ciscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat  
 facta cōgnōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nullīs civitatibus  
 ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō discēderent;  
 omnia quae postulāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē  
 15 adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in finēs Eburō-  
 num et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, per-  
 vēnerant. Principibus Galliae ēvocātīs Caesar ea quae  
 cōgnōverat dissimulanda sibi existimāvit, eōrumque animīs  
 permulsīs et cōfirmātīs equitātūque imperātō bellum cum  
 20 Germānīs gerere cōstituit.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque *Caesar re-  
 dēlēctīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus ceives a de-  
 in locis esse Germānōs audiēbat. A quibus fiant message  
 cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab from the  
 25 iīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque  
 priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre, neque tamen  
 recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Ger-  
 mānōrum cōnsuetūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita, quicumque  
 bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen  
 30 dicere, vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiam*

Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuunt vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē dīi quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem  
5 quem nōn superāre possint.

*The Germans, being ordered to leave Gaul, try to gain time, by negotiations.*

8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum iīs amicitiam esse posse sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērū esse quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn  
10 potuerint aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī tantae praesertim multitudinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsidere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs  
15 imperātūrum.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dixit. Cōgnōverat  
20 enim magnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandique causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

*Description of the Meuse and the Rhine.*

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō  
25 receptā quae appellātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque longius inde mīllibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Hel-  
30 vētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trē-

verōrum citātus fertur, et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffuit partēs multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quārum pars magna ā feris barbarisque nātiōibus incolitur, — ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere ex-  
5 istimantur, — multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII millibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur  
10 ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibiue ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne  
15 quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius millibus passuum IIII aquātiōnis  
20 causā prōcessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent; et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exer-  
25 citū propius accessisset.

12. At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspēxerunt, quōrum erat V millium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent quod iī quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timen-  
30 tibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare

*The Germans, obtaining a truce, treacherously attack and rout the Roman cavalry.*

discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūsus' hīs resistentibus, cōsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, suffossisque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquōs in  
5 fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostri vēnissent.

*Two brave  
Aquitanians.*

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquī-  
10 tānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in cīvitate suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs vulneribus  
15 acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō exarserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

*Caesar  
delays his  
attack*

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiōnēs accipiendās  
20 arbitrābātur ab iīs quī per dolum atque insidiās, petītā pāce, ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmitāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis  
25 essent cōsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatī dandum existimābat. Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō nē quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportunissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē eius diēi māne eādē et simulatiōne et per-  
30 fidiā ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus principibus maiōri-

busque nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dīcēbātur, pūrgandī suī causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīssissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent.

5 Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus, illōs retinēri iussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequi iussit.

14. Acīē triplici īstitutā et celeriter viii mil-  
 lium itinere cōfectō, prius ad hostium castra  
 10 pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentire  
 possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterriti,  
 et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōsiliī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō perturban-  
 bantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfen-  
 15 dere an fugā salutem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, milītēs nostrī prīstini diēi perfidiā incitātī in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaue proelium com-  
 20 mīsērunt; at reliqua multitudō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsīt.

*The Ger-  
mans are  
utterly routed  
and most of  
them perish.*

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre auditō cum suōs  
 25 interfici vidērent, armīs abiectīs signisque milītāribus relic-  
 tīs sē ex castrīs eiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numero interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt, atque ibi timōre, lassitudīne, vī flūminis oppressi periērunt. Nos-  
 30 trī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucis vulnerātīs, ex

tantī belli timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum ccccxix millium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar iīs quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixērunt. Hīs Caesar libertātem concessit.

*Caesar crosses the Rhine*

*Reasons for  
the expedi-  
tion.*

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō, multis dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundū; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret  
10 Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populi Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire.

Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tēncterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frū-  
15 mentandīque causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum hīs coniūxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, re-  
20 spondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finīre; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

Ubi autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lē-  
25 gātōs mīserant, amīcitiā fēcērant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere orābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei publicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsport-

tāret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futurum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opiniōnem eius exercitūs Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opiniōne et amicitīā populī Rōmānī tūti esse possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

17. Caesar hīs dē causis quās commemorāvi Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque  
 10 suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbā-

*Caesar's  
bridge over  
the Rhine.*

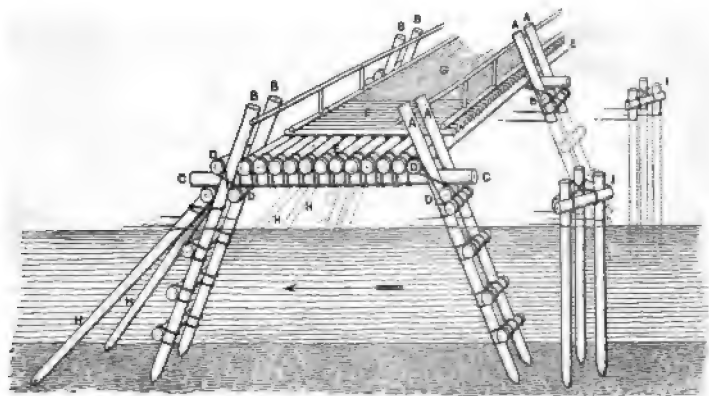


FIG. 18. — Caesar's Bridge over the Rhine.

A, Tigna bina sesquipedalia.

B, Tigna iis contraria.

C, Trabs bipedalis.

D, Fibulae.

E, Directa materia.

F, Longurii.

G, Crates.

H, Sublicae pro arlete subiectae.

I, Sublicae supra pontem immissae.

tur propter lātitudinem, rapiditātem altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat.

15 Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquispe-

dālia paulum ab imō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat festūcisque adēgerat, — nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad per-  
 5 pendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, — iis item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta, intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs,  
 10 quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrīmque fibulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revīnctīs, tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō maior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā  
 15 māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōn- sternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī  
 20 arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēficiendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.

18. Diēbus x quibus māteria coepta erat com-  
 portārī omnī opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō prae-  
 25 sidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitātibus ad eum lē-  
 gātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At  
 30 Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns Institui coeptus est fugā

*Caesar enters  
 Germany,  
 and after  
 25 eighteen days  
 returns to  
 Gaul.*

comparatā, hortantibus iis quōs ex Tēncteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitudinem ac silvās abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succisis, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab iis cōgnōvit: Suēbōs, posteaquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fieri comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimississe, uti dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvis dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenirent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibidem dēcertāre cōstituisse.

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iis rēbus cōfectis quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut Germānis metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō xviii trāns Rhēnum cōnsūptis, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem profectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

20-36. CAESAR'S FIRST EXPEDITION TO BRITAIN, 55 B.C.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi *The advantages of such a visit.* in hīs locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde sumministrāta auxilia intellegēbat, et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi

ūsui fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīssēt, genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temere praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque his ipsīs quicquam  
 5 quam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īstitutis ūterentur, neque  
 10 quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

*Volusenus is sent to recon-  
noître. En-  
voys come  
from several  
states of  
Britain.* 21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvi longā praemittit. Huic mandat  
 15 ut explōrātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimīs regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum effēcerat  
 20 classem, iubet convenīre.

Interim cōsiliō eius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae civitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditīs, liberālīter  
 25 pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cuiusque auctōritās in his regiōnibus magnī habēbātur,  
 30 mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitātēs hortētur-

que ut populū Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus, perspectis regiōnibus quantum eī facultātis darī potuit quī nāvī ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn auderet, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur, 5 quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsarent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperīti bellum 10 populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportunē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem 15 habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum iīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recipit.

Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctis, quot 20 satis esse ad duās trāsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs 25 praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdebant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā millibus passuum

VIII ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre 30 possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum

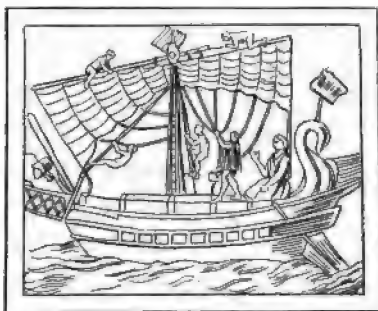


FIG. 19. — A Transport.

Tituriō Sabinō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit ; Sulpiciū Rūfū lēgātū cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portū tenēre iussit.

<sup>5</sup> *The fleet  
reaches  
Britain.*

23. His cōstitūtis rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvīgandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portū prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostiū cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in litus tēlūm adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locū arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātis tribūnisque militum convocātis, et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent (ut quae ce-  
20 rem atque instabilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancorīs circiter millia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

<sup>25</sup> *The landing  
is stoutly re-  
sisted.*

24. At barbari cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis utī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiis subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magni-  
30 tudinem nisi in altō cōstituī nōn poterant ; militibus

autem, ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravi onere armōrum pressīs, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illi aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi, omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperitī nōn eādē alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūti proeliis cōsuērant ūtēbantur.

- 10 25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitiō et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstituī atque inde fundīs, sagittīs,  
15 tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac summovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsui nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiōgenere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt.

Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cūctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam  
25 ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēvenīret, “Dēsilite,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum rei pūblīcae atque  
30 imperātōrī officium praestiterō.”



FIG. 20. — The Eagle-bearer.

Hoc cum vōce magnā dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōn-  
5 spēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

*After a hard struggle the Romans rout the enemy.* 26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsq̄e ācrit̄er. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmi-  
ter īnsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat sē  
10 adgregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspēxerant, incitātis equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset  
15 Caesar, scaphās longārū nāvium, item speculātōria nāvīgia, mīlitibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantēs cōspēxerat hīs subsidia summittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī  
20 potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

*The Britons promise to submit.* 27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē  
25 pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāset factūrōs esse pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, com-  
30 prehenderant atque in vincula coniēcērant; tum proeliō

factō remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignōsceretur petīvērunt. / Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petissent, bellum  
 5 sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēs-  
 que imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessitam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixerunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitatēsque suās  
 10 Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōfirmatā, post diem *Caesar's fleet is almost destroyed by a storm. His perilous situation.*  
 quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs  
 XVIII dē quibus suprà dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō  
 15 solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britan-  
 niae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suī  
 20 cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuevit,  
 25 nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita unō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligatae, tempestās adflictābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus  
 30 frāctīs, reliquae cum essent — fūnibus, ancorīs, reliquisque

armamentis amissis — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deērant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant  
 5 ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

*The Britons  
 plan to take  
 advantage of  
 his distress.*

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis principēs Britan-  
 niae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēne-  
 rant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs  
 10 et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitatem  
 militum ex castrōrum exiguitate cōgnōscerent, — quae hōc  
 erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar  
 legiōnēs transportāverat, — optimum factū esse dūxerunt,  
 rebellione factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibere  
 15 et rem in hiemem prōducere; quod hīs superātis aut reditū  
 interclūsīs nēminem postea bellī inferendī causā in Britan-  
 niam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque rūsus coniūrātiōne  
 factā paulātim ex castris discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs  
 dēducere coepērunt.

*20 He repairs  
 the fleet.*

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia  
 cōgnōverat, tamen et ex eventū nāvium suārum  
 et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod  
 accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia com-  
 parābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra  
 25 cōferēbat, et quae gravissimē adfictae erant nāvēs, eārum  
 materiā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās utēbātur, et  
 quae ad eas rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubēbat.  
 Itaque cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, XII  
 nāvibus amissis, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset  
 30 effēcit.

32 Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine *Treacherous*  
 ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur sep- *attack on a*  
 tima, neque ūllā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne *Roman for-*  
*aging party.*  
 interpositā, cū pars hominum in agris remanēret, pars  
 etiam in castra ventitāret, iī quī prō portis castrōrum in  
 statiōne erant Caesarī nūntiāverunt pulverem maiōrem  
 quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in  
 partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicā-  
 tus, aliquid novī ā barbaris initum cōsilī, cohortēs quae in  
 10 statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquīs  
 duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim  
 sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castris prō-  
 cessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et  
 cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animad-  
 15 vertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō  
 frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nos-  
 trōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvis dēlituerant; tum di-  
 spersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī,  
 paucīs interfectis reliquōs incertis ordinibus perturbāverant,  
 20 simul equitātū atque essedis circumdederant.

33. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Prīmō *Manner of*  
 per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt *fighting with*  
 atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs *war chariots.*  
 plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter  
 25 equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedis  
 dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae  
 interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque  
 ita currūs conlocant ut, sī illi ā multitūdine  
 hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs re-  
 30 ceptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum,



FIG. 20. — Iugum.

stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant; ac tantum usque  
cotidianō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in declivī ac prae-  
cipiti locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac  
flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et  
5 sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērunt.

*The Romans  
are relieved.  
Another at-  
tack is  
planned.*

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs novitāte  
pugnae tempore opportunissimō Caesar auxi-  
lium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōn-  
stitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō  
10 factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium  
aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et  
brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum  
haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis, quī erant in  
agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs com-  
15 plūrēs diēs tempestātēs quae et nostrōs in castris continē-  
rent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbari  
nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrō-  
rum militum suis praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae facien-  
dae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, si  
20 Rōmānōs castris expulissent, dēmōstrāvērunt. His rēbus  
celeriter magnā multitudine peditātūs equitātūsque coactā  
ad castra vēnērunt.

*The Britons  
are defeated  
and offer  
25 their submis-  
sion. Caesar  
returns to  
Gaul.*

35. Caesar, etsi idem quod superiōribus diē-  
bus acciderat fore vidēbat, — ut, si essent hostēs  
pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent, — tamen  
nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atre-  
bās, de quō ante dictum est, secum trānsportā-  
verat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōstituit. Commissō  
proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre  
30 nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō

secūti quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuerunt, complūrēs ex iīs occiderunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recēperunt.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē  
5 pāce vēnerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante  
imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūci ius-  
sit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī infirmis nāvibus hiemī  
nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam  
tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs  
10 solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnerunt;  
sed ex iīs onerariae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae  
capere nōn potuerunt, et paulō infā delātae sunt.

37-38. SECOND WAR WITH THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII,  
55 B.C.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi *The Morini*  
militēs circiter ccc atque in castra contenderent, *attack the Ro-*  
15 Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns *mans and are*  
*reduced to*  
pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī primō *submission.*  
nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumsteterunt ac, si sēsē  
interfici nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illi orbe  
factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum  
20 circiter millia vi convēnerunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar  
omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō mīsit. Interim  
nostrī militēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius  
hōris iii fortissimē pugnāverunt, et paucis vulneribus ac-  
ceptis complūrēs ex his occiderunt. Postea vērō quam  
25 equitātus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectis armīs  
terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs legiōnibus quās ex Britannīā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebellīōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitatēs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent (quō perfugiō sup-  
5 periōre annō erant ūsī), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēni vērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī  
*The Menapii are again plundered.* in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās  
10 abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britannīā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt.

His rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xx suppli-  
15 cātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

## LIBER QVINTVS

### 1-23. SECOND EXPEDITION TO BRITAIN, 54 B.C.

#### *Preparations on both sides for the campaign*

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus, discē- *A fleet is pre-*  
dēns ab hibernīs Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis *pared during*  
facere cōsuērat, lēgātis imperat, quōs legiōni- *the winter,*  
bus praefēcerat, utī quam plūrimās possint hieme *and in the*  
5 nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrent. *spring is or-*  
*dered to*  
*assemble*  
*at Port Itius.*  
Eārum modum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. Ad  
celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque paulō facit humili-  
ōrēs quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōsuēvimus, atque id  
eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum  
10 minus magnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat; ad onera ac  
multitudinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam, paulō lātiōrēs  
quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctu-  
āriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuuat.  
Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs ex Hispāniā appor-  
15 tārī iubet.

\* \* \* \* \*

2. His cōfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in ci-  
teriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum profi-  
ciscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitīs omnibus hibernīs  
singulārī militum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā

circiter DC eius generis, cuius suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nāvēs et longās xxviii invenit instrūctās, neque multum abesse ab eō, quin paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. Conlaudātīs militibus atque iīs quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit ostendit, atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenīre iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter millium passuum xxx ā continentī; huic rei quod satis esse vīsum est militum relinquit.

\* \* \* \* \*

*Caesar reaches Britain and lands his troops without opposition.* 8. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum millibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rei frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cōgnōsceret, cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum v legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum quem in 15 continentī relinquēbat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit; et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus, mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit; et longius dēlātus aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōspēxit. Tum rūsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut 20 eam partem īnsulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodū fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārū nāvium cursum adaequārent. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō ferē tempore; neque in eō locō hostis est 25 vīsus, sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivīs cōgnōvit, cum magnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitudīne nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs privātisque, quās suī quisque commodī causā fēcerat, amplius dccc ūnō erant vīsae

tempore, ā litore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

9. Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castris idōneō captō, ubi ex captivis cōgnōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiaē cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus ccc qui praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in litore molli atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Atrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus millia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. Illi equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressi ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, lo-

15 cum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et operē mūnitum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbris arboribus succisis omnēs introitus erant praeclūsī.

Ipsī ex silvis rārī prōpugnābant nostrōsque intrā 25 mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At militēs legiōnis septimae, testudine factā et aggere ad

mūnitiōnēs adiectō, locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvis expulserunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientēs longius

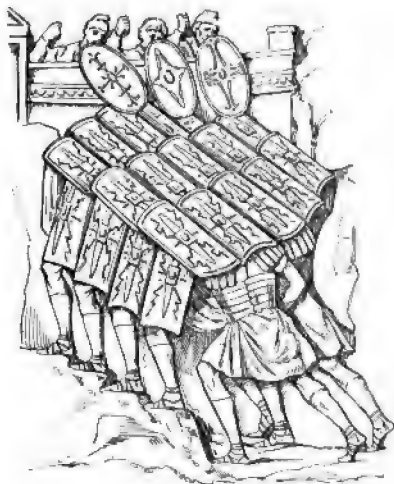


FIG. 22. — Testudo.

Caesar prōsequi vetuit, et quod loci nātūrā ignōrābat, et quod magnā parte diēi cōsumptā mūnitiōi castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

*The fleet, damaged by a storm, is repaired and drawn up on shore.* 5 10. Postrīdiē eius diēi māne tripertitō militēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem mīsīt, ut eōs qui fūgerant persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt qui

nūntiārent, superiōre nocte maximā coōrtā tempestāte, 10 prope omnēs nāvēs adflictās atque in litus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

11. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque 15 revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiīs cōgnōverat cōram perspicit, sic ut āmissis circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse magnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labi- 20 ēnō scribit ut quam plūrimās possit iis legiōnibus quae sint apud eum nāvēs īstituāt. Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnitiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs x cōsumit nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad 25 labōrem militum intermissīs.

*Cassivellaunus is appointed commander of the Britons.* Subductīs nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnītis eāsdem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem unde redierat proficiscitur.

Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum 30 locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperī

bellique administrandi commūnī cōsiliō permissā Cassi-  
vellaunō; cuius finēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit,  
quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter millia passuum  
LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus  
5 continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū  
permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

*Description of Britain*

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur *The peoples,*  
quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsā memoriā prōditum *resources, and*  
dīcunt; maritima pars ab iīs quī praedae ac *climate of*  
*Britain.*  
10 bellī inferendi causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē  
isdem nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur quibus ortī ex cīvi-



FIG. 23.—Silver denarius, struck 38–36 B.C., enlarged to twice the original size.  
Obverse: head of Caesar. Reverse: standard, eagle, plow, scepter.

tātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt  
atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta mul-  
titūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pe-  
15 coris magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut nummō aureō aut  
tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō.  
Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus,

in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frigoribus.

- Its form, size, and relative position. The neighboring islands.* 13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc latus pertinet circiter millia passuum d. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia ĩnsula, dīmidio minor, ut existimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmisus atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est ĩnsula quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae ĩnsulae existimantur; dē quibus ĩnsulīs nōn nullī scripsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, dcc millium. Tertium est contrā septentrionēs; cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus alter maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc millium passuum dccc in longitūdinem esse existimātur. Ita omnis ĩnsula est in circuitū viciēs centum millium passuum.
- Cantium, the Britons.* 14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt, — quae regiō est maritima omnis, — neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōsuētūdine.
- 30 Interiōrēs plērique frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne

vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnēs vērō sē Britanni  
 vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc  
 horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prō-  
 missō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et  
 5 labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnique inter sē  
 commūnēs, et maximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēque  
 cum liberis; sed quī sunt ex iis nātī eōrum habentur liberī  
 quō primum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

*The Britons submit to Caesar*

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriique ācritēr proe- *British meth-*  
 10 liō cum equitatū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, *ods of fighting*  
 ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs *prove trouble-*  
 fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; *some to the*  
 sed complūribus interfectis cupidius īsecūtī nōn nullōs ex *Romans.*  
 suis āmisērunt. At illi intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus  
 15 nostris atque occupātis in mūnitiōne castrōrum, subitō  
 sē ex silvis ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in  
 statiōne prō castris conlocātī, ācritēr pugnāvērunt; duā-  
 busque missis subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque his  
 primis legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō  
 20 loci spatiō inter sē cōstitissent, novō genere pugnae per-  
 territis nostris, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque  
 inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus,  
 tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illi plūribus summissis  
 cohortibus repelluntur.

25 16. Tōtō hōc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium  
 ac prō castris dimicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter  
 gravitatem armōrum, quod neque īsequi cēdentēs possent  
 neque ab signis discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad

huius generis hostem; equitēs autem magnō cum periculō proeliō dīmīcāre, proptereā quod illi etiam cōsultō plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsīlīrent et pedibus disparī proeliō  
 5 contenderent. Equestris autem proeli ratiō et cēdentibus et insequentibus pār atque idem periculum inferēbat. Accēdēbat hūc ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī magnisque intervāllis proeliārentur statīōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentēs  
 10 dēfatigātīs succēderent.

*Caesar wins an important victory.* 17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in col- libus cōstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē, cum Caesar pābulandī causā  
 15 legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs ad- volāvērunt, sīc utī ab signīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācritē in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt, neque finem sequendī fēcērunt quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post  
 20 sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque cō- sistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique convēnerant auxilia dis- cessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nobīscum  
 25 cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

*He crosses the Thames and ravages the country, but the enemy avoids a battle.* 18. Caesar cōgnitō cōsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam magnās  
 30

esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtis  
 sudibus praefixisque mūnita, eiusdemque generis sub aquā  
 dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cōgnitis ā  
 captivīs perfugīsque, Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim  
 5 legiōnēs subsequi iussit. Sed eā celeritātē atque eō impetū  
 milites iērunť, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs  
 impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent  
 rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, omnī dē-  
 10 positā spē contentiōnis, dīmissis ampliōribus cōpiis, millibus  
 circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictis, itinera nostra servābat;  
 paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impeditis ac silves-  
 tribus sēsē occultābat atque iīs regiōnibus quibus nōs iter  
 factūrōs cōgnōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agris in silvās  
 15 compellēbat; et cum equitātus noster liberius praedandī  
 vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs effunderet, omnibus viis  
 sēmitisque essedāriōs ex silvis ēmittēbat et magnō cum  
 periculō nostrōrum equitum cum hīs cōnfligēbat atque hōc  
 metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque  
 20 longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et  
 tantum agris vāstandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus  
 nocērētur quantum in labōre atque itinere legiōnārii milites  
 efficere poterant.

20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope firmissima *One tribe*  
 25 eārum regiōnum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius *after another*  
 adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in *submits to*  
*Caesar.*  
 continentem vēnerat, — cuius pater in eā civitātē rēgnum  
 obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā  
 mortem vitāverat, — lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt polli-  
 30 centurque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt

ut Mandubracium ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in civitātem mittat quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs XL frumentumque exercituī, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illi imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frumentumque mīsērunt.

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī militum iniuriā prohibitis, Cēnimagnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgatiōnibus missis sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impeditās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōnsuērunt. Eō proficiscitur cum legiōnibus. Locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī militum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus IIII rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat uti coactīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō adoriāntur atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multis eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorige, suōs incolumēs redūcērunt.

*Cassivellaunus's stronghold is stormed by the Romans.*

*An attack on the Roman naval camp fails. Cassivellaunus surrenders.*



*FIG. 24. — CAESAR: PARMA*



Cassivellaunus, hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs finibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne civitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum cōstituisset hiemāre in  
 5 continentī propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectigālīs populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōstituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trino-  
 10 vantibus noceat.

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad *Caesar re-*  
 mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. His dēductis, *turns to Gaul.*  
 quod et captivōrum magnum numerum habēbat et nōn  
 nullae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus  
 15 exercitum reportāre instituit. Ac sic accidit utī ex tantō  
 nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae milītēs portāret dēsiderārētur; at ex iis quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur priōris commeātūs expositīs milītibus, et quās  
 20 postea Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs reicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessariō angustius milītēs conlocāvit, ac summā tran-  
 25 quillitāte cōsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

\* \* \* \* \*

## 44. TWO BRAVE CENTURIONS

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, qui iam primīs ordinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnitiōnēs pugnārētur, “Quid dubitās,” inquit, “Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiis iudicābit.” Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs, quaeque pars hostium cōnfertissima  
10 est vīsa inrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pilum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitudine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō, hunc scūtis prōtegunt hostēs, in illū ūniversī  
15 tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. Avertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. Ad  
20 hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfixum arbitrantur. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum dēiectus inferiōrem concidit. Huic rūsus circumventō subsidium fert  
25 Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt.

Sic fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtique esset, neque dīiudicārī posset uter utrī virtūte antefendus vidērētur.

## LIBER SEXTVS

### 11-24. CUSTOMS OF THE GAULS AND OF THE GERMAN§

#### *Customs of the Gauls*

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliē-  
num esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō  
differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere.

In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus civitatibus *Two parties exist in every state.*  
5 atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene  
etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārum-  
que factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem  
eōrum iūdictiō habēre exīstimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium  
iūdictiumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.  
10 Idque eius rei causā antiquitus īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis  
ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxili egēret; suōs enim  
quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter  
sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec  
eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs  
15 civitatēs divīsae sunt in duās partēs.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius fac- *The heads of these parties were formerly the*  
tiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquani.  
Hī cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa  
auctōritās antiquitus erat in Haeduīs magnae- *Haedui and the Sequani.*  
20 que eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque  
Ariovistum sibi adiūxerant eōsque ad sē mag- *after Caesar's arrival the Haedui and the Remi.*  
nīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant.

Proeliis vērō complūribus factis secundis atque omni nobilitate Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trāducerent obsidēsque ab hīs principum filiōs acciperent, et publicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsiliī inītūrōs, et partem finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitate adductus Dīviciācus auxiliī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus infectā rē redierat.

10 Adventū Caesaris factā commūtatiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlis restitutīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod īī quī sē ad eōrum amicitiam adgregāverant meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitateque  
15 amplificatā, Sēquanī principātum dīmiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, īī quī propter veterēs inimicitias nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī diligenter tuēbantur;  
20 ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritatem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē principēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

*Two classes of the nobility. The* 13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo;  
25 *common folk mostly slaves.* nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō.

Plērique, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nobilibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae  
30 dominīs in servōs.

Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus divīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac privāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs magnus  
5 adulēscētiū numerus disciplīnae causā concurrīt, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis pūblicis privātisque cōstituunt; et, sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditātē, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt, praeemia poenāsque  
10 cōstituunt; sī quī aut privātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne in  
15 commodī accipiant, neque iīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.

Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitātē, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs,  
20 suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs dē principātū contendunt.

Hī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōsīdunt in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt,  
25 eōrumque dēcrētis iūdicīisque pārent. Disciplīna in Britannīā reperta atque inde in Galliam trāslāta exīstimātur; et nunc quī diligentius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōsuērunt neque  
30 tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs exci- *Their immunities and teachings.*

tātī praemiis et suā sponte multī in disciplinam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nullī vīcēnōs in disciplinā permanent. Neque  
 5 fās esse existimant ea litteris mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicis privātisque ratiōnibus, Graecis litteris ūantur. Id mihi duābus dē causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplinam efferrī velint neque eōs qui discunt litteris cōnfisōs minus memoriae studēre; quod  
 10 ferē plērisque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum diligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant.

In primīs hoc volunt persuādere, nōn interire animās, sed ab aliis post mortem trānsire ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtutem excitārī putant metū mortis neglētō.  
 15 Multa praetereā dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārum magnitudīne, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

*The knights are all warriors.*  
 20 **15.** Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniuriās īferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiam  
 25 que nōvērunt.

*Human sacrifices.*  
**16.** Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus; atque ob eam causam qui sunt adfectī graviōribus morbis, quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut  
 30 sē immolātūrōs vovent (administrisque ad ea sacrificia

druidibus ūtuntur), quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortalīum nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent,  
 5 quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam  
 10 ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt; huius *The Gallic gods.*  
 sunt plūrima simulācra, hunc omnium inventō-  
 rem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercatūrāsque habēre vim  
 15 maximam arbitrantur; post hunc Apollinem et Mārtē et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opiniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtē bella regere. Huic,  
 20 cum proeliō dīmicāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt. Multīs in civitatibus hārum rērum extrūctōs cumulōs locīs cōse-  
 crātīs cōspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā  
 25 quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque eī rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs *Reputed origin. Reckoning of time.*  
 praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. *Filial respect.*  
 30 Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn

numerō diērum, sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēsum et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae institūtīs hoc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēverunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur; filiumque puerilī aetāte in publicō in cōspectū patris adistere turpe dūcunt.

*Dowries.  
Husbands  
and wives.  
10 Funeral  
customs.*

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēperunt, tantās ex suis bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus communicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur fructūsque servantur; uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiōrum temporum pervenit.

Virī in uxōrēs, sicutī in liberōs, vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae inlūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum quaestiōnem habent, et, sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciatās interficiunt.

20. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia; ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab iīs dilēctōs esse cōstābat, iūstīs fūnebris cōfectīs unā cremābantur.

~~20~~ *Public  
matters are  
under the  
control of the  
magistrates.*

20. Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem publicam administrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sāctum, sī quis quid dē rē publicā ā finitimīs rūmōre ac fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum deferat nēve cum quō aliō communicet, quod saepe hominēs temerariōs atque imperitōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad



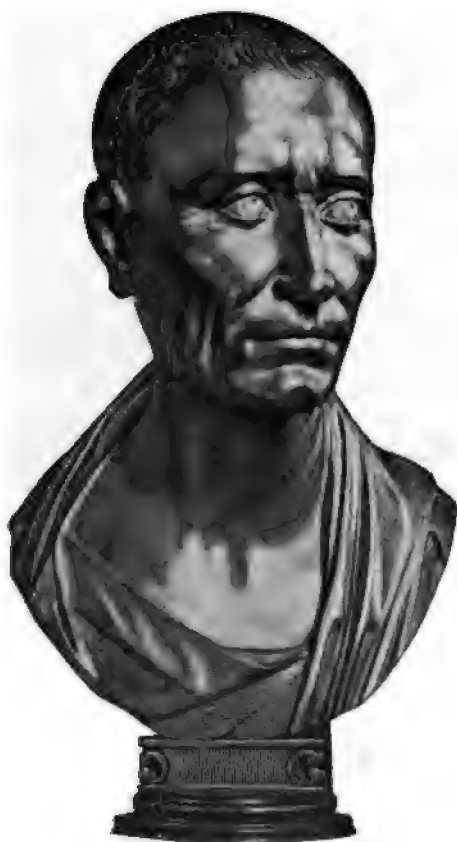


FIG. 25.—CAESAR : BERLIN

facinus impelli et de summis rebus consilium capere cognitum est. Magistratus quae visa sunt occultant, quae esse ex usu iudicaverunt multitudini produnt. De re publica nisi per concilium loqui non conceditur.

*Customs of the Germans*

5 21. Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. Nam neque druides habent qui rebus *The gods. Social customs.* divinis praesint neque sacrificiis student. Deorum numero eos solos ducunt quos cernunt et quorum apertae opibus iuvantur, Solem et Vulcanum et Lunam; 10 reliquos ne fama quidem acciperunt.

Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit; a parvis labori ac duritiae student. Qui diutissime impubes permanserunt maximam inter suos ferunt laudem; hoc alii statuerant, alii vires, nervosque confirmari 15 putant. Intra annum vero vicessimam feminae notitiam habuisse in turpissimis habent rebus; cuius rei nulla est occultatio, quod et promiscue in fluminibus perluuntur et pellibus aut parvis renonum tegimentis utuntur, magnam corporis parte nudam.

20 22. Agri culturae non student, maiorque pars eorum victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. *Tenure of lands.* Neque quisquam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed magistratus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus cognationibusque hominum, quique una coierunt, 25 quantum et quo loco visum est agri attribuunt, atque anno post alio transire cogunt. Eius rei multas adferunt causas: ne adsiduam consuetudine capti studium belli gerendi agri culturam commutent; ne latos fines parare studeant poten-

tiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accū-  
rātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua  
oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsi-  
ōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant,  
5 cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

*War. Free-  
booting. Hos-  
pitality.*

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē  
circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlitudinēs habēre.  
Hoc proprium virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agrīs  
finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsis-  
10 tere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiorēs arbitrantur, repentināe  
incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum civitās aut inlātum  
dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint, et vitae  
necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus  
est commūnis magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnum atque  
15 pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs  
cuiusque cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac  
dēsidiāe minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis  
ex principibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, quī sequī  
20 velint profiteantur, cōnsurgunt iī quī et causam et homi-  
nem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā mul-  
titudine conlaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt, in  
dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque  
hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur.

25 Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē  
causā ad eōs vērunt, ab iniuriā prohibent sānctōsque ha-  
bent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

*Decadence of  
the Gauls;  
rise of the  
30 Germans.*

24. Ac fuit antea tempus cum Germānōs  
Gallī virtūte superarent, ultrō bella inferrent,  
propter hominum multitudinem agrīque inopiam

trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilis-  
sima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam (quam  
Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse video,  
quam illi Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosagēs occu-  
pāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hoc tempus  
hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et  
bellicae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc, quod in eādē inopiā,  
egestāte, patientiā, quā ante, Germānī permanent, eōdem  
victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur, Gallīs autem prōvinciārū  
propinquitās et trānsmarīnārū rērū nōtitia multa ad  
cōpiam atque ūsūs largitur, paulātim adsuēfactī superārī  
multisque victī proeliīs, nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs virtūte  
comparant.

#### 25-28. THE HERCYNIAN FOREST AND ITS FAUNA

25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dē- *Vast extent  
of the forest.*  
mōnstrāta est, lātitudō VIII diērum iter expeditō  
patet; nōn enim aliter finīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās  
itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrū et Neme-  
tum et Rauracōrū finibus, rēctāque flūminis Dānuvī  
regiōne pertinet ad finēs Dācōrū et Anartium; hinc sē  
flectit sinistrōrsus diversīs ā flūmine regiōnibus multā-  
rumque gentium finēs propter magnitudinem attingit;  
neque quisquam est huius Germāniae quī sē aut adisse ad  
initium eius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit,  
aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera  
ferārū nāscī cōstat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint;  
ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae  
prōdenda videantur haec sunt.

*The reindeer.*

26. Est bōs cervī figurā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū existit excelsius magisque dērectum hīs quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus; ab eius summō sicut palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque cornuum.



FIG. 26 — Reindeer (left) and European Elk.

*The elk.*

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōsimilis caprīs figurā et varietās pellium, sed magnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs articulisque habent; neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō adflīctae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō

cubilibus; ad eas se applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinatae quietem capiunt. Quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a venatoribus quo se recipere consuerint, omnes eo loco aut ab radicibus subruunt aut accidunt  
 5 arborēs, tantum ut summa species earum stantium relinquantur. Huc cum se consuetudine reclinaverunt, infirmas arborēs pondere adfligunt atque una ipsae concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eorum qui uri appellantur. *The wild ox.* Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos, specie et colore et figura tauri. Magna vis eorum est et magna velocitas, neque homini neque ferae quam conspexerunt parcent. Hos studiosē foveis captos interficiunt. Hoc se labore durant adulescentes atque hoc  
 15 genere venationis exercent; et qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus quae sint testimoniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed aduescere ad homines et mansuēfieri nē parvuli quidem excepti possunt. Amplitudō cornuum et figura et species multum a nostrorum  
 20 boum cornibus differt. Haec studiosē conquīsita ab labris argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.

## LIBER SEPTIMVS

### 43-53. CAESAR'S DISASTROUS ENGAGEMENT AT GERGOVIA, 52 B.C.

*Caesar desires to withdraw from Gergovia without appearance of flight.*

5

fugae vidērētur.

*He learns that the enemy are engrossed in building a new line of defense.*

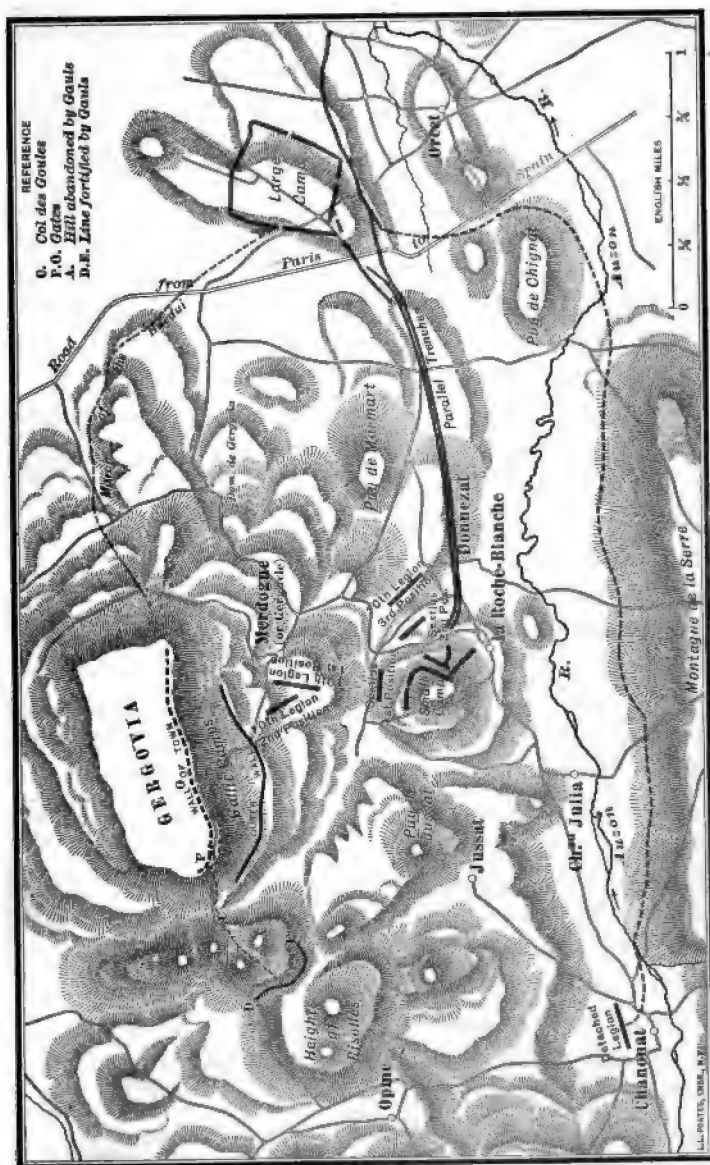
10

15

20

43. Ipse maiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns, nē ab omnibus cīvitātibus circumsisterētur, cōnsilia inībat quem ad modum ā Gergoviā discēderet ac rūsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ab timōre dēfectiōnis similisque

44. Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene gerendae rei. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspiciendī causā vēnisset, animadvertit collem quī ab hostibus tenēbātur nūdātum hominibus, quī superiōribus diēbus vix prae multitudine cernī poterat. Admīrātus quaerit ex perfugīs causam, quōrum magnus ad eum cotīdiē numerus cōnfluēbat. Cōnstābat inter omnēs, quod iam ipse Caesar per explorātōrēs cōgnōverat, dorsum esse eius iugī prope aequum, sed silvestre et angustum, quā esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidī; vehementer huic illōs locō timēre, nec iam aliter sentire, ūnō colle ab Rōmānis occupātō, sī alterum āmisissent, quīn paene circumvallātī atque omnī exitū et pābulatiōne interclūsī vidērentur. Ad hunc mūniendum locum omnēs ā Vercingetorīge evocātōs.



THE SIEGE OF GERGOVIA

*Diverting  
the enemy's  
attention, he  
plans an at-  
tack on their  
camp.*

45. Hāc rē cōgnitā Caesar mittit complūrēs  
equitum turmās eō dē mediā nocte; imperat ut  
paulō tumultuōsius omnibus locis pervagentur.  
Primā lūce magnum numerum impedimentōrum  
5 ex castris mūlōrumque prōdūcī dēque hīs strā-  
menta dētrahī mūliōnēsque cum cassidibus, equitum speciē  
ac simulatiōne, collibus circumvehi iubet. Hīs paucōs  
addit equitēs quī lātius ostentatiōnis causā vagentur.  
Longō circuitū eāsdem omnēs iubet petere regiōnēs.  
10 Haec procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā  
dēspectus in castra; neque tantō spatiō, certī quid esset,  
explōrārī poterat. Legiōnem ūnam eōdem iugō mittit et  
paulum prōgressam inferiōre cōstituit locō silvīsque occul-  
tat. Augētur Gallīs suspiciō, atque omnēs illō ad mūnī-  
15 tiōnem cōpiae trādūcuntur.

Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōspicātus, tēctis insīgni-  
bus suōrum occultātisque signis militāribus, rārōs militēs,  
nē ex oppidō animadverterentur, ex maiōribus castris in  
minōra trādūcit, lēgātisque quōs singulis legiōnibus prae-  
20 fēcerat quid fierī velit ostendit; in primis monet ut con-  
tineant militēs nē studiō pugnandī aut spē praedae longius  
prōgrediantur; quid inīquitās locī habeat incommodī prō-  
pōnit; hoc ūnā celeritātē posse vitārī; occāsionis esse rem,  
nōn proeli. Hīs rēbus expositis signum dat et ab dextrā  
25 parte aliō ascēnsū eōdem tempore Haeduōs mittit.

*Capture of  
the camp.*

46. Mūrus oppidī ā plānitiē atque initiō ascēn-  
sūs rēctā regiōne, sī nullus ānfractus intercēderet,  
mcc passūs aberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliendum  
clivum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. Ā mediō  
30 ferē colle in longitūdinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex

grandibus saxīs vi pedum mūrum quī nostrōrum impetum tardāret praedūxerant Gallī atque, inferiōre omnī spatiō vacuō relictō, superiōrem partem collis usque ad mūrum oppidī dēnsissimīs castrīs complēverant.

- 5 Militēs datō signō celeriter ad mūnitiōnem perveniunt eamque trāsgressī trīnīs castrīs potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castrīs capiendīs celeritās ut Teutomatus, rēx Nitio-  
brogum, subitō in tabernāculō oppressus, ut meridiē con-  
quiēverat, superiōre parte corporis nūdā, vulnerātō equō  
10 vix sē ex manibus praedantium militum ēriperet.

47. Cōsecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat, *Caesar re-  
calls his men,  
but they strive  
to take the  
town.*  
Caesar receptuī canī iussit; legiōnisque decimae,  
quācum erat, continuō signa cōstitērunt. At  
reliquārum legiōnum militēs nōn auditō sonō

- 15 tubae, quod satis magna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen ā tribū-  
nīs militum lēgātisque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum, retinē-  
bantur; sed ēlātī spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et  
superiōrum temporum secundīs proeliīs nihil adeō arduum  
sibi exīstimābant quod nōn virtūte cōsequī possent; neque  
20 finem prius sequendī fēcērunt quam mūrō oppidī portisque  
appropinquārent.

- Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī  
longius aberant repentinō tumultū perterritī, cum hostem  
intrā portās esse exīstimārent, sē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt.  
25 Mātrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem argentumque iactābant,  
et pectore nūdō prōminentēs passīs manibus obtestābantur  
Rōmānōs ut sibi parcerent neu, sicut Avaricī fēcissent, nē  
ā mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinērent; nōn  
nullae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae sēsē militibus trādē-  
30 bant. L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis octāvae, quem inter

suos eō diē dixisse cōnstābat excitārī sē Avaricēnsībus  
 praemiīs, neque commissūrum ut prius quisquam mūrum  
 ascenderet, trēs suos nactus manipulārēs atque ab iīs sub-  
 levātus mūrum ascendit ; hōs ipse rūrsus singulōs exceptāns  
 5 in mūrum extulit.

*The enemy  
 are largely  
 reinforced.  
 Caesar sum-  
 mons re-  
 serves.*

48. Interim iī quī ad alteram partem oppidi,  
 ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, mūnitiōnis causā con-  
 vēnerant, primō exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam  
 crebris nūntiīs incitātī oppidum ā Rōmānīs te-  
 10 nērī, praemissīs equitibus magnō cursū eō contendērunt.  
 Eōrum ut quisque primus vēnerat, sub mūrō cōsistēbat  
 suōrumque pugnantium numerum augēbat. Quōrum cum  
 magna multitudō convēnisset, mātres familiae, quae paulō  
 ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs tendēbant, suos obtestārī et  
 15 mōre Gallicō passum capillum ostentāre liberōsque in cōn-  
 spectum prōferre coepērunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec  
 numerō aequa contentiō ; simul et cursū et spatiō pugnae  
 dēfatigātī nōn facile recentēs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

49. Caesar cum iniquō locō pugnārī hostiumque cōpiās  
 20 augērī vidēret, praemetuēns suis ad T. Sextium lēgātum,  
 quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō reliquerat, mīsīt ut co-  
 hortēs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub infimō colle ab  
 dextrō latere hostium cōstitueret, ut, sī nostrōs locō dē-  
 pulsōs vidisset, quō minus liberē hostēs insequerentur ter-  
 25 rēret. Ipse paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus ubi  
 cōnstiterat, ēventum pugnae exspectābat.

*Terror of the  
 Romans upon  
 the arrival of  
 the Haedui.  
 Bravery of  
 30 Petronius.*

50. Cum ācerimē comminus pugnārētur,  
 hostēs locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōfiderent,  
 subitō sunt Haedui vīsī ab latere nostrīs apertō,  
 quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs

distinendae causā miserat. Hī similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruerunt, ac tametsī dextrīs umerīs exsertīs animadvertēbantur, quod insigne pactum esse cōnsuerat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā milītēs ab hostibus factum exīstimābant.

Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quīque ūnā mūrū ascendērant circumventī atque interfectī de mūrō praecipitābantur. M. Petronius, eiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excidere cōnātus esset, ā multitudīne oppressus ac  
 10 sibi dēspērāns, multīs iam vulneribus acceptīs, manipulāribus suis quī illum secūtī erant, “Quoniam,” inquit, “mē ūnā vōbiscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vitae prōspiciam, quōs cupiditāte glōriae adductus in periculum dēdūxī. Vōs datā facultāte vōbīs cōnsulite.” Simul  
 15 in mediōs hostēs inrūpit duōbusque interfectīs reliquōs ā portā paulum summōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī suis, “Frūstrā,” inquit, “meae vitae subvenire cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis vīrēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abīte, dum est facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite.” Ita pugnāns post  
 20 paulum concidit ac suis salūtī fuit.

51. Nostrī cum undīque premerentur, XLVI *Repulse of the Romans with heavy loss.*  
 centuriōnibus āmissīs dēiectī sunt locō. Sed intolerantius Gallōs insequentēs legiō decima tardāvit, quae prō subsidio paulō aequiōre locō cōstitērat.  
 25 Hanc rūsus tertiae decimae legiōnis cohortēs excēperunt, quae ex castrīs minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs ubi primum plāntiis attigērunt, infestīs contrā hostēs signīs cōstitērunt. Vercingetorix ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā mūnitiōnēs  
 30 redūxit. Eō diē milītēs sunt paulō minus dcc dēsiderātī.

*Caesar censures the rashness of his men though praising their valor.*

52. Posterō diē Caesar cōntiōne advocātā temeritātem cupiditātemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsī iūdicāvissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidērētur, neque signō recipiendī datō cōstitissent, neque ā tribūnīs militum lēgātisque retinērī potuissent. Exposuit quid inīquitās locī posset, — quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsīs hostibus explōrātā victōriā dīmīssisset nē parvum modo dētrīmentum  
10 in contentiōne propter inīquitātem locī accideret. Quantō opere eōrum animī magnitudinem admīrārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnitiōnēs, nōn altitudō montis, nōn mūrus oppidī tardāre potuisset, tantō opere licentiam adroganti-  
amque reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātorem dē  
15 victōriā atque exitū rērum sentīre existimārent; nec minus sē ā milite modestiam et continentiam quam virtūtem atque animī magnitudinem dēsiderāre.

*After offering battle, which is refused by the enemy, Caesar retires into the Haeduan territory.*

53. Hāc habitā cōntiōne et ad extrēmam orātiōnem cōfirmātīs militibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur neu, quod inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī hostium tribuerent, eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae ante  
sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castrīs edūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōstituit. Cum Vercingetorīx nihilō magis in  
25 aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestrī proeliō atque eō secundō, in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hoc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem minuendam militumque animōs cōfirmandōs factum existimāns in Haeduōs mōvit castra.

\* \* \* \* \*



69-90. CONFLICT AT ALESIA WITH AN ALLIED ARMY OF ALL  
THE GAULS, 52 B.C.

*Preparations of both sides for a decisive contest*

*Alesia. De-* 69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō ad-  
*fenses of the* modum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī  
*Gauls and of* nōn posse vidērētur. Cuius collis rādicēs duo  
*the Romans.* duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidū  
5 plānitiēs circiter mīllia passuum III in longitudinem patē-  
bat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō  
spatiō, parī altitudinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub  
mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc  
omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque  
10 et māceriam in altitudinem vi pedum praedūxerant. Eius  
mūnitiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs instituēbātur circuitus xi mīllia  
passuum tenēbat. Castra opportunīs locīs erant posita  
viii castellaque xxiii facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū  
statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec  
15 eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

*The Romans* 70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in  
*win a cavalry* eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus III mīllia  
*engagement.* passuum in longitudinem patēre suprā dēmōn-  
strāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōranti-  
20 bus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs summittit legiōnēsque prō  
castrīs cōstituit, nē qua subitō inruptiō ab hostium pedi-  
tātū fiat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augē-  
tur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitudīne impediunt  
atque angustiōribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī  
25 ācrius usque ad mūnitiōnēs sequuntur. Fit magna caedēs;  
nōn nūllī relictīs equīs fossam trānsire et māceriam trān-  
scendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō

vallō cōstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Gallī perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōnfestim exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multis interfectis, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus  
 10 mandat ut suam quisque eōrum civitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit, obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī libertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indiligentiōrēs fuerint, millia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse parcendō.

*Vercingetorix summons aid from all Gaul. His straitened circumstances.*

His datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus intermissum,  
 20 secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet; capitis poenam iīs quī nōn pāruerint cōstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī instituit. Cōpiās omnēs, quās prō  
 25 oppidō conlocāverat, in oppidum recipit. His ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

72. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis ex perfugīs et captivīs, Caesar haec genera mūnitiōnis instituit. Fossam pedum xx dērēctis lateribus dūxit, ut  
 30 eius fossae solum tantundem patēret quantum

*Caesar invests Alesia with an elaborate line of works.*

summa labra distarent. Reliquās omnēs mūnitiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs cccc redūxit hōc cōnsiliō (quoniam tantum esset necessariō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā militum cingerētur), nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitiōnēs multitudō hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs conicere possent.

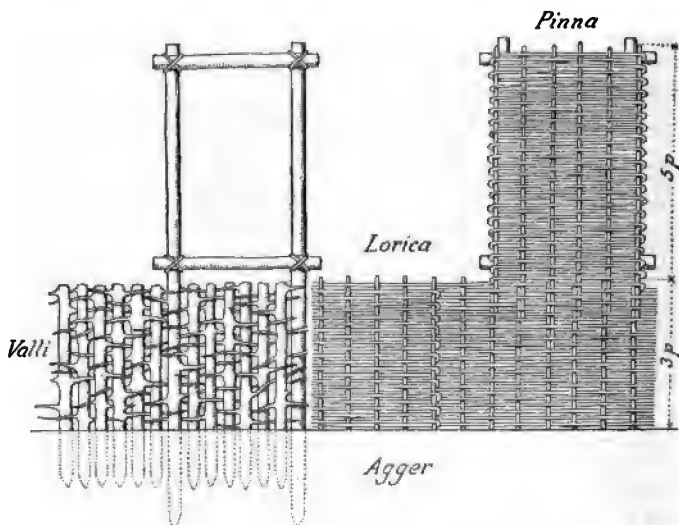


FIG. 27. — The Defenses on Caesar's Rampart before Alesia.

Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās, eādem altitūdine, perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus ac dēmissis locis aquā ex flūmine dērivātā complēvit.

10 Post eās aggerem ac vāllum xii pedum extrūxit; huic lōricam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēsum hostium tardārent; et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

73. Erat eodem tempore et materiārī et frumentārī et tantās mūnitiōnēs fierī necesse, dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiis, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō  
5 plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō militum mūnitiōnēs dēfendī possent.



FIG. 28. — Outline of Caesar's Works before Alesia.

Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmīs abscisis, atque hōrum dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūminibus, perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illi  
10 stipitēs dēmissī et ab infimō revīnctī, nē revellī possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ordinēs, coniūncti inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant, sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant.

15 Ante hōs oblīquīs ordinibus in quīncūncem dispositis scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātīm angustiorē ad infimum fastigiō. Hūc  
20 teretēs stipitēs feminis crassitūdine ab summō praeacūtī et praeusti dēmittēbantur, ita ut nōn amplius digitis III ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōfirmandī et stabiliendī causā singulī ab infimō solō

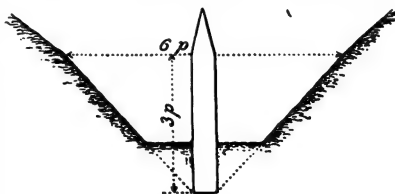


FIG. 29. — Lilium.

pedēs terrā exculcābantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad occul-  
tandās insidiās vīminibus ac virgultis inte-  
gēbātur. Huius generis octōnī ōrdinēs  
ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id  
ex similitūdine flōris lilium appellābant.

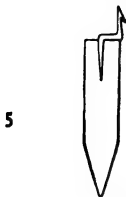


FIG. 30. — Stimulus.

Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreīs  
hāmīs infixīs tōtae in terram infodiēbantur,  
mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus  
locīs disserēbantur, quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

10 *His defenses  
against the  
enemy from  
without.*

74. His rēbus perfectis, regiōnēs secūtus  
quam potuit aequissimās prō loci nātūrā, XIII  
millia passuum complexus parēs eiusdem gene-  
ris mūnitiōnēs, diversās ab his, contrā exteriōrem hostem  
perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitudine mūnitiōnum

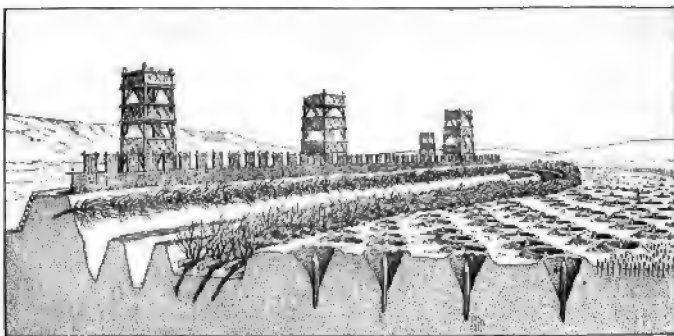


FIG. 31. — Conjectural Appearance of Caesar's Works before Alesia.

For greater clearness, only a few rows of cippi and of lilia are shown. For all details, except the turrets, see Figs. 25-28.

15 praesidia circumfundī possent; nē autem cum periculō ex  
castris ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque  
habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Galli *An immense army is sent to the relief of Vercingetorix.* conciliō prīncipum indictō nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique

5 civitatī imperandum, nē tantā multitudīne cōfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Haeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovicibus, millia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūctis Eleutetis, Ca-  
10 dūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellāvīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna millia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovicibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parīsiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibus, Ambiānīs, Mediomatricīs, Pe-  
15 trocoriīs, Nervīīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus; v millia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totidem Atrebātibus; IIII Veliocassīs; Aulercīs Eburovicibus III; Rauracīs et Bōīs bīna; x ūniversīs civitatibus quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō  
20 Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, Venetī, Lexovī, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dicerent neque cuiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō eius hospitīō  
25 duo millia mīsērunt.

76. Huius operā Commī, ut antea dēmōstrāvimus, fideli atque utili superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; prō quibus meritis civitatē eius impūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī Morinōs attribuerat.  
30 Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit libertātis

vindicandae et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent.

Coāctis equitum millibus viii et peditum circiter ccl, haec in Haeduōrum finibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inibātur, praefecti cōstituēbantur; Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōsobrinō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperi trāditur. His dēlecti ex civitatibus attribuuntur quōrum cōsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēni ad Alesiam proficiscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustinēri posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipiti proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptione pugnārētur, foris tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

*The besieged in Alesia are on the verge of starvation. A barbarous proposal for relief is rejected. The Mandubii are forced to leave the town.*

77. At ii quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōsumptō omnī frūmentō, inscii quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōsultābant. Ac variis dictis sententiis, quārum pars dēditionem, pars, dum virēs suppetent, ēruptionem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda orātiō Critognātī vidētur propter eius singulārem et nefāriam crudelitatem.

Hic summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctoritātis, "Nihil," inquit, "dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditionis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs civium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnsēō. Cum hīs mihi rēs est quī ēruptionem probant; quōrum in cōsiliō omnium vestrum cōsēnsū

pristinae residere virtutis memoria videtur. Animus est ista mollitia, non virtus, paulisper inopiam ferre non posse. Qui se ultrò mortis offerant facilius reperiuntur quam qui dolorem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam  
5 probarem (tantum apud me dignitas potest), si nullam praeterquam vitae nostrae iacturam fieri viderem; sed in consilio capiendò omnem Galliam respiciamus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitavimus. Quid, hominum millibus LXXX uno loco interfectis, propinquis consanguineisque  
10 nostris animi fore existimatis, si paene in ipsis cadaveribus proelio decertare cogentur? Nolite hos vestro auxilio exspoliare qui vestrae salutis causam suum periculum neglexerunt, nec stultitiam ac temeritatem vestram aut animi imbecillitate omnem Galliam prosternere et perpetuae servituti  
15 subicere.

"An, quod ad diem non venerunt, de eorum fide constantiaque dubitatis? Quid ergo? Romanos in illis ulterioribus munitionibus animine causam cotidie exerceri putatis? Si illorum nuntiis confirmari non potestis omni  
20 aditum praesaepitò, his ultimis testibus appropinquare eorum adventum; cuius rei timore exterriti diem noctemque in opere versantur.

"Quid ergo mei consilii est? Facere quod nostri maiores nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum Teutonumque fecerunt; qui in oppida compulsi ac simili inopia subacti, eorum corporibus qui aetate ad bellum inutilis videbantur vitam toleraverunt, neque se hostibus tradiderunt. Cuius rei si exemplum non habemus, tamen libertatis causam  
25 institui et posteris prodi pulcherrimum iudicarem. Nam  
30 quid illi simile bellum fuit? Depopulata Gallia Cimbris,

magnāque inlātā calamitāte, finibus quidem nostris ali-  
 quandō excesserunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra,  
 lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nobis reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō  
 quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adducti,  
 5 quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsq̄ bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum  
 in agris civitatibusque cōnsidere atque his aeternam iniun-  
 gere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne  
 bella gessērunt. Quod si ea quae in longinquis nātiōibus  
 geruntur ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in  
 10 prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātis, secūribus  
 subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte."

78. Sententiis dictis cōstituunt ut ii qui valētūdine aut  
 aetate inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia  
 prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscen-  
 15 dant; illō tamen potius ūtendum cōsiliō, si rēs cōgat  
 atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditionis aut pācis sube-  
 undam condiciōnem. Mandubiī, qui eōs oppidō recēpe-  
 rant, cum liberis atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hi cum  
 ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus  
 20 precibus orābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent.  
 At Caesar, dispositis in vāllō custodiis, recipi prohibēbat.

79. Intereā Commius reliquique ducēs, quibus  
*The arrival of the relieving army brings hope to the be-*  
 25 *sieged.* summa imperi permissa erat, cum omnibus cō-  
 piis ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre  
 occupātō nōn longius mille passibus ā nostris  
 mūnitiōnibus cōnsidunt. Posterō diē equitātū  
 ex castris ēductō omnem eam plānitiem quam in longitū-  
 dinem millia passuum iii patēre dēmōnstrāvimus complent,  
 pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locis  
 30 superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspec-

tus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātu-  
lātiō inter eōs, atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur.  
Itaque prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōsistunt et proxi-  
mam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent sēque  
5 ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

*The Gauls are completely defeated and Vercingetorix surrenders*

80. Caesar omni exercitū ad utramque partem  
mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut, si ūsus veniat, suum *The Romans  
win a sharp  
battle.*  
quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex  
castrīs ēdūci et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus  
10 castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus;  
atque omnēs militēs intentī pugnae prōventum exspectā-  
bant. Galli inter equitēs rārōs sagittariōs expeditōsque  
levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suis cēdentibus auxiliō  
succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent.  
15 Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proeliō excēdē-  
bant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Galli cōnfiderent  
et nostrōs multitudīne premī vidērent, ex omnibus parti-  
bus et īī quī mūnitiōnibus continēbantur et īī quī ad auxi-  
lium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs  
20 cōfirmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur  
neque rēctē aut turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque  
et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtutem  
excitābat.

Cum ā meridiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā  
25 pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in  
hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in  
fugam coniectīs sagittariī circumventī interfectique sunt.  
Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs usque ad castra

insecūtī suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At īi qui Alesīā prōcesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

*The Gauls  
5 make a vain  
attack by  
night on Cae-  
sar's works.*

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō magnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne qui in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere possent, crātēs  
10 prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre, reliquaque quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā sīgnum suis Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit.

Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suis cuique erat locus  
15 attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs librilibus,



20 FIG. 32. — Glans. Inscribed FERI, and on the other side POMP (for Pompeium), i.e. Strike Pompey.

sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs ademptō, multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentis tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae  
partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellis  
25 dēductōs summittēbant.

82. Dum longius ā mūnitiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius succēsērunt, aut sē stimulis inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobēs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī  
30 pīlis mūrālibus interibant. Multis undique vulneribus ac-

ceptis, nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī  
 nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castris ēruptiōne cir-  
 cumvenirentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum  
 ea quae ā Vercingetorige ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant  
 5 prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent, diūtius in hīs rēbus ad-  
 ministrandis morātī, prius suōs discessisse cōgnōvērunt  
 quam mūnitiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē infectā in  
 oppidum revertērunt.

83. Bis magnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Galli *The final  
 10 quid agant cōsulant; locōrum perītōs adhibent; struggle.  
 ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnitiōnēsque Movements  
 cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, of the army  
 quem propter magnitudinem circuitūs opere circumplectī of relief.*  
 nōn potuerant nostrī; necessariōque paene inīquō locō et  
 15 lēniter dēclivī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēginus  
 et C. Caninius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus ob-  
 tinēbant.

Cōgnitis per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium LX  
 mīllia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum civitātum quae  
 20 maximam virtūtis opiniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō  
 agī placeat occultē inter sē cōstituunt; adeundī tempus  
 dēfiniunt cum merīdiēs esse videātur. His cōpiis Vercas-  
 sivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex IIII ducibus, propinquum  
 Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castris primā vigiliā  
 25 ēgressus, prope cōfectō sub lūcem itinere post montem  
 sē occultāvit, militēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere  
 iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea  
 castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque  
 tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et  
 30 reliquae cōpiae prō castris sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

*The Romans  
are attacked  
on all sides.*

84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suos cō-  
spicātus, ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs,  
mūsculōs, falcēs, reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis  
causā parāverat prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus  
5 locīs, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars  
firma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs  
mūnitiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit.  
Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum  
pugnantibus exsistit, quod suum perīculum in aliēnā vident  
10 virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt  
vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

*The desperate  
nature of the  
conflict.*

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quā-  
que in parte gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus  
subsidium summittit. Utrisque ad animum  
15 occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō maximē contendī con-  
veniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omni salūte  
dēspērānt; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum  
omnium exspectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs  
labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōstrāvimus.  
20 Inīquum locī ad dēclivitātem fastīgium magnum habet  
mōmentum. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt;  
dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversīs  
in mūnitiōnem coniectus et ascēnsus dat Gallīs, et ea quae  
in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma  
25 nostrīs nec virēs suppetunt.

*Caesar goes  
about encour-  
aging and  
directing his  
men in every  
part of the  
30 field.*

86. His rēbus cōgnitis Caesar Labiēnum cum  
cohortibus vī subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; im-  
perat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus  
ēruptiōne pugnet; id nisi necessariō nē faciat.  
Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur nē labōrī succum-

bant; omnium superiōrum dīmīcātiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs, dēspērātis campestribus locis propter magnitudinem mūnitiōnum, loca praeupta ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōnferunt. Multitudīne tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantēs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāl-lum ac lōricam rescindunt.

87. Mittit prīmum Brūtum adulēscētem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsīs hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortēs IIII ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, post-  
15 quam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs XI cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

20 88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitō, quō insignī in proeliīs ūtī cōsuērat, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrūque  
25 clāmōre sublātō, excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī ēmissīs pilīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et  
30 prīnceps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arver-

*The Gauls  
are utterly de-  
feated. The  
army of relief  
disperses.*

nus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militāria LXXIII ad Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tantō numerō sē incolūmēs in castra recipiunt.



20 FIG. 33. — A General wearing the Cloak.

Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castris Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbris subsidiis ac tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlēri potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōnsequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliquī ex fugā in cīvitatēs discēdunt.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorix conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum, *The besieged army surrenders. Vercingetorix is delivered up to Caesar.*

sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortunāe cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānis satisfacere seu vivum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. 25 Iubet arma trādī, principēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castris cōnsidit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorix dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātis Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitatēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captivīs tōtī exercitui capita singula praedae 30 nōmine distribuit.

90. Hīs rēbus cōfectis in Haeduōs proficīscitur; cīvitatē recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs  
5 in hiberna mittit. Captivōrum circiter xx millia Haeduīs Arvernisque reddit.

*The Haedui and Arverni are favored. Assignment of the army to winter quarters. Thanksgiving at Rome.*

T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum  
10 cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs conlocat, nē quam ā finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulis legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavillōnī et Matis  
15 cōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim rei frūmentāriae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit.

Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litteris cōgnitis, Rōmae diērum xx supplicātiō redditur.

C. IVLI CAESARIS  
BELLI CIVILIS  
LIBER SECVNDVS

---

23-44. CURIO'S DISASTROUS CAMPAIGN IN AFRICA,  
AUGUST, 49 B.C.

*His first operations are successful*

*Curio's land-  
ing in Africa  
is unopposed.*

23. Īsdem temporibus C. Cūriō in Āfricam profectus ex Siciliā, etiam ab initiō cōpiās P. Atti Vārī dēspiciēns, duās legiōnēs ex IIII quās accēperat ā Caesare, v equitēs trānsportābat, bīduōque et nocte in nāvīgātiōne cōsūptā appellit ad eum locum quī appellātur Anquillāria. Hīc locus abest ā Clupeā passuum XXII millia, habetque nōn incommodam aestāte statiōnem, et duōbus ēminentibus prōmunturiis continētur. Huius adventum L. Caesar filius cum x longīs nāvibus ad Clupeam praestōlāns, quās nāvēs Uticae ex praedōnum bellō subductās P. Attius reficiendās huius bellī causā cūrāverat, veritus nāvium multitudinem ex altō refūgerat appulsāque ad proximum lītus trirēme cōnstrātā et in litore relictā pedibus Hadrūmētum profūgerat. Id oppi-  
15 dum C. Cōnsidius Longus ūnius legiōnis praesidiō tuēbā-  
tur. Reliquae Caesaris nāvēs vīsā eius fugā sē Hadrūmētum

recēpērunt. Hunc secūtus Mārcius Rūfus quaestor nāvibus XII, quās praesidiō onerāriis nāvibus Cūriō ex Siciliā ēdūxerat, postquam in lītore relictam nāvem cōspēxit, hanc remulcō abstrāxit, ipse ad C. Cūriōnem cum classe  
5 rediit.



Curio's Campaign in Africa.

24. Cūriō Mārcium Uticam nāvibus praemittit; ipse eōdem cum exercitū proficiscitur bīdūque iter prōgressus ad flūmen Bagradam pervenit. Ibi C. Canīnium Rebilum lēgātum  
10 cum legiōnibus relinquit; ipse cum equitātū antecēdit ad Castra explōranda Cornēlia, quod is locus peridōneus castris habēbātur. Id autem est iugum dērēctum, ēminēns in mare, utrāque ex parte praeruptum atque asperum, sed tamen paulō lēniōre fas-  
15 tigiō ab eā parte quae ad Uticam vergit; abest dērēctō

*Curio sets out for Utica, where the Pompeian force under Varus is encamped. He reconnoitres Camp Cornelia.*

itinere ab Uticā paulō amplius passūs mille. Sed hōc itinere est fōns, quō mare succēdit; longē ut lātēque is locus restāgnet; quem sī quī vitāre voluerint, sex millium circuitū in oppidum perveniunt.

- 5    25. Hōc explorātō locō Cūriō castra Vārī cōspicit mūrō oppidōque coniūcta ad portam quae appellātur Bellica, admodum mūnita nātūrā locī, ūnā ex parte ipsō oppidō Uticā, alterā theātrō quod est ante oppidum, substrūctiōnibus eius operis maximīs aditū ad castra difficili et angustō.
- 10 Simul animadvertit multa undique portārī atque agī plēnissimīs viīs, quae repentinī tumultūs timōre ex agrīs in urbem cōferēbantur. Hūc equitātum mittit ut diriperet atque habēret locō praedae; eōdemque tempore hīs rēbus subsidiō dc equitēs Numidae ex oppidō pedi-
- 15 *Curio routs a troop of Varus's Numidian allies, and takes possession of 200 transports.* tēsque cccc mittuntur ā Vārō, quōs auxili causā rēx Iuba paucīs diēbus ante Uticam mīserat. Huic et paternum hospitium cum Pompēiō et simultās cum Cūriōne intercēdēbat, quod tribūnus plēbis lēgem prōmulgāverat quā lēge
- 20 rēgnum Iubae publicāverat. Concurrunt equitēs inter sē; neque vērō primum impetum nostrōrum Numidae ferre potuērunt, sed interfectīs circiter cxx reliquī sē in castra ad oppidum recēpērunt. Interim adventū longārum nāvium Cūriō prōnūtiārī onerāriīs nāvibus iubet quae
- 25 stābant ad Uticam numerō circiter cc, sē in hostium habitūrum locō quī nōn ex vēstigiō ad Castra Cornēlia nāvēs trādūxissent. Quā prōnūtiātiōne factā, temporis punctō sublātis ancorīs omnēs Uticam relinquunt et quō imperātum est transeunt. Quae rēs omnium rērū cōpiā
- 30 complēvit exercitum.

26. Hīs rēbus gestīs Cūriō sē in castra ad Bagradam recipit atque ūniversī exercitūs con-  
clāmātiōne imperātor appellātur, posterōque diē  
Uticam exercitum dūcit et prope oppidum cas-  
5 tra pōnit. Nōndum opere castrōrum perfectō  
equitēs ex statiōne nūntiant magna auxilia equitum pedi-  
tumque ab rēge missa Uticam venīre; eōdemque tempore  
vīs magna pulveris cernēbātur, et vēstigiō temporis primum  
agmen erat in cōspectū. Novitāte rei Cūriō permōtus  
10 praemittit equitēs quī primum impetum sustineant ac  
morentur; ipse celeriter ab opere dēductīs legiōnibus aciem  
īnstruit. Equitēsque committunt proelium, et, priusquam  
plānē legiōnēs explicārī et cōsistere possent, tōta auxilia  
rēgis impedita ac perturbāta, quod nūllō ōrdine et sine  
15 timōre iter fēcerant, in fugam coniciunt, equitatūque omni  
ferē incolumī, quod sē per litora celeriter in oppidum  
recipit, magnum peditum numerum interficiunt.

*Curio en-  
camps near  
Utica. A  
second suc-  
cessful skir-  
mish.*

*Signs of defection in Curio's army*

27. Proximā nocte centuriōnēs Marsī duo ex  
castrīs Cūriōnis cum manipulāribus suis xxii  
20 ad Attium Vārum perfugiunt. Hī, sive vērē  
quam habuerant opīniōnem ad eum perferunt,  
sive etiam auribus Vārī serviunt (nam quae  
volumus, ea crēdimus libenter, et quae sentimus ipsī reli-  
quōs sentīre spērāmus), cōfirmant quidem certē tōtius  
25 exercitūs animōs aliēnōs esse ā Cūriōne, maximēque opus  
esse in cōspectum exercitūs venīre et conloquendī dare  
facultātem. Quā opīniōne adductus Vārus posterō diē  
māne legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūcit. Facit idem Cūriō, atque

*Two desert-  
ers assure  
Varus that  
Curio's whole  
army is  
disaffected.*

ūnā valle nōn magnā interiectā suās uterque cōpiās instruit.

*An attempt  
to induce  
Cario's sol-  
diers to desert  
is almost  
successful.*

28. Erat in exercitū Vārī Sextus Quīntilius Vārus, quem fuisse Corfinī suprā dēmōstrātum est. Hīc dimissus ā Caesare in Āfricam vēnerat, legiōnēque eās trādūxerat Cūrio quās superiōribus temporibus Corfiniō recēperat Caesar, adeō ut paucīs mūtātis centuriōnibus idem ordinēs manipuli que cōstārent. Hanc nactus appellatiōnis causam Quīntilius circumīre aciem Cūriōnis atque obsecrāre milītēs coepit nē prīmam sacrāmētī quod apud Domitium atque apud sē quaestōrem dixissent memoriā dēpōnerent, neu contrā eōs arma ferrent quī eādē essent ūsī fortunā eademque in obsidiōne perpeSSI, neu prō hīs pugnārent
- 15 ā quibus cum contumeliā perfugae appellārentur. Hūc pauca ad spem largitiōnis addidit, quae ab suā liberalitāte, si sē atque Attium secūtī essent, exspectāre dēbērent. Hāc habitā orātiōne nullam in partem ab exercitū Cūriōnis fit significātiō, atque ita suās uterque cōpiās reducit.
- 20 29. At in castrīs Cūriōnis magnus omnium incessit timor animīs; is variīs hominum sermōnibus celeriter augētur. Ūnusquisque enim opīniōnēs fingēbat et ad id quod ab aliō audierat suī aliquid timōris addēbat. Hoc ubi ūnō auctōre ad plūrēs permānāverat atque alius aliī trādidit,
- 25 derat, plūrēs auctōrēs eius rei vidēbantur. Erat civile bellum; genus hominum cui quod libēret licēret facere, et sequī quod vellet; legiōnēs eae quae paulō ante apud adversāriōs fuerant (nam recentia Caesaris beneficia imminuerat mānsuetūdō quā cōferrentur in mūnicipia etiam diversīs
- 30 partibus coniūcta); aequē enim ex Marsis Paelignisque

veniēbant et quī superiōre nocte perfūgerant et quī in contuberniis centuriōnēs militesque remanserant. Nōn nulli graviōra iactāverant. Sermōnēs militum dubiū dūrius accipiēbantur, nōn nūlla etiam ab iis quī diligentiorēs  
 5 vidērī volēbant fingēbantur.

30. Quibus dē causis cōsiliō convocātō dē *Curio holds a council of war, in which opinions are divided between an immediate attack and a retreat.*  
 summā rērum dēliberāre incipit. Erant sententiae quae cōnandum omnibus modis castraque Vārī oppugnanda cēnsērent, quod huius modi  
 10 militum cōsiliis otium maximē cōsentāneum esse arbitrārentur; postrēmō praestāre dicēbant per virtutem in pugnā bellī fortūnam experiri quam dēsertōs et circumventōs ab suis gravissimum supplicium perpeti. Erant quī cēnsērent dē tertiā  
 15 vigiliā in Castra Cornēlia recēdendum, ut maiōre spatiō temporis interiectō militum mentēs sārārentur, simul, si quid gravius accidisset, magnā multitudīne nāvium et tūtior et facilior in Siciliam receptus darētur.

31. Cūriō utrumque improbāns cōsiliū, *Curio speaks against both plans.*  
 20 quantum alterī sententiae deēsset animī, tantum alterī superesse dicēbat: hōs turpissimae fugae ratiōnem habēre, illōs etiam inīquō locō dīmīcandum putāre. “Quā enim,” inquit, “fidūciā et opere et nātūrā locī mūnitissima castra expugnārī posse cōfidimus? At  
 25 vērō quid prōficimus, si acceptō magnō detrīmentō ab oppugnātiōe castrōrum discēdimus? Quasi nōn et felicitās rērum gestārum exercitūs benevolentiam imperātōribus et rēs adversae odia concilient! Castrōrum autem mūtatiō quid habet nisi turpem fugam et dēspērātiōnem omnium  
 30 rērum et aliēnātiōnem exercitūs? Nam neque pudētēs

suspiciārī oportet sibi parum crēdī neque improbōs scīre  
 sēsē timērī, quod illis licentiam timor augeat noster,  
 hīs suspiciō studia dēminuat. Quod sī iam,” inquit,  
 “haec explōrāta habeamus quae dē exercitūs aliēnātiōne  
 5 dicuntur,— quae quidem ego aut omnīnō falsa aut certē  
 minōra opīniōne esse cōfidō,— quantō haec dissimulāre  
 et occultāre quam per nōs cōfirmāre praestet! An nōn,  
 utī corporis vulnera, ita exercitūs incommoda sunt tegenda,  
 nē spem adversāriīs augeāmus?— At etiā ut mediā  
 10 nocte proficiscāmur addunt; quō maiōrem, crēdō, licen-  
 tiam habeant quī peccāre cōentur. Namque huius modī  
 rēs aut pudōre aut metū tenentur, quibus rēbus nox  
 maximē adversāria est. Quārē neque tantī sum animī ut  
 sine spē castra oppugnanda cēnseam, neque tantī timōris  
 15 utī spē dēficiam; atque omnia prius experienda arbitror  
 magnāque ex parte iam mē unā vōbiscum dē rē iūdicium  
 factūrum cōfidō.”

*Curio  
 addresses  
 his soldiers,  
 20 and wins  
 back their  
 allegiance.*

32. Dīmissō cōsiliō cōtiōnem advocat mili-  
 tum. Commemorat quō sit eōrum ūsus studiō  
 ad Corfīnium Caesar, ut magnam partem Italiae  
 beneficiō atque auctōritāte eōrum suam fēcerit.  
 “Vōs enim vestrumque factum,” inquit, “omnia  
 deinceps mūniciplia sunt secūta, neque sine causā et  
 Caesar amīcissimē dē vōbīs et illī gravissimē iūdicāverunt :  
 25 Pompēius enim nullō proeliō pulsus, vestrī factī praeiū-  
 diciō dēmōtus Italiā excessit ; Caesar mē, quem sibi cāris-  
 simum habuit, prōvinciās Siciliam atque Āfricam, sine  
 quibus urbem atque Italiam tuērī non potest, vestrae fidei  
 commīsīt.

30 “At sunt quī vōs hortentur ut ā nōbīs dēsciscātis. Quid





FIG. 34.—CAESAR : NAPLES

enim est illis optātius quam unō tempore et nōs circumvenire et vōs nefariō scelere obstringere? aut quid irātī grāvius dē vōbīs sancire possunt quam ut eōs prōdātis quī sē vōbīs omnia dēbere iūdicant, in eōrum potestātem veniātis quī sē per vōs perisse existimant? An vērō in Hispāniā rēs gestās Caesaris nōn audistis? duōs pulsōs exercitūs, duōs superātōs ducēs, duās receptās prōvinciās? haec ācta diēbus XL quibus in cōspectum adversāriōrum vēnerit Caesar? An quī incolumēs resistere nōn potuerunt perditī resistēt? Vōs autem incertā victoriā Caesarem secūtī dūiudicatā iam bellī fortūnā victōs sequēminī, cum vestri officiī praemia percipere dēbeātis? Dēsertōs enim sē ac prōditōs ā vōbīs dicunt et priōris sacrāmētī mentiōnem faciunt. Vōsne vērō L. Domitium, an vōs Domitius dēsēruit? Nōne extrēmam patī fortūnam parātōs prōiecit ille? nōn sibi clam vōbīs salūtem fugā petivīt? nōn prōditī per illum Caesaris beneficiō estis cōservātī? Sacramētō quidem vōs tenēre quī potuit, cum prōiectīs fascibus et dēpositō imperiō privātus et captus ipse in aliēnam vēnisset potestātem? Fingitur nova religiō, ut, eō neglectō sacramētō quō tenēminī, respiciātis illud quod dēditionē ducis et capitis dēminūtiōne sublātum est.

“At, crēdō, Caesarem probātis, in mē offenditis: quī dē meis in vōs meritīs praedicātūrus nōn sum, quae sunt adhūc et meā voluntāte et vestrā exspectātiōne leviōra; sed tamen suī labōris militēs semper ēventū bellī praemia petivērunt, quī quālis sit futūrus nē vōs quidem dubitātis; diligentiam quidem nostram aut, quem ad finem adhūc rēs prōcessit, fortūnam cūr praeteream? An paenitet vōs, quod salvum atque incolumem exercitum nullā omnīnō

nāve dēsiderātā trādūxerim? quod classem hostium primō  
 impetū adveniēns prōfligāverim? quod bis per bīduum  
 equestrī proeliō superāverim? quod ex portū sinūque ad-  
 versāriōrum cc nāvēs onerātās abdūxerim eōque illōs  
 5 compulerim ut neque pedestrī itinere neque nāvibus  
 commeātū iuvārī possint? Hāc vōs fortunā atque hīs  
 ducibus repudiātis Corfiniēsem ignōminiam, Italiae fu-  
 gam, Hispāniarū dēditionem, — Āfricī bellī praeiūdicia,  
 — sequimini! Equidem mē Caesaris militem dīcī voluī,  
 10 vōs mē imperātōris nōmine appellāvistis: cuius sī vōs  
 paenitet, vestrum vōbīs beneficium remittō; mihi meum  
 restituite nōmen, nē ad contumēliam honōrem dedisse  
 videāmini.”

33. Quā ōrātiōne permōtī milītēs crēbrō etiam dīcentem  
 15 interpellābant, ut magnō cum dolore infidelitātis suspī-  
 cionem sustinēre vidērentur; discēdentem vērō ex cōntiōne  
 ūniversī cohortantur magnō sit animō, neu dubitet proelium  
 committere et suam fidem virtūtemque experīrī. Quō factō  
 commūtātā omnium et voluntāte et opīniōne, cōnsēnsū  
 20 suōrum omnium cōstituit Cūriō, cum primum sit data  
 potestās, proeliō rem committere; posterōque diē prō-  
 ductōs eōdem locō quō superiōre diē cōnsti-  
*Varus's army*  
*is put to rout.* terat in aciē conlocat. Nē Vārus quidem  
 Attius dubitat cōpiās prōdūcere, sive sollicitandī milītēs  
 25 sive aequō locō dimicandī dētur occasiō, nē facultātem  
 praetermittat.

34. Erat vallis inter duās aciēs, ut suprā dēmōstrātum  
 est, nōn ita magna, at difficilī et arduō ascēnsū. Hanc  
 uterque sī adversāriōrum cōpiae trānsire cōnārentur ex-  
 30 spectābat, quō aequiōre locō proelium committeret. . . .

Simul ab sinistrō cornū P. Atti equitātus omnis et unā levis armātūrae interiectī complūrēs, cum sē in vallem dēmitterent, cernēbantur. Ad eōs Cūriō equitātum et duās Marrūcīnōrum cohortēs mittit. Quōrum primum impetum  
 5 equitēs hostium nōn tulērunt, sed admissis equis ad suōs refūgērunt; relictī ab hīs quī unā prōcurrerant levis armātūrae circumveniēbantur atque interficiēbantur ab nostris. Hūc tōta Vārī conversa aciēs suōs fugere et concidī vidēbat. Tum Rebilus, lēgātus Caesaris, quem Cūriō sēcum  
 10 ex Siciliā dūxerat quod magnum habēre ūsum in rē militārī sciēbat, “Perterritum,” inquit, “hostem vidēs, Cūriō: quid dubitās ūtī temporis opportunitāte?” Ille ūnum ēlocūtus, ut memoriā tenērent militēs ea quae prīdiē sibi cōfirmās-  
 sent, sequī sēsē iubet et praecurrit ante omnēs. Adeōque  
 15 erat impedita vallis ut in ascēnsū nisi sublevātī ā suis primī nōn facile ēniterentur. Sed praeoccupātus animus Attiā-  
 nōrum militum timōre et fugā et caede suōrum nihil dē resistendō cōgitābat, omnēsque iam sē ab equitātū circum-  
 venīrī arbitrābantur. Itaque priusquam tēlum abici posset  
 20 aut nostrī propius accēderent, omnis Vārī aciēs terga vertit sēque in castra recēpit.

35. Quā in fugā Fabius Paelignus quīdam ex  
 infimīs ordinibus dē exercitū Cūriōnis prīmus  
 agmen fugientium cōsecūtus magnā vōce Vārum  
 25 nōmine appellāns requirēbat, utī ūnus esse ex  
 eius militibus et monēre aliquid velle ac dicere  
 vidērētur. Ubi ille saepius appellātus respēxit ac restitit  
 et quis esset aut quid vellet quaesivit, umerum apertum  
 gladiō appetiit, paulumque āfuit quīn Vārum interficeret;  
 30 quod ille periculum sublātō ad eius cōnātum scūtō vitāvit.

*Varus has  
 a narrow  
 escape from  
 death. He  
 leads his  
 army into  
 Utica.*

Fabius ā proximīs militibus circumventus interficitur. At fugientium multitudine ac turbā portae castrōrum occupantur atque iter impeditur, plūrēque in eō locō sine vulnere quam in proeliō aut in fugā intereunt; neque multum  
 5 āfuit quā etiam castris expellerentur, ac nōn nullī prōtinus eōdem cursū in oppidum contendērunt. Sed cum loci nātūra et mūnitiō castrōrum aditum prohibēbat, tum quod ad proelium ēgressi Cūriōnis militēs iis rēbus indigēbant quae ad oppugnātiōnem castrōrum erant ūsuī. Itaque  
 10 Cūriō exercitum in castra reducit suis omnibus praeter Fabium incolumibus, ex numerō adversariōrum circiter dc interfectis ac mille vulnerātis; quī omnēs discessū Cūriōnis multique praetereā per simulātiōnem vulnerum ex castris in oppidum propter timōrem sēsē recipiunt. Quā rē ani-  
 15 madversā Vārus et terrōre exercitūs cōgnitō, būcinātore in castris et paucis ad speciem tabernaculis relictis, dē tertiā vigiliā silentiō exercitum in oppidum reducit.

*The towns-  
 people are on  
 the point of  
 20 surrendering  
 to Curio  
 when word  
 comes that  
 Juba is  
 approaching  
 with strong  
 reinforcements.* 36. Posterō diē Cūriō obsidēre Uticam vāllō-  
 que circummūnīre instituit. Erat in oppidō  
 multitūdō insolēns belli diūturnitāte ōti, Uticēnsēs  
 prō quibusdam Caesaris in sē beneficiis illi amī-  
 cissimī, conventus quī ex variis generibus cōn-  
 stāret, terror ex superiōribus proeliis magnus.  
 Itaque dē dēditiōne omnēs iam palam loquēban-  
 25 tur, et cum P. Attiō agēbant nē suā pertināciā  
 omnium fortunās perturbārī vellet. Haec cum agerentur,  
 nūntiī praemissī ab rēge Iubā vērunt, quī illum adesse  
 cum magnis cōpiis dicerent et dē custodiā ac dēfēnsiōne  
 urbis hortārentur. Quae rēs eōrum perterritōs animōs  
 30 cōfirmāvit.

*Annihilation of Curio's army by Juba*

37. Nūntiābantur haec eadem Cūriōnī, sed *Curio with-*  
 aliquamdiū fidēs fieri nōn poterat; tantam habē- *draws to*  
 bat suārum rērum fidūciam. Iamque Caesaris *Camp Cor-*  
 in Hispāniā rēs secundae in Āfricam nūntiīs ac *nelia and*  
 5 litterīs perferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus *sends to Sicily*  
 sublātus nihil contrā sē rēgem nīsūrum existimābat. Sed *for reënforce-*  
 ubi certīs auctōribus comperit minus v et xx mīllibus longē *ments.*  
 ab Uticā eius cōpiās abesse, relictīs mūnitiōnibus sēsē in  
 Castra Cornēlia recēpit. Hūc frūmentum comportāre,  
 10 māteriam cōferre coepit, statimque in Siciliam mīsīt, uti  
 duae legiōnēs reliquusque equitātus ad sē mitterētur.  
 Castra erant ad bellum dūcendum aptissima nātūrā loci et  
 mūnitiōne et maris propinquitāte et aquae et salis cōpiā,  
 cuius magna vīs iam ex proximīs erat salinīs eō congesta.  
 15 Nōn māteria multitudine arborum, nōn frūmentum, cuius  
 erant plēnissimī agrī, dēficere poterat. Itaque omnium  
 suōrum cōsēnsū Cūriō reliquās cōpiās exspectāre et  
 bellum dūcere parābat.

38. Hīs cōstitūtīs rēbus probātisque cōsiliīs *Supposing the*  
 20 ex perfugīs quibusdam oppidānīs audit Iubam *king's main*  
 revocātum finitimō bellō et contrōversiīs Lepti- *force to have*  
 tātānōrum restitisse in rēgnō, Saburram, eius prae- *been detained,*  
 fectum, cum mediocribus cōpiīs missum Uticae *Curio routs*  
 appropinquāre. Hīs auctōribus temere crēdēns *the advance*  
 25 cōsiliū commūtat et proeliō rem committere *guard under*  
 cōstituit. Multum ad hanc rem probandam *Saburra and*  
 adiuvat adulescentia, magnitūdō animī, superiōris temporis *pursues with*  
 prōventus, fidūcia rei bene gerendae. Hīs rēbus impulsus *his whole*  
*army.*

equitatum omnem primā nocte ad castra hostium mittit ad flūmen Bagradam. Quibus praeerat Saburra, dē quō ante erat auditum; sed rēx cum omnibus cōpiis sequēbātur et vi millium passuum intervāllō ā Saburrā cōnsēderat. 5 Equitēs missi noctū iter cōficiunt, imprudentēs atque inopinantēs hostēs adgrediuntur. Numidae enim quādam barbarā cōsuētūdine nullis ordinibus passim cōnsēderant. Hōs oppressōs somnō et dispersōs adorti magnum eōrum numerum interficiunt; multi perterriti profugiunt. Quō 10 factō ad Cūriōnem equitēs revertuntur captīvōsque ad eum dēducunt.

39. Cūriō cum omnibus cōpiis quārtā vigiliā exierat cohortibus v castris praesidiō relictis. Prōgressus millia passuum vi equitēs convēnit, rem gestam cōgnōvit. E cap- 15 tivis quaerit quis castris ad Bagradam praesit; respondent Saburram. Reliqua studiō itineris cōficiendī quaerere praetermittit, proximaque respiciēs signa, “Vidētisne,” inquit, “militēs, captīvōrum orātiōnem cum perfugis convenire? abesse rēgem, exiguās esse cōpiās missās, quae 20 paucis equitibus parēs esse nōn potuerint? Proinde ad praedam, ad glōriam properāte, ut iam dē praemiis vestris et dē referendā grātiā cōgitāre incipiāmus.” Erant per sē magna quae gesserant equitēs, praesertim cum eōrum exiguus numerus cum tantā multitudine Numidārum cōn- 25 ferrētur; haec tamen ab ipsis inflātius commemorābantur, ut dē suis hominēs laudibus libenter praedicant. Multa praetereā spolia praeferēbantur, capti hominēs equique prōducēbantur; ut, quicquid intercederet temporis, hoc omnibus victōriam morārī vidērētur: ita spei Cūriōnis mili- 30 tum studia nōn deērant. Equitēs sequi iubet sēsē iterque

accelerat, ut quam maximē ex fugā perterritōs adorīri posset. At illī itinere tōtius noctis cōfectī subsequī nōn poterant, atque aliī aliō locō resistēbant. Nē haec quidem rēs Cūriōnem ad spem morābātur.

- 5 40. Iuba certior factus ā Saburrā dē nocturnō  
proeliō 11 millia Hispānōrum et Gallōrum equi- *Saburra*  
tum, quōs suae custōdiae causā circum sē habēre *receives aid*  
cōsuērat, et peditum eam partem cui maximē *from Juba.*  
cōfidēbat Saburrae summittit; ipse cum reli- *His plan of*  
10 quīs cōpiīs elephantisque LX lentius subsequitur. *battle is to*  
*lure the*  
*Romans on*  
*by feigning*  
*retreat.*

Suspiciātus ē praemissis equitibus ipsum adfore Cūriōnem Saburra cōpiās equitum peditumque instruit atque his imperat ut simulātiōne timōris paulātim cēdant ac pedem referant; sēsē, cum opus esset, sīgnum proelī datūrum et quod  
15 rem postulāre cōgnōvisset imperātūrum. Cūriō, ad superiōrem spem additā praesentis temporis opiniōne, hostēs fugere arbitrātus cōpiās ex locīs superiōribus in campum dēdūcit.

41. Quibus ex locīs cum longius esset prō- *When the*  
20 gressus, cōfectō iam labōre exercitū xvi millium *Romans are*  
spatiō cōstitit. Saburra aciem cōstituit et cir- *worn out by*  
cumīre ordinēs atque hortārī incipit; sed pedi- *a vain pur-*  
tātū dumtaxat procul ad speciem ūtitur, equitēs *suit, Saburra*  
30 cōgēbant, sed neque longius fugientēs prōsequī neque vehe- *finally joins*  
*battle.*
- in aciem immittit. Nōn deest negotiō Cūriō suōsque hor-  
25 tātur ut spem omnem in virtūte repōnant. Nē militibus quidem ut dēfessīs neque equitibus ut paucīs et labōre cōnfectīs studium ad pugnandum virtūsque deērat; sed hī erant numerō cc, reliquī in itinere substitierant. Hī quamcumque in partem impetum fēcerant, hostēs locō cēdere  
30 cōgēbant, sed neque longius fugientēs prōsequī neque vehe-

mentius equōs incitāre poterant. At equitātus hostium ab utrōque cornū circumīre aciem nostram et āversōs prōterere incipit. Cum cohortēs ex aciē prōcucurrissent, Numidae integrī celeritāte impetum nostrōrum effugiēbant rūsusque  
 5 ad ōrdinēs suōs sē recipientēs circumībant et ab aciē exclūdēbant. Sic neque in locō manēre ōrdinēsque servāre neque prōcurrere et cāsum subire tūtum vidēbātur. Hostium cōpiae summissis ab rēge auxiliis crēbrō augēbantur; nostrōs virēs lassitūdine dēficiēbant, simul iī quī vulnera  
 10 accēperant neque aciē excēdere neque in locum tūtum referri poterant, quod tōta aciēs equitātū hostium circumdata tenēbātur. Hi dē suā salūte dēspērāntēs, ut extrēmō vītāe tempore hominēs facere cōsuērunt, aut suam mortem miserābantur aut parentēs suōs commendābant, sī quōs ex  
 15 eō periculō fortūna servāre potuisset. Plēna erant omnia timōris et lūctūs.

*Curio and  
 almost his  
 whole army  
 perish.*

42. Cūriō ubi perterritis omnibus neque hortātiōnēs suās neque precēs audiri intellegit,  
 ūnam ut in miseris rēbus spem reliquam salūtis  
 20 esse arbitrātus proximōs collēs capere ūniversōs atque eō sīgna ferre iubet. Hōs quoque praeoccupat missus ā Saburrā equitātus. Tum vērō ad summam dēspērātiōnem nostrī perveniunt, et partim fugientēs ab equitātū interficiuntur, partim integrī prōcumbunt. Hortātur Cūriōnem  
 25 Cn. Domitius, praefectus equitum, cum paucis equitibus circumsistēs, ut fugā salūtem petat atque in castra contendat, et sē ab eō nōn discessūrum pollicētur. At Cūriō numquam sē, āmissō exercitū quem ā Caesare fidei commissum accēperit, in eius cōnspectum reversūrum cōfirmat,  
 30 atque ācritur proeliāns interficitur. Equitēs ex proeliō

perpaucī sē recipiunt; sed iī quōs ad novissimum agmen equōrum reficiendōrum causā substitisse dēmōnstrātum est, fugā tōtius exercitūs procul animadversā, sēsē incolumēs in castra cōferunt. Militēs ad ūnum omnēs interficiuntur.

- 5 43. Hīs rēbus cōgnitis Mārcius Rūfus quaes-  
tor in castrīs relictus ā Cūriōne cohortātur suōs  
nē animō dēficient. Illi ōrant atque obsecrant  
ut in Siciliam nāvibus reportentur. Pollicētur  
magistrisque imperat nāvium ut primō vespere  
10 omnēs scaphās ad lītus appulsās habeant. Sed tantus fuit  
omnium terror ut aliī adesse cōpiās Iubae dīcerent, aliī cum  
legiōnibus instāre Vārum iamque sē pulverem venientium  
cernere (quārum rērum nihil omnīnō acciderat), aliī classem  
hostium celeriter advolātūrā suspicārentur. Itaque per-  
15 territis omnibus sibi quisque cōsulēbat. Quī in classe  
erant proficisci properābant. Hōrum fuga nāvium onerā-  
riārum magistrōs incitābat; paucī lēnunculi ad officium  
imperiumque conveniēbant. Sed tanta erat complētis  
lītoribus contentiō quī potissimum ex magnō numerō cōn-  
20 scenderent, ut multitudīne atque onere nōn nulli dēprime-  
rentur, reliquī ob timōrem propius adire tardārentur.

44. Quibus rēbus accidit ut paucī militēs pa-  
trēsque familiae, quī aut grātiā aut misericordiā  
valērent aut ad nāvēs adnāre possent, recepti in  
25 Siciliam incolumēs pervenirent. Reliquae cōpiae  
missis ad Vārum noctū lēgātōrum numerō centuriōnibus  
sēsē ei dēdidērunt. Quārum cohortium militēs posterō diē  
ante oppidum Iuba cōnspicātus, suam esse praedicāns  
praedam, magnam partem eōrum interfici iussit, paucōs  
30 relictōs in rēgnum praemisit, cum Vārus suam fidem ab eō

*Panic among  
Curio's sol-  
diers who  
had been left  
to guard the  
camp.*

*A few escape  
to Sicily, the  
rest fall into  
the hands of  
Iuba.*

laedī quererētur neque resistere audēret. Ipse equō in oppidum invectus prōsequentibus complūribus senātōribus, quō in numerō erat Ser. Sulpicius et Licinius Damasippus, quae fierī vellet Uticae cōstituit atque imperāvit, 5 diēbusque post paucis sē in rēgnum cum omnibus cōpiis recēpit.

## LIBER TERTIVS

### 1-5. PREPARATIONS FOR THE CAMPAIGN IN THE EAST, 49 B.C.

#### *Caesar at Rome and Brundisium in December*

1. Dictatōre habente comitia Caesare cōsulēs creantur Iūlius Caesar et P. Servilius; is enim erat annus quō per lēgēs eī cōsulem fieri liceret. His rēbus cōfectis, cum fidēs tōtā Italiā esset angustior neque crēditae pecūniae solverentur, cōstituit ut arbitri darentur; per eōs fierent aestimatiōnēs possessiōnū et rērum, quanti quaeque eārum ante bellum fuisset, atque eae crēditōribus trāderentur. Hoc et ad timōrem novārum tabulārum tollendum minuendumve, quī ferē bella et cīvilēs dissēsiōnēs sequi cōsuēvit, et ad dēbitōrum tuendam exīstimatiōnem esse aptissimum exīstimāvit. Itemque praetōribus tribūnisque plēbis rogātiōnēs ad populum ferentibus, nōn nullōs ambitūs Pompēiā lēge damnātōs illis temporibus quibus in urbe praesidia legiōnum Pompēius habuerat (quae iūdicia aliis audientibus iūdicibus, aliis sententiam ferentibus singulis diēbus erant perfecta) in integrum restituit, quī sē illi initiō cīvilis bellī obtulerant, sī suā operā in bellō ūti vellet — pro-

*Caesar is elected consul for 48 B.C. Measures for the relief both of debtors and of creditors, and also of men who had been unjustly convicted of bribery.*

inde aestimāns ac sī ūsus esset, quoniam suī fēcissent potestātem. Statuerat enim prius hōs iūdiō populī dēbēre restituī quam suō beneficiō vidērī receptōs, nē aut ingrātus in referendā grātiā aut adrogāns in praeripiendō  
5 populī beneficiō vidērētur.

*Caesar goes  
to Brun-  
disium and  
prepares to  
cross over to  
Greece. Size  
10 and condition  
of his army.*

2. His rēbus et fēriīs Latīnīs comitiisque omnibus perficiendīs xī diēs tribuit dictātūrāque sē abdicat et ab urbe proficiscitur Brundisiumque pervenit. Eō legiōnēs xii, equitātum omnem venīre iusserat. Sed tantum nāvium repperit ut angustē lxx cohortēs legiōnāriōrum militum, dc equitēs trānsportārī possent. Hoc ūnum Caesarī ad celeritātem cōficiendī bellī dēfuit. Atque eae ipsae cōpiaae hōc infrequentiorēs impōnuntur, quod multī Gallicīs tot  
15 bellīs dēfēcērant, longumque iter ex Hispāniā magnum numerum dētinerat, et gravis autumnus in Āpūliā circumque Brundisium ex salūberrimīs Galliae et Hispāniae regiōnibus omnem exercitum valētūdine temptāverat.

*Pompey's preparations during the year*

*Pompey's  
supplies of  
20 ships and  
money.*

3. Pompēius annum spatium ad comparandās cōpiās nactus, quod vacuum ā bellō atque ab hoste ōtiōsum fuerat, magnam ex Asiā Cycladibusque insulīs, Corcyrā, Athēnīs, Pontō, Bithyniā, Syriā, Ciliciā, Phoenicē, Aegyptō classem coēgerat, magnam omnibus locīs aedificandam cūrāverat; magnam imperātam  
25 Asiae, Syriae rēgibusque omnibus et dynastīs et tetrarchīs et liberīs Achāiae populīs pecūniā exēgerat, magnam societātēs eārum prōvinciārum quās ipse obtinēbat sibi numerāre coēgerat.

4. Legiōnēs cōnfēcerat cīvium Rōmānōrum *Enumeration of his land forces.*  
 VIII: v ex Italiā, quās trādūxerat; ūnam ex  
 Ciliciā veterānam, quam factam ex duābus ge-  
 mellam appellābat; ūnam ex Crētā et Macedoniā ex vete-  
 5 rānīs militibus quī dīmissī ā superiōribus imperātōribus in  
 hīs prōvinciīs cōnsēderant; duās ex Asiā, quās Lentulus  
 cōnsul cōnscribendās cūrāverat. Praetereā magnum nume-  
 rum ex Thessaliā, Boeōtiā, Achāiā Ēpīrōque supplēmenti  
 nōmine in legiōnēs distribuerat; hīs Antōniānōs militēs  
 10 admiscuerat. Praeter hās exspectābat cum Scipiōne ex  
 Syriā legiōnēs II. Sagittāriōs Crētā, Lacedaemone, ex  
 Pontō atque Syriā reliquīsque cīvitatibus III millium numerō  
 habēbat, funditōrum cohortēs sescēnāriās II, equitum VII  
 millia. Ex quibus DC Gallōs Dēiotarus addūxerat, D Ario-  
 15 barzānēs ex Cappadociā; ad eundem numerum Cotys  
 ex Thrāciā dederat et Sadalam filium mīserat; ex  
 Macedoniā CC erant, quibus Rhascypolis praeerat, ex-  
 cellenti virtūte; D Alexandriā, Gallōs Germānōsque,  
 quōs ibi A. Gabīnius praesidi causā apud rēgem Ptolō-  
 20 maeum reliquerat, Pompēius filius cum classe addūxerat;  
 DCCC ex servīs suis pāstōrumque suōrum numerō coēgerat;  
 CCC Tarcondārius Castor et Domnilāus ex Gallograeciā  
 dederant (hōrum alter ūnā vēnerat, alter filium mīserat);  
 CC ex Syriā ā Commāgēnō Antiochō, cui magna Pompēius  
 25 praemia tribuerat, missī erant, in hīs plērique hippo-  
 toxotae. Hūc Dardanōs, Bessōs partim mercēnāriōs,  
 partim imperiō aut grātiā comparātōs, item Macedonēs,  
 Thessalōs ac reliquārum gentium et cīvitatū adiēce-  
 rat, atque eum quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus numerum  
 30 explēverat.

*His grain supplies. Disposition of his forces for the winter. Officers of his fleet.* 5. Frūmentī vim maximam ex Thessaliā, Asiā, Aegyptō, Crētā, Cŷrēnīs reliquisque regiōnibus comparāverat. Hiemāre Dyrrachī, Apollōniae omnibusque oppidīs maritimīs cōstituerat, ut mare trānsire Caesarem prohibēret; eiusque rei causā omnī ōrā maritimā classem disposuerat. Praeerat Aegyptiīs nāvibus Pompēius filius, Asiaticīs D. Laelius et C. Triārius, Syriacīs C. Cassius, Rhodiīs C. Mārcellus cum C. Copōniō, Liburnicae atque Achāicae classī Scribōnius 10 Libō et M. Octāvius. Tōti tamen officiō maritimō M. Bibulus praepositus cūncta administrābat; ad hunc summa imperi respiciēbat.

6-30. THE EASTERN CAMPAIGN UNTIL ANTONY'S UNION WITH CAESAR, JAN.-APR., 48 B.C.

*Caesar's unexpected arrival in Epirus*

*Caesar crosses with seven legions from Brundisium to Palaeste, January 4-5.* 6. Caesar ut Brundisium vēnit, cōtiōnātus apud milītēs, quoniam prope ad finem labōrum ac periculōrum esset perventum, aequō animō mancipia atque impedimenta in Italiā relinquerent, ipsī expeditī nāvēs cōscenderent, quō maior numerus milītum posset impōnī, omniaque ex victōriā et ex suā liberālitate spērarent, conclāmantibus omnibus im- 20 perāret quod vellet, quodcumque imperāvisset sē aequō animō esse factūrōs, II. Nōn. Iān. nāvēs solvit. Impositae, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est, legiōnēs VII. Postridiē terram attigit Cerauniōrum saxa inter et alia loca periculōsa quē- tam nactus statiónem; et portūs omnēs timēns, quod tenērī 25 ab adversāriīs arbitrābantur, ad eum locum quī appellābātur



Palaestē, omnibus navibus ad ūnam incolumibus, militēs exposuit.

*His landing is unopposed.* 7. Erant Ōrici Lucrētius Vespillō et Minucius Rūfus cum Asiaticis nāvibus xviii, quibus iussū

5 D. Laeli praeerant, M. Bibulus cum nāvibus cx Corcȳrae. Sed neque illi sibi cōnfisi ex portū prōdire sunt ausi, cum Caesar omninō xii nāvēs longās praesidiō dūxisset, in quibus erant cōstrātae iiii, neque Bibulus impeditis nāvibus dispersisque rēmigibus satis mātūrē occurrit, quod  
10 prius ad continentem vīsus est Caesar quam dē eius adventū fāma omninō in eās regiōnēs perferrētur.

*Caesar's ships, while returning for the rest of his troops, are 15 attacked and part of them burned by Bibulus, who then stations a guard along the whole coast.* 8. Expositis militibus nāvēs eādem nocte Brundisium ā Caesare remittuntur, ut reliquae legiōnēs equitatusque trānsportārī possent. Huic officiō praepositus erat Fūsius Calēnus lēgātus, quī celeritatem in trānsportandis legiōnibus adhiberet. Sed sērius ā terrā prōvectae nāvēs neque ūsae nocturnā aurā in redeundō offendērunt. Bibulus enim Corcȳrae certior  
20 factus dē adventū Caesaris, spērāns alicui sē partī onustārum nāvium occurrere posse, inānibus occurrit et nactus circiter xxx in eās indiligentiae suae atque errōris irācundiam ērūpit omnēsque incendit eōdemque ignī nautās dominōsque nāvium interfēcit, magnitūdine poenae reliquōs  
25 dēterrērī spērāns. Hōc cōfectō negōtiō ā Sāsōnis ad Curici portum statiónēs litoraue omnia longē lātēque classibus occupāvit, custōdiisque diligentius dispositis ipse gravissimā hieme in nāvibus excubāns neque ūllum labōrem aut mūnus dēspiciēns, aequē subsidēns et exspectāns sī in  
30 Caesaris congressum cōpiārum venīre posset. . . .

\*

\*

\*

\*

\*

\*

\*

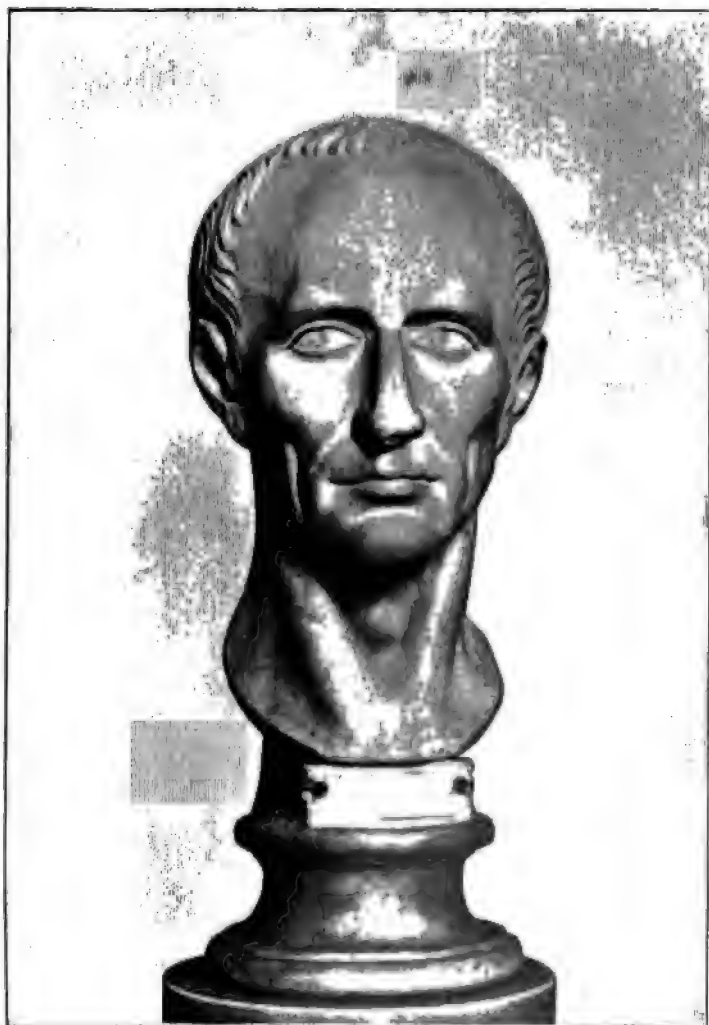


FIG. 35. — CAESAR : BRITISH MUSEUM



*First military operations of Caesar and Pompey. Caesar's efforts for peace negotiations*

10. Dēmōnstrāvimus L. Vibullium Rūfum, *Caesar had commissioned Vibullius in the previous summer to bear proposals for peace to Pompey.*  
 Pompēi praefectum, bis in potestātem pervē-  
 nisse Caesaris atque ab eō esse dimissum, semel  
 ad Corfinium, iterum in Hispāniā. Hunc prō  
 5 suis beneficiis Caesar idōneum iūdicāverat quem  
 cum mandātis ad Cn. Pompēium mitteret,  
 eundemque apud Cn. Pompēium auctoritātem habēre  
 intellegēbat. Erat autem haec summa mandātōrum:  
 Dēbēre utrumque pertināciae finem facere et ab armis  
 10 discēdere neque amplius fortūnam periclitārī. Satis esse  
 magna utrimque incommoda accepta, quae prō disci-  
 plinā et praeceptis habēre possent ut reliquos cāsūs  
 timērent: illum āmissā Siciliā et Sardiniā duābusque  
 Hispāniis et cohortibus in Italiā atque Hispāniā civium  
 15 Rōmānōrum centum atque xxx; sē morte Cūriōnis et  
 dētrīmentō Āfricāni exercitūs, Antōnī militumque dēdi-  
 tiōne ad Curictam. Proinde civibus ac rei pūblicae  
 parcerent, cum quantum in bellō fortūna posset iam  
 ipsi incommodis suis satis essent documentō. Hoc ūnum  
 20 esse tempus dē pāce agendī, dum sibi uterque cōnfi-  
 deret et parēs ambō vidērentur; sī vērō alterī paulum  
 modo tribuisset fortūna, nōn esse ūsūm condiciōnibus  
 pācis eum quī superior vidērētur, neque fore aequā parte  
 contentum quī sē omnia habitūrum cōnfideret. Condi-  
 25 ciōnēs pācis, quoniam antea convenire nōn potuissent,  
 Rōmae ab senātū et ā populō peti dēbēre. Id interesse  
 rei pūblicae et ipsis placēre oportēre. / Si uterque in  
 cōntiōne statim iūrāvisset sē trīduō proximō exercitum

dīmissūrum, dēpositīs armīs auxiliisque, quibus nunc cōfiderent, necessariō populi senātūsque iūdicīō fore utrumque contentum. Haec quō facilius Pompēiō probārī possent, omnēs suās terrestres cōpiās urbiumque praesidia dēductūrum.

5 *Vibullius, who had been waiting at Corcyra for Pompey's return from eastern Macedonia, upon hearing of* 11. Vibullius expositus Corcȳrae nōn minus  
*Caesar's arrival in Epirus, at once hastens to Pompey with the news.* necessārium esse exīstimāvit dē repentinō adventū Caesaris Pompēium fierī certīorem, utī ad id cōnsilium capere posset, quam dē mandātīs agī; atque ideō continuātō noctem ac diem  
 10 itinere atque omnibus hospitīs mūtātīs ad celebritātem iūmentis ad Pompēium contendit, ut adesse Caesarem nūntiāret. Pompēius erat eō tempore in Candāviā iterque ex Macedoniā in hiberna Apollōniam Dyrrachiumque habēbat.

15 Sed rē novā perturbātus maiōribus itineribus Apollōniam petere coepit, nē Caesar ōrae maritimae cīvitatēs occupāret. At ille expositīs militibus eōdem diē Ōricum proficiscitur. Quō cum vēnisset, L. Torquātus, quī  
*Caesar marches to Oricum,* iussū Pompēi oppidō praeerat praesidiumque  
 20 *which is surrendered without fighting.* ibi Parthīnōrum habēbat, cōnātus portīs clausīs oppidum dēfendere, cum Graecōs mūrum ascendere atque arma capere iubēret, illī autem sē  
 contrā imperium populī Rōmānī pugnātūrōs negārent, oppidānī etiam suā sponte Caesarem recipere cōnārentur,  
 25 dēspērātīs omnibus auxiliīs portās aperuit et sē atque oppidum Caesarī dēdidit, incolumisque ab eō cōservātus est.

*Apollonia and other towns are surrendered to Caesar.* 30 12. Receptō Caesar Ōricō nullā interpositā morā Apollōniam proficiscitur. Eius adventū auditō L. Staberius, quī ibi praeerat, aquam comportāre in arcem atque eam mūnīre ob-

sidēsque ab Apollōniātibus exigere coepit. Illi vērō datūrōs sē negāre neque portās cōnsulī praeclūsūrōs, neque sibi iūdicium sūmptūrōs contrā atque omnis Italia populusque Rōmānus iūdicāvisset. Quōrum cōgnitā volūntāte clam profugit Apollōniā Staberius. Illi ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittunt oppidōque recipiunt. Hōs sequuntur Byllidēsēs et Amantīnī et reliquae finitimae civitatēs tōtaque Ēpīros, et lēgātīs ad Caesarem missīs quae imperāret factūrōs pollicentur.

- 10 13. At Pompēius cōgnitis hīs rēbus quae erant Ōrici atque Apollōniae gestae, Dyrrachiō timēns diurnīs eō nocturnisque itineribus contendit. Simul Caesar appropinquāre dicēbātur, tantusque terror incidit eius exercitūs, quod pro-
- 15 perāns noctem diēi coniūxerat neque iter intermiserat, ut paene omnēs ex Ēpīrō finitimisque regiōnibus signa relinquerent, complūrēs arma prōicerent ac fugae simile iter vidērētur. Sed cum prope Dyrrachium Pompēius cōstitisset castraque mētārī iussisset, perterritō
- 20 etiam tum exercitū princeps Labiēnus prōcēdit iūratque sē eum nōn dēsertūrum eundemque cāsum subitūrum, quemcumque eī fortūna tribuisset. Hoc idem reliquī iūrant lēgātī; hōs tribūnī militum centuriōnēsque sequuntur, atque idem omnis exercitus iūrat. Caesar, praeceptō itinere ad
- 25 Dyrrachium, finem properandī facit castraque ad flūmen Apsum pōnit in finibus Apollōniātium, castellīs vicisque bene meritae civitatīs ut esset praesidiō; ibique reliquārum ex Italiā legiōnum adventum exspectāre et sub pellibus hiemāre cōstituit. Hoc idem Pompēius fēcit et trāns flūmen
- 30 Apsum positīs castrīs eō cōpiās omnēs auxiliaque condūxit.

*Pompey cuts  
Caesar off  
from  
Dyrrachium.  
Both armies  
encamp for  
the winter  
on opposite  
banks of the  
Apsus.*

*Caesar warns  
his fleet at  
Brundisium  
that the enemy  
are patrolling  
the whole  
coast.*

14. Calēnus legiōnibus equitibusque Brundisi in nāvēs impositis, ut erat praeceptum ā Caesare, quantum nāvium facultātem habēbat, nāvēs solvit, paulumque ā portū prōgressus litterās ā Caesare accēpit, quibus est certior factus portūs litoraue omnia classibus adversāriōrum tenērī. Quō cōgnitō sē in portum recipit nāvēsque omnēs revocat. Ūna ex hīs, quae persevērāvit neque imperiō Calēnī obtemperāvit, quod erat sine militibus privātōque cōnsiliō administrābatur, dēlāta Ōricum atque ā Bibulo expugnāta est; quī dē servīs liberīsque omnibus ad impūberēs supplicium sūmit et ad ūnum interficit. Ita in exiguō tempore magnōque cāsū tōtius exercitūs salūs cōstitit.

*Privation on  
Pompey's  
ships. Libo  
and Bibulus  
request an  
interview  
with Caesar.*

15. Bibulus, ut suprà dēmōnstrātum est, erat cum classe ad Ōricum, et sicutī marī portibusque Caesarem prohibēbat, ita ipse omnī terrā eārum regiōnum prohibēbatur: praesidiīs enim dispositis omnia litora ā Caesare tenēbantur, neque ligandi atque aquandi neque nāvēs ad terram dēligandi potestās fiēbat. Erat rēs in magnā difficultāte, summisque angustiīs rerum necessariārum premēbantur, adeō ut cōgerentur sicutī reliquum commeātum ita ligna atque aquam Corcyrā nāvibus onerāriīs supportāre; atque etiam ūnō tempore accidit ut, difficiliōribus ūsī tempestātibus, ex pellibus quibus erant tēctae nāvēs nocturnum excipere rōrem cōgerentur. Quās tamen difficultātēs patienter atque aequō animō ferēbant, neque sibi nūdanda litora et relinquendōs portūs existimābant.

Sed cum essent in quibus dēmōnstrāvi angustiīs, ac sē Libō cum Bibulō coniūnxisset, loquuntur ambō ex nāvibus

cum M'. Aciliō et Stātiō Murcō lēgātis, quōrum alter oppidīs maritimīs, alter praesidiīs terrestribus praeerat, velle sē dē maximīs rēbus cum Caesare loquī, sī sibi eius rei facultās dētur. Hūc addunt pauca rei cōfirmandae causā, ut  
 5 dē compositiōne āctūrī vidērentur. Interim postulant ut sint indūtiaē, atque ab iīs impetrant. Magnum enim quod adferēbant vidēbātur, et Caesarem idem summē sciēbant cupere, et prōfectum aliquid Vibullī mandātis existimābātur.

- 10 16. Caesar eō tempore cum legiōne unā profectus ad recipiendās ulteriōrēs civitatēs et rem frūmentāriam expediendam, quā angustā ūtēbātur, erat ad Būthrōtum, oppositum Corcȳrae. Ibi certior ab Aciliō et Murcō per litterās factus  
 15 dē postulātis Libōnis et Bibulī legiōnem relinquit, ipse Ōricum revertitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ēvocantur illi ad conloquium. Prōdit Libō atque excūsāt Bibulum, quod is irācundiā summā erat inimicitiasque habēbat etiam privātās cum Caesare ex aedilitate et prae-  
 20 tūrā conceptās: ob eam causam conloquium vitāsse, nē rēs maximae spei maximaeque utilitātis eius irācundiā impedirentur. Suam summam esse ac fuisse semper voluntātem ut compōnerētur atque ab armīs discēderētur, sed potestātem eius rei nūllam habēre, proptereā quod dē cōsili  
 25 sentiā summam bellī rērumque omnium Pompēiō permiserint. Sed postulātis Caesaris cōgnitis missūrōs ad Pompēium, atque illum reliqua per sē āctūrum hortantibus ipsīs. Intereā manērent indūtiaē dum ab illō rediri posset, nēve alter alterī nocēret. Hūc addit pauca dē causā et dē  
 30 cōpiīs auxiliīsque suis.

*Libo proposes that negotiations for peace be opened with Pompey, and that meanwhile a truce be granted.*

*Caesar drops the negotiations, seeing that they are only a pretext for the sake of relieving the fleet.*

17. Quibus dē rēbus neque tum respondendum Caesar existimāvit, neque nunc ut memoriae prōdantur satis causae putāmus. Postulābat Caesar ut lēgātōs sibi ad Pompēium sine periculō mittere licēret, idque ipsī fore reciperent aut acceptōs per sē ad eum perducērent. Quod ad indūtiās pertinēret, sic bellī ratiōnem esse dīvisam ut illī classe nāvēs auxiliaque sua impedirent, ipse ut aquā terrāque eōs prohibēret. Sī hoc sibi remittī vellent, remitterent ipsī dē maritimīs custōdiīs; sī illud tenērent, sē quoque id retentūrum. Nihilō minus tamen agī posse dē compositionē, ut haec nōn remitterentur, neque hanc rem illī esse impedimentō. Libō neque lēgātōs Caesaris recipere neque periculum praestāre eōrum, sed tōtam rem ad Pompēium reicere ūnum, instāre dē indūtiīs vehementissimēque contendere. Quem ubi Caesar intellēxit praesentis periculī atque inopiae vitandae causā omnem ōratiōnem instituisse neque ūllam spem aut condiōnem pācis adferre, ad reliquam cōgitatiōnem bellī sēsē recēpit.

*Death of Bibulus on shipboard. Pompey's rejection of the peace proposals made through Vibullius.*

18. Bibulus multōs diēs terrā prohibitus et graviōre morbō ex frīgore ac labōre implicitus, cum neque cūrārī posset neque susceptum officium dēserere vellet, vim morbī sustinēre nōn potuit. Eō mortuō ad nēminem ūnum summa imperī rediit, sed sēparatim suam quisque classem ad arbitrium suum administrābat. Vibullius sēdātō tumultū quem repentinus adventus Caesaris concitāverat, ubi primum ē rē visum est, adhibītō Libōne et L. Luccēiō et Theophane, quibuscum commūnicāre dē maximīs rēbus Pompēius cōnsueverat, dē mandātis

Caesaris agere instituit. Quem ingressum in sermōnem Pompēius interpellāvit et loquī plūra prohibuit. "Quid mihi," inquit, "aut vītā aut civitāte opus est quam beneficiō Caesaris habēre vidēbor? Cuius rei opīniō tolli nōn poterit, cum in Italiam, ex quā profectus sum, reductus exīstimābor." Bellō perfectō ab iis Caesar haec facta cōgnōvit quī sermōnī interfuērunt. Cōnātus tamen nihilō minus est aliis ratiōnibus per conloquia dē pāce agere. ✓

19. Inter bīna castra Pompēi atque Caesaris  
 10 ūnum flūmen intererat Apsus, crēbraque inter  
 sē conloquia milītēs habēbant, neque ūllum inter-  
 rim tēlum per pactionēs loquentium trāiciēbā-  
 tur. Mittit P. Vatīnium lēgātum ad rīpam ip-  
 sam flūminis, quī ea quae maximē ad pācem pertinēre  
 15 vidērentur ageret. Is crēbrō magnā vōce prōnūtiāvit  
 licēretne cīvibus ad cīvēs tūtō lēgātōs mittere, quod etiam  
 fugitivīs ab saltū Pyrēnaeō praedōnibusque licuisset, prae-  
 sertim cum id agerent, nē cīvēs cum cīvibus armīs dēcer-  
 tārent? Multa suppliciter locūtus est, ut dē suā atque  
 20 omnium salūte dēbēbat, silentiōque ab utrīsque milītibus  
 auditus. Respōnsum est ab alterā parte A. Varrōnem  
 profitērī sē alterō diē ad conloquium ventūrum atque ūnā  
 vīsūrum quem ad modum tūtō lēgātī venīre et quae vellent  
 expōnere possent; certumque eī rei tempus cōstituitur.  
 25 Quō cum isset posterō diē Vatīnius, magna utrimque mul-  
 titūdō convēnit; magnaquē erat exspectātiō eius rei, atque  
 omnium animī intentī esse ad pācem vidēbantur. Quā ex  
 frequentīā T. Labiēnus prōdit; is omissō Varrōne oblo-  
 quī dē pāce atque altercārī cum Vatīniō incipit. Quōrum  
 30 mediam certātiōnem interrumpunt subitō undique tēla

*Another  
 effort of  
 Caesar for  
 peace is  
 defeated by  
 Labienus.*

missa; quae ille obtectus armis militum vitavit: vulnerantur tamen complures, in his Cornélius Balbus, M. Plōtius, L. Tiburtius, centuriōnēs militesque nōn nulli. Tum Labiēnus: “Dēsinite ergō dē compositiōne loqūi; nam nobīs  
5 nisi Caesaris capite relātō pāx esse nūlla potest.”

\* \* \* \* \*

*Libo block-*  
*ades Caesar's*  
*fleet at*  
*Brundisium,*  
*and destroys*  
*a few of his*  
*ships.*  
10 23. Libō, profectus ab Ōricō cum classe cui praeerat nāvium L, Brundisium vēnit insulam-  
que quae contrā portum Brundisiūm est occu-  
pavit, quod praestāre arbitrābātur ūnum locum,  
quā necessariū nostrīs erat ēgressus, quam om-  
nia litora ac portūs custodiā classis tuērī. Hīc repentinō  
adventū nāvēs onerariās quāsdam nactus incendit et ūnam  
frūmentō onustam abdūxit magnumque nostrīs terrōrem  
iniēcit, et noctū militibus ac sagittariis in terrā expositis  
15 praesidium equitum dēiēcit, et adeō loci opportunitate prō-  
fēcit uti ad Pompēium litterās mitteret, nāvēs reliquās, si  
vellet, subdūci et reficī iubēret; suā classe auxilia sēsē  
Caesaris prohibītūrum.

*Antony com-*  
*pels Libo to*  
*give up the*  
*blockade.*  
20 24. Erat eō tempore Antōnius Brundisī. Is  
virtūte militum cōnfisus scaphās nāvium mag-  
nārū circiter LX crātibus pluteisque contēxit  
eōque milites dēlēctōs imposuit atque eās in  
litore plūribus locis sēparatim disposuit nāvēsque trirēmēs  
duās, quās Brundisī faciendās cūrāverat, per causam exer-  
25 cendōrū rēmigum ad faucēs portūs prōdire iussit. Hās  
cum audācius prōgressās Libō vidisset, spērāns intercipi  
posse quadrirēmēs v ad eās misit. Quae cum nāvibus  
nostrīs appropinquāssent, nostrī interiōrem in portum refu-

giēbant, illi studiō incitātī incautiūsequēbantur. Iam ex omnibus partibus subitō Antōniānae scaphae signō datō sē in hostēs incitāvērunt, primōque impetū ūnam ex hīs quad-rirēmibus cum rēmigibus dēfēnsōribusque suis cēpērunt, 5 reliquās turpiter refugere coēgērunt. Ad hoc dētrīmen-tum accessit ut equitibus per ōram maritimam ab Antōniō dispositis aquārī prohibērentur. Quā necessitāte et ignō-miniā permōtus Libō discessit ā Brundisiō obsessiōnemque nostrōrum omisit.

*Antony joins Caesar*

10 25. Multī iam mēnsēs erant et hiems praeci-pitāverat, neque Brundisiō nāvēs legiōnēsque ad Caesarem veniēbant. Ac nōn nūllae eius rei praetermissae occāsionēs Caesarī vidēbantur, quod certī saepe flāverant ventī, quibus necessā-  
 Caesar gives strict orders for his fleet at Brundisium to cross at the first opportunity.

15 riō committendum exīstimābat. Quantōque eius amplius prōcesserat temporis, tantō erant alacriōrēs ad custōdiās quī classibus praeerant, maiōremque fidūciam prohibendī habēbant; et crēbris Pompēi litteris instigābantur, quoniam primō venientem Caesarem nōn prohibuissent, at reliquōs  
 20 eius exitūs impedirent; dūriusque cotīdiē tempus ad trāns-portandum lēniōribus ventīs exspectābant. Quibus rēbus permōtus Caesar Brundisium ad suōs sevērīus scrīpsit, nactī idōneum ventum nē occāsionem nāvīgandī dīmitte-rent, sive ad litora Apollōniātium sive ad Labeātium cur-  
 25 sum dērigere atque eō nāvēs ēicere possent. Haec ā cus-tōdiīs classium loca maximē vacābant, quae sē longius ā portibus committere nōn audērent.

26. Illi adhibītā audāciā et virtūte, administrantibus M. Antōniō et Fūfiō Calēnō, multum ipsis militibus hortanti-

*The crossing  
is safely  
made in spite  
of the enemy's  
pursuit.*

bus neque ūllum periculum prō salūte Caesaris  
recūsantibus, nactī austrum nāvēs solvunt atque  
alterō diē Apollōniam praetervehuntur. Quī  
cum essent ex continentī vīsī, Cōpōnius, quī  
5 Dyrrachī classī Rhodiae praeerat, nāvēs ex portū ēdūcit;  
et cum iam nostrīs remissiōre ventō appropinquāsset, idem  
auster incrēbruit nostrisque praesidiō fuit. Neque vērō  
ille ob eam causam cōnātū dēsistēbat, sed labōre et perse-  
vērantiā nautārum sē vim tempestātis superāre posse  
10 spērābat, praetervectōsque Dyrrachium magnā vī venti  
nihilō sētius sequēbātur. Nostrī ūsī fortunae beneficio  
tamen impetum classis timēbant, sī forte ventus remīs-  
set; et nactī portum quī appellātur Nymphaeum, ultrā  
Lissum millia passuum III, eō nāvēs intrōdūxērunt (quī  
15 portus ab Āfricō tegēbātur, ab austrō nōn erat tūtus), le-  
viusque tempestātis quam classis periculum aestimāvērunt.  
Quō simul atque intrō est itum, incrēdibili fēlicitāte auster,  
quī per biduum flāverat, in Āfricum sē vertit.

*The pursuers  
20 are wrecked  
by a storm.*

27. Hic subitam commūtatiōnem fortunae  
vidēre licuit: quī modo sibi timuerant, hōs tū-  
tissimus portus recipiēbat; quī nostrīs nāvibus  
periculum intulerant dē suō timēre cōgēbantur; itaque  
tempore commūtātō tempestās et nostrōs tēxit et nāvēs  
Rhodiās adflixit, ut ad ūnam omnēs, cōnstrātae numerō xvi,  
25 ēlīderentur et naufragiō interīrent, et ex magnō rēmīgum  
prōpugnātōrumque numerō pars ad scopulōs adlīsa inter-  
ficerētur, pars ab nostrīs dētraherētur; quōs omnēs cōn-  
servātōs Caesar domum remīsīt.

28. Nostrae nāvēs duae tardius cursū cōnfectō in noc-  
30 tem coniectae, cum ignōrārent quem locum reliquae cēpis-

sent, contrā Lissum in ancoris cōstitērunt. Hās *Fortunes of two of Caesar's ships which had been belated.*  
 scaphīs minōribusque nāvigīs complūribus suis  
 missīs Otācilius Crassus, quī Lissī praeerat,  
 expugnāre parābat; simul dē dēditionē eōrum  
 agēbat et incolumitātem dēditīs pollicēbātur. Hārum al-  
 tera nāvium ccxx ē lēgiōne tīrōnum sustulerat, altera  
 ex veterānā paulō minus cc. Hīc cōgnōscī licuit quantum  
 esset hominibus praesidī in animī firmitūdine. Tīrōnēs  
 enim multitudīne nāvium perterritī et salō nausēaque cōn-  
 10 fectī, iūre iūrāndō acceptō nihil iīs nocitūrōs hostēs, sē  
 Otāciliō dēdidērunt; quī omnēs ad eum prōductī contrā  
 religiōnem iūris iūrāndī in eius cōspectū crudēlissimē  
 interficiuntur. / At veterānae legiōnis mīlitēs, item cōn-  
 flictātī et tempestātis et sentīnae vitiīs, neque ex pristinā  
 15 virtūte remittendum aliquid putāvērunt, et tractandīs con-  
 diciōnibus et simulātiōne dēditionis extractō primō noctis  
 tempore, gubernātorem in terram nāvem ēicere cōgunt; ipsī  
 idōneum locum nactī reliquam noctis partem ibi cōnfēcērunt,  
 et luce primā missis ad eōs ab Otāciliō equitibus quī eam  
 20 partem ōrae maritimae adservābant, circiter cccc, quīque  
 eōs armātī ex praesidiō secūtī sunt, sē dēfendērunt et nōn  
 nullīs eōrum interfectīs incolumēs sē ad nostrōs recēpērunt.

29. Quō factō conventus civium Rōmānōrum *Antony is welcomed at Lissus. He sends ships to Brundisium for the rest of his army, and notifies Caesar of his landing.*  
 quī Lissum obtinēbant, quod oppidum iīs antea  
 25 Caesar attribuerat mūniendumque cūrāverat,  
 Antōnium recēpit omnibusque rēbus iūvit.  
 Otācilius sibi timēns ex oppidō fūgit et ad  
 Pompēium pervēnit. Expositis omnibus cōpiīs  
 Antōnius, quārum erat summa veterānārum  
 30 trium legiōnum ūnīusque tīrōnum et equitum dccc, plērās-

que nāvēs in Italiam remittit ad reliquōs militēs equitēs-  
que trānsportandōs; pontōnēs, quod est genus nāvium



FIG. 36. — Coins of Antony.

Gallicārum, Lissī relinquit hōc cōnsiliō, ut, sī forte Pom-  
pēius vacuam existimāns Italiam eō trāiēcisset exercitum,  
— quae opīniō erat ēdita in vulgus, — aliquam Caesar ad  
insequendum facultātem habēret, nūntiōsque ad eum cele-  
riter mittit quibus regiōnibus exercitum exposuisset et quid  
militum trānsvēxisset.

Caesar and Pompey both march towards Antony. Union of Caesar and Antony. Pompey encamps near Asparagium.

30. Haec eōdem ferē tempore Caesar atque Pompēius cōgnōscunt. Nam praetervectās Apollōniam Dyrrachiumque nāvēs viderant ipsī, ut iter secundō austrō dērēxerant, sed quō essent inde dēlātae primīs diēbus ignōrābant. Cōgnitāque rē diversa sibi ambō cōnsilia capiunt: Caesar, ut quam primum sē cum Antōniō coniungeret, Pompēius, ut venientī in itinere sē oppōneret, sī imprudentem ex insidiīs adoriri posset; eōdemque diē uterque eōrum ex castrīs stativīs ā flūmine Apsō exercitum ēdūcunt, Pompēius clam et noctū, Caesar palam atque interdiū. Sed Caesarī circuitū maiōre iter erat longius adversō flūmine ut vadō trānsire posset; Pompēius expeditō itinere, quod flūmen eī trānseundum nōn erat, magnīs itineribus ad Antōnium contendit. Atque

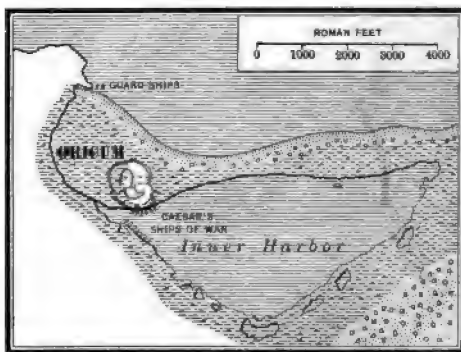
ubi eum appropinquāre cōgnōvit, idōneum locum nactus, ibi cōpiās conlocāvit suōsque omnēs castrīs continuit ignēs-que fieri prohibuit, quō occultior esset eius adventus. Haec ad Antōnium statim per Graecōs dēferuntur. Ille  
 5 missis ad Caesarem nūntiis eum diem sēsē castrīs tenuit; alterō diē ad eum pervēnit Caesar. Cuius adventū cōgnitō Pompēius, nē duōbus circumclūderētur exercitibus, ex eō locō discēdit omnibusque cōpiis ad Asparāgium Dyrrachī-nōrum pervenit atque ibi idōneō locō castra pōnit.

\* \* \* \* \*

39-40. DESTRUCTION OF CAESAR'S FLEET, APRIL, 48 B.C.

- 10 39. Dēductis ōrā maritimā praesidiis Caesar, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est, III cohortēs Ōrici  
 oppidī tuendī causā reliquit, isdemque custōdiam  
 nāvium longārum trādīdit quās ex Italiā trādūxe-  
 rat. Huic officiō oppidōque M'. Acīlius lēgātus  
 15 praeerat. Is nāvēs nostrās interiōrem in portum post op-

*Caesar's ships of war are carefully guarded in the harbor of Oricum.*



Oricum.

pidum redūxit et ad terram dēligāvit, faucibusque portūs nāvem onerāriam summersam obiēcit et huic alteram coniūxit; super quam turrem effectam ad ipsum introitum portūs opposuit et militibus complēvit tuendamque ad  
5 omnēs repentinōs cāsūs trādidit.

*Pompey's son destroys these ships, and also the transports at Lissus.*  
40. Quibus cōgnitis rēbus Cn. Pompēius filius, quī classī Aegyptiae praeerat, ad Ōricum vēnit, summersamque nāvem remulcō multisque contendēns fūnibus abdūxit, atque alteram nāvem, quae erat ad custōdiam ab Aciliō posita,  
10 plūribus adgressus nāvibus, in quibus ad libram fēcerat turrēs, ut ex superiōre pugnāns locō integrōsque semper dēfatigātis summittēns et reliquīs partibus simul ex terrā scālīs et classe moenia oppidī temptāns, utī adversāriōrum  
15 manūs didūceret, labōre et multitudīne tēlōrum nostrōs vīcit, dēiectisque dēfēnsōribus, quī omnēs scaphīs exceptī refūgerant, eam nāvem expugnāvit. Eōdemque tempore ex alterā parte mōle tenuī nātūrālī obiectā, quae paene īnsulam oppidum effēcerat, IIII birēmēs subiectīs scutulīs  
20 impulsās vectibus in interiōrem portum trādūxit. Ita ex utrāque parte nāvēs longās adgressus quae erant dēligatae ad terram atque inānēs, IIII ex hīs abdūxit, reliquās incendit. Hōc cōfectō negōtiō D. Laelium ab Asiaticā classe abductum relinquit, quī commeātūs Byllide atque Āmantīā  
25 importārī in oppidum prohibeat. Ipse Lissum profectus nāvēs onerāriās xxx ā M. Antōniō relictās intrā portum adgressus omnēs incendit; Lissum expugnāre cōnātus, dēfendentibus cīvibus Rōmānīs quī eius conventus erant militibusque quōs praesidī causā miserat Caesar, trīduum morātus  
30 paucīs in oppugnātiōne āmissīs rē infectā inde discessit.

41-72. CAESAR'S UNSUCCESSFUL BLOCKADE OF POMPEY  
NEAR DYRRACHIUM, APRIL-JULY, 48 B.C.

*Circumstances leading to the blockade*

41. Caesar postquam Pompēium ad Asparā-  
gium esse cōgnōvit, eōdem cum exercitū profec-  
tus expugnātō in itinere oppidō Parthīnōrum, in  
quō Pompēius praesidium habēbat, tertiō diē ad  
5 Pompēium pervēnit iūxtāque eum castra posuit,  
et postridiē ēductis omnibus cōpiīs aciē īnstrūctā  
dēcernendī potestātem Pompēiō fēcit. Ubi il-  
lum suīs locīs sē tenēre animadvertit, reductō  
in castra exercitū aliud sibi cōsiliū capiendum existimā-  
10 vit. Itaque posterō diē omnibus cōpiīs magnō circuitū  
difficilī angustōque itinere Dyrrachium profectus est, spē-  
rāns Pompēium aut Dyrrachium compelli aut ab eō inter-  
clūdī posse, quod omnem commeātum tōtumque belli  
apparātum eō contulisset; ut accidit. Pompēius enim  
15 prīmō ignōrāns eius cōsiliū, quod dīversō ab eā regiōne  
itinere profectum vidēbat, angustīs rei frūmentāriae com-  
pulsum discessisse existimābat; postea per explorātōrēs  
certior factus castra mōvit, breviorē itinere sē occurrere  
eī posse spērāns. Quod fore suspicātus Caesar, militēs  
20 adhortātus ut aequō animō labōrem ferrent, parvam par-  
tem noctis itinere intermissō māne Dyrrachium vēnit, cum  
prīmum agmen Pompēi procul cerneretur, atque ibi castra  
posuit.

*Caesar is  
unable to  
draw Pompey  
into an en-  
gagement, but  
succeeds in  
cutting him  
off from his  
base of sup-  
plies at Dyr-  
rachium.*

42. Pompēius interclūsus Dyrrachiō, ubi prōpositum  
25 tenēre nōn potuit, secundō ūsus cōsiliō ēditō locō, quī  
appellātur Petra aditumque habet nāvibus mediocrem

*Pompey fortifies his camp at Petra hill on the coast, where supplies can be easily furnished by sea. Caesar's efforts for supplies.*

atque eas ā quibusdam prōtegit ventīs, castra commūnit. Eō partem nāvium longārum convenire, frumentum commeātumque ab Asiā atque omnibus regiōnibus quās tenēbat comportārī imperat. Caesar longius bellum ductum irī exīstimāns et dē Italicīs commeātibus dēspērāns, quod tantā diligentīā omnia litora ā Pompēianīs tenēbantur, classēsque ipsius, quās hieme in Siciliā, Galliā, Italiā fēcerat, morābantur, in Ēpirum rei  
 10 frumentāriae causā Q. Tillium et L. Canulēium lēgātum mīsit; quodque hae regiōnēs aberant longius, locīs certīs horrea cōstituit vectūrāsque frumentī finitimīs cīvitātibus descripsit. Item Lissō Parthīnisque et omnibus castellīs quod esset frumentī conquīrī iussit. Id erat perexiguū  
 15 cum ipsius agrī nātūrā, quod sunt loca aspera ac montuōsa, ac plērumque frumentō ūtuntur importātō, tum quod Pompēius haec prōviderat et superiōribus diēbus praedae locō Parthīnōs habuerat frumentumque omne conquīsītum spoliātis suffossisque eōrum domibus per equitēs comportārat.

*Difficulties of establishing and maintaining the blockade*

*20 Caesar incloses Pompey.*

43. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis Caesar cōsiliū capit ex locī nātūrā. Erant enim circum castra Pompēi permulti ēditī atque asperī collēs. Hōs prīmum praesidiīs tenuit castellaque ibi commūniit; inde, ut locī cuiusque nātūra ferēbat, ex castellō in castellum  
 25 perductā mūnitiōne circumvallāre Pompēium instituit, haec spectāns: quod angustā rē frumentāriā ūtēbātur quodque Pompēius multitudine equitum valēbat, quō minōre periculō undique frumentum commeātumque exercitūi suppor-

tāre posset; simul, utī pābulātiōne Pompēiūm prohibēret equitātumque eius ad rem gerendam inūtilem efficeret; tertiō, ut auctoritātem, quā ille maximē apud exterās nātiōnēs nitī vidēbātur, minueret, cum fāma per orbem ; terrārū percrēbrisset illum ā Caesare obsidērī neque audēre proeliō dīmicāre.

44. Pompēius neque ā marī Dyrrachiōque *Pompey's defenses and*  
discēdere volēbat, quod omnem apparātum bellī, *his obstruction of Caesar's workers.*  
tēla, arma, tormenta ibi conlocāverat frūmen-  
tumque exercituī nāvibus supportābat, neque  
10 mūnitiōnēs Caesaris prohibēre poterat, nisi proeliō dēcertāre vellet; quod eō tempore faciendum nōn esse statuerat. Relinquēbātur ut extrēmam ratiōnem bellī sequēns quam plūrimōs collēs occupāret et quam lātissimās regiōnēs  
15 praesidiis tenēret, Caesarisque cōpiās quam maximē posset distinēret; idque accidit. Castellis enim xxxiii effectis xv millia passuum circumplexus hōc spatiō pābulābātur; multaque erant intrā eum locum manū sata, quibus interim iūmenta pāsceret. Atque ut nostrī perpetuā mūnitiōne  
20 prōvidēbant nē quō locō ērumperent Pompēiānī ac nostrōs post tergum adorīrentur, ita illī interiōre spatiō perpetuās mūnitiōnēs efficiēbant, nē quem locum nostrī intrāre atque ipsōs ā tergō circumvenīre possent. Sed illī operibus vincēbant, quod et numerō militum praestābant et interiōra  
25 spatia minōrem circuitum habēbant. Quārē cum erant loca Caesarī capiēda, etsī prohibēre Pompēius tōtis cōpiis et dīmicāre nōn cōstituerat, tamen suis locis sagittariōs funditōrēsque mittēbat, quōrum magnum habēbat numerum, multique ex nostrīs vulnerābantur; magnusque incē-  
30 serat timor sagittārū, atque omnēs ferē militēs aut ex

coactis aut ex centonibus aut ex coriis tunicas aut tegimenta fecerant, quibus tela vitarent.

\* \* \* \* \*

*Suffering in Caesar's army from lack of food. The brave spirit of his men.* 47. Erat nova et inusitata belli ratio, cum tantō castellōrum numerō tantōque spatiō et tantis munitiōibus et tōtō obsidiōnis genere, tum etiam reliquis rēbus. Nam quicumque alterum obsidēre cōnātī sunt, perculsōs atque infirmos hostēs aut proeliō superātōs aut aliquā offēnsiōne permōtōs continuērunt, cum ipsī numerō equitum militumque praestārent; causa autem obsidiōnis haec ferē esse cōsuērat, ut frūmentō hostēs prohibērent. At tum integrās atque incolumēs cōpiās Caesar inferiōre militum numerō continēbat, cum illi omnium rērum cōpiā abundārent. Cotidiē enim magnus undique nāvium numerus conveniēbat, quae commeātum supportārent, neque ūllus flāre ventus poterat quān aliquā ex parte secundum cursum habērent; ipse autem cōsumptis omnibus longē lātēque frūmentis summīs erat in angustiis. Sed tamen haec singularī patientiā militēs ferēbant. Recordābantur enim eadem sē superiōre annō in Hispāniā perpressōs labōre et patientiā maximum bellum cōfēcisse; meminerant ad Alesiam magnam sē inopiam perpressōs, multō etiam maiorem ad Avaricum, maximārum sē gentium victōrēs discessisse. Nōn illi hordeum quān darētur, nōn legūmina recūsābant; pecus vērō, cuius rei summa erat ex Ēpirō cōpia, magnō in honōre habēbant.

*A substitute for bread.*

48. Est etiam genus radicis inventum ab iis quī convulnerant ex vulneribus, quod appellātur chara; quod admixtum lacte multum inopiam levābat. Id

ad similitudinem pānis efficiēbant. Eius erat magna cōpia. Ex hōc effectōs pānēs, cum in conloquiīs Pompēiānī famem nostrīs obiectārent, vulgō in eōs iaciēbant, ut spem eōrum minuerent.

5 49. Iamque frūmenta mātūrēscere incipiēbant, atque ipsa spēs inopiam sustentābat, quod cele- *The hard-*  
riter sē habitūrōs cōpiam cōfidēbant; crēbrae- *ships of Pom-*  
que vōcēs militum in circulis conloquiisque audiēbantur *pey's situa-*  
prius sē cortice ex arboribus *tion.*  
10 vīctūrōs quam Pompēium ē  
manibus dīmissūrōs. Liben-  
ter etiam ex perfugīs cōgnōs-  
cēbant equōs eōrum tolerārī,  
reliqua vērō iūmenta interisse;



FIG. 37.—Coins of Pompey.

15 ūtī autem ipsōs valētūdine nōn bonā, cum angustiīs locī et  
odōre taetrō ex multītūdine cadāverum et cotidiānis labōri-  
bus insuetōs operum, tum aquae summā inopiā adfectōs.  
Omnia enim flūmina atque omnēs rīvōs quī ad mare per-  
tinēbant Caesar aut āverterat aut magnīs operibus obstrūxe-  
20 rat; atque ut erant loca montuōsa et aspera, angustās  
vallium faucēs sublicīs in terram dēmissis praesaepserat  
terramque adgesserat, ut aquam continērent. Ita illī ne-  
cessariō loca sequī dēmissa ac palūstria et puteōs fodere  
cōgēbantur, atque hunc labōrem ad cotidiānam operam  
25 addēbant; quī tamen fontēs ā quibusdam praesidiīs aberant  
longius et celeriter aestibus exārēscēbant. At Caesaris  
exercitus optimā valētūdine ūtēbātur, cumque aquae cōpiā  
tum commeātūs omnī genere praeter frūmentum abundā-  
bat; cui rei cotidiē melius occurrere tempus maiōremque  
30 spem mātūritāte frūmentōrum prōpōnī vidēbant.

*Attacks by  
night on Cae-  
sar's lines.*

50. In novō genere belli novae ab utrisque bellandī ratiōnēs reperiēbantur. Illī cum animadvertissent ex ignibus noctū cohortēs nostrās ad mūnitiōnēs excubāre, silentiō adgressī ūniversī intrā mūnitiōnem sagittās coniciēbant et sē cōnfestim ad suōs recipiēbant. Quibus rēbus nostrī ūsū doctī haec reperiēbant remedia, ut aliō locō ignēs facerent, aliō excubārent.

\* \* \* \* \*

*An attack on  
one of Cae-  
sar's forts is  
repulsed by  
Sulla.  
Pompey's  
new camp.*

51. Interim certior factus P. Sulla, quem discēdēs castrīs praefēcerat Caesar, auxiliō cohortī vēnit cum legiōnibus duābus; cuius adventū facile sunt repulsī Pompēiānī. Neque vērō cōnspectum aut impetum nostrōrum tulērunt, prīmisque dēiectis reliquī sē vertērunt et locō cessērunt. Sed insequentēs nostrōs nē longius prōgrederentur Sulla revo-  
15 cāvit. / At plērīque existimant, sī ācrius insequī voluisset, bellum eō diē potuisse finīrī. Cuius cōnsilium nōn reprehendendum vidētur. Aliae enim sunt lēgātī partēs atque imperātōris; alter omnia agere ad praescrīptum, alter liberē ad summam rērum cōnsulere dēbet. Sulla ā Caesare  
20 in castrīs relictus, liberātis suis, hōc fuit contentus, neque proeliō dēcertāre voluit, — quae rēs tamen fortasse aliquem reciperet cāsum, — nē imperātōriās sibi partēs sūmpsisse vidērētur. Pompēiānīs magnam rēs ad receptum difficultātem adferēbat. Nam ex inīquō prōgressī locō in summō  
25 cōnstitēbant; sī per dēclive sēsē reciperent, nostrōs ex superiōre insequentēs locō verēbantur; neque multum ad sōlis occāsum temporis supererat, spē enim cōnficiendī negōtī prope in noctem rem dūxerant. Ita necessariō atque ex tempore captō cōnsiliō Pompēius tumultum





FIG. 38.—CAESAR : BESANÇON

quendam occupāvit quī tantum aberat ā nostrō castellō ut tēlum tormentumve missum adigī nōn posset. Hōc cōnsēdit locō atque eum commūnivit, omnēsque ibi cōpiās continuit.

5 52. Eōdem tempore duōbus praetereā locīs *Two other*  
pugnātum est — nam plūra castella Pompēius *forts are at-*  
pariter distinendae manūs causā temptāverat, nē *tacked at the*  
ex proximīs praesidiis succurrī posset —: ūnō locō Volcā- *same time.*  
cius Tullus impetum legiōnis sustinuit cohortibus tribus  
10 atque eam locō dēpulit; alterō Germānī mūnitiōnēs nostrās  
ingressī complūribus interfectis sēsē ad suōs incolumēs  
recēpērunt.

53. Ita ūnō diē vi proeliis factis, tribus ad *The losses of*  
Dyrrachium, tribus ad mūnitiōnēs, cum hōrum *one day. Cae-*  
15 omnium ratiō habērētur, ad duo millia numerō *sar's rewards*  
ex Pompēiānis cecidisse reperiēbāmus, ēvocātōs *to his sol-*  
centuriōnēsque complūrēs (in eō fuit numerō Valerius *diers.*  
Flaccus L. filius, eius quī praetor Asiam obtinuerat);  
signaque sunt militāria vi relāta. Nostrī nōn amplius xx  
20 omnibus sunt proeliis dēsiderātī. Sed in castellō illō nēmō  
fuit omnīnō militum quīn vulnerārētur, quattuorque ex  
octāvā cohorte centuriōnēs oculōs āmisērunt; et cum labō-  
ris suī periculique testimōnium adferre vellent militēs,  
millia sagittārum circiter xxx in castellum coniecta Caesarī  
25 renūntiāverunt, scūtōque ad eum relātō Scaevae centuri-  
ōnis inventa sunt in eō forāmina cxxx. Quem Caesar, ut  
erat dē sē meritis et dē rē publicā, dōnātum millibus cc  
conlaudātumque ab octāvis ordinibus ad primipilum sē  
trādūcere prōnūntiāvit (eius enim operā castellum magnā  
30 ex parte cōservātum esse cōnstābat) cohortemque prae-

tereā duplicī stipendiō, frumentō, veste, cibariis militāribus-  
que donis amplissimē donāvit.

*Pompey re-  
turns to his  
first camp at  
Petra hill.*

54. Pompēius noctū magnis additis munitiōni-  
bus reliquis diēbus turrēs exstrūxit, et in altitū-  
dinem pedum xv ēlātis operibus vineis omnem  
partem castrōrum obtēxit; et quīque intermissis diēbus  
noctem subnubilam nactus, obstructis omnibus castrōrum  
portis et ad impediendum obiectis vectibus, tertiā initā  
vigiliā silentiō exercitum edūxit et sē in antiquās mūni-  
10 tiōnēs recēpit.

*Caesar seeks  
a battle in  
vain.*

55. Omnibus deinceps diēbus Caesar exerci-  
tum in aciem aequum in locum prōdūxit, sī Pom-  
pēius proeliō decertāre vellet, ut paene castris  
Pompēi legiōnēs subiceret; tantumque ā vallō eius prima  
15 aciēs aberat, uti nē tēla tormentave adigī possent. Pom-  
pēius autem ut fāmam opīniōnemque hominum tenēret, sic  
prō castris exercitum cōstituēbat ut tertia aciēs vallum  
contingeret, omnis quidem instructus exercitus tēlis ex  
vallō abiectis prōtegī posset.

\* \* \* \* \*

*Pompey breaks the line of blockade*

*20 Through the  
failure of  
fodder, Pom-  
pey is driven  
to attempt to  
break the  
blockade.*

58. Caesar quō facilius equitātum Pompēiā-  
num ad Dyrrachium continēret et pābulatiōne  
prohibēret, aditūs duōs, quōs esse angustōs dē-  
mōnstrāvimus, magnis operibus praemūnivit  
castellaque his locis posuit. Pompēius ubi nihil  
25 prōfici equitātū cōgnōvit, paucis intermissis diēbus rursus  
eum nāvibus ad sē intrā munitiōnēs recēpit. Erat summa  
inopia pābuli, adeō ut foliis ex arboribus strictis et teneris

harundinum rādīcibus contūsīs equōs alerent. Frūmenta enim quae fuerant intrā mūnitiōnēs sata cōsumpserant; cōgēbantur Corcyrā atque Acarnāniā longō interiectō nāvīgātiōnis spatiō pābulum supportāre, quodque erat eius rei minor cōpia, hordeō adaugēre atque hīs ratiōnibus equitātum tolerāre. Sed postquam nōn modo hordeum pābulumque omnibus locīs herbaeque dēsectae, sed etiam frōns ex arboribus dēficiēbat, corruptīs equīs māciē cōnandum sibi aliquid Pompēius dē ēruptiōne existimāvit.

- 10 59. Erant apud Caesarem ex equitum numerō *Two Gauls holding positions of trust in Caesar's army prove dishonest.*  
 Allobrogēs 11 frātrēs, Roucillus et Egus, Adbucilli filii, quī principātum in cīvitāte multis annīs obtinuerat, singulārī virtūte hominēs, quōrum operā Caesar omnibus Gallicis bellis optimā fortissimāque erat ūsus. Hīs domī ob hās causās amplissimōs magistrātūs mandāverat atque eōs extrā ōrdinem in senātum legendōs cūrāverat, agrōsque in Galliā ex hostibus captōs praemiaque rei pecuāriae magna tribuerat locupletēsque ex egentibus fēcerat. Hī propter virtutem nōn  
 15 solum apud Caesarem in honōre erant, sed etiam apud exercitum cārī habēbantur; sed frētī amicitīā Caesaris et stultā ac barbarā adrogantiā ēlātī dēspiciēbant suōs, stipendiumque equitum fraudābant et praedam omnem domum āvertēbant. Quibus illī rēbus permōti ūniversī  
 20 Caesarem adiērunt palamque dē eōrum iniūriis sunt questī, et ad cētera addidērunt falsum ab iīs equitum numerum dēfērrī, quōrum stipendium āverterent.

60. Caesar neque tempus illud animadversiōnis esse existimāns et multa virtūti eōrum concēdēns rem tōtam  
 30 sustulit; illōs sēcrētō castigāvit quod quaestui equitēs

*Angered by  
Caesar's cen-  
sure and the  
contempt of  
their com-  
rades they  
desert to  
Pompey.*

5

habērent, monuitque ut ex suā amicitia omnia  
expectarent et ex praeteritis suis officiis reliqua  
spērarent. Magnam tamen haec res illis offē-  
sionem et contemptiōnem ad omnēs attulit,  
idque ita esse cum ex aliōrum obiectatiōnibus,  
tum etiam ex domesticō iūdictiō atque animi cōn-  
scientiā intellegēbant. Quō pudōre adducti et fortasse

10

15

20



FIG. 39. — Iumentum.

nōn sē liberārī sed in  
aliud tempus reservārī  
arbitrātī, discēdere ā  
nōbīs et novam temp-  
tāre fortunam novāsque  
amicitiās experī cōn-  
stituērunt : et cum pau-  
cis conlocūtī clientibus  
suis, quibus tantum fa-  
cinus committere audē-  
bant, primum cōnātī sunt  
praefectum equitum C.  
Volusēnum interficere  
(ut postea bellō cōfectō  
cōgnitum est), ut cum  
mūnere aliquō perfū-

gisce ad Pompēium vidērentur ; postquam id facinus diffi-  
cilius vīsum est neque facultās perficiendī dabātur, quam  
maximās potuērunt pecūniās mūtuātī, proinde ac sī suis  
satisfacere et fraudāta restituere vellent, multis coemptis  
equis ad Pompēium trāsiērunt cum iis quos suī cōnsili  
participēs habēbant.

30

61. Quos Pompēius, quod erant honestō locō nātī et

instrūcti liberāliter, magnōque comitātū et mul-  
 tis iūmentis vēnerant, virique fortēs habēbantur  
 et in honōre apud Caesarem fuerant, quodque  
 hoc novum et praeter consuetūdinem acciderat,  
 5 omnia sua praesidia circumdūxit atque ostentāvit. Nam  
 ante id tempus nēmō aut mīles aut eques ā Caesare ad  
 Pompēium trānsierat, cum paene cotidiē ā Pompēiō ad  
 Caesarem perfugerent, vulgō vērō ūniversi in Ēpirō atque  
 Aetoliā cōscripti mīlites eārumque regiōnum omnium  
 10 quae ā Caesare tenēbantur. Sed hī cōgnitis omnibus  
 rēbus, seu quid in mūnitiōnibus perfectum nōn erat, seu  
 quid ā peritiōribus rei mīlītāris dēsiderārī vidēbātur, tem-  
 poribusque rērum et spatiis locōrum et custodiārum variā  
 diligentiā animadversā, prout cuiusque eōrum quī negō-  
 15 tiis praeerant aut nātūra aut studium ferēbat, haec ad  
 Pompēium omnia dētulērunt.

*Welcomed by  
 Pompey they  
 give him  
 much useful  
 information.*

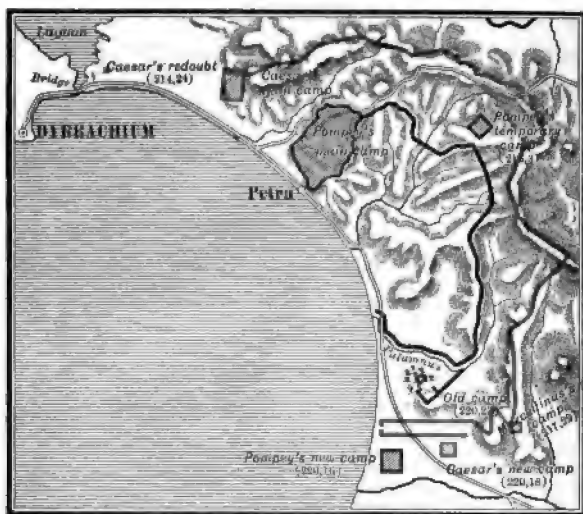
62. Quibus ille cōgnitis, ēruptiōnis iam ante  
 captō cōsiliō, ut dēmōnstrātum est, tegimenta  
 galeis mīlites ex vīminibus facere atque aggerem  
 20 iubet comportāre. Hīs parātis rēbus magnum  
 numerum levis armātūrae et sagittāriōrum ag-  
 geremque omnem noctū in scaphās et nāvēs actuāriās im-  
 pōnit; dē mediā nocte cohortēs LX ex maximis castris prae-  
 sidiisque dēductās ad eam partem mūnitiōnum dūcit quae  
 25 pertinēbat ad mare longissimēque ā maximis castris Caes-  
 ariis aberat. Eōdem nāvēs quās dēmōnstrāvimus aggere  
 et levis armātūrae mīlitibus complētās, quāsque ad Dyrra-  
 chium nāvēs longās habēbat, mittit, et quid ā quōque fieri  
 velit praecipit. Ad eas mūnitiōnēs Caesar Lentulum Mār-  
 30 cellinum quaestōrem cum legiōne nōnā positum habēbat;

*Pompey ar-  
 ranges to at-  
 tack Caesar's  
 line at its  
 southernmost  
 part near the  
 sea.*

huic, quod valētūdine minus commodā ūtēbātur, Fulvium Postumum adiūtōrem summīserat.

*Caesar's double line of works at this point is attacked from within and without.*

63. Erat eō locō fossa pedum xv et vāllum contrā hostem in altitūdinem pedum x, tantundemque eius vālli agger in lātītūdinem patēbat; ab eō intermissō spatiō pedum dc alter conversus in contrāriam partem erat vāllus humiliōre paulō mūnitiōne. Hoc enim superiōribus diēbus timēns



Caesar's Siege of Pompey near Dyrrachium.

Caesar, nē nāvibus nostrī circumvenīrentur, duplicem eō locō fēcerat vāllum, ut, sī ancipitī proeliō dimicārētur, posset resistī. Sed operum magnitūdō et continēns omnium diērum labor, quod mīllia passuum in circuitū xvii mūnitiōne erat complexus, perficiendī spatium nōn dabat. Itaque contrā mare trānsversum vāllum, quī hās duās

mūnitiōnēs coniungeret, nōndum perfēcerat. Quae rēs  
 nōta erat Pompēiō, dēlāta per Allobrogas perfugās, mag-  
 numque nostris adlātūra erat incommodum. Nam ut ad  
 mare II cohortēs nōnae legiōnis in excubiis erant, accessēre  
 5 subitō primā lūce Pompēiāni; simul nāvibus circumvecti  
 militēs in exteriōrem vāllum tēla iaciēbant fossāsque aggere  
 complēbant, et legiōnariī interiōris mūnitiōnis dēfēnsōrēs,  
 scālīs admōtis, tormentis cuiusque generis tēlisque terrē-  
 bant, magnaue multitudō sagittāriōrum ab utrāque parte  
 10 circumfundēbātur. Multum autem ab ictū lapidum, quod  
 ūnum nostris erat tēlum, viminea tegimenta galeis imposita  
 dēfendēbant. Itaque cum omnibus rēbus nostrī premeren-  
 tur atque aegrē resisterent, animadversum est vitium mūnī-  
 tiōnis, quod suprā dēmōnstrātum est, atque inter duōs  
 15 vāllōs, quā perfectum opus nōn erat, Pompēiāni expositi  
 in āversōs nostrōs impetum fēcērunt atque ex utrāque  
 mūnitiōne dēiectōs terga vertere coēgērunt.

64. Hōc tumultū nūntiātō Mārcellinus co-  
 hortēs subsidiō nostris labōrantibus summittit ex  
 20 castris. Quae fugientēs cōspicātae neque illōs  
 suō adventū cōfirmāre potuērunt neque ipsae  
 hostium impetum tulērunt. Itaque quodcumque addē-  
 bātur subsidi, id corruptum timōre fugientium terrōrem et  
 periculum augēbat; hominum enim multitudīne receptus  
 25 impediēbātur. In eō proeliō cum gravī vulnere esset ad-  
 fectus aquilifer et ā vīribus dēficerētur, cōspicātus perter-  
 ritōs nostrōs, "Hanc ego," inquit, "et vīvus multōs per  
 annōs magnā diligentīā dēfendī et nunc moriēns eādē  
 fidē Caesarī restituō. Nōlite, obsecrō, committere, quod  
 30 ante in exercitū Caesaris nōn accidit, ut rei militāris dēde-

*Panic of  
 Caesar's men  
 Bravery of a  
 standard-  
 bearer.*

cus admittatur, incolumemque ad eum deferre." Hōc cāsū aquila cōservatur omnibus primae cohortis centuriōnibus interfectis praeter principem priorem.

*Antony and  
Caesar come  
5 to the rescue.  
Pompey and  
Caesar en-  
camp outside  
the line of  
circumvallation.*

65. Iamque Pompēiānī magnā cum caede nostrōrum castris Mārcellinī appropinquābant nōn mediocrī terrōre inlātō reliquīs cohortibus; et M. Antōnius, quī proximum locum praesidiōrum tenēbat, eā rē nūntiātā cum cohortibus XII dēscendēns ex locō superiōre cernēbatur. Cuius  
10 adventus Pompēiānōs compressit nostrōsque firmāvit, ut sē ex maximō timōre colligerent. Neque multō post Caesar significātiōne per castella fūmō factā, ut erat superiōris temporis cōsuētūdō, dēductis quibusdam cohortibus ex praesidiīs eōdem vēnit. Quī cōgnitō dētrīmentō, cum  
15 animadvertisset Pompēium extrā mūnitiōnēs ēgressum secundum mare manēre, ut liberē pābulārī posset nec minus aditum nāvibus habēret, commūtātā ratiōne bellī, quoniam prōpositum nōn tenuerat, castra iūxtā Pompēium mūnīri iussit.

*20 Pompey sends  
one legion to  
occupy an old  
camp within  
Caesar's  
lines.*

66. Quā perfectā mūnitiōne animadversum est ab speculātōribus Caesaris cohortēs quāsdam, quod instar legiōnis vidērētur, esse post silvam et in vetera castra dūcī. Castrōrum hīc  
situs erat. Superiōribus diēbus nōna Caesaris legiō, cum  
25 sē obiēcisset Pompēiānīs cōpiīs, atque opere, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, collēs circummūnīret, castra eō locō posuit. Haec silvam quandam contingēbant neque longius ā marī passibus CCC aberant. Post mūtātō cōnsiliō quibusdam dē causīs Caesar paulō ultrā eum locum castra trānstulerat,  
30 paucisque intermissis diēbus eadem haec Pompēius occu-

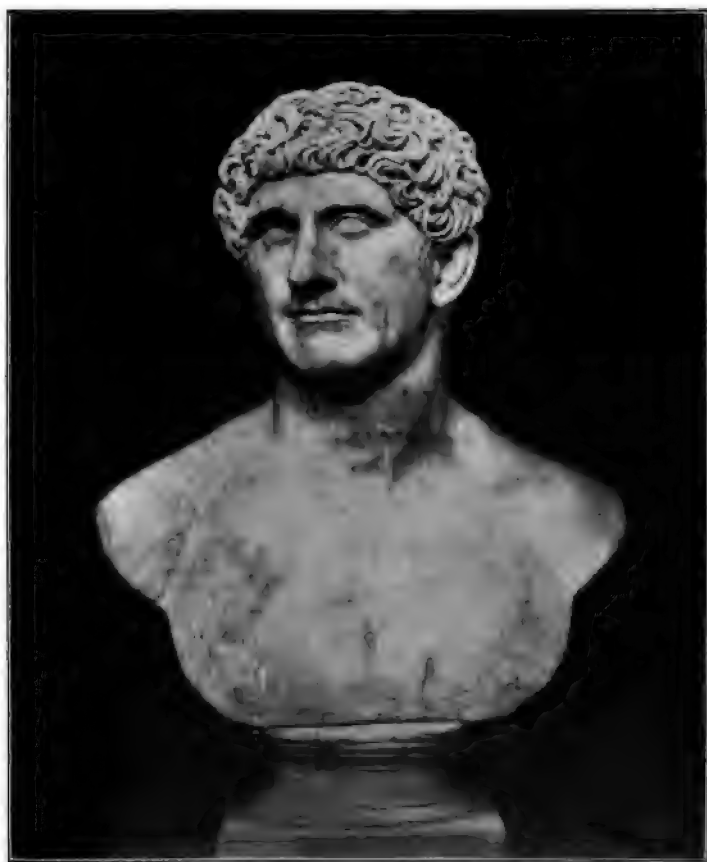


FIG. 40. — MARK ANTONY : VATICAN



pāverat et, quod eō locō plūrēs erat legiōnēs habitūrus, relictō interiōre vāllō maiōrem adiēcerat mūnitiōnem. Ita minōra castra inclūsa maiōribus castelli atque arcis locum obtinēbant. Item ab angulō castrōrum sinistrō mūnitiōnem  
5 ad flūmen perdūxerat circiter passuum cccc, quō liberius ac minōre periculō militēs aquārentur. Sed is quoque mūtātō cōsiliō quibusdam dē causis, quās commemorārī necesse nōn est, eō locō excesserat. Ita complūrēs diēs inānia mānserant castra; mūnitiōnēs quidem omnēs  
10 integrae erant.

67. Eō signa legiōnis lāta speculātōrēs Caesarī  
renūntiārunt. Hoc idem vīsum ex superiōribus  
quīdam castellis cōfirmāvērunt. Is locus aberat  
ā novīs Pompēi castris circiter passūs quīngentōs.

*Caesar successfully attacks this camp with his left wing.*

15 Hanc legiōnem spērāns Caesar sē opprimere posse, et cupiēns eius diē dētrīmentum sarcīre, reliquit in opere cohortēs duās quae speciem mūnientium praeberent; ipse dīversō itinere quam potuit occultissimē reliquās cohortēs, numerō xxxiii, in quibus erat legiō nōna multis āmissis centuriōnibus dēminūtōque militum numerō, ad legiōnem Pompēi castraque duplici aciē edūxit. Neque eum prīma opīniō fefellit. Nam et pervēnit priusquam Pompēius sentire posset, et tametsi erant mūnitiōnēs castrōrum magnae, tamen sinistrō cornū, ubi erat ipse, celeriter adgressus  
25 Pompēiānōs ex vāllō dēturbāvit. Erat obiectus portae ēricius. Hīc paulisper est pugnātum, tūm inrumpere nostrī cōnārentur, illī castra dēfenderent, fortissimē T. Pullōne, cuius operā prōditum exercitum C. Antōnī dēmōnstrāvimus, eō locō prōpugnante. Sed tamen nostrī virtūte  
30 vīcērunt, excisōque ēriciō primō in maiōra castra, post etiam

in castellum, quod erat inclūsum maiōribus castris, inrūpērunt, quod eō pulsa legiō sēsē recēperat, et nōn nullōs ibi repugnantēs interfēcērunt.

*An error of his right wing and cavalry proves costly.* 68. Sed fortūna, quae plūrimum potest cum in reliquīs rēbus tum praecipuē in bellō, parvis mōmentis magnās rērum commūtatiōnēs efficit; ut tum accidit. Mūnitiōnem enim, quam pertinēre ā castris ad flūmen suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, dextrī Caesaris cornūs cohortēs ignōrantiā locī sunt secūtae, cum portam quaere-  
10 rent castrōrumque eam mūnitiōnem esse arbitrārentur.

Quod cum esset animadversum coniūctam esse flūmini, prōrutis mūnitiōnibus dēfendente nullō trāscendērunt, omnisque noster equitātus eās cohortēs est secūsus.

*Upon Pompey's arrival Caesar's men are panic-stricken and flee with heavy loss.* 69. Interim Pompēius, hāc satis longā interiectā morā, eā rē nūntiātā v legiōnēs ab opere dēductās subsidiō suis dūxit; eōdemque tempore equitātus eius nostris equitibus appropinquābat, et aciēs Instrūcta ā nostris quī castra occupāverant cernēbātur; omniaque sunt subitō mūtāta. Pompē-  
20 iāna legiō celeris spē subsidī cōfirmāta ab decumānā portā resistere cōnābātur atque ultrō in nostrōs impetum faciēbat; equitātus Caesaris, quod angustō itinere per aggerēs ascendēbat, receptuī suō timēns initium fugae faciēbat; dextrum cornū, quod erat ā sinistrō sēclūsum, terrōre equi-  
25 tum animadversō, nē intrā mūnitiōnem opprimerētur, eā parte quam prōderat sēsē recipiēbat, ac plērique ex hīs, nē in angustias inciderent, ex x pedum mūnitiōne sē in fossās praecipitābant, prīmisque oppressis reliquī per hōrum corpora salutem sibi atque exitum pariēbant; sinistrī cornūs  
30 milites cum ex vāllō Pompēium adesse et suos fugere cer-

nerent, veritī nē angustiīs interclūderentur, cum extrā et intus hostem habērent, eōdem quō vēnerant receptū sibi cōsulēbant, omniaque erant tumultūs, timōris, fugae plēna, adeō ut, cum Caesar signiferum quendam manū prēnderet  
 5 et cōsistere iubēret, aliī, idem iussī, sequī eundem cursum contenderent, aliī metū etiam sīgna dīmitterent, neque quisquam omnīnō cōsisteret.

70. Hīs tantis malīs haec subsidia succurrē- *Causes of Caesar's escape from annihilation.*  
 bant, quō minus omnis dēlērētur exercitus, quod  
 10 Pompēius insidiās timēns, crēdō (quod haec praeter spem acciderant eius, quī paulō ante ex castrīs fugientēs suōs cōspēxerat), mūnitiōnibus appropinquāre aliquamdiū nōn audēbat, equitēsque eius angustiīs atque hīs ā Caesaris militibus occupātis ad īnsequendum tardābantur. Ita par-  
 15 vae rēs magnum in utramque partem mōmentum habuērunt. Mūnitiōnēs enim ā castrīs ad flūmen perductae, expugnātis iam castrīs Pompēi, propriam expeditamque Caesaris victōriam interpellāvērunt; eadem rēs celeritātē īnsequentium tardātā nostrīs salūtem attulit.

20 71. Duōbus hīs ūnius diēi proeliīs Caesar dē- *Caesar's losses. Cruelty of Labienus.*  
 siderāvit militēs DCCCCLX et equitēs CC, in quibus Tūticanum Gallum senātōris filium, nōtōs equitēs Rōmānōs C. Fleginātem Placentiā, A. Grānium Puteolīs, M. Sacrātivirum Capuā, tribūnōs militum et centuriōnēs xxxii — sed  
 25 hōrum omnium pars magna in fossis mūnitiōnis et flūminis rīpīs oppressa suōrum terrōre ac fugā sine ullo vulnere interiit —; sīgnaque sunt militāria āmissa xxxii.

Pompēius eō proeliō imperātor est appellātus. Hōc nōmine abstinuit, atque ita sē posteā salūtārī passus est,  
 30 sed neque in litterīs praescribere est solitus neque in fasci-

bus insignia laureae praetulit. At Labiēnus, cum ab eō impetrāvisset ut sibi captivōs trādī iubēret, omnēs prōductōs ostentātiōnis, ut vidēbātur, causā, quō maior perflugae fidēs habērētur, commilitōnēs appellāns et magnā verbōrum  
5 contumeliā interrogāns solērentne veterānī milītēs fugere, in omnium cōspectū interfēcit.

*Premature  
rejoicing of  
the Pompe-  
ians.*

72. His rēbus tantum fidūciae ac spīritūs  
Pompēiānis accessit ut nōn dē ratiōne bellī cō-  
gitārent, sed vīcisse iam sibi vidērentur. Nōn illi  
10 paucitātem nostrōrum milītum, nōn inīquitātem locī atque  
angustiās praeoccupātis castris et ancipitem terrōrem intrā  
extrāque mūnitiōnēs, nōn abscisum in duās partēs exerci-  
tum, cum altera alterī auxilium ferre nōn posset, causae  
fuisse cōgitābant. Nōn ad haec addēbant nōn concursū  
15 acriter factō, nōn proeliō dīmīcatum, sibi que ipsōs multītū-  
dine atque angustiis maius attulisse dētrīmentum quam ab  
hoste accēpissent. Nōn dēnique commūnēs bellī cāsūs re-  
cordābantur, quam parvulae saepe causae vel falsae suspi-  
ciōnis vel terrōris repentinī vel obiectae religiōnis magna  
20 dētrīmenta intulissent, quotiēns vel ducis vitiō vel culpā  
tribūnī in exercitū esset offēsum; sed proinde ac sī virtūte  
vicissent neque ūlla commūtatiō rērum posset accidere, per  
orbem terrārū fāmā ac litterīs victōriam eius diēi concele-  
brābant.

73-99. THE CAMPAIGN IN THESSALY, JULY-AUGUST, 48 B.C.

*Caesar retreats into Thessaly*

25 *Caesar urges  
his soldiers  
not to be dis-  
heartened.*

73. Caesar ab superiōribus cōsiliis dēpulsus  
omnem sibi commūtandam bellī ratiōnem existi-  
māvit. Itaque ūnō tempore praesidiis omībus

dēductis et oppugnātiōne dīmissā, coāctōque in ūnum locum exercitū cōntiōnem apud milites habuit; hortātusque est nē ea quae accidissent graviter ferrent, nēve hīs rēbus terrerentur, multisque secundis proeliis ūnum adversum et id  
 5 mediocre oppōnerent. Habendam fortūnae grātiā, quod Italiam sine aliquō vulnere recēpissent, quod duās Hispāniās bellicōsissimōrum hominum perītissimis atque exercitātissimis ducibus pācāvissent, quod finitimās frūmentāriāsque prōvinciās in potestātem redēgissent; dēnique recordārī  
 10 dēbēre quā felicitāte inter mediās hostium classēs, opplētis nōn solum portibus sed etiam litoribus, omnēs incolumēs essent trānsportātī. Sī nōn omnia caderent secunda, fortūnam esse industriā sublevandam. Quod esset acceptum dētrimentī, cuiusvis potius quam suae culpae dēbēre tribuī.  
 15 Locum sē aequum ad dīmicandum dedisse, potitum sē esse hostium castris, expulisse ac superāsse repugnantēs. Sed sive ipsōrum perturbātiō sive error aliquis sive etiam fortūna partam iam praesentemque victōriam interpellāvisset, dandam omnibus operam ut acceptum incommodum virtūte  
 20 sarcirētur; quod sī esset factum, futurum ut dētrimentum in bonum verteret, utī ad Gergoviam accidisset, atque ī quī ante dīmicāre timuissent ultrō sē proeliō offerrent.

74. Hāc habitā cōntiōne nōn nullōs signiferōs ignōminiā notāvit ac locō mōvit. Exercitū qui-  
 25 dem omnī tantus incessit ex incommodō dolor tantumque studium infāmiae sarcindae, ut nēmō aut tribūnī aut centuriōnis imperium dēsiderāret et sibi quisque etiam poenae locō graviōrēs impōneret labōrēs, simulque omnēs ardērent cupiditāte pugnandī, cum superiōris etiam  
 30 ordinis nōn nullī ratiōne permōtī manendum eō locō et rem

*Encouraging  
effect of his  
speech.*

proeliō committendam existimarent. Contrā ea Caesar neque satis militibus perterritis cōnfidēbat spatiumque interpōnendum ad recreandōs animōs putābat, et reffectis mūnitiōnibus magnopere rei frumentāriae timēbat.

- 5 *Caesar abandons the siege, and retreats towards Apollonia pursued by Pompey.* 75. Itaque nullā interpositā morā, sauciōrum modo et aegrōrum habitā ratiōne, impedimenta omnia silentiō primā nocte ex castris Apollōniam praemisit ac conquiescere ante iter cōnfectum vetuit. His ūna legiō missa praesidiō est. His explicitis rēbus duās in castris legiōnēs retinuit, reliquās dē quārtā vigiliā complūribus portis ēductās eōdem itinere praemisit; parvōque spatiō intermissō, ut et militāre institūtum servārētur et quam sērissimē eius profectiō cōgnōsceretur, conclā-
- 15 mārī iussit, statimque ēgressus et novissimum agmen cōnsecūtus celeriter ex cōnspectū discessit. Neque vērō Pompēius cōgnitō cōnsiliō eius moram ūllam ad insequendum intulit, sed eōdem diē, spectāns sī in itinere impedītōs et perterritōs dēprehendere posset, exercitum ē castris
- 20 ēdūxit equitātumque praemisit ad novissimum agmen dēmorandum, neque cōnsequī potuit, quod multum expeditō itinere antecesserat Caesar. Sed cum ventum esset ad flūmen Genusum, quod rīpīs erat impeditis, cōnsecūtus equitātus novissimōs proeliō dētīnēbat. Huic suōs Caesar
- 25 equitēs opposuit expeditōsque antesignānōs admiscuit cccc; quī tantum prōfēcērunt ut equestri proeliō commissō pellerent omnēs complūrēsque interficerent, ipsī incolumēs sē ad agmen reciperent.

76. Cōnfectō iūstō itinere eius diēi quod prōposuerat  
30 Caesar trāductōque exercitū flūmen Genusum veteribus

suīs in castrīs contrā Asparāgium cōnsēdit, mīlī-  
 tēsque omnēs intrā vāllum castrōrum continuit  
 equitātumque per causam pābulandī ēmissum  
 cōnfestim decumānā portā in castra sē recipere  
 5 iussit. Simili ratiōne Pompēius cōnfectō eius diēi itinere  
 in suīs veteribus castrīs ad Asparāgium cōnsēdit. Eius  
 mīlītēs, quod ab opere integrīs mūnitiōnibus vacābant, aliī  
 lignandī pābulandīque causā longius prōgrediēbantur, aliī,  
 quod subitō cōnsilium profectiōnis cēperant magnā parte  
 10 impedimentōrum et sarcinārum relictā, ad haec repetenda  
 invitātī propinquitāte superiōrum castrōrum, dēpositis in  
 contuberniō armīs vāllum relinquebant. Quibus ad se-  
 quendum impedītis, quod fore prōviderat, Caesar merī-  
 diānō ferē tempore signō profectiōnis datō exercitum  
 15 ēdūcit, duplicātōque eius diēi itinere VIII mīllia passuum  
 ex eō locō prōcēdit; quod facere Pompēius discessū  
 mīlitum nōn potuit.

*Caesar by a  
 trick gets a  
 long start of  
 Pompey.*

77. Posterō diē Caesar similiter praemissīs  
 primā nocte impedimentis dē quārtā vigiliā ipse  
 20 ēgreditur, ut, sī qua esset imposita dīmicandī  
 necessitās, subitum cāsū expeditō exercitū  
 subiret. Hoc idem reliquīs fēcit diēbus. Quibus rēbus  
 perfectum est ut altissimīs flūminibus atque impedītissimīs  
 itineribus nūllum acciperet incommodum. Pompēius enim  
 25 primī diēi morā inlātā et reliquōrum diērum frūstrā labōre  
 susceptō, cum sē magnīs itineribus extenderet et praegres-  
 sōs cōnsequi cuperet, quārto diē finem sequendī fēcit atque  
 aliud sibi cōnsilium capiendum exīstimāvit.

*Pompey at  
 length gives  
 up the pur-  
 suit.*

78. Caesarī ad sauciōs dēpōnendōs, stīpendium exercitū  
 30 dandum, sociōs cōnfirmandōs, praesidium urbibus relin-

*Caesar reaches Apollonia and hastens thence to Thessaly. Reasons of Caesar and of Pompey for going to Thessaly.*

quendum, necesse erat adire Apollōniam. Sed his rēbus tantum temporis tribuit quantum erat properantī necesse; timēns Domitiō, nē adventū Pompēi praeoccupārētur, ad eum omnī celeritāte et studiō incitātus ferēbātur. Tōtius autem rei cōnsilium his ratiōnibus explicābat: ut, si Pompēius eōdem contenderet, abductum illum ā mari, atque ab iis cōpiis quās Dyrrachī comparāverat frūmenti ac commeātūs abstractum, parī condiciōne bellī sēcum dēcertāre cōgeret; si in Italiam trānsiret, coniūctō exercitū cum Domitiō per Īllyricum Italiae subsidiō proficiscerētur; si Apollōniam Ōricumque oppugnāre et sē omnī maritimā ōrā exclūdere cōnārētur, obsessō Scīpiōne necessariō illum suis auxilium ferre cōgeret. Itaque praemissīs nūntiis ad Cn. Domitium Caesar scrīpsit et quid fieri vellet ostendit, praesidiōque Apollōniae cohortium III, Lissī I, III Ōricī relictō, quīque erant ex vulneribus aegrī dēpositis, per Ēpīrum atque Athamāniam iter facere coepit.

Pompēius quoque dē Caesaris cōnsiliō coniectūrā iūdicāns ad Scīpiōnem properandum sibi existimābat: si Caesar iter illō habēret, ut subsidium Scīpiōnī ferret; si ab ōrā maritimā Ōricīque discēdere nōllet, quod legiōnēs equitātumque ex Italiā spērāret, ipse ut omnibus cōpiis Domitium adgrederētur.

*25 Caesar finds the country hostile. Domitius's narrow escape from Pompey and union with Caesar.*

79. His dē causis uterque eōrum celeritātī studēbat, et suis ut esset auxiliō, et ad opprimendōs adversāriōs nē occāsiōnī temporis deēsset. Sed Caesarem Apollōnia ā dērēctō itinere āverterat, Pompēius per Candāviam iter in Macedoniam expeditum habēbat. Accessit

etiam ex imprōvisō aliud incommodum, quod Domitius, cum diēs complūrēs castris Scīpiōnis castra conlāta habuisset, rei frūmentāriae causā ab eō discesserat et Hēracliam, quae est subiecta Candāviae, iter fēcerat, ut ipsa  
 5 fortūna illum obicere Pompēiō vidērētur. Haec ad id tempus Caesar ignōrābat. Simul ā Pompēiō litteris per omnēs prōvinciās civitātēque dimissis dē proeliō ad Dyrrachium factō, elātius inflātiusque multō quam rēs erat gesta fāma percrēbruerat pulsum fugere Caesarem  
 10 paene omnibus cōpiis āmissis. Haec itinera infesta red-diderat, haec civitātēs nōn nullās ab eius amicitia āvertēbat. Quibus accidit rēbus ut plūribus dīmissi itineribus ā Caesare ad Domitium et ā Domitiō ad Caesarem nullā ratiōne iter cōnficere possent. Sed Allobrogēs, Roucilli  
 15 atque Egī familiārēs, quōs perfūgissee ad Pompēium dēmōstrāvimus, cōspicātī in itinere explōrātōrēs Domiti, seu pristinā suā cōnsuētūdine, quod unā in Galliā bella gesserant, seu glōriā elāti, cūncta, ut erant ācta, exposuērunt, et Caesaris profectiōnem, adventum Pompēi docuērunt.  
 20 runt. Ā quibus Domitius certior factus, vix IIII hōrārum spatiō antecēdēs, hostium beneficiō periculum vitāvit, et ad Aeginium, quod est adiectum appositumque Thessaliae, Caesarī venienti occurrit.

80. Coniūctō exercitū Caesar Gomphōs per-  
 25 vēnit, quod est oppidum primum Thessaliae  
 venientibus ab Ēpīrō; quae gēns paucis ante  
 mēnsibus ultrō ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserat ut suis omni-  
 bus facultātibus ūterētur; praesidiumque ab eō militum  
 petierat. Sed eō fāma iam praecucurrerat, quam suprā  
 30 docuimus, dē proeliō Dyrrachinō, quod multis auxerat

*Caesar takes  
Gomphi by  
storm.*

partibus. Itaque Androstenēs, praetor Thessaliae, cum sē victōriae Pompēi comitem esse mallet quam socium Caesaris in rēbus adversis, omnem ex agris multitudinem servōrum ac liberōrum in oppidum cōgit portāsque praecūdit, et ad Scīpiōnem Pompēiumque nūntiōs mittit ut sibi subsidiō veniant: sē cōfidere mūnitiōnibus oppidī,



FIG. 41.— Attack on a Walled Town.

sī celeriter succurrātur; longinquam oppugnātiōnem sustinēre nōn posse. Scīpiō discessū exercituum ā Dyrrachiō cōgnitō Lārisam legiōnēs addūxerat; Pompēius nōndum  
 10 Thessaliae appropinquābat. Caesar castris mūnitis scālās mūsculōsque ad repentinam oppugnātiōnem fieri et crātēs parārī iussit. Quibus rēbus effectis cohortātus militēs docuit quantum ūsum habēret ad sublevandam omnium rērum inopiam potiri oppidō plēnō atque opulentō, simul

reliquis civitatibus huius urbis exemplō inferri terrōrem et id fieri celeriter priusquam auxilia concurrerent. Itaque ūsus singulārī militum studiō, eōdem quō vēnerat diē post hōram nōnam oppidum altissimis moenibus oppugnāre adgressus, 5 ante sōlis occāsum expugnāvit et ad diripiendum militibus concessit, statimque ab oppidō castra mōvit et Mētopolim vēnit sic ut nūntiōs expugnātī oppidī fāmamque antecēderet.

81. Mētopolitae primō eōdem ūsī cōsiliō isdem permōtī rūmōribus portās clausērunt mū- 10 rōsque armātis complēvērunt; sed postea cāsū civitātis Gomphēnsis cōgnitō ex captivīs quōs Caesar ad mūrum prōdūcendōs cūrāverat, portās aperuērunt. Quibus diligentissimē cōservātis, cōlātā fortunā Mētopolitum cum cāsū Gomphēnsium, nūlla 15 Thessaliae fuit civitās praeter Lārisaeōs, quī minis Scīpiōnis terrēbantur, quīn Caesarī pāreret atque imperāta faceret. Ille idōneum locum in agrīs nactus, quō prope iam mātūra erant frūmenta, ibi adventum expectāre Pompēi eoque omnem bellī ratiōnem cōferre cōstituit.

*The rest of Thessaly submits. Caesar encamps in the plain of Pharsalus.*

*Pompey encamps near Caesar. Confidence of his army*

20 82. Pompēius paucis post diēbus in Thessaliā pervenit, cōtīonātusque apud cūctum exercitum suis agit grātiās, Scīpiōnis milites cohortatur ut partā iam victoriā praedae ac praemiōrum velint esse participēs, receptisque 25 omnibus in ūna castra legiōnibus suum cum Scīpiōne honōrem partitur, classicumque apud eum canī et alterum illi iubet praetōrium tendi. Auctis cōpiis Pompēi duōbusque magnis exercitibus con-

*Pompey joins Scipio in Thessaly. His followers dispute over the distribution of the spoils and of the offices at Rome as if the war were already over.*

iunctis pristina omnium confirmatur opinio et spes victoriae augetur adeo ut, quicquid intercederet temporis, id morari relictum in Italiam videretur; et, si quando quid Pompeius tardius aut consideratius faceret, unius super-  
✓ 5 esse negotium dei, sed illum delectari imperio et consulares praetoriosque servorum habere numero dicerent, Iamque inter se palam de praemiis ac de sacerdotiis contendebant, in annosque consulatum definiiebant, alii domos bonaque eorum qui in castris erant Caesaris petebant;  
10 magnaque inter eos in consilio fuit controversia oportere ne Lucili Hirri, quod is a Pompeio ad Parthos missus esset, proximis comitiis praetorius absentis rationem haberi, cum eius necessarij fidem implerarent Pompei praestaret quod proficiscenti recepisset, ne per eius auctoritatem  
15 deceptus videretur; reliqui in labore pari ac periculo ne unus omnes antecederet recusarent.

83. Iam de sacerdotio Caesaris Domitius, Scipio, Spinterque Lentulus cotidianis contentionibus ad gravissimas verborum contumelias palam descendunt, cum Lentulus  
20 aetatis honorem ostentaret, Domitius urbanam gratiam dignitatemque iactaret, Scipio adfinitate Pompei confideret. Postulavit etiam L. Afranium proditoris exercitus Acutius Rufus apud Pompeium; et L. Domitius in consilio dixit placere sibi bello confecto ternas tabellas dari ad  
25 iudicandum iis qui ordinis essent senatorii belloque una cum ipsis interfuissent, sententiasque de singulis ferri qui Romae remansissent quique intra praesidia Pompei fuissent neque operam in re militari praestitissent: unam fore tabellam qua liberandos omni periculo censerent; alteram  
30 qua capitis damnarent; tertiam qua pecuniam multarent.

Postrēmō omnēs aut dē honōribus suis aut dē praemiis pecūniae aut dē persequendis inimicitiis agēbant; neque quibus ratiōnibus superāre possent, sed quem ad modum ūtī victōriā dēbērent cōgitābant.

- 5 84. Rē frūmentāriā praeparatā cōfirmātisque  
militibus, et satis longō spatiō temporis ā Dyrra- *Caesar re-*  
chīnis proeliis intermissō quō satis perspectum *peatedly offers*  
habēre militum animum vidērētur, temptandum *battle. A fa-*  
*vorable cav-*  
*alry skirmish.*  
Caesar exīstimāvit quidnam Pompēius prōpositi aut volun-  
tātis ad dīmicandum habēret. Itaque ex castris exercitum  
10 ēdūxit aciemque īnstrūxit, primō suis locis paulōque ā castris  
Pompēi longius, continentibus vērō diēbus ut prōgrederētur  
ā castris suis collibusque Pompēiānis aciem subiceret.  
Quae rēs in diēs cōfirmātiōrem eius exercitum efficiē-  
15 bat. Superius tamen īnstitūtum in equitibus, quod dēmōn-  
strāvimus, servābat, ut, quoniam numerō multis partibus  
esset inferior, adulēscentēs atque expeditōs ex antesig-  
nānis ēlēctōs mūtātis ad pernīcitatē armīs inter equitēs  
proeliārī iubēret, quī cotidiānā cōnsuētūdine ūsum quoque  
20 eius generis proeliōrum percēperant. Hīs erat rēbus effec-  
tum ut equitum mīlle etiam āptiōribus locis vii millium  
Pompēiānōrum impetum, cum esset ūsus, sustinēre audē-  
rent, neque magnopere eōrum multitūdine terrērentur.  
Itaque etiam per eōs diēs proelium secundum equestre fēcit  
25 atque ūnum Allobrogem ex duōbus quōs perfūgissee ad  
Pompēium suprā docuimus cum quibusdam interfēcit.

85. Pompēius, quī castra in colle habēbat, ad *Caesar is*  
īnfimās rādicēs montis aciem īnstruēbat, semper, *about to*  
ut vidēbātur, exspectāns sī īniquis locis Caesar sē *change his*  
*tactics when*  
*Pompey de-*  
30 subiceret. Ille nūllā ratiōne ad pugnam ēlicī *cides to fight.*

posse Pompēium exīstimāns hanc sibi commodissimam bellī  
 rātiōnem iūdicāvit, utī castra ex eō locō movēret semperque  
 esset in itineribus, haec spectāns, ut movendis castrīs plūri-  
 busque adeundis locis commodiōre frūmentātiōne ūteretur,  
 5 simulque in itinere ut aliquam occāsionem dīmīcandī nan-  
 cisceretur et insolitum ad labōrem Pompēi exercitum cotī-  
 diānis itineribus dēfatigāret. Hīs cōstitutis rēbus, signō iam  
 profectiōnis datō tabernāculisque dētēnsīs, animadversum  
 est paulō ante iter extrā cotīdiānam cōsuētūdinem longius ā  
 10 vāllō esse aciem Pompēi prōgressam, ut nōn iniquō locō posse  
 dīmīcārī vidērētur. Tum Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset  
 agmen in portis, “Differendum est,” inquit, “iter in praesentia  
 nōbīs et dē proeliō cōgitandum, sicut semper dēpoposcimus.  
 Animō sīmus ad dīmīcandum parātī; nōn facile occāsionem  
 15 postea reperīēmus;” cōnfestimque expeditās cōpiās ēdūcit.

*Pompey's  
 scheme for  
 winning an  
 easy victory.*

86. Pompēius quoque, ut postea cōgnitum est,  
 suōrum omnium hortātū statuerat proeliō dēcer-  
 tāre. Atque etiam in cōnsiliō superiōris diēi  
 dixerat, priusquam concurrerent aciēs, fore utī exercitus  
 20 Caesaris pelleretur. Id cum essent plērique admīrātī,  
 “Sciō mē,” inquit, “paene incrēdibilem rem pollicērī; sed  
 ratiōnem cōnsiliī mei accipite, quō firmiōre animō in proe-  
 lium prōdeātis. Persuāsī equitibus nostrīs (idque mihi fac-  
 tūrōs cōfirmāvērunt) ut, cum propius esset accessum,  
 25 dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere apertō adgrederentur, et  
 circumventā ab tergō aciē prius perturbātum exercitum pel-  
 lerent quam ā nōbīs tēlum in hostem iaceretur. Ita sine  
 periculō legiōnum et paene sine vulnere bellum cōficiēmus.  
 Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus.”  
 30 Simul dēnūtiāvit ut essent animō parātī in posterum diem

et, cum iam fieret dimicandi potestas, ut saepe rogitaissent, ne suam neu reliquorum opinionem fallerent.

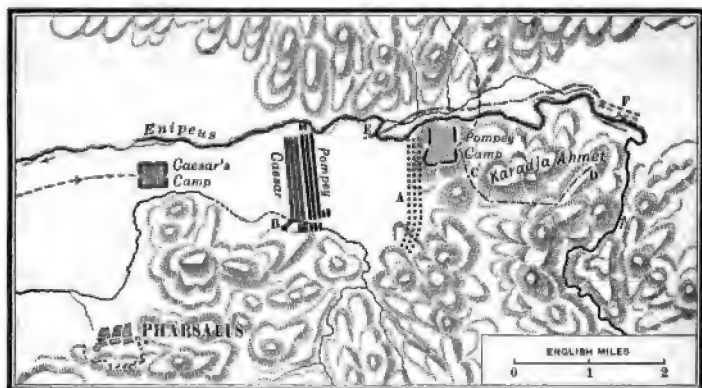
87. Hunc Labienus excipit et, cum Caesaris Labienus speaks disparagingly of Caesar's army.  
copiae despiceret, Pompei consilium summis laudibus efferret, "Noli," inquit, "existimare, Pompei, hunc esse exercitum qui Galliam Germaniamque devicerit. Omnibus interfui proeliis neque temere incognitam rem pronuntio. Perexigua pars illius exercitus superest; magna pars deperiit, quod accidere tot proeliis fuit  
10 necesse, multos autumnum pestilentia in Italia consumpsit, multi domum discesserunt, multi sunt relictum in continenti. An non audistis ex iis qui per causam valitudinis remanserunt cohortes esse Brundisi factas? Hae copiae quas videtis ex dilectibus horum annorum in citeriore Gallia sunt refectae,  
15 et plerique sunt ex coloniis Transpadanis. Ac tamen quod fuit roboris duobus proeliis Dyrrachinis interiiit." Haec cum dixisset, iuravit se nisi victorem in castra non reversurum, reliquosque ut idem facerent hortatus est. Hunc laudans Pompeius idem iuravit; nec vero ex reliquis fuit quisquam  
20 qui iurare dubitaret. Haec cum acta essent in consilio, magna spe et laetitia omnium discessum est; ac iam animo victoriam praecipiebant, quod de re tanta et a tam perito imperatore nihil frustram confirmari videbatur.

*The battle of Pharsalus, Aug. 9, 48 B.C.*

88. Caesar cum Pompei castris appropinquasset, ad hunc modum aciem eius instructam animadvertit. Erant in sinistro cornu legiones duae traditae a Caesare initio dissensionis ex senatus consulto: quorum una prima, altera tertia appellabatur. In eo loco  
25

*Size and arrangement of Pompey's army.*

ipse erat Pompēius. Mediam aciem Scīpiō cum legiōnibus Syriacis tenēbat. Ciliciēnsis legiō coniūcta cum cohortibus Hispānīs, quās trāductās ab Afrāniō docuimus, in dextrō cornū erant conlocātae. Hās firmissimās sē habere Pompēius exīstīmābat. Reliquās inter aciem mediam cornuaque interiēcera numerumque cohortium cx explēverat. Haec erant numerō millia XLV. Ēvocātōrum circiter duo millia, quae ex beneficiāriis superiōrum exercituum ad eum convēnerant, tōtā aciē dispertierat. Reliquās cohortēs VII castrīs propinquisque castellīs praesidiō disposuerat. Dextrum cornū eius rīvus quīdam impeditīs rīpīs mūniēbat; quam ob causam cūctum equitātum, sagittāriōs funditōrēsque omnēs sinistrō cornū adiēcera.



The Battle of Pharsalus.

- A*, Position taken by Pompey for several days, 233, 28.
- B*, Caesar's fourth line, 237, 13.
- C*, Route of the fugitives from Pompey's camp, 240, 28 ff.
- D*, Height occupied by the Pompeians after the battle, 242, 1.
- E*, Place of Caesar's crossing the river, 241, 28.
- F*, Caesar's lines blocking the retreat of the Pompeians, 242, 4.

89. Caesar superius institutum servāns decimam legionem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistro conlocāverat, tametsi erat Dyrrachinīs proeliis vehementer attenuāta, et huic sic adiūxerat octāvam ut  
 5 paene ūnam ex duābus efficeret, atque alteram alteri praesidiō esse iusserat. Cohortēs in aciē LXXX cōstitūtās habēbat, quārum summa erat millium XXII; cohortēs VII castris praesidiō reliquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō P. Sullam, mediā aciē Cn. Domitium praeposuerat;  
 10 ipse contrā Pompēium cōstitit. Simul iis rēbus animadversis quās dēmōstrāvimus, timēns nē ā multitudine equitum dextrum cornū circumvenīrētur, celeriter ex tertiā aciē singulās cohortēs dētrāxit atque ex his quārtam instituit equitātūque opposuit, et quid fieri vellet ostendit, monuit  
 15 que eius diēi victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōstāre. Simul tertiae aciēi quārtaeque imperāvit, nē iniussū suō concurreret: sē, cum id fieri vellet, vexillo sīgnum datūrum.

90. Exercitum cum militārī mōre ad pugnam cohortārētur suaque in eum perpetuū temporis  
 20 officia praedicāret, imprimīs commemorāvit testibus sē militibus ūtī posse quantō studiō pācem petisset; quae per Vatīnium in conloquiis, quae per A. Clōdium cum Scīpiōne ēgisset, quibus modis ad Ōricum cum Libōne dē mittendis lēgātis contendisset. Neque sē um  
 25 quam abūtī militum sanguine neque rem publicam alterutrō exercitū privāre voluisse. Hāc habitā ōrātiōne exposcentibus militibus et studiō pugnae ardentibus tubā sīgnum dedit.

91. Erat Crāstinus ēvocātus in exercitū Caesaris, qui superiōre annō apud eum primum  
 30 pilum in legiōne decimā dūxerat, vir singulārī

*Size and arrangement of Caesar's army.*

*Caesar harangues his army and gives the signal for battle.*

*The charge is led by a re-enlisted veteran.*

*here*

✓

virtute. Hic signō datō, "Sequiminī mē," inquit, "manipulārēs meī quī fuistis, et vestrō imperātōrī quam instituistis operam date. Unum hoc proelium superest; quō cōfectō et ille suam dignitātem et nōs nostram libertātem recuperābimus." Simul respiciēns Caesarem, "Faciam," inquit, "hodiē, imperātor, ut aut vivō mihi aut mortuō grātiās agās." Haec cum dixisset, primus ex dextrō cornū prōcucurrit, atque eum laetī milītēs circiter cxx voluntārii eiusdem centuriae sunt prōsecuti.

10 *Pompey* 92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum  
*awaits the* spatī ut satis esset ad concursum utriusque  
*attack with-* exercitūs. Sed Pompēius suis praedixerat ut  
*out charging.* Caesaris impetum exciperent neque sē locō movērent,  
 aciēque eius distrahi paterentur; idque admonitū C.  
 15 Triārī fēcisse dicēbatur, ut primus incursus visque militum  
 infringerētur aciēsque distenderētur, atque in suis ordinibus  
 dispositi dispersōs adorirentur; leviusque cāsūra pīla spē-  
 rābat in locō retentis militibus quam si ipsi immissis pilis  
 occurrisent; simul fore ut duplicatō cursū Caesaris milītēs  
 20 exanimārentur et lassitudine cōficerentur. Quod nobis  
 quidem nullā ratiōne factum ā Pompēiō videtur, propterea  
 quod est quaedam animi incitātiō atque alacritās nātūrālīter  
 innāta omnibus, quae studiō pugnae incenditur. Hanc nōn  
 reprimere, sed augēre imperātōrēs debent; neque frūstrā  
 25 antiquitus institūtum est ut signa undique concinerent  
 clāmōremque ūniversi tollerent; quibus rēbus et hostēs  
 terrēri et suos incitārī existimāvērunt.

*The battle.* 93. Sed nostrī milītēs datō signō cum infestis  
*Rout of the* pilis prōcucurrissent atque animadvertissent nōn  
*Pompeians.* concurrī ā Pompēiānis, usū peritī ac superiōri-  
 30

bus pugnīs exercitātī suā sponte cursum repressērunt et ad medium ferē spatium cōstitērunt, nē cōsūmptīs vīribus appropinquārent; parvōque intermissō temporis spatiō ac rūsus renovātō cursū pīla mīsērunt celeriterque, ut  
5 erat praeceptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strīnxērunt. Neque vērō Pompēiānī huic rei dēfuērunt. Nam et pīla missa excēpērunt et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et ōrdinēs suōs cōservārunt pīlisque missis ad gladiōs rediērunt. Eōdem tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompēi cornū, ut erat imperā-  
10 tum, ūniversī prōcucurrērunt, omnisque multitudō sagittāriōrum sē profūdīt; quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn tulit, sed paulātīm locō mōtus cessit: equitēsque Pompēi hōc ācrius īnstāre et sē turmātīm explicāre aciemque nostram ā latere apertō circumīre coepērunt. Quod ubi Caesar  
15 animadvertit, quārtae aciēi, quam īstituerat viii cohortium numerō, dedit sīgnum. Illae celeriter prōcucurrērunt īnfestisque sīgnis tantā vī in Pompēi equitēs impetum fēcērunt ut eōrum nēmō cōsisteret, omnēsque conversī nōn sōlum locō cēderent, sed prōtinus incitātī fugā montēs  
20 altissimōs peterent. Quibus summōtis omnēs sagittārii funditōrēsque dēstitūtī suō praesidiō interfectī sunt. Eōdem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū, pugnantibus etiam tum ac resistentibus in aciē Pompēiānīs, circumiērunt eōsque ā tergō sunt adortae.

25 94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prōcurrere iussit. Ita cum recentēs atque integrī dēfessīs successissent, aliī autem ā tergō adorīrentur, sustinēre Pompēiānī nōn potuerunt atque ūniversī terga vertērunt. Neque vērō Caesarem  
30 fefellit quīn ab iīs cohortibus quae contrā equitātum in

quārtā aciē conlocātae essent initium victōriae orerētur, ut ipse in cohortandis militibus prōnūntiāverat. Ab hīs enim primum equitātus est pulsus, ab isdem facta caedēs sagittariōrum ac funditorum, ab isdem aciēs Pompēiāna ā sinistrā parte circumita atque initium fugae factum. Sed Pompēius ut equitātum suum pulsum vidit atque eam partem cui maximē cōnfidēbat perterritam animadvertit, aliis quoque diffusus aciē excessit prōtinusque sē in castra equo contulit, et iis centuriōnibus quos in statione ad praetōriam portam posuerat clārē, ut milites exaudirent, “Tuēmini,” inquit, “castra et dēfendite diligenter, si quid dūrius acciderit. Ego reliquās portās circumeō et castrorum praesidia cōfirmō.” Haec cum dixisset, sē in praetōrium contulit summae rei diffidēs et tamen ēventum exspectāns.

15 *Pompey's camp is captured.* 95. Caesar Pompēiānis ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsis nūllum spatium perterritis darī oportere existimāns milites cohortātus est ut beneficiō fortunae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsi magnō aestū (nam ad merīdiem rēs erat prōducta), tamen  
20 ad omnem labōrem animō parātī imperiō pārūerunt. Castra ā cohortibus quae ibi praesidiō erant relictāe industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thrācibus barbarisque auxiliis. Nam quī ex aciē refūgerant milites, et animō perterriti et lassitudine cōfecti, dīmissis plērique armīs signisque  
25 militaribus magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrorum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius quī in vāllō cōnstitēbant multitudinem tēlorum sustinēre potuerunt, sed cōfecti vulneribus locum reliquērunt, prōtinusque omnēs ducibus ūsi centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum in altissimōs  
30 montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt.

96. In castris Pompēi vidēre licuit trichilās *Appearance of the camp. Pompey's escape.* strūctās, magnum argenti pondus expositum, recentibus caespitibus tabernacula cōstrāta, L. etiam Lentulī et nōn nullōrum tabernacula prōtēcta hederā, 5 multaque praetereā quae nimiam lūxuriā et victōriā fidūciā dēsīgnārent; ut facile exīstimārī posset nihil eōs dē ēventū eius diēi timuisse, quī nōn necessāriās conquīrent voluptātēs. At hī miserrimō ac patientissimō exercitū Caesaris lūxuriā obiciēbant, cui saepe omnia ad 10 necessārium ūsum dēfuissent. Pompēius, cum iam intrā vāllum nostrī versārentur, equum nactus dētractīs insignibus imperātōriīs decumānā portā sē ex castris ēiēcit prōtinusque equo citātō Lārisam contendit. Neque ibi cōstitit, sed eādē celeritāte paucōs suōs ex fugā nactus, nocturnō 15 itinere nōn intermissō, comitātū equitum xxx ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmentāriā cōnscendit, saepe, ut dicēbātur, querēns tantum sē opiniōnem fefellisse ut, ā quō genere hominum victōriā spērāsset, ab eō initio fugae factō paene prōditus vidērētur.

20 97. Caesar castris potitus ā militibus contēdit nē in praedā occupātī reliquī negōtī gerendī facultātem dīmitterent. Quā rē impetrātā montem opere circummūnīre instituit. Pompēiānī, *Caesar pursues the enemy and compels them to surrender.* quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffīsī eī locō, relictō monte 25 ūniversī iugīs eius Lārisam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā Caesar cōpiās suās divīsīt partemque legiōnum in castris Pompēi remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remisit, IIII sēcum legiōnēs dūxit commodiōreque itinere Pompēiānīs occurrere coepit et prōgressus millia 30 passuum VI aciem instrūxit. Quā rē animadversā Pom-

pēiānī in quōdam monte cōstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat. Caesar milītēs cohortātus, etsī tōtius diēi continentī labōre erant cōfectī noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnitiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī  
 5 Pompēiānī possent. Quō perfectō opere illī dē dēditiōne missis lēgātīs agere coepērunt. Paucī ōrdinis senātōriī, quī sē cum iīs coniūnxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petivērunt.

*Caesar's  
 clemency  
 toward his  
 10 vanquished  
 foes.*

98. Caesar primā lūce omnēs eōs quī in monte cōsēderant ex superiōribus locis in plānitiem dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt passisque palmīs

prōiecti ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem petivērunt, cōsō-  
 lātus cōsurgere iussit, et  
 pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte  
 suā locūtus, quō minōre essent  
 timōre, omnēs cōservāvit,  
 milītibusque suis commendā-  
 vit nē quī eōrum violārētur,



FIG. 42. — Coins of Caesar.

neu quid suī dēsiderārent. Hāc adhibitā diligentiā ex  
 20 castrīs sibi legiōnēs aliās occurrere et eās quās sēcum  
 dūxerat in vicem requiēscere atque in castra revertī iussit,  
 eōdemque diē Lārīsam pervēnit.

*The losses of  
 both sides.*

99. In eō proeliō nōn amplius cc milītēs dē-  
 siderāvit, sed centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter  
 25 xxx āmisit. Interfectus est etiam fortissimē pugnāns  
 Crāstinus, cuius mentiōnem suprā fēcimus, gladiō in ōs ad-  
 versum coniectō. Neque id fuit falsum quod ille in pug-  
 nam proficiscēns dīxerat. Sic enim Caesar existimābat, eō  
 proeliō excellentissimam virtūtem Crāstinī fuisse, optimē-  
 30 que eum dē sē meritum iūdicābat. Ex Pompēiānō exercitū

circiter millia xv cecidisse vidēbantur, sed in dēditiōnem  
vērunt amplius millia xxiiii (namque etiam cohortēs quae  
praesidiō castellis fuerant sēsē Sullae dēdidērunt), multi  
praetereā in finitimās civitatēs refūgērunt; signaque mili-  
taria ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta CLXXX et aquilae  
viii. L. Domitius ex castris in montem refugiēns, cum virēs  
eum lassitudine dēfēcissent, ab equitibus est interfectus.

\* \* \* \* \*

102-104. POMPEY'S FLIGHT AND DEATH, AUGUST-SEPTEMBER,  
48 B.C.

102. Caesar omnibus rēbus relictis perse-  
quendum sibi Pompēium exīstimāvit, quāscum-  
que in partēs ex fugā sē recēpisset, nē rursus  
cōpiās comparāre aliās et bellum renovāre pos-  
set. Ita quantumcumque itineris equitātū cōn-  
ficere poterat cotidiē prōgrediēbātur, legiōnemque ūnam  
minōribus itineribus subsequi iussit. Erat ēdictum Pompēi  
nōmine Amphipoli prōpositum, uti omnēs eius prōvinciae  
iūniōrēs, Graeci civēsque Rōmānī, iūrādi causā conveni-  
rent. Id utrum āvertendae suspiciōnis causā Pompēius  
prōposuisset, ut quam diūtissimē longiōris fugae cōnsilium  
occultāret, an novīs dilēctibus, si nēmō premeret, Mace-  
doniam tenēre cōnārētur, exīstimārī nōn poterat. Ipse ad  
ancoram ūnam noctem cōstitit, et vocātis ad sē Amphipoli  
hospitibus et pecūniā ad necessariōs sūmptūs corrogātā,  
cōgnitō Caesaris adventū ex eō locō discessit et Mytilēnās  
paucis diēbus vēn.t. Bīduum tempestāte retentus nāvibus  
additis actuāriis in Ciliciam atque inde Cyprum pervēnit.  
Ibi cōgnōscit cōsēnsū omnium Antiochēnsium civiumque

*Pursued by  
Caesar Pompey sails from  
Amphipolis  
to Mytilene,  
Cilicia, and  
Cyprus.*

Rōmānōrum quī illic negōtiārentur arcem captam esse excludendī suī causā, nūntiōsque dīmissōs ad eōs quī sē ex fugā in finitimās civitatēs recēpisse dīcerentur, nē Antiochiām adirent : id sī fēcissent, magnō eōrum capitis periculō  
 5 futūrum. Idem hoc L. Lentulō, quī superiōre annō cōnsul fuerat, et P. Lentulō cōnsulārī ac nōn nullīs aliīs acciderat Rhodī; quī cum ex fugā Pompēium sequerentur atque in insulam vēnissent, oppidō ac portū receptī nōn erant, missisque ad eōs nūntiīs ex hīs locīs discēderent,  
 10 contrā voluntātem suam nāvēs solverant. Iamque dē Caesaris adventū fāma ad civitatēs perferēbātur.

*Pompey  
 arrives at  
 Pelusium and  
 begs King  
 15 Ptolemy's  
 protection.*

103. Quibus cōgnitis rēbus Pompēius dēpositō adeundae Syriae cōnsiliō, pecūniā ā societātibus sublātā et ā quibusdam privātīs sūmptā, et aeris magnō pondere ad militārem ūsum in nāvēs impositō duōbusque millibus hominum armātīs, quōs partim ex familiīs societātum dēlēgerat, partim ā negōtiātōribus coēgerat, quōs ex suīs quisque ad hanc rem idōneōs exīstimābat, Pēlūsium pervēnit. Ibi cāsū rēx erat  
 20 Ptolomaeus, puer aetāte, magnīs cōpiīs cum sorōre Cleopatrá bellum gerēns, quam paucīs ante mēnsibus per suōs propinquōs atque amīcōs rēgnō expulerat; castraque Cleopatrae nōn longō spatiō ab eius castrīs distābant. Ad eum Pompēius mīsīt, ut prō hospitīō atque amīciā patris Alex-  
 25 andriām reciperētur atque illius opibus in calamitāte tegetur. Sed quī ab eō missī erant, cōnfectō lēgatiōnis officiō, liberius cum militibus rēgiīs conloquī coepērunt eōsque hortārī ut suum officium Pompēiō praestārent nēve eius fortunam dēspicerent. In hōc erant numerō complūrēs  
 30 Pompēi militēs, quōs ex eius exercitū acceptōs in Syriā

Gabinius Alexandriam trādūxerat bellōque cōfectō apud Ptolomaeum, patrem puerī, reliquerat.

104. Hīs tum cōgnitīs rēbus amīcī rēgis, quī *He is*  
 propter aetātem eius in prōcūrātiōne erant *treacherously*  
 5 rēgnī, sive timōre adductī, ut postea praedicā- *murdered by*  
 bant, sollicitatō exercitū rēgiō nē Pompēius *order of the*  
*king's*  
 Alexandriam Aegyptumque occupāret, sive dē- *counsellors.*  
 spectā eius fortūnā (ut plērumque in calamitatē ex amīcīs  
 inimīcī exsistunt), iis quī erant ab eō missī palam liberāliter  
 10 respondērunt, eumque ad rēgem venīre iussērunt; ipsī  
 clam cōsiliō initō Achillam, praefectum rēgium, singulārī  
 hominem audaciā, et L. Septimium, tribūnum militum, ad  
 interficiendum Pompēium mīsērunt. Ab hīs liberāliter  
 ipse appellātus et quādam nōtiā Septimī prōductus, quod  
 15 bellō praedōnum apud eum ordinem dūxerat, nāviculam  
 parvulam cōnscendit cum paucīs suis; ibi ab Achillā et  
 Septimiō interficitur. Item L. Lentulus comprehenditur  
 ab rēge et in custodiā necātur.

105-107. CAESAR IN ASIA AND ALEXANDRIA, SEPTEMBER-  
 OCTOBER, 48 B.C.

105. Caesar cum in Asiam venisset, reperiē- *Caesar*  
 20 bat T. Ampium cōnātum esse pecūniās tollere *rescues the*  
 Ephesō ex fānō Diānae eiusque rei causā *treasure of*  
 senātōrēs omnēs ex prōvinciā ēvocāsse, ut hīs *Diana's*  
 testibus in sūmendā pecūniā ūterētur, sed in- *temple at*  
 terpellātum adventū Caesaris profūgissee. Ita *Ephesus.*  
 25 duōbus temporibus Ephesiae pecūniae Caesar *Prodigies*  
*which oc-*  
 auxilium tulit. *curred on the*  
*day of the*  
*battle of*  
*Pharsalus.*

\* \* \* \* \*

Item cōstābat Ἐlide in templō Minervae, repetitis atque numeratis diēbus, quō diē proelium secundum Caesar fecisset simulacrum Victōriae, quod ante ipsam Minervam conlocatum esset et ante ad simulacrum Minervae spectavisset, ad valvās sē templi limenque convertisse. Eodemque diē Antiochiaē in Syriā bis tantus exercitūs clamor et signōrum sonus exauditus est ut in mūrīs armata civitās discurreret. Hoc idem Ptolomāide accidit, Pergamique in occultis locis ac reconditis templi, quō praeter sacerdotes  
 10 adire fas nulli est, quae Graeci adyta appellant, tympana sonuerunt. Item Trallibus in templō Victōriae, ubi Caesaris statuam cōsecraverant, palmam per eos diēs inter coagmenta lapidum ex pavimento exstitisse ostendebatur.

*Caesar's arrival at Alexandria. Street brawls.* 106. Caesar paucos diēs in Asiā moratus, cum audisset Pompeium Cypri visum, coniectans eum in Aegyptum iter habere propter necessitudinēs  
 20 regum reliquāsque eius loci opportunitatēs, cum legione unā, quam sē ex Thessaliā sequi iusserat, et alterā, quam ex Achaiā a Q. Fufio legatō evocaverat, equitibusque  
 20 DCCC et navibus longis Rhodiis x et Asiaticis paucis Alexandriam pervēnit. In his erant legionibus hominum millia tria cc; reliqui vulneribus ex proeliis et labore ac magnitudine itineris confecti consequi non potuerant. Sed Caesar  
 25 confusus famā rerum gestarum infirmis auxiliis proficisci non dubitaverat, aequē omnem sibi locum tutum fore existimans. Alexandriae de Pompei morte cognoscit; atque ibi primum ē navī egrediens clamorem militum audit, quos rex in oppido praesidi causā reliquerat, et concursum ad se fieri videt, quod fascēs anteferrentur. In hoc omnis mul-  
 30 titudo maiestatem regiam minui praedicabat. Hoc sedato

tumultū crēbrae continentibus diēbus ex concursū multitudinis concitātiōnēs fiēbant, complūrēsq̄ militēs huius urbis omnibus partibus interficiēbantur.

107. Quibus rēbus animadversīs legiōnēs sibi  
5 duās ex Asiā addūcī iussit, quās ex Pompēiānīs  
militibus cōnfēcerat. Ipse enim necessariō etē-  
siis tenēbātur, qui nāvigantibus Alexandriā flant  
adversissimī ventī. Interim contrōversiās rēgum  
ad populum Rōmānum et ad sē, quod esset cōn-  
10 sul, pertinēre existimāns, atque eō magis, quod  
superiōre cōsulātū cum patre Ptolomaeō et lēge et senā-  
tūs cōnsultō societās erat facta, ostendit sibi placēre rēgem  
Ptolomaeum atque ejus sorōrem Cleopatram exercitūs quōs  
habērent dīmittere et dē contrōversiis iūre apud sē potius  
15 quam inter sē armīs disceptāre.

*Caesar  
summons two  
legions from  
Asia, and  
undertakes to  
settle the  
quarrel of  
Ptolemy and  
Cleopatra.*

## ABBREVIATIONS

### USED IN THE NOTES AND THE VOCABULARY

abl. . . . .	<i>ablative.</i>	indic. . . . .	<i>indicative.</i>
abs. . . . .	<i>absolute.</i>	indir. . . . .	<i>indirect.</i>
acc. . . . .	<i>accusative.</i>	infin. . . . .	<i>infinitive.</i>
act. . . . .	<i>active.</i>	interrog. . . . .	<i>interrogative.</i>
adj. . . . .	<i>adjective.</i>	intr. . . . .	<i>intransitive.</i>
adv. . . . .	<i>adverb.</i>	Introd. . . . .	<i>Introduction.</i>
B.C. . . . .	<i>Bellum Civile.</i>	l., ll. . . . .	<i>line, lines.</i>
B.G. . . . .	<i>Bellum Gallicum.</i>	lit. . . . .	<i>literally.</i>
cf. ( <i>cōfer</i> ) . . . . .	<i>compare.</i>	loc. . . . .	<i>locative.</i>
ch. . . . .	<i>chapter.</i>	m. . . . .	<i>masculine.</i>
comp. . . . .	<i>comparative.</i>	n. . . . .	<i>neuter.</i>
conj. . . . .	<i>conjunction.</i>	neg. . . . .	<i>negative.</i>
constr. . . . .	<i>construction.</i>	nom. . . . .	<i>nominative.</i>
contr. . . . .	<i>contracted.</i>	num. . . . .	<i>numeral.</i>
cpd. . . . .	<i>compound.</i>	obj. . . . .	<i>object, objective.</i>
dat. . . . .	<i>dative.</i>	orig. . . . .	<i>originally.</i>
dem. . . . .	<i>demonstrative.</i>	part. . . . .	<i>participle.</i>
dep. . . . .	<i>deponent.</i>	partit. . . . .	<i>partitive.</i>
dim. . . . .	<i>diminutive.</i>	pass. . . . .	<i>passive.</i>
dir. . . . .	<i>direct.</i>	perf. . . . .	<i>perfect.</i>
disc. . . . .	<i>discourse.</i>	pers. . . . .	<i>personal.</i>
distr. . . . .	<i>distributive.</i>	pl. . . . .	<i>plural.</i>
Eng. . . . .	<i>English.</i>	plpf. . . . .	<i>pluperfect.</i>
equiv. . . . .	<i>equivalent.</i>	posit. . . . .	<i>positive.</i>
esp. . . . .	<i>especially.</i>	poss. . . . .	<i>possessive, possessor.</i>
ex., exx. . . . .	<i>example, examples.</i>	pred. . . . .	<i>predicate.</i>
f., ff. . . . .	<i>following.</i>	prep. . . . .	<i>preposition.</i>
f., fem. . . . .	<i>feminine.</i>	pres. . . . .	<i>present.</i>
freq. . . . .	<i>frequentative.</i>	pron. . . . .	<i>pronoun.</i>
ftn. . . . .	<i>footnote.</i>	quest. . . . .	<i>question.</i>
fut. . . . .	<i>future.</i>	refl. . . . .	<i>reflexive.</i>
gen. . . . .	<i>genitive.</i>	rel. . . . .	<i>relative.</i>
hist. . . . .	<i>historical.</i>	sc. ( <i>scilicet</i> ) . . . . .	<i>supply, infer.</i>
ib. ( <i>ibidem</i> ) . . . . .	<i>in the same place.</i>	semi-dep. . . . .	<i>semi-deponent.</i>
i.e. ( <i>id est</i> ) . . . . .	<i>that is.</i>	sing. . . . .	<i>singular.</i>
imper. . . . .	<i>imperative.</i>	subj. . . . .	<i>subjunctive.</i>
imperf. . . . .	<i>imperfect.</i>	subst. . . . .	<i>substantive.</i>
impers. . . . .	<i>impersonal.</i>	sup. . . . .	<i>superlative.</i>
inch. . . . .	<i>inchoative, inceptive.</i>	s.v. ( <i>sub vōce</i> ) . . . . .	<i>under the word.</i>
indecl. . . . .	<i>indeclinable.</i>	Vocab. . . . .	<i>Vocabulary.</i>
indef. . . . .	<i>indefinite.</i>		

## NOTES

### GALLIC WAR

#### BOOK FIRST

**Campaign of 58 B.C.**—While Caesar was still at Rome making preparations to leave for his province, in March, 58 B.C., news came of the intention of the Helvetii, a Celtic people occupying the modern Switzerland, to migrate at once with all their possessions to western Gaul. It was important for the welfare of Rome and of Italy to prevent this plan; for not only would the Roman province (*Provincia*, see Introd. § 8) be endangered both by the passage through it of a warlike people, who were, moreover, hereditary foes of Rome, and by their settlement not far from its western border; but, furthermore, if Helvetia should be occupied by the Germans, who had already made frequent forays into the country and had entered Gaul in large numbers, there was no doubt that they would next cross the Alps and ravage Italy. Consequently Caesar hastened without delay to Geneva; but while he succeeded in thwarting the Helvetian project of marching through the Roman province, he could not, with the force at his command, prevent a passage through the country of the Sequani. He accordingly obtained additional troops from Cisalpine Gaul (northern Italy) and set out in pursuit of the enemy. In two battles he completely defeated them, and compelled the survivors, less than a third of the number who had marched forth so confidently, to return to their homes.

[Next to be dealt with were the Germans, who, at the invitation of the Sequani, had come into Gaul three years before under Ariovistus, and had humbled the Haedui, a people enjoying the friendship of the Romans. Exaggerated stories were current of the size and prowess of the Germans; and Caesar's soldiers, becoming frightened, refused to enter on a campaign against them. He shamed his men into submission, however, by declaring that if necessary he would go alone attended only by the trusty tenth legion. In a single battle he almost annihilated the enemy, but Ariovistus and a few of his followers escaped across the Rhine.]

PAGE 51, LINE 1. CHAPTER 1. *Gallia*: Transalpine Gaul exclusive of the Roman province (*Provincia*, see Introd. § 8).—*est . . . divisa*: a common use of the perf. pass. to denote a present state ('is divided') resulting from the action of the perfect ('has been divided')<sup>1</sup>; *dividitur* would denote a present action ('is being divided').—*omnis*: 'as a whole.'—*unam*: *partem* was as easily supplied in thought by the Roman as 'part' is by us in the translation.

51, 2. *Belgae*: their territory included northeastern France as well as modern Belgium. Form the habit at the outset of consulting the map (see frontispiece) for all places and peoples mentioned in the text.—*aliam*: 'another,' not 'a second,' which would be *alteram*. See both words in the Vocab.—*qui = ii qui*; *ii* is a third subject of *incolunt*. The antecedent of a rel. pron. is often omitted if it can be readily understood from the context.<sup>2</sup> In translating *unam . . . qui*, the Latin order of thought may be preserved by making the accusatives the subjects, 'one is inhabited by the Belgae, another by the Aquitani, the third by those who,' etc.—*lingua*: abl. of means.<sup>3</sup>

51, 3. *Celtae*: the Celts formed an important division of the Aryan or Indo-European group of nations. The Britons and North Italians were Celts, as are the Irish and Highland Scotch of to-day. The English belong to the Teutonic or Germanic division of the Indo-European family.—*lingua*: abl. of specification.<sup>4</sup> The Celts spoke Celtic, the Belgae a corruption of Celtic and German, while among the Aquitanians, who were not of the Indo-European family, some tribes probably spoke Iberian, and some Basque. This latter language still survives in northwestern Spain.

51, 4. *inter se*: 'from each other.'<sup>5</sup> Latin has no reciprocal pronoun ('each other, one another'), but expresses the reciprocal idea most commonly by *inter* with the personal pronouns.—*Gallos*: this

References to the text are made by pages and lines. Grammatical references are grouped in footnotes. H. = Harkness's Complete Grammar, references to the Standard Grammar being in parentheses; L.M. = Lane and Morgan's School Latin Grammar; A. = Allen and Greenough's New Latin Grammar, references to the old grammar being in parentheses; G. = Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar; B. = Bennett's Latin Grammar.

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	640, 3 (550, N. 2)		495 (291, <i>δ</i> )	250, R. 2	337, 2
2	399, 4 (445, 6)	823	307, <i>c</i> (200, <i>c</i> )	621	251, 1
3	476 (420)	645	409 (248, <i>c</i> , 1)	401	218
4	480 (424)	650	418 (253)	397	226
5	502, 1 (448, N.)	1047	301, <i>f</i> (196, <i>f</i> )	221	245

word, as its position at the beginning of the sentence shows,<sup>1</sup> is more important in the thought than *Garumna*. Preserve this emphasis in translation by making it the subject; see on *qui*, l. 2. — **ab Aquitanis** . . . **a Belgis**: observe that before vowels *ab* is always used, while before consonants *a* is usual.

**51, 5. Garumna flumen**: compare this order with *flumen Rhenum* in l. 18, and with the omission of *flumen* with *Matrona* and *Sequana*. English has the same variety of usage, as, 'the Ohio River, the River Rhine or the Rhine, the Potomac.' — *dividit*: the verb is singular<sup>2</sup> because the two rivers form one continuous boundary.

**51, 6. Horum**: partit. gen. with a superlative.<sup>3</sup> This word stands first in its sentence, not for emphasis, but to make clear the connection of the thought with the preceding sentences.<sup>4</sup>

**51, 7. cultu**: 'civilization,' referring to outward characteristics, dress, deportment, etc. — **humanitate**, 'refinement,' applying to the mind or feelings. — Doubtless the province owed some of its civilization to the Romans, who had governed it since 120 B.C.; but probably more was due to the influence of Marseilles (Massilia), which had been founded by Greek colonists about 600 B.C., and had for centuries been an important commercial center. It was not subject to Rome, but had been a faithful ally for two hundred years. — **minime** . . . **saepe**: 'very seldom.'

**51, 8. mercatores**: Massiliot traders.

**51, 9. ad effeminandos animos pertinent**: 'tend to weaken character,'<sup>5</sup> lit., 'to the character to-be-weakened'; *ad* belongs with *animos*, which is limited by the gerundive. The principal import was wine, of which the natives were so passionately fond that for a jar of it they would even trade a child.

**51, 10. quibuscum**: *cum* always follows a rel. in Caesar. In other writers it sometimes precedes.<sup>6</sup>

**51, 11. Qua**: 'this';<sup>7</sup> a rel., equivalent to a dem., and never to be translated literally, is very frequent at the beginning of a sentence,

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 665, 1 (561, i)	1147	597 (344)	672, 2	349
2 392, 4 (463, ii, 3)	471	317, <i>δ</i> (205, <i>δ</i> )	211, R. I	255, 3
3 442 (397, 3)	560	346, <i>a</i> , 2 (216, <i>a</i> , 2)	372	201, 1
4 669, 1	1151			350, 9
5 628 (544, 1)	995	506 (300 & N.)	427	339, 2
6 182, 2 (187, 2)	668	150, <i>d</i> & N. (104, <i>e</i> )	413, R. I	142, 4
7 510 (453)	843-44	308, <i>f</i> & N. (180, <i>f</i> )	610	251, 6

being due to the tendency of Latin to preserve closely the connection of the thought. See on *horum*, l. 6. — *causa*: *i.e.* owing to the proximity to Germany. — *Helvetii*: a people of Celtic blood dwelling in what is now Switzerland.

51, 12. *reliquos*: compare in the Vocab. the difference in meaning of *alius*, *ceteri*, *reliquus*. — *virtute*: 'bravery,' see Vocab. For the abl., see on *lingua*, l. 3.

51, 13. *proeliis*: 'skirmishes,' as is implied by *cotidianis*. The abl. denotes manner.<sup>1</sup> — *cum* . . . *gerunt*: this clause does not define the time of the main verb *contendunt*, but simply adds a fact; *cum* = *et tum* (cf. *qui* = *et is*, etc.). — *suis*: observe the difference in meaning between *suis* and *eorum*. These words are emphasized by their contrast, hence they precede their substantives.<sup>2</sup> — *finibus*: abl. of separation.<sup>3</sup>

51, 15. *Eorum*: refers not to the Helvetii, but to the peoples mentioned in l. 2 f. Latin frequently names the people where English speaks of the country. — *quam*: obj. of *obtinere*, which is a main verb of indir. disc. depending on *dictum est*.<sup>4</sup> When the verb of *saying* or *thinking* is passive and impersonal, its subject is the infinitive (with its subject accusative if it has one, here *Gallos*) of the indirect quotation.<sup>5</sup> — *obtinere*: 'occupy,' cf. in the Vocab. with *occupo*. Be cautious about translating a Latin word by the corresponding English word.

51, 16. *a*: 'at'; the Latin point of view is often that of the place *from* which, where the English is that of the place *at* which.<sup>6</sup> The idea is the same in *ab* ('on the side of') *Sequanis*, l. 17, and *ab* . . . *finibus*, l. 19.

51, 18. *vergit*: observe on the map the direction of the rivers.

51, 19. *extremis*: 'farthest,' from the province. — *Galliae*: the district just described, not *Gallia omnis* (l. 1).

52, 1. *spectant in*, etc.: 'lie towards the northeast.' This statement, made with reference to the province, is no more exact than the similar statement about Aquitania in l. 4 f. We must remember that Caesar had no such accurate maps at his disposal as we have to-day.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	473, 3 (419, iii)	636	412 (248)	399	220, 1
2	671, 1 (565, 1)	1140	598, a (344, a)	676 & R. 1	350, 1 & 5, c
3	464 (414)	601	401 (243)	390, 2	214, 2
4	642 (523, i)	1023	580 (336, 2)	650	314, 1
5	615 (538)	971	Cf. 566, δ (330, a, 2)	528, 2	330
6	485, 4 (434, i)		429, δ (260, δ)	390, 2, N. 6	

52, 4. *ad Hispaniam*: 'near,' etc., the regular meaning with verbs of rest. — *spectat inter*: like *spectant in* above.

52, 7. CHAPTER 2. *M.*: = *Marco*. Always read and translate an abbreviation in Latin by the word for which it stands, and in reading observe carefully what case is required. In the designation of dates by the names of consuls no connective is used.

52, 8. *consulibus*: abl. abs.<sup>1</sup> with the proper names, 'in the consulship of,' = 61 B.C. The year was usually expressed in this way, or was reckoned from the assumed date (753 B.C.) of the founding of Rome. — *regni*: obj. gen. — *cupiditate*: abl. of cause.<sup>2</sup>

52, 9. *nobilitatis*: a collective abstract for concrete; so Eng. 'nobility' for 'nobles.' — *civitati*: see on *nobilitatis*. *Persuadeo* takes an indir. obj.<sup>3</sup> of the person persuaded; while the dir. obj. is either that which he is persuaded to do, expressed by a substantive clause of purpose with *ut* or *ne*,<sup>4</sup> here *ut . . . exirent*, or that which he is persuaded is a fact, expressed by a clause of indir. disc.,<sup>5</sup> here *perfacile esse*, or by a neuter pronoun, as *id . . . persuasit* in l. 11 f. In translation introduce the substantive clause by 'to,' the indir. disc. by 'that,' 'he persuaded the nation to emigrate . . . : that it was perfectly easy,' etc.

52, 10. *cum omnibus copiis*: 'bag and baggage.' — *exirent*: the imperf. is used, rather than the pres., because the action is past,<sup>6</sup> depending on the perf. *persuasit*; and since purpose clauses, from their very nature, express action not completed at the time of the main act, the imperf. (its name signifies incompletion) is used rather than the plpf., which denotes action completed in the past. The plural is used because *civitati* implies *civibus*.<sup>7</sup> — *perfacile*: predicate with *esse*, agreeing<sup>8</sup> with the subject *potiri*.

52, 11. *omnibus*: essential complement or indir. obj. of an intr. compound verb.<sup>9</sup> — *praestarent*: subj. with causal *cum*.<sup>10</sup> The tense

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 489 (431, 4)	639	419, a (255, a)	409-10	227, 1
2 475 (416, N. 1)	613	404, b (245, b)	408, N. 2	219
3 426, 2 (385, ii)	530-31	367 (227)	346, R. 2	187, ii, a
4 565 (498, i)	894	563 (331)	546	295, 1
5 565, 6		579, ftn. (330, e)	546, R. 1	
6 543; 545, ii, 1 (491; 493, 1)	804	484, b (286, R. b)	510	267, 2 & 3
7 389, 1 (461, 1)	472	317, d (205, c, 1)	211, R. 1 (a)	254, 4, a
8 394, 4 (438, 3)	972	289, d (189, d)	422 & N. 3	Cf. 327, 1, ex. 1
9 429 (386)	532	370 & a (228 & N. 1)	347 & R. 2	187, iii, 1
10 598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, a

(representing a pres. subj. of dir. disc.) depends on *persuasit* (see on *exirent*, l. 10), the *subordinate* verbs of a quotation being thrown into the past by a past introductory verb. Cf. Eng. 'he says that he is going if he *can*,' but 'he said that he was going if he *could*.' Observe, however, that while in Eng. the *main* verb of a quotation also follows the sequence of the introductory verb ('says that he *is*, said that he *was*'), the Latin infin. is not thus changed, but remains in its original tense (*perfacile esse* representing *perfacile est*). — *imperio*: abl. of means,<sup>1</sup> serving as obj. of *potiri*. — *Id*: 'of this,' dir. obj. of *persuasit*, see on *civitati*, l. 9. For its position, see on *horum*, 51, 6.

52, 12. *hoc* (lit., 'on this account'<sup>2</sup>) *facilius* . . . *quod*: 'more easily from the fact that'; the causal clause is in apposition with *hoc*. The indic. is used because Caesar states this as his own reason. — *undique*: 'on (lit., 'from') all sides'; see on *a*, 51, 16, and cf. *una ex parte*, 'on one side.'

52, 14. *altera*: not 'another'; see on *aliam*, 51, 2.

52, 17. *nostram*: cf. *nostra*, 51, 3. — *His rebus fiebat*: 'the result of this was' (lit., 'because of these things it was being brought about'). Note the imperfects in the rest of this chapter, describing a state of things.

52, 18. *ut* . . . *vagarentur*: substantive clause of result, subject of *fiebat*.<sup>3</sup> — *minus late*: 'not as widely as they desired.' — *finitimis*: essential complement or indir. obj. of a transitive compound verb<sup>4</sup>; cf. *omnibus*, l. 11.

52, 19. *qua ex parte*: 'and on this point.' — *homines*, etc.: 'being men fond of warfare'; in predicate apposition with the subject. — *bellandi*: obj. gen. with an adj. of desire.<sup>5</sup>

52, 20. *Pro multitudine hominum*: 'for (= in proportion to) their great population,' given as 263,000, see 71, 7. The Swiss, in a somewhat larger territory, number about 3,000,000; but they are a peaceable nation.

52, 21. *belli*, etc.: 'for bravery in war.' Latin sometimes uses two nouns with a conj. instead of one noun limited by the other; this is

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	477, 1 (421, 1)	646	410, N. (249, N.)	407, N. 1	218, 1
2	475 (416, N. 1)	612	404 (245)	408	219
3	571, 1 (501, 1, 1)	902	569, 2 (332, a, 2)	553, 3	297, 2
4	429, 1 (386, 1)	534	370, a, N. 1 (228, N. 2)	347, R. 3	187, iii, 2
5	451, 1 (399, 1, 1)	573, (a)	349, a (218, a)	374, N. 5	204, 1

called hendiadys. The gens. are subjective,<sup>1</sup> being the source of the renown (*gloria*).

52, 22. *millia passuum*: 'miles.' The sing. 'mile' is *mille passus* = 4854½ Eng. feet, thus being about ½ of an Eng. mile (5280 ft.). *Passuum* is partit. gen.<sup>2</sup> — *CCXL: ducenta quadraginta*. Always use the Latin words in reading numerals.

52, 23. *CLXXX: centum octoginta*. As this dimension is about a hundred miles too large, it is probable that Caesar wrote *LXXX*, and that the reading of the MSS. is due to a scribe's mistake, arising perhaps from the influence of the previous number.

52, 24. CHAPTER 3. *auctoritate*: 'influence,' not 'authority.'

52, 25. *ea quae*: 'such things as,' a meaning regularly followed by the subj. of characteristic. — *proficiscendum*: compare this verbal substantive (the gerund) with the verbal adjective (the gerundive) *effeminandos* in 51, 9. Observe that the gerund has no object, while the gerundive agrees with its apparent object.<sup>3</sup> — *pertinere*: subj. in a rel. sentence of characteristic,<sup>4</sup> regularly introduced by the idea 'such as, of a sort that,' etc. Cf. *ea quae . . . pertinent*, 51, 8 f., 'things which tend,' not 'of a sort that tend.' — *comparare*, etc.: complementary infin.,<sup>5</sup> obj. of *constituerunt*.

52, 26. *quam maximum*: 'the greatest possible.'<sup>6</sup>

52, 27. *ut . . . suppeteret*: pure purpose,<sup>7</sup> not an obj. clause like *ut . . . exirent*, l. 9 f.

53, 3. *sibi*: dat. of interest or reference<sup>8</sup> with *satis esse*. — *in*: with acc. of temporal expressions = 'for.'

53, 4. *lege*: 'a resolution,' passed in a public assembly. — *confirmant*: 'fix,' pres. of vivid narration or hist. pres.<sup>9</sup>

53, 5. *dux*: predicate nom.<sup>10</sup> — *Is*: with slight emphasis, 'this man.' Unless the subject changes, it is usually not expressed except for emphasis.

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 440, 1 (396, ii)	553	343, N. 1 (213, 1)	362	199
2 442 (397, 2)	560	346, a, 2 (216, a, 2)	370	201, 1
3 623-24 (541, 543)	988 89	501-03 (295-96)	426, N. 1: 427	338, 3: 339, 1
4 591, 1 (503, i)	836	535 (320)	631, 1	283, 1
5 565, 5 (498, i, N.)	896	563, d (331, d')	546, N. 3: 423, N. 2	328, 1
6 159, 2 (170, 2)	679	291, c (93, b)	303	240, 3
7 568 (497, ii)	899	531, 1 (317, 1)	545, 1	282, 1
8 425, 4 (384, 1, 2)	537	376 (235)	350, 2	188, 1
9 532, 3 (467, iii)	733	469 (276, d')	229	259, 3
10 393 (362, 2, 2)	460	393, a (239, 1, N. 2)	206	168, 2, b

53, 6. *civitates*: states, or clans, of Gaul whose aid he wished to gain. — Observe the annalistic (a subdivision of historical) presents,<sup>1</sup> beginning with *deligitur* and recurring throughout this chapter. They give, as it were, a memorandum of the efforts and success of Orgetorix.

53, 8. *obtinuerat*: see on *obtinere*, 51, 15.

53, 9. *amicus*: The Roman senate sometimes voted this honor to rulers as a reward for past services or as an incentive to future favors. — *ut . . . occuparet*: cf. *ut . . . exirent*, 52, 9 f., and see note on *civitati*, ib. The sequence<sup>2</sup> depends on *persuadet*, the action of which is past, although stated as present. — *regnum*: 'the power of a king.' Monarchy had been abolished in most of the Gallic states.

53, 10. *ante*: 'at an earlier time'; cf. the force of the tense in *obtinuerat*, implying that he no longer possessed it. — *habuerit*: Caesar intimates by the use of the subjunctive that the clause *quod . . . habuerit* is indirectly quoted from the actual instructions of Orgetorix to Casticus. The force of the quotation can be given in translation thus, 'which, as he said, his father had held.' Such a quotation, merely indicated by the subjunctive, and not dependent on a formal verb of saying, may be called implied, or informal, indirect discourse.<sup>3</sup> The pluperfect tense might be expected, in secondary sequence with *occuparet*, but the present and perfect subjunctive are sometimes used in secondary sequence to preserve the tense (not the mood) of the direct statement.<sup>4</sup>

53, 11. *qui*: refers, not as usual to the person last named, but to the more prominent one. — *principatum*: 'chief prominence,' not implying official authority. Officially the Haeduan state was in alliance with Rome, but at this time, owing to the failure of Rome to aid the Haeduan against their oppressors, the anti-Roman party, headed by Dumnorix, was predominant. Diviciacus was a leader of the party favorable to Rome, and was one of Caesar's most trusted allies. Three years before, he had been in Rome, and Cicero implies in his work *On Divination* (I, 41, 90) that he had conversed with him about Gallic religious customs.

53, 12. *plebi* (dat. with the adj.<sup>5</sup>) *acceptus*: 'popular with the masses.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1		734	469, a		
2	546 (495, ii)	805	485, e (287, e)	511, R. 1	268, 3
3	649, i (528, 1)	791	592, 1 (341, b)	508, 3	323
4	644, 1 (525, 1)	806	585, b, N. (336, B, a, N. 1)	Cf. 513, N. 2	268, 7, a
5	434 (391)	536	384 (234, a)	359	192, 1

53, 13. *ut idem conaretur*: 'to make the same attempt'; cf. *ut . . . exirent*, 52, 9 f.

53, 14. *Perfacile . . . esse . . . perficere*: cf. *perfacile esse . . . potiri*, 52, 10 f. — *factu*: supine,<sup>1</sup> best omitted here in translation. — *illis probat*: 'he shows them.'

53, 16. *obtenturus esset*: 'he was intending to be in possession of';<sup>2</sup> for the sequence, dependent on *probat* (not on *esse*<sup>3</sup>), cf. *occuparet*, l. 10. — *esse*: dependent on the idea of saying implied in *probat*; 'adding that,' etc. — *dubium*: predicate adj., the subject of *esse* being the clause *quin . . . possent*. — *Galliae*: partit. gen.<sup>4</sup> with *plurimum*.

53, 17. *possent*: the mood depends on *quin*,<sup>5</sup> the tense (*possint* in the direct form) on *probat*.

53, 18. *regna*: 'the power of kings'; pl., referring to a *regnum* in each state. — *conciliaturum*: the fut. infin. often omits *esse*.

53, 19. *fidem et ius iurandum*: 'their promise and oath.' — *regno occupato*: abl. abs. expressing time,<sup>6</sup> 'after seizing royal power.' — *per . . . populos*: limits *potiri*, and refers to the states to which these three plotters belonged.

53, 20. *firmissimos*: 'most stable.' — *Galliae*: the only instance in Caesar of a gen. with *potiri*;<sup>7</sup> for the usual construction, see *imperio*, 52, 11.

53, 22. CHAPTER 4. *res*: 'plot'; vary the translation of *res* according to the context.

53, 23. *Moribus*: abl. of manner.<sup>8</sup> — *ex*: 'in'; cf. the similar difference between Latin and Eng. idiom in *initium capit a*, 51, 16, and see note on *a*.

53, 24. *damnatum*, etc.: 'if convicted, the punishment was to befall him of being burned with fire.' *Damnatum*, used with conditional force,<sup>9</sup> limits an implied *eum*, the obj. of *sequi*, but an unemphasized pron. limited by an adj. or part. is commonly omitted. *Poenam* is the

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	635, 1 (547, N. 1)	1007	510 (303)	436, N. 2	340, 2
2	531 (466, N.)	749	158, 6 & N. (113, 6 & N.)	247	115
3	548 (495, IV)	808	585 (336, B)	518	Cf. 270, 1, a
4	443 (397, 4)	560	346, a, 2 (216, a, 2)	372, N. 3	201, 1
5	595, 1 (504, 3, 2)	913	558, a (332, 8, N.)	555, 2	298
6	489, 1 (437, 2)	640	419 (255, d, 1)	410	227, 2, a
7	458, 3 (410, v, 3)	593	357, a (223, a)	407, d	212, 2
8	473, 3 (419, III)	636	412 (248)	399	220, 3
9	638, 2 (549, 2)	1017 (c)	496 (292)	667	337, 2, 6

subject of *sequi*, and *poenam sequi* is the subject of *oportebat*.<sup>1</sup> *Ut . . . cremaretur* is a subst. clause of result in apposition with *poenam*.<sup>2</sup>

53, 25. *igni*: Caesar appears not to have used *igne*.<sup>3</sup> Burning was not an uncommon punishment among the Gauls; see 139, 6. — *Die*: abl. of time when; note the gender.<sup>4</sup> — *causae*: obj. gen. with *dictionis*, which itself is poss. gen. with *die*.

53, 26. *familiam*: 'slaves.' — *ad . . . decem*: this phrase is in apposition with *familiam*, *ad* being an adv. — *hominum*: for the gen., see note on *millia passuum*, 52, 22.

53, 27. *clientes*: these were free supporters, but the *obaerati* had been enslaved for debt; cf. 136, 27 ff.

53, 28. *eodem*: adv.

53, 29. *ne . . . eripuit*: 'he escaped standing trial';<sup>5</sup> by the crowd of retainers he overawed the court. — *Cum . . . conaretur*: 'when . . . was endeavoring'; observe carefully this very common construction.<sup>6</sup> With *cum*, 'when,' the imperf. and plpf. subj. describe subordinate circumstances under which a past main action occurred. The imperf. represents the subordinate circumstance as going on, the plpf. as completed, at the time of the main action.

53, 30. *ius*: the right of punishing traitors.

54, 2. *neque abest suspicio*: 'and there is not wanting ground for believing.' As this is equivalent to 'and there is not much doubt,' the dependent clause (appositive, cf. *ut igni cremaretur*, 53, 25) is introduced by *quin*; see on *possent*, 53, 17.

54, 3. *ipse*: in Latin idiom the intensive pron. emphasizes the subject, in English the object. — *consciverit*: note the tense, representing the suicide as complete at the time of the *present* verb *abest*.<sup>7</sup>

54, 4. CHAPTER 5. *nihilo*: abl. of the amount of difference.<sup>8</sup> — *id . . . facere*: 'to carry out the resolution which they had formed.'

54, 5. *ut . . . exeant*: 'of going forth,' in apposition with *id*, and

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	615, 1 (538, 1)	971-72	452 (270)	535	330
2	571, 4 (501, iii)	902	561, a; 570 (329; 332, f)	557	297, 3
3	102, 4 (62, iv)	201	76, b, 1 (57, b, 1)	57, a	38
4	135 (123)	231	97, a (73)	64	53
5	568 (497, ii)	898	558, b (331, e, 2)	548	295, 3
6	600, ii, 1 (521, ii, 2)	858	546 (323, 2; 325)	585	288, 1, B
7	543; 545, i, 2 (491, 492, 2)	803	484, a (286, R. a)	510	267, 2 & 3
8	479, 1 (417, 2)	655	414 (250)	403	223

expressing result.<sup>1</sup> The reasons for migrating, given in 52, 12-23, were just as strong now as before the death of Orgetorix. Perhaps, too, the Helvetii were getting the worst of it in their constant conflicts with the Germans; see 51, 12 f.

54, 6. *Ubi*: 'when,' commonly takes the perf. indic.;<sup>2</sup> cf. *cum* . . . *conaretur*, 53, 29 f., and see note. — *rem*: 'move.'

54, 7. *numero*: abl. of specification; see on *lingua*, 51, 3. — *ad*: cf. *ad* . . . *millia*, 53, 26 f. — *vicos*: 'villages,' without fortifications.

54, 8. *reliqua*, etc.: 'and all isolated buildings besides'; lit., 'the rest (being) isolated buildings.' — *incidunt*: observe the annalistic presents in the rest of the chapter; see on 53, 6.

54, 9. *secum*: *cum* is always enclitic with personal pronouns, and in Caesar with relatives; see on *quibuscum*, 51, 10. — *portaturi erant*: cf. the translation of *obtenturus esset*, 53, 16 — *comburant*: note the difference in meaning of *incidunt*, l. 8. — *domum*<sup>3</sup>: depends on the verbal subst. *reditionis* (= *redeundi*).

54, 10. *ad* . . . *subeunda*: see on *proficiscendum*, 52, 25.

54, 11. *essent*: cf. the sequence with that of *exant*, l. 5, the latter depending on the *tense* of *conantur*, a pres. of vivid narration (hist. pres.), and not on the actual time of its action, which is past. See on *ut* . . . *occuparet*, 53, 9. — *trium mensum*: gen. of quality,<sup>4</sup> 'a three months' supply of.' — *sibi quemque*: forms of the pers. or poss. reflexive used with *quisque* regularly precede it.<sup>5</sup>

54, 12. *domo*:<sup>6</sup> cf. *domum*, l. 9. — *Rauracis*, etc.: northern neighbors of the Helvetii.

54, 13. *uti*: old form of *ut*, not to be confused with the infin. of *utor*. — *usi* and *exustis*: in translation coördinate these participles with *proficiscantur*, 'to adopt . . . , to burn up . . . , and to set out . . . .' Latin uses subordination much more than English. — *consilio*: see on *imperio*, 52, 11.

54, 14. *exustis*: parallel with *usi*, both participles by their tense expressing action prior to that of the principal verb *proficiscantur*; but,

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	571, 4 (501, iii)	904	570 (332, f)	557 & n.	297, 3
2	602 (518, N. 1)	881	543 (324)	561	287, 1
3	419, 1 (380, ii, 2, 1)	519	427, 2; cf. 388, d, N. 2 (258, b; cf. 237, f)	337 & N. 5	182, 1, b
4	440, 3 (396, v)	558	345 (215)	365	203, 2
5	675, 2 (569, i, 2)	1069	313, a, N.	318, 3	244, 4, a
6	462, 4 (412, ii, 1)	608	427, 1 (258, a)	390, 2	229, 1, b

while *usi* is act., *exustis* is pass. (and so has to be used here as abl. abs.; *exusti* would mean that the men were burned) owing to the lack in Latin of a perf. act. part. except of deponent verbs.<sup>1</sup> Avoid translating the abl. abs. literally. — *una*: adv. — *iis*: refers to the subject of *persuadent*. *Secum* might have been used as an indir. reflexive;<sup>2</sup> but as it could also, like *suis* just before, refer to the subject of *proficiscantur*, the demonstrative is clearer.

54, 16. *oppugnarent*: a contracted form.<sup>3</sup> — *receptos*, etc.: with *Boios*, 'the Boii . . . they take into their own number (*ad se*) and adopt as their (*sibi*) allies.' — *sibi*: dat. of interest or reference.<sup>4</sup>

54, 18. CHAPTER 6. *itineribus*: Caesar frequently repeats the antecedent with the relative;<sup>5</sup> it may be omitted in translation.

54, 19. *possent*: 'might,' characteristic subj.;<sup>6</sup> not 'were able' (= *poterant*), but 'would be able' if they wished. — *unum*: along the north (right) bank of the Rhone, passing through the narrow Pas de l'Écluse (*inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum*) at a distance of nineteen Roman (17½ English) miles from Geneva.

54, 20. *vix* qua, etc.: a rel. regularly begins its clause, but here yields to the highly emphatic *vix*, 'just barely one cart at a time.'<sup>7</sup>

54, 21. *ducerentur*: like *possent*, line 19.

54, 22. *prohibere*: 'prevent a passage.' — *possent*: pure result.<sup>8</sup> — *alterum*: this route presented fewer physical difficulties, but it necessitated crossing the Rhone and marching through the territory of the Allobroges, who were included in the Roman Province.

54, 25. *nuper*: the Allobroges had been made subject to Rome in 121 B.C. A revolt in 61–60 B.C. led to their complete subjugation.

54, 26. *is*: see on *is*, 53, 5. — *locis*: locative abl.<sup>9</sup> — *vado*: 'by ford.'<sup>10</sup> — *transitur*: 'can be crossed,' the potential use of the verb. At present this part of the Rhone is fordable in but one place.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	640, 4 (550, N. 4)	Cf. 319	493, 1 & 2 (113, c, N.)	410, R. 1	97, iii
2	504, 3 (449, 1, 2)	1046	300, 2 & 3 (196, a, 2 & N.)	521, 5, N. 3	244, 1, ii
3	238 (235)	385	181, a (128, a, 1)	131, 1	116, 1
4	425, 4, N. (384, 4, N. 2)	538	377 (235, a)	350, 1	188, 1, N.
5	399, 1 (445, 8)	822	307, a (200, a)	615 & N.	251, 3
6	591, 1 (503, 1)	836	535 (320)	631, 1	283, 1
7	164, 1 (174, 2, 1)	268; 1080	137, a (95, a)	97, R. 2	81, 4, a
8	570 (500, ii)	905	537, 1 (319, 1)	552, 1	284, 1
9	485, 2 (425, ii, 2)	626	429, 1 (258, f, 1)	385, N. 1	228, 1, b
10	476 (420)	645	409 (248, c)	401	218

55, 1. **persuasuros**: see on *conciliaturum*, 53, 18. — **bono animo**: 'of kindly feeling,' abl. of quality used predicatively,<sup>1</sup> sc. *esse*.

55, 2. **viderentur**: subj. of subordinate clause in indir. disc.;<sup>2</sup> the sequence depends on the main verb *existimabant*, not on the fut. infin.<sup>3</sup>

55, 3. **ut . . . paterentur**: *cogo*, like *persuadeo* (see on *civitati*, 52, 9), may take an obj. clause of purpose with *ut*;<sup>4</sup> but the infin. is commoner, cf. *dicere coegerunt*, 53, 24. — **eos**: see on *iis*, 54, 14.

55, 4. **die**: see on *itineribus*, 54, 18. For gender, see on *die*, 53, 25, and note the change of gender in the next sentence where the idea of an *appointed* day is dropped.

55, 5. **convenient**: rel. clause of purpose.<sup>5</sup> For the sequence,<sup>6</sup> cf. *exant*, 54, 5, and see on *essent*, 54, 11. — **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**: read *ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles*, but translate 'March 28,'<sup>7</sup> though the actual equivalent in terms of our calendar is not certain, owing to the confusion into which the Roman calendar had fallen through the manipulations of the pontiffs, who had charge of it. In 46 B.C. Julius Caesar established a reform which is the basis of our present calendar.

55, 6. **consulibus**: = 58 B.C., see on 52, 8. This Piso was Caesar's father-in-law.

55, 7. **CHAPTER 7. Caesari**: note the emphatic position, and preserve the emphasis in translation by a change of construction, 'Caesar, when it (*id*) had been reported that they were undertaking . . . hastened.' See on *Gallos*, 51, 4. — **nuntiatum esset**: see on *cum* . . . *conaretur*, 53, 29. — **eos . . . conari**: in apposition with *id*, and in indir. disc. because it is the fact reported.

55, 8. **facere**: complementary infin.<sup>8</sup> with *conari*; so *proficisci* with *maturat*. Note that the complementary infin. has no subject acc., but denotes another action of the subject of the verb on which it depends. — **urbe**: often = 'Rome,' the city par excellence in a Roman's

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	473, 2, N. 2 (419, 2, 4)	643	415, N. (251, N.)	400	224, 1
2	643 (524)	788	580 (336, 2)	650	314, 1
3	548 (495, iv)	808	585 (336, B)	518	Cf. 270, 1, c
4	565 (498, ii)	895	563 (331)	553, 2 & N.	295, 1
5	590 (497, i)	835	531, 2 (317, 2)	630	282, 2
6	546 (495, ii)	805	485, e (287, e)	511, R. 1	268, 3
7	754-55 (642-44)	1171: 1174	631, d & e; 424, g (376, d & e; 259, e)	P. 491-92	371, 5: 372
8	607, N. (533)	954	456 (271)	423	328, 1

eyes. Cf. the modern use of 'town' by people living near large cities, as, 'I've been in town.' — Caesar was outside the city (as is shown by *ab*, not *ex*), for as proconsul (see Introd. § 8), with full military powers, he could not legally enter Rome. This law was a safeguard against usurpation of tyranny by a military commander.

55, 9. *quam maximis potest*: 'by the longest possible'; cf. *quam maximum*, 52, 26, without *potest*. — *itineribus*: abl. of manner. — *ulteriorem*: of Transalpine Gaul, to distinguish it from *Gallia citerior* or *Cisalpinga*, in the plain of the Po.

55, 10. *ad*: note this use with the name of a town.<sup>1</sup> — *pervenit*: Plutarch, *Life of Caesar*, ch. 17, says that he arrived on the eighth day. The rapidity of this first move of Caesar in his Gallic campaigns is thoroughly characteristic of him; see Introd. § 16.

55, 11. *imperat*: 'makes requisition for,' with dir. obj. of what is required, and indir. obj. of that on which the demand is made.

55, 12. *legio*: the tenth, which became Caesar's favorite corps. On the Roman legion, see Introd. § 27.

55, 13. *rescindit*: with its subject *pontem* it forms the obj. of *iubet*.<sup>2</sup> Most verbs of ordering take the subjunctive.

55, 14. *Ubi*: see on *ubi*, 54, 6.

55, 15. *nobilissimos*: appositive to *legatos*.

55, 17. *qui*: the antecedent is *legatos*, the clause *cuius . . . obtinebant* being parenthetical. — *dicerent*: 'to say,' rel. clause of purpose, like *convenient*, l. 5. — *sibi* (possessor<sup>3</sup>) *esse in animo*, etc.: 'that they purposed to march,' lit. 'that to march was to them in mind'; *facere* is subject of *esse*.

55, 19. *nullum*: somewhat emphasized, not by virtue of being at the end of the clause, which is ordinarily not a place of emphasis in the Latin sentence, but partly owing to its separation from *iter*, and partly because it is unusual to have an adj. at the end of a sentence.<sup>4</sup> Its unusual position gives it prominence, whereas a verb at the end is not at all emphasized because that is its commonest place. — *rogare*: sc. *se* as subject; the purpose clause *ut . . . liceat* is the obj.<sup>5</sup>

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	418, 4 (380, ii, 1)	517	428, a (258, b, n. 2)	337, R. 4	182, 3
2	614 (535, ii)	968	563, a (331, a)	532	331, ii
3	430 (387)	542	373 (231)	349	190
4	665, 2 & 4 (561, ii & iii)	1147; 1149		672, 2 (a)	349; 350, 11, a
5	565 (498, i)	894	563 (331)	546 & N. 1	295, 1

55, 20. **voluntate**: 'with his approval,' specification.<sup>1</sup>—**liceat**: not changed in mood or tense<sup>2</sup> from its direct form; but *haberent* is subj. merely because it is in a subordinate clause of an indir. quotation, and its tense follows the sequence of *dicerent*.<sup>3</sup> In translating a passage of shifting sequence do not imitate the change. Here make *rogare* and *liceat* conform to *esse* and *haberent*, 'they asked that they might be permitted'; not 'they ask that they may be permitted.' The actual words of the envoys were: *Nobis est in animo . . . habemus nullum; rogamus ut tua voluntate id nobis facere liceat.*—**memoria** (abl. of means) *tenebat*: takes indir. disc. like a verb of knowing.

55, 22. **Helvetiis**: *i.e.* the Tigurini, one of the four cantons of the Helvetians. This disaster occurred in 107 B.C.—**sub iugum**: the yoke consisted of two spears set in the ground and a third fastened across them at the tops. To be sent under the yoke was the greatest humiliation a Roman soldier could suffer. On this occasion the officer who signed the degrading terms of capitulation was convicted of treason by the home government.—**concedendum**: sc. *esse*; so with *occisum*, etc., just before. The construction is impers., 'did not think concession should be made' ('it should be conceded').

55, 23. **animo**: abl. of quality used attributively; cf. *animo*, l. 1.—**data facultate**: abl. abs., expressing a condition,<sup>4</sup> 'if an opportunity should be given.'

55, 24. **faciundi**: gerundives of the third and fourth conjugations often end in *-undus*.<sup>5</sup>—**iniuria**: stronger than 'injury.'

55, 26. **dum**: 'until,' with the subj. expressing purpose,<sup>6</sup> 'until the men should assemble.'

55, 27. **diem**: 'time.'

55, 28. **vellent**: subj. for the same reason as *haberent*, l. 19; the tense depends on *reverterentur*, which itself depends on *respondit*.—*reverterentur*: for an imperative<sup>7</sup> of the original statement, which was, *Diem ad deliberandum sumam; si quid vultis, ad Idus Apriles revertimini.*

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	480 (424)	650	418, a (253, N.)	397	226
2	644, 1 (525, 1)	1032	585, b & N. (336, B, a, & N. 1)	654 & N.	318
3	547 (495, iii)	807	482, 2 (285, 2)	517	267, 1
4	575, 9 (507, 3, N. 7)	640	420, 4 (255, d, 4)	593, 2	227, 2, b
5	243 (239)	391	P. 89, ftm. 1 (12, d)	130, 8	116, 2
6	603, ii, 2 (519, ii, 2)	921	553 (328)	572	293, iii, 2
7	642 & 4 (523, iii)	1023	588 & N. 1 (339 & N. 1)	652	316

56, 1. CHAPTER 8. *legione, militibus*: abl. of instrument.

56, 5. *millia*: acc. of extent of space.—XVIII: to be read *undeviginti*; this is the distance, following the windings of the river, from Geneva to the Pas de l'Écluse: see on *unum*, 54, 19.—*murum . . . fossamque*: the defenses of Caesar were on the left (south) bank of the Rhone, where traces of them have been found. Only five places, aggregating some three miles in length, required artificial fortification. Elsewhere the abruptness and height of the bank made it hopeless for the Helvetic wagon trains to attempt a passage. At these five places the gentler slope was cut down from the top so as to form a nearly perpendicular wall sixteen feet high, and the dirt being thrown down the bank left a ditch at the foot of the wall. It is estimated that not over three or four days were required for this work.—*pedum*: gen. of quality limiting *murum*; cf. *mensum*, 54, 11.

56, 6. *praesidia*: 'garrisons,' stationed in the forts (*castella*), which were built near the places liable to be attacked.

56, 7. *quo*, etc.: 'that the more easily.'<sup>1</sup>—*se invito*: 'against his will,' abl. abs.; *se* is indir. reflexive.<sup>2</sup>

56, 8. *conarentur*: subj. of attraction<sup>3</sup>; its sequence is due to *posset*, which depends on annalistic (hist.) presents.<sup>4</sup>

56, 9. *dies*: note the gender; see on *die*, 53, 25.

56, 10. *negat se . . . posse*: 'said that he could not' (not 'denied that he could').—*more*: abl. of cause, 'owing to,' etc.

56, 12. *conentur*: do not preserve the primary sequence<sup>4</sup> in translation, 'if they attempted (not 'attempt') . . . he would (not 'will') prevent' (dir. disc., *si . . . conabimini, prohibebo*).—*ea spe deiectionis*: 'disappointed in (lit., 'cast down from') that hope.'<sup>5</sup>

56, 15. *si . . . possent*: indir. question<sup>6</sup> depending on *conati*, which, though a participle, may be translated as a finite verb, 'tried to see if they could.' Begin the next clause with 'but.'

56, 16. *operis munitione*: 'by the strength (lit., 'defending') of the works.'

56, 17. *conatu*: for the constr., cf. *spe*, l. 12.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	568, 7 (497, ii, 2)	908	531, a (317, δ)	545, 2	282, 1, a
2	504 (449, 1)	1046	300, 2 (196, a, 2)	521	244, 1, ii
3	652 (529, ii)	793	593 (342)	629	324
4	546 (495, ii)	805	485, e (287, e)	511, R. I	268, 3
5	402 (414)	600	402 (243, δ)	390, 2	214
6	649, ii, 3 (529, ii, 1, N. 1)	812	576, a (334, f)	460, 1 (δ)	300, 3

56, 18. CHAPTER 9. *una*: 'only'; usually stronger than 'one.'—*qua*: instrumental abl., denoting the way by which.<sup>1</sup>

56, 19. *Sequanis invitis*: used like *data facultate*, 55, 23.—*angustias*: see 54, 19.

56, 20. *His*: for its position, see on *horum*, 51, 6.—*sua sponte*: 'by themselves.'

56, 21. *possent*: see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29.

57, 1. *eo deprecatore*: 'through him as mediator,' abl. abs. expressing means.<sup>2</sup>—*impetrarent*: pure purpose.<sup>3</sup>

57, 2. *plurimum poterat*: cf. *plurimum possent*, 53, 16 f.

57, 4. *filiam*, etc.: see 53, 13.

57, 5. *novis rebus*: 'revolution,' essential complement or indir. obj. of an intr. verb.<sup>4</sup>

57, 6. *beneficio*: abl. of cause.

57, 7. *rem*: 'mission.'

57, 8. *impetrat ut . . . patiantur*: 'obtains permission for the Helvetii to go,' etc. (lit., 'obtains that they permit,' etc.); the dir. obj. of *impetrat* is the clause with *ut*.<sup>5</sup> So *uti . . . dent* is the obj. of *perficit*.

57, 9. *obsides*: obj. of *dent*; note its emphatic position, see on *Gallos*, 51, 4.

57, 10. *Sequani, Helvetii*: in apposition with the subject of *dent*.

57, 11. *ne . . . prohibeant, ut . . . transeant*: pure purpose, depending on *dent*. With the sequence after the annalistic presents, l. 9 ff., cf. 56, 8.—*itinere*: abl. of separation.

57, 15. CHAPTER 10. *Helvetiis . . . animo*: cf. *sibi esse in animo*, 55, 17 f.

57, 18. *non longe*: about 125 miles, no great distance for a migratory and warlike people to travel, especially when the intervening country was open and easily crossed. To be sure Helvetia was much nearer the province, but the mountains and the Rhone, with its steep banks, made the eastern part of the Roman territory more secure.—*Tolosatum*: the modern Toulouse preserves the name of the ancient city

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	476 (420, 1, 3)	644	429, a (258, g)	389	218, 9
2	489, 1 (431, 2)	640	419, a (255, a)	409	227, 1
3	568 (497, ii)	899	531, 1 (317, 1)	545	282, 1
4	424 (384, i)	530	368, 3 (227, e, 3)	346, n. 2	187, ii, a
5	566 (498, ii)	895	563 (331)	553, 1	295, 1

Tolosa; so Narbonne comes from Narbo, Marseilles from Massilia. But more commonly it is an old tribal name that is preserved in a modern town name, as Parisii in Paris, Santones in Saintes (and in the name of the old province Saintonge), Carnutes in Chartres, etc.

57, 19. *quae civitas*: not 'which state,' but 'a state which,' or, beginning a new sentence, 'This state.'

57, 20. *si fieret*: indir. disc., depending on the secondary tense *intellegebat*.<sup>1</sup> The condition is fut., as the apodosis (fut. infin. *futurum*) shows, but the context alone makes it clear<sup>2</sup> that it is of the form which states the future supposition distinctly and vividly, and so had in the dir. disc. the fut. indic.<sup>3</sup>

57, 22. *ut . . . haberet*: subst. clause of result, subject of *futurum* [esse].<sup>4</sup> The subject of *haberet* is implied from *provinciae*. The tense is due to *intellegebat*,<sup>5</sup> being *habeat* in Caesar's original thought.

57, 23. *locis*: see on *locis*, 54, 26.

57, 25. *munitioni*: essential complement or indir. obj. of a transitive cpd. verb.<sup>6</sup> — *Labienum*: Caesar's most capable lieutenant throughout the Gallic War. At the outbreak of the Civil War he joined Pompey. — *legatum*: see Intro. § 32.

57, 26. *Italiam* = Cisalpine Gaul, between the Rubicon and the Alps, which, after the subjection of the Celts (222 B.C.), had been rapidly Romanized, and was already considered a part of Italy, although not formally annexed until 43 B.C.

57, 27. *circum*: the soldiers, in accordance with Roman custom, were quartered for the winter near, not within, the city. — *Aquileiam*: an important military and commercial center at the head of the Adriatic. It was destroyed by the Huns under Attila in 452 A.D., the very year in which Venice was founded by fugitives who were seeking refuge from the barbarians.

57, 29. *per Alpes*: he apparently took the Mt. Genève pass.

58, 2. *Compluribus . . . pulsis*: the interlocked order, *compluribus proeliis* and *his pulsis* belonging together. Translate the participle as

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	545, ii, 1 (493, 1)	1031	484, δ (286, R. δ)	510	267, 2 & 3
2	Cf. 646 & 1 (527, i & ii)	1034-35	589, α (337, α)	656, 3; cf. 658	319-20
3	574, 1 & 2 (508, 2)	933	516, 1 & α (307, 1 & α)	595	302, 1
4	571, 1 (501, i, 1)	902	569, 2 (332, α, 2)	553, 4	297, 2
5	548 (495, iv)	808	585 (336, B)	518	Cf. 270
6	429, 1 (386, 1)	534	370 & α (228 & α)	347	187, iii, 2

active, 'having routed these tribes.'—**ab**: with the name of a town from which distance is measured, 'he arrived on the seventh day from Oculum'; cf. the use with *longe*.<sup>1</sup>—**citerioris**: see on *ulteriore*, 55, 9.

58, 3. **extremum**: sc. *oppidum*.

58, 6. **trans Rhodanum**: Caesar crossed the Rhone above its junction with the Saône (Arar), and consequently was east of the Saône and north of the Rhone. The Segusiavi occupied territory on both sides of the Saône. It is estimated that Caesar had taken some fifty or sixty days for his journey to Italy. He now had an army of six legions, aggregating probably not far from 25,000 men (see Introd. § 27), and an unknown number of provincial soldiers (55, 10 f.).

58, 7. CHAPTER 11. **angustias**: the narrow pass of the Écluse (54, 19).

58, 8. in **Haeduum fines**: not all of the Helvetii had yet crossed the Saône (Arar) and entered the Haeduan country, for a fourth part of them are cut to pieces on the east bank (l. 30 ff.). While their long emigrant train, plundering as it advanced, had gone some 100 miles, Caesar had been to the head of the Adriatic and back, and had levied two new legions in the meantime.

58, 11. **possent**: introduced by causal *cum*.<sup>2</sup>

58, 12. **rogatum**: supine, expressing purpose.<sup>3</sup>—**Ita . . . debuerint**: the tenor of their remarks given in indir. disc., without any introductory verb of saying further than is implied in *rogatum*. In translation supply 'saying' or a similar word.—**Ita se . . . de populo . . . meritos esse**: 'that they have served the people so well.' The Haedui had been allies of Rome since about 123 B.C., and they also claimed kinship with the Romans.

58, 14. **nostri**: with *exercitus*.—**vastari . . . debuerint**: 'ought not to have been ravaged'.<sup>4</sup>

58, 15. **debuerint**: result clauses often take the perf.,<sup>5</sup> even in violation of sequence, to emphasize the result as an accomplished fact. With *meritos esse* a secondary sequence would be regular.<sup>6</sup> Of the

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	462, 2 (412, ii, 3)	606	428, a (258, a, N. 1)	391, R. 1	229, 2
2	508 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2
3	633 (546)	1005	509 (302)	435	340, 1 & a
4	618, 2 (537, 1)	980	486, a (288, a)		270, 2
5	550 (495, vi)	806	485, c & N. 1 (287, c & R.)	513	268, 6
6	548 (495, iv)	809	585, a (336, B, N. 2)	518	268, 2

tenses of the infin. the perf. alone governs sequence; a subj. depending on a pres. or fut. infin. takes its sequence from the main verb; cf. *futurum ut . . . haberet*, 57, 22, and see note.

58, 17. *depopulatis*: perf. participles of deponent verbs are sometimes used passively.<sup>1</sup> Observe that the perf. denotes an action complete at the time of *prohibere*.

58, 18. *Allobroges*: they were subjects of Rome. The Ambarri were allies of the Haedui and therefore friendly to Rome. On these three peoples the Helvetii doubtless inflicted as much injury as they could. They appear to have observed faithfully their agreement with the Sequani (57, 12).

58, 20. *sibi*: possessor. — *solum*: note the *δ*.

58, 21. *reliqui*: partit. gen.<sup>2</sup> with *nihil*, 'nothing left.' — *Quibus*: see on *qua*, 51, 11. — *non exspectandum* [esse] *sibi*:<sup>3</sup> 'that he ought not to wait' (lit., 'that it ought not to be waited by him').

58, 22, *dum . . . pervenirent*: denotes expectation;<sup>4</sup> cf. *dum . . . convenirent*, 55, 26, expressing purpose. — *in Santonos*: = *in Santonum fines* (57, 17), a very common use of tribal names.

58, 24. CHAPTER 12. *Flumen*, etc.: 'there is a river, the Saône.' — *per*: 'through'; in a part of its course, too, it flowed between the Haedui and the Sequani.

58, 26. *lenitate*: abl. of quality<sup>5</sup>; cf. *animo*, 55, 23. — *in . . . fluat*: indir. quest.,<sup>6</sup> depending on *iudicari*, and forming the subject of *possit*.

58, 27. *Id*: not emphatic, but it serves to connect the thought closely with the previous sentence; cf. *his*, 56, 20.

58, 28. *transibant*: probably at a point near Trévoux, about half-way from the junction with the Rhone to Mâcon (Matisco). Note the imperf. tense; the crossing took twenty days (59, 21). — *Ubi*: see on 54, 6.

58, 29. *tres partes*: 'three fourths'; so *quattuor partes*, 'four fifths,' etc. — *partes, flumen*: objs. of a transitive verb compounded with *trans*, *flumen* belonging closely with the prep.<sup>7</sup>

58, 30. *citra*: i.e. on the east side.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	222, 2 (231, 2)		190, <i>δ</i> (135, <i>δ</i> )	167, N. 2	112, <i>δ</i>
2	440, 5 (397, 1)	564	346, <i>α</i> , 1 (216, <i>α</i> , 1)	369	201, 1
3	431 (388)	544	374 (232)	355	189, 1
4	603, ii, 2 (519, ii, 2)	921	553 (328)	572	293, iii, 2
5	473, 2 (419, ii)	643	415 (251)	400	224
6	649, ii (529, i)	810	574 (334)	467	300, 1, <i>α</i>
7	413 (376)	501	395 (239, <i>δ</i> )	331, R. 1	179, 1

59, 1. *Ararim*: several names of rivers have the acc. in *-im*.<sup>1</sup>

59, 4. *concidit*: observe the *f*. — It is possible, though by no means certain, that the site of this battle is marked by relics of bones, weapons, bracelets, etc., which were found in 1862 near Trévoux in the valley of the Formans, a small tributary of the Saône.

59, 5. *mandarunt*: see on *oppugnant*, 54, 16. — in *silvas*: limit of motion, while our idiom expresses place where, 'hid themselves in the woods.'

59, 6. *omnis, divisa est*: as in 51, 1.

59, 8. *unus*: 'alone,' see on *una*, 56, 18. — *domo*: cf. 54, 12.

59, 9. *memoria*: abl. of time within which.<sup>2</sup> — *Cassium*: cf. 55, 21.

59, 10. *casu, consilio*: abl. of cause.

59, 11. *quae pars civitatis . . . ea*: 'that part of the state which,' etc.; the rel. precedes its antecedent *ea*, and the subst. accompanies the rel.<sup>3</sup>

59, 12. *populo*: see on *munitioni*, 57, 25. — *princeps*, etc.: 'was the first' to pay the penalty.<sup>4</sup>

59, 14. *soceri*: this is the Piso mentioned in 55, 6, as consul of this year (58 B.C.). Caesar had married his daughter Calpurnia the year before.

59, 15. *quo Cassium*: sc. *interfecerant*.

59, 18. CHAPTER 13. *ut*: on its position, see on *vix qua*, 54, 20. — *pontem . . . faciendum curat*: 'he had a bridge built.'<sup>5</sup> The bridge was probably a rude structure of logs.

59, 20. *cum . . . intellegent*: not defining the time (a meaning which requires the indic.) of the main action *mittunt*, but expressing a subordinate circumstance accompanying the main act; see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29. — *id*: obj. of *fecisse*.

59, 21. *diebus*: time within which. — *ut . . . transirent*: 'namely, the crossing of the river,' a result clause, appositive to *id*; see on *ut . . . exeant*, 54, 5.

59, 23. *bello Cassiano*: abl. of time when.<sup>6</sup> As this war came forty-nine years before (see on *Helvetiis*, 55, 22), Divico must have been an

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	102, 3, N. (62, iii, 1)	Cf. 187	74, d (55, d')	57, R. 1	38, 1
2	487 (429)	631	423 (256)	393	231
3	399, 3 (445, 9)	821	307, b & N. (200, b & N.)	616, 620	255, 4, a
4	497, 3 (442, N.)		290 (191)	325, R. 5	239; cf. 241, 2
5	622 (544, 2, N. 2)	994	500, 4 (294, d')	430	337, 7, b, 2
6	486 (429)	630	423 (256)	394, R.	230, 2

old man. If the Helvetii had desired to make terms with Caesar, they would hardly have sent this former conqueror of the Romans, puffed up as he was by his ancient victory.

59, 24. *Si*, etc.: Divico's speech is indirectly quoted. — *Si . . . faceret . . . ituros*: same constr. as *si fieret . . . futurum*, 57, 20.

59, 25. *pacem*: the contrast between the policies of peace and of war is emphasized by the position of *pacem* and *bello*.

59, 26. *partem*: sc. *Galliae*; they of course had no thought of returning home after having emigrated in spite of Caesar.

59, 27. *constituisset*: 'should settle'; the idea is evidently fut., — for Caesar has not yet settled the Helvetii anywhere, — and the plpf. represents a completed act in a secondary sequence; consequently the dir. disc. had fut. perf. indic.<sup>1</sup> — *perseveraret*: like *faceret*, l. 25.

59, 28. *reminisceretur*: 'let him (or 'he had better') recall to mind'; for imper.<sup>2</sup> *reminiscere* of dir. disc. — *incommodi*: obj. of a verb of remembering.<sup>3</sup>

59, 29. *Quod . . . adortus esset*: 'as to his having attacked'; for *quod . . . adortus es* of the actual speech.<sup>4</sup>

59, 30. *transissent*: in the perf. system of *eo*, wherever *ii* precedes *s*, contracted forms<sup>5</sup> were preferred; forms with *v* were generally avoided. The subj. is due merely to subordination in indir. disc.

60, 1. *possent*: like *intellegerent*, 59, 22, hence not changed in indir. disc.; and it would not change even if the introductory verb *egit* were a primary tense. — *ne . . . tribueret*: differs from *reminisceretur*, 59, 28, only in being negative; *noli tribuere* was the dir. form.<sup>6</sup>

60, 2. *magnopere . . . tribueret*: 'ascribe too much,' etc.

60, 3. *ut . . . contenderent*: pure result<sup>7</sup> of *ita didicisse*. — *virtute, dolo*, etc.: means. 'That they had learned such doctrines (*ita*) from their fathers and ancestors that they contended by means of valor more than they relied on trickery or ambushes.'

60, 4. *Quare*, etc.: 'Accordingly he had better not give occasion for that place . . . to take,' etc. — *ne committeret*: like *ne tribueret*, l. 1 f.

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 644, 2 (525, 2)	748	484, c (286, R., end)	244	269, 1, b
2 642, 4 (523, iii, N.)	1023	588 (339)	652	316
3 454 & 1 (406, ii)	588	350, c (219)	376	206, 2
4 588, 3, N. (516, ii, 2, N.)	847	572, a (333, a)	525, 2	299, 2
5 238, 2 (235)	332-33	203, b & c (128, a, 2)	131, 1	116, 1
6 561, 1 (489, 1)	728	588, N. 2 (339, N. 2)	270, R. 2	276, c
7 570 (500, ii)	905	537, 1 (319, 1)	552, 1	284, 1

60, 5. ut . . . caperet: result, obj. of *committeret*.<sup>1</sup> — *constitissent*: for fut. perf. of dir. disc., since they had not yet taken their position for battle. — Divico's speech directly quoted would be: *Si . . . faciet, . . . ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvetii ubi eos tu, Caesar, constitueris atque esse volueris; sin . . . perseverabis, reminiscere . . . Quod . . . adortus es, cum ii qui flumen transierant suis . . . possent, noli . . . aut tuae . . . tribuere aut nos despicere; nos . . . maioribusque nostris didicimus ut . . . contendamus*<sup>2</sup> quam . . . nitamur. Quare *noli committere* ut is locus ubi *constiterimus* . . . nomen *capiat* aut *memoriam prodāt*.

60, 8. CHAPTER 14. Caesar's answer is likewise indirectly quoted. — *Eo*: 'on that account,' explained by the appositive causal clause *quod . . . teneret*.

60, 9. *dubitatio*: partit. gen.<sup>3</sup> with *minus*, 'that less hesitation was allowed him from the fact that (*eo quod*) he remembered,' etc.

60, 10. *eo* . . . *quo*: amount of difference.<sup>4</sup>

60, 11. *ferre*: sc. *se* as subject. — *merito*: cf. *moribus*, 53, 23. 'He was the more annoyed by them, the less they had happened in accordance with the deserts,' etc.

60, 12. *qui* (see on *qua*, 51, 11) *si*: 'for if they' (*i.e.* the Roman people). — *alicuius*: 'some,' less indefinite than *cuius*, 'any.' — *iniuriarum*: obj. gen. with an adj. of knowing; cf. *bellandi*, 52, 19. — *fuisse*: past condition of action non-occurrent or contrary to fact.<sup>5</sup> — *non fuisse*: 'it would not have been'; for *non fuit*<sup>6</sup> of dir. disc.

60, 13. *eo* . . . *quod*: as in l. 8 f. — *deceptum* [*esse*]: sc. *eum* (= *populum Romanum*) as subject. — *commissum* [*esse*] a *se* . . . *quare timeret*: 'that occasion had been given by them for fearing' ('wherefore they should fear,' rel. clause of result<sup>7</sup>).

60, 15. *Quod* (adverbial acc.,<sup>8</sup> 'as to which') *si*: 'but if.' — *contumeliae*: see on *incommodi*, 59, 28. — *vellet*: 'he (or 'they') were willing,' for *vellem* (or *vellet*) of dir. disc.<sup>9</sup> Whether the subject still

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 571, 3 (501, ii, 1)	902	568 (332)	553, 1	297, 1
2 550 (495, vi)	806	485, c (287, c)	513	268, 7, a
3 442 (397, 3)	564	346, a, 3 (216, a, 3)	369	201, 2
4 479, 1 (423)	655	414, a (250, R.)	403	223
5 647 (527, iii)	1037	589, b, 1 (337, b, 1)	597, R. 4	321, B
6 647, 3: 583, 3 (527, iii, N. 2; 511, 1, N. 3)	940	517, c (308, c)	597, R. 3	304, 3, a
7 591, 2 (500, 1)	836	537, a (319, a)	631	284, 2
8 510, 9: 416, 2 (453, 6; 378, 2)	507	397, a (240, b)	610, R. 2	185, 2
9 647 (527, iii)	1037	589, b, 1 (337, b, 1)	597, R. 4	321, B

remains the Roman people, or shifts to Caesar, is not certain. There is the same ambiguity in *eo invito*.

60, 16. *iniuriarum*: obj. gen. with *memoriam*, l. 18. — *quod . . . vexassent*<sup>1</sup>: substantive clauses in apposition with *iniuriarum*, having indic. in dir. disc.<sup>2</sup>

60, 18. *posse*: a purely rhetorical question, not expecting an answer, if it is of the first or third person, is treated in indir. disc. like a declarative sentence and takes the infin.<sup>3</sup> with subject acc. (here *se* implied). 'But if he were willing to forget the old affront, could he also set aside the memory of the fresh wrongs, their having forcibly attempted ('the fact that they had,' etc.) a journey through the province against his will, their having harried the Haedui, the Ambarri, the Allobroges?'

60, 19. *Quod . . . gloriarentur*, etc.: cf. *quod . . . adortus esset*, 59, 29 f. The subject is *Helvetii* implied. — *victoria*: of 107 B.C.

60, 20. *eodem pertinere*: 'as for their boasting, etc., . . . it all tended to the same issue' (as the old affront and the fresh wrongs), *i.e.* to the overthrow of the Helvetii. "Whom the Gods would destroy they first make mad." Caesar doubtless hoped by the bit of moralizing which he indulges in here to increase the confidence of his own soldiers, and to dispirit the enemy.

60, 21. *consuesse*: 'are accustomed.'<sup>4</sup> — *quo*: see on *quo*, 56, 7.

60, 22. *doleant*: 'may suffer,' preserve in translation the primary sequence of the rest of Caesar's speech. — *quos . . . velint*; the rel. clause, as often, precedes its antecedent (*his*); 'to grant unusual prosperity for a season and longer impunity (than would be expected) to those whom,' etc.

60, 24. *Cum*: in reading Latin the meaning of *cum* must be held in suspense until the context makes clear whether it is a preposition or a conjunction, and if the latter, whether it is copulative (*cum . . . tum*, 'not only . . . but also'), temporal, causal, or concessive. *Tamen* following points to concession. — *sint*: not changed from dir. disc.<sup>5</sup>

60, 25. *dentur*: see on *si fieret*, 57, 20. — *ea*: obj. of *facturos* [*esse*], the subject of which is *eos* implied.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	238 (235)	385	181, a (128, a, 1)	131, 1	116, 1
2	588, 3 (540, iv, n.)	848	572 & N. (333 & N.)	525, 1	299, 1, a
3	642, 2 (523, ii, 2)	1024	586 (338)	651, R. 1	315, 2
4	299, 2 (297, i, 2)		205, N. 2 (143, N.)	175, 5	262, A
5	598 (515, iii)	863	549 (326)	587	309, 3

60, 26. *Haeduis, Allobrogibus*: indir. objs. of the intr. verb *satisfaciant*. — *ipsis*: = the Haedui; indir. obj. of a transitive cpd. verb.

Caesar's speech in dir. disc.: *Eo mihi . . . datur* quod eas res quas *vos, legati Helvetii, commemorastis* memoria *teneo*, atque eo gravius *fero* quo . . . *acciderunt*; qui si . . . *fuisset*, non *fuit* . . .; sed eo *deceptus est* quod . . . *intellegebat* . . . *putabat*. Quod si . . . *vellem* (vellet), num . . . quod *me* (eo) invito iter . . . *temptastis* . . . *vexastis*, memoriam deponere *possum* (*potest*)? Quod *vestra* victoria . . . *gloriamini*, quodque . . . *vos* impune . . . *admiramini*, eodem *pertinet*. *Consuerunt enim dii immortales* . . . *ulcisci volunt* . . . si obsides a *vobis mihi dabuntur*, uti ea quae *pollicemini vos* facturos *intellegam*, et si . . . *intulistis* . . . *satisfacietis*, *ego vobiscum pacem faciam*.

60, 30. *consuerint*: not changed from its dir. form; see on l. 5, fn. 2. — *eius* . . . *testem*: a parting taunt on the disaster of 107 B.C.

61, 6. CHAPTER 15. *coactum habebat*: it was from the use of *habeo* with a perf. part. that the modern perf. with 'have' arose; but in Caesar's time *habeo* in this combination had its full force, 'have, hold'; so here, 'he held, collected from the province.'<sup>1</sup>

61, 7. *qui videant*: 'to see,' rel. clause of purpose;<sup>2</sup> pl., referring to a collective antecedent. — *quas* . . . *faciant*: indir. quest., obj. of *videant*.

61, 8. *cupidius*: 'too eagerly.'<sup>3</sup> — *alieno*: 'unfavorable,' i.e. 'another's'; opposite of *suo*, 'one's own,' hence 'favorable.'

61, 9. *loco*: see on *locis*, 54, 26.

61, 10. *pauci*, etc.: the rest took to flight led by Dumnorix; see 63, 25. — *proelio*: cause.

61, 11. *equitibus, agmine*: cf. *legione* and *militibus*, 56, 1 f.

61, 13. *proelio*: manner, cf. *proeliis*, 51, 13.

61, 15. *rapinis*: separation. — *prohibere*: obj. of *habebat, satis* serving as pred. acc.,<sup>4</sup> 'he deemed it sufficient to hinder,' etc. — *Ita . . . uti*: 'in such manner that.'

61, 17. *primum* [agmen]: 'van.' — *amplius*: neuter comp. adj. used as a subst., subject of *interesset*. — *quinis*: i.e. five miles each day. — *millibus*: abl. of comparison.<sup>5</sup>

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	431, 3 (388, 1, N.)	1018	497, 6 (292, c)	238	337, 6
2	590 (497, 1)	835	531, 2 (317, 2)	630	282, 2
3	498 (444, 1)	678	292, a (93, a)	297, 2	240, 1
4	410, 1 (373, 1)	521	393 (239, 1, a)	340	177, 2
5	471 (417)	615	406 (247)	398	217, 1

61, 19. CHAPTER 16. *cotidie*: emphatic from its position; *interim* is not emphatic, but serves to connect the thought with what precedes. — *Haeduos frumentum*: both are objs.<sup>1</sup> of *flagitare*.

61, 20. *essent* . . . *polliciti*: implied indir. disc. (see on *habuerit*, 53, 10), representing as the original demand, 'Give the grain which you have promised' (*estis polliciti*). — *flagitare*: infin. of intimation or hist. infin.,<sup>2</sup> intimating, but not distinctly declaring, repeated or persistent action. 'Meanwhile every day Caesar kept dunning the Haedui for the grain which, as he said, they had promised in the name of the state.'

61, 21. *frigora*: 'cold weather,' 'cold spells';<sup>3</sup> Caesar was used to the early springs of Italy. The climate of Gaul may have been colder than it is now, owing to the great extent of its forests and marshes.

61, 22. *frumenta*: 'grain crops'; the pl. is regularly used of standing grain.

61, 23. *matura*, etc.: it must have been towards the end of June, too early for the harvest in the latitude of Gaul. — *pabuli*: the lack of green fodder was due less to the weather than to the ravages of the Helvetian emigrant train which had just passed over this same route.

61, 24. *frumento*: abl. of means with *uti*.<sup>4</sup> — *flumine*: see on *qua*, 56, 18.

61, 26. *avertent*: westward towards the Santones. At what point they left the Saône is not certain.

61, 27. *Diem*: duration of time. — *ducere*: 'kept putting him off,' cf. *flagitare*, l. 20. *Dicere* is the same constr. — *conferri*, etc.: sc. *frumentum*; 'that it was being collected, was being brought up, was already here.'

62, 1. *diutius*: cf. *cupidius*, 61, 8. — *die*: cf. *itineribus*, 54, 18, and see note.

62, 2. *frumentum*: obj. of *metiri*, which is itself subject<sup>5</sup> of *oporteret*, 'the distribution of grain to the soldiers was due.' See Introd. § 41. — *oporteret*: note the sequence, depending not on *instare*, but on the verb (*intellexit*) which introduces the indir. disc.<sup>6</sup>

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	411 (374)	522	396 (239, c)	339	178, 1, a
2	610, 1 (536, 1, N.)	708-09	463 (275)	647	335
3	138, 2 (130, 2)		100, c (75, c)	204, N. 5	55, 4, c
4	477, 1 (421, 1)	646	410, N. (249, N.)	407, N. 1	218, 1
5	615 (538)	971	452 (270)	422	327, 1
6	548 (495, iv)	808	585 (336, B)	518	Cf. 270, 1, a

62, 4. *Diviciaco, Lisco*: appositives with *principibus*. — *magistratui*: essential complement or indir. obj. of an intr. cpd. verb.<sup>1</sup>

62, 5. *quem*: 'this official,' although the antecedent means 'office.' This shift in meaning by the use of a mere relative is easier in Latin than in English, because *magistratus* = both 'magistrate' and 'magistracy.' — *quem vergobretum*: the pron. is dir. obj., the subst. is pred. obj., of *appellant*; <sup>2</sup> cf. *Haeduos frumentum*, 61, 19.

62, 6. *in suos*: 'over his people.'

62, 7. *quod . . . sublevetur*: implied indir. disc., representing Caesar's charge, as *accuso quod . . . non sublevor*. — *possit*: as with *conferri*, 61, 27, the subject is easily implied.

62, 10. *susceperit*: changed only in person, from *susceperim*.<sup>3</sup> Observe that the pres. *possit*, l. 7, denotes an action incomplete, while the perf. *susceperit* denotes an action complete, at the time of the main verb.<sup>4</sup> — *multo*: cf. *eo*, 60, 10.

62, 13. CHAPTER 17. *quod*: rel. pron., its antecedent being the implied obj. (*id*) of *proponit*.

62, 15. *privatim*: 'as private citizens.' — *plus possint*: cf. *plurimum . . . possent*, 53, 16 f.

62, 17. *ne*<sup>5</sup> . . . *conferant*: 'from bringing in'; for the pl., cf. *videant*, 61, 7.

62, 18. *praestare . . . erepturi*: indir. disc. in apposition with *oratione*; 'saying that it is better,' etc.

62, 20. *debere*: sc. *eos* as subject, referring to the same persons as *multitudinem*, l. 17. — *quin . . . sint erepturi*: observe that subordinate *quin* is used only in dependence upon *negative* expressions of doubting,<sup>6</sup> etc.; cf. *non esse dubium quin*, 53, 16. The periphrastic form expresses more definitely than the pres. subj. the futurity of the action.

62, 21. *superaverint*: perf. subj. for fut. perf. indic. of the dir. disc., 'shall succeed in overpowering.' — *una*: adv., cf. 54, 14. — *Haeduis*: dat. of the optional complement, denoting disadvantage;<sup>7</sup> render here by 'from.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	429 (386)	532	370 (228)	347	187, iii, 1
2	410, 1 (373, 1)	521	393 (239, 1, a)	340	177, 1
3	598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2
4	545, i, 1 & 2 (492, 1 & 2)	799	484, a (286, R. a)	510	267, 3
5	596, 2 (505, ii, 1)	898	558, b (331, e, 2)	548	295, 3
6	595, 1 (504, 3, 2)	913	558 & a (332, e, R.)	555, 2	298
7	427 (385, ii, 2)	539	381 (229)	347, R. 5	188, 2, d

62, 22. *quaeque . . . gerantur*: 'and what is being done,' indir. quest.; or possibly rel. clause, with implied antecedent *ea* as second subject of *enuntiari*.

62, 23. *a se*: Liscus, as chief magistrate.

62, 24. *Quin etiam*: 'in fact.' — *quod . . . enuntiari*: see on *quod* . . . *adortus esset*, 59, 29.

62, 25. *fecerit*: for the constr., cf. *faciant*, 61, 8.

62, 26. *quam diu*: 'as long as.'

62, 27. CHAPTER 18. *Dumnorigem*: see on *principatum*, 53, 11.

62, 29. *pluribus praesentibus*: 'with many present,' abl. abs.

63, 1. *dixerat, dicit*: Liscus is subject.

63, 2. *vera*: pred. adj. with *esse*, of which the subject is the indir. disc., ll. 2-22; 'he finds the facts to be.'

63, 3. *Ipsum*: emphatic, 'that Dumnorix is positively the man' (cf. *designari sentiebat*, 62, 28). — *summa audacia*: 'of the utmost daring'; the abl. of quality always has a limiting adj. or gen.<sup>1</sup>

63, 4. *rerum*: see on *bellandi*, 52, 19.

63, 5. *portoria*: 'customs duties,' including not only taxes on imports and exports, but also tolls on all merchandise passing through the country.

63, 6. *vectigalia*: 'revenues' of all sorts, comprising the customs duties and also taxes on land, buildings, mines, and various industries. — *redempta*: the Haedui apparently, like the Romans, sold at auction the privilege of collecting taxes. The highest bidder paid a lump sum into the state treasury, and then through his agents extorted all he could from the people. The publicans of the New Testament were tax collectors of this sort. — *habere*: 'he has held' ('and still holds' implied); with an expression of duration of time (here *complures annos*) the pres. has the force of a continuing, not of a completed, perfect.<sup>2</sup> *Dumnorigem* continues to be the subject throughout the indir. disc.

63, 8. *ad largiendum*: gerund denoting purpose,<sup>3</sup> 'for bribery.'

63, 11. *domi*: loc.<sup>4</sup> — *largiter posse*: cf. *plus possint*, 62, 15.

63, 12. *causa*: note that with a preceding gen. the meaning is regularly 'for the sake.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	473, 2 (419, ii)	643	415 (251)	400	224
2	533, 1 (467, iii, 2)	732	466 (276, a)	230	259, 4
3	628 (542, iii, N. 2)	995	506 (300)	432	338, 3
4	484, 2 (426, 2)	621	427, 3 (258, d)	411, R. 2	232, 2

63, 14. *uxorem*: see 53, 13 f. — *ex matre*: 'on the mother's side,' a half-sister.

63, 15. *nuptum*<sup>1</sup> . . . *conlocasse*: 'he has given in marriage.'

63, 16. *Helvetiis*: essential complement or indir. obj. of the two intr. verbs.<sup>2</sup> — *suo nomine*: 'on his own account,' abl. of cause.

63, 18. *Diviciacus*: see on *principatum*, 53, 11.

63, 19. *sit*: belongs with both *deminuta* and *restitutus*, but as usual in such cases is expressed but once. — *Si quid accidat*: 'if anything should happen,' implying misfortune; a fut. supposition in the less vivid form,<sup>3</sup> quoted without change in a primary sequence (depending on *repperit*, l. 2, a pres. of vivid narration or hist. pres., which, like *proponit*, 62, 13, is followed by primary sequence<sup>4</sup> throughout the quotation). The *podosis venire* represents pres. indic. of dir. disc., 'he has the greatest hope.'

63, 20. *obtineri*: cf. this gerundive, which is a verbal adj. limiting *regni* (lit., 'of a king's power to be obtained,' which we translate 'of obtaining a king's power'), with the gerund *largiendum*, l. 8, which is a verbal subst.

63, 21. *imperio*: 'under the supremacy,' abl. of time when.

63, 23. *quod . . . esset factum*: cf. *quod . . . adortus esset*, 59, 29 f. — *proelium*: see 61, 9 f.

63, 25. *nam . . . praecerat*: a parenthetical explanation, not part of Caesar's discovery, hence dir. disc.<sup>5</sup>

63, 26. *auxilio Caesari*: 'as aid (dat. of purpose<sup>6</sup>) for Caesar' (dat. of interest<sup>7</sup>).

63, 29. CHAPTER 19. *certissimae res*: 'perfectly certain facts.' — *accederent*: often pass. in force. For the mood, cf. *susceperit*, 62, 10. — *quod . . . accusaretur*: 'namely, that he had,' etc., four facts, each introduced by *quod*, and in apposition with *res*; cf. *quod . . . vexassent*, 60, 16 ff. The subjunctives are due to implied indir. disc.;<sup>8</sup> Caesar

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	633, 1 (546, 1)	1005	509 (302)	435	340, 1, <i>δ</i>
2	426, 4, N. (385, i)	531	367 (227)	346	187, ii, <i>α</i>
3	576 (509)	936	516, <i>δ</i> (307, <i>δ</i> )	596, 1	303
4	546 (495, ii)	785	485, <i>ε</i> (287, <i>ε</i> )	509, <i>α</i>	268, 3
5	643, 3 (524, 2, 1)	1028	583 (336, <i>δ</i> )	628, R. <i>α</i>	314, 3
6	433 (390, ii)	548	382, 1 (233, <i>α</i> )	356 & N. 1	191, 2, <i>δ</i>
7	425, 2 (384, 1, 2)	537	376 (235, N.)	350, <i>α</i>	188, 1
8	649, 1 (528, 1)	791	592, 3 (341, <i>d</i> )	508, 3	383

quotes facts with which he was acquainted at the time he is describing; 'that (as he knew) he had led,' etc.; see on *habuerit*, 53, 10.

63, 30. *dandos curasset*: 'had effected an exchange of'; for the constr., see on *pontem* . . . *faciendum curat*, 59, 18. For the fact, see 57, 9 f.

64, 2. *ipsis*: Caesar and the Haedui. — *magistratu*: Liscus, the vergobret.

64, 3. *accusaretur*: observe the change of tense, 'was,' not 'had been.' — *satis* . . . *causae* (partit.<sup>1</sup>): 'reason enough.'

64, 4. *quare* . . . *animadverteret*: 'for him either to take action himself against him' (lit., 'why he should,' etc.), a characteristic clause,<sup>2</sup> changed only in tense (originally pres.) from the dir. disc.

64, 6. *unum*: 'just one (see on 56, 18) consideration,' explained by the clause with *quod* in apposition.

64, 8. *studium*: 'devotion.'

64, 9. *cognoverat*: 'was acquainted with.'<sup>3</sup>

64, 10. *ne* . . . *offenderet*: complementary or subst. clause, obj. of a verb of fearing.<sup>4</sup> — *eius*: 'of Dumnorix'; pronouns, owing to their variety, are clearer in Latin than in English, and frequently may be best translated by proper names. — *animus*: 'feelings.'

64, 11. *priusquam* . . . *conaretur*: before attempting.<sup>5</sup>

64, 13. *principem*: 'a (not 'the') leading man.'

64, 14. *omnium rerum*: 'in all matters'; the gen. is the case to express dependence of one subst. upon another, but in English such dependence is often not expressed by 'of.'

64, 15. *eo*: Diviciacus; so *ipso* in l. 16.

64, 16. *sint dicta*: indir. quest.

64, 17. *apud se*: 'before him,' Caesar.

64, 19. *causa cognita, statuatur*: 'he may come to a decision after looking into the case.'

64, 20. CHAPTER 20. *complexus*: he falls at Caesar's feet, embracing his knees.

64, 21. *ne quid*, etc.: 'not to come to any too severe (see on *cupidius*, 61, 8) decision against his brother.' Observe that verbs of asking and

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	443 (397, 4)	564	346, a, 4 (216, a, 4)	369	201, 2
2	591, 4 (503, i)	836	535, a (320, a)	631, 1	283, 1
3	299, 2 (297, i, 2)		205, N. 2 (143, N.)	236, R.	262, A
4	567 & 1 (498, iii, N. 1)	897	564 (331, f)	550, 2	296, 2
5	605, ii (520, ii)	880	551, δ (327)	577, 1	292, 1, a

urging (cf. l. 18 f.) take an obj. clause of purpose, with *ut* or *ne* and the subj.,<sup>1</sup> but not with the infin. as in English. — *Scire se*: 'saying that he knew' (not 'knows,' see on *praestarent*, 52, 11). Observe the sequence of the subjs., which take their time from *coepit*,<sup>2</sup> not from *obsecrare* or any of the infin. within the quotation.

64, 22. *ex eo*: neuter. — *plus . . . doloris*: cf. *satis . . . causae*, l. 3.

64, 23. *ipse*: used like the reflexives (ll. 22, 25, etc.) to refer to the speaker.

64, 24. *ille*: 'Dumnorix,' subject of the next three verbs.

64, 25. *posset*: see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29. — *crevisset*: with *propterea quod*. — *quibus . . . nervis*: abl. of means.<sup>3</sup>

64, 27. *fraterno*: equivalent to an obj. gen.<sup>4</sup>

64, 28. *si quid . . . accidisset*: the apodosis *existimaturum* shows that the condition is fut., and the tense, denoting completed action, represents accordingly an original fut. perf. indic.<sup>5</sup> — *ei*: 'Dumnorix.'

64, 29. *cum ipse . . . teneret*: in dir. disc. *cum ego teneo* of pres. definite time,<sup>6</sup> or *cum ego teneam* of cause (cf. *susceperit*, 62, 10).

65, 1. *futurum uti*: 'it would result that'; the subject of *futurum* is the result clause.

65, 3. *pluribus verbis*: 'at greater length.'

65, 5. *faciat*: coördinated with *rogat*, 'begs him cease his entreating,' and equiv. to an obj. clause subordinated by *ut*.<sup>7</sup> — *tanti . . . esse*: 'that his friendship with him is so highly prized.'<sup>8</sup>

65, 6. *eius voluntati . . . condonet*: 'he will overlook . . . out of regard for his wish' (lit., 'will give up . . . to his wish,' indir. obj.).

65, 8. *reprehendat*: cf. *sint dicta*, 64, 16.

65, 10. *suspiciones*: 'suspicious actions,' the pl. being less abstract than the sing., cf. *frigora*, 61, 21.

65, 11. *condonare*: Caesar's leniency with Dumnorix was possibly in part due to his desire to gratify Diviciacus, but doubtless still more to the effect which he hoped to produce on the Gauls in general.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	565 (498, i)	894	563 (331)	546	295, 1
2	548 (495, iv)	808	585 (336, B)	518	Cf. 270, 1, a
3	477 (421, i)	646	410 (249)	407	218, 1
4	437 (395, N. 2)	571	348, a (217, a)	363, 2	200
5	644, 2 (525, 2)	748	484, c (286, R. b)	657, 4	319, a
6	600, 1 (521, i)	855	547 (325, N.)	580	289
7	565, 4 (499, 2)	781	565 & N. 1 (331 f, R.)	546, R. 2	295, 8
8	448 (404)	576	417 (252, a)	380, 1	203, 3

65, 15. CHAPTER 21. *esset*: indir. quest. depending on *cognoscerent*.

65, 16. *in circuitu*: 'all around'; Caesar's scouts were to reconnoitre the mountain on all sides, except of course where the enemy were encamped, and to discover the best means of reaching the heights above the enemy without being observed by them. — *qui cognoscerent misit*: 'sent men to find out'; rel. clauses of purpose<sup>1</sup> often have an indef. antecedent which is so easily understood that it need not be expressed; see on *qui*, 51, 2.

65, 17. *esse*: sc. *ascensum*.

65, 18. *pro praetore*: 'with the rank of commander,' i.e. invested with the right to exercise military command in the full authority of a general. A lieutenant would exercise this right only at his commander's pleasure. See *Intro.* § 32.

65, 19. *ducibus*: 'as guides,' appositive.

65, 20. *consili sit*: 'pertains to his plan,'<sup>2</sup> viz. that Labienus should swoop down on the enemy from the hill while he himself engaged them in front.

65, 22. *rei*: obj. gen. with an adj. of knowing.<sup>3</sup>

65, 23. *Sullae*: against Mithridates, 88–84 B.C.

65, 24. *in*, etc.: 'in that of,' etc. — *Crassi*: against Spartacus, 71 B.C.

65, 26. CHAPTER 22. *teneretur*: cf. this tense, which denotes action still going on, with *cognitus esset*, 66, 1, which denotes action completed, at the time of the main action *accurrit*.

65, 27. *passibus*: better explained as abl. of amount of difference<sup>4</sup> with *abesset* than as abl. of comparison with *longius*.<sup>5</sup>

66, 3. *a . . . insignibus*: 'from . . . ornaments,' such as plumes and horns on the helmets.

66, 5. *erat . . . praeceptum*: impers., 'orders had been given,' the subject being the purpose clause with *ne*.<sup>6</sup>

66, 9. *visae essent*: see on *habuerit*, 53, 10, and *si quid . . . accidisset*, 64, 28.

66, 11. *fieret*: pure purpose.

66, 18. *timore perterritum*: 'panic-stricken.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B
1	590 (497, i)	835	531, 2 (317, 2)	630	282, 2
2	447 (402)	556	343, b (214, c)	366	198, 3
3	450–51 (399, i, 2)	573	349, a (218, a)	374, N. 4	204, 1
4	479, 3 (423, N. 2)	655	425, b (257, b)	403, N. 1	223
5	471, 4 (417, 1, N. 2)	618	407, c (247, c)	296, R. 4	217, 3
6	564, ii (499, 3)	894	566 (331, h)	546, 2	294

66, 19. *quod*: the implied antecedent is obj. of *renuntiavisse*. — *pro viso*: 'as seen.'

66, 21. *quo consuerat intervallo*: = *eo intervallo*<sup>1</sup> *quo consuerat* (*sequi*), 'at the usual distance,' *i.e.* five or six miles; see 61, 17.

66, 23. CHAPTER 23. *diei*: poss. gen. limiting *postridie*, which was originally a substantive (lit., 'on that day's following day').

66, 24. *cum*: 'before' (lit., 'when'). — *frumentum*, etc.: see on 62, 2. — *oporteret*: 'was due,' implied indir. disc., Caesar's thought at the time being, *biduum superest cum . . . oportet*.

66, 25. *a Bibracte*: names of towns take a prep. when they denote the place from which distance is measured.<sup>2</sup>

66, 26. *millibus*: see on *passibus*, 65, 27.

66, 27. *XVIII*: = *duodeviginti*.

66, 28. *prospiciendum* [*esse*]: *impers.*, 'provision must be made.' — *avertit*: he goes northward.

66, 29. *fugitivos*: 'runaway slaves'; deserters are *perfugae* (70, 15) or *transfugae*.

67, 2. *existimarent*: not stated as Caesar's reason, which he is willing to vouch for (with the indic., the mood of facts), but as the reason of the Helvetii which he quotes,<sup>3</sup> the subj. intimating that the statement is a quotation (implied indir. disc.). — *eo magis*: cf. *eo gravius*, 60, 10. — *superioribus*, etc.: abl. abs. expressing concession, 'although they had seized,' etc.

67, 3. *eo quod*: 'from the fact that,' cf. *eo sibi . . . quod*, 60, 8 f. — *re*: abl. of separation.

67, 4. *posse*: sc. *Romanos* as subject.

67, 5. *itinere converso*: 'turned back,' to follow Caesar. — *a*: 'on,' see on *a*, 51, 16.

67, 7. CHAPTER 24. *animum advertit*: has the same meaning and takes the same constructions as the far commoner compound *animadverto* (64, 4 f.). *Id* is the obj.

67, 9. *qui sustineret*: cf. *qui cognoscerent misit*, 65, 16.

67, 10. *in colle medio*: 'half-way up the hill.' — *triplicem aciem*: see *Intro.* § 46.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	479, 3 (423, N. 2)	655	414 (250)	403	223
2	462, 2 (412, ii, 3)	606	428, a (258, a, N. 1)	391, R. 1	229, 2
3	588, ii (516, ii)	788, 791	540 (321)	541	286, 1
4	497, 4 (440, N. 1)	565	293 (193)	291, R. 2	241, 1

67, 11. **quattuor**: the one legion which Caesar found in further Gaul on his first arrival (55, 12), and the three legions which he brought later from Aquileia (57, 27). — **summo**: 'top of.'<sup>1</sup>

68, 3. **ab iis**: *i.e.* the two legions of raw recruits from hither Gaul (57, 26 f.) and the auxiliary forces (Intro. § 29). Caesar was doubtless afraid to trust these troops in a pitched battle.

68, 4. **muniri**: in 1886 the remains of an ancient intrenchment were discovered on the hill of Armecy, southeast of Mont Beuvray on which Bibracte stood, and answering to the only indication given by Caesar of the site of the battle, viz. that it was within eighteen Roman miles from Bibracte (66, 25 ff.). In 1889 nine other trenches were discovered containing ashes, charcoal, and crumbling bones; and still more recently fragments of bones, armor, and weapons, have been found near by. The intrenchment is in the shape of a crescent, 300 yards wide from tip to tip, and was evidently hurriedly made to serve only a temporary purpose. There is no doubt that this is the site of Caesar's fortifications.

68, 5. **confertissima acie**: the Gauls fought in close masses, and were thus always at a disadvantage with the open, flexible battle line of the Romans.

68, 6. **phalange**: as they advanced in close order, the men in the front line held their shields before them so that they overlapped, forming an unbroken defense against the enemy's spears.

68, 8. CHAPTER 25. **suo**: *sc. equo remoto*. — **omnium**: *i.e.* of all his officers and staff, not of his cavalry. Caesar's willingness to share danger on an equal footing with his men shows us one reason for their unflinching loyalty to him. See Intro. § 16.

68, 10. **cohortatus**: before a battle a Roman officer regularly addressed words of encouragement to his army.

68, 12. **pilis**: javelins were generally thrown when the enemy were some 75 or 100 feet distant, and with such force and accuracy that the enemy's line was often broken. When the armies came together, the sword was used. See Intro. § 39.

68, 16. **Gallis . . . impedimento quod**: 'the Gauls (dat. of interest<sup>2</sup>) were greatly hampered ('it was for a great hindrance,' dat. of tendency

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	497, 4 (440, N. 1)	565	293 (193)	291, R. 2	241, 1
2	425, 4 (384, 1, 2)	537	376 (235, N.)	350, 1	188, 1

or service<sup>1)</sup> in fighting by the fact that,' etc. The clause with *quod* is subject of *erat*.<sup>2</sup>

68, 20. *inflexisset*: with causal *cum*.<sup>3</sup>

68, 21. *sinistra*, etc.: abl. abs. expressing cause, 'as the left hand (on which the shield was carried) was hampered.'

68, 23. *multi*: 'a great many,' emphasized by its position before *ut*; see on *vix qua*, 54, 20. — *iactato brachio*: abl. abs. expressing time, 'after tossing the arm about,' in the effort to disentangle the shields.

68, 24. *manu*: abl. of separation.

68, 25. *nudo*: 'unprotected.' — *corpore*: abl. of manner.

68, 28. *passus*: acc. of extent. — *eo*: 'thither.'

68, 29. *Capto . . . et succedentibus*: observe the difference in tense, 'after they had reached the mountain and while our troops were coming up after them.'

69, 1. *novissimis* (= *novissimo agmini*) *praesidio*: cf. *Gallis . . . impedimento*, 68, 16 f. — *ex itinere*: 'right from their march,' without waiting to form a line of battle. — *ab latere aperto*: 'on the exposed flank.' This must have been the left flank here; see plan, p. 67. The flanks of the legionary troops were usually protected by auxiliaries or cavalry.

69, 2. *circumvenire*: depends on *coeperunt*, l. 4.

69, 4. *conversa signa*, etc.: 'changed front and charged in two divisions' (lit., 'bore their turned standards on' the enemy). *Conversa signa* applies only to the third line, as is clear from the next statement; the first and second lines continued to fight with the Helvetii in front, who had already been driven back from their first position (*summotis*), but had returned to the attack as soon as they saw the Boii and Tulingi coming up (*venientes*).

69, 7. CHAPTER 26. *ancipiti proelio*: abl. of manner, 'with a battle of two fronts.' — *diu*, etc.: 'there was long and sharp fighting'; cf. the translation of *erat praeceptum*, 66, 5.

69, 9. *alteri . . . alteri*: 'one party' (the Helvetii) . . . 'the other' (the Boii, etc.); observe the pl., used of two groups. — *se . . . receperunt . . . contulerunt*: used of orderly marching, not of a rout.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	433 (390, i)	547	382, 1 (233, a)	356 & R. 3	191, 2, a
2	588, 3 (540, iv, N.)	848	572 & N. (333 & N.)	525, 1	299, 1
3	598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2

69, 11. *proelio*: time when.<sup>1</sup> — *hora septima*: about one o'clock; see *hora* in Vocab. — *pugnatum sit*: with concessive *cum*.<sup>2</sup>

69, 12. *aversum*: 'turned in flight.' Caesar generously praises the bravery of the Helvetii; see also 51, 11 f.

69, 13. *pro . . . obiecerant*: 'they had drawn their carts up in front as a rampart.'

69, 14. *loco superiore*: they stood in the carts. — *venientes*: 'as they came up,' with *nostros*.

69, 16. *subiciebant*: 'hurled' (from below).

69, 17. *impedimentis*: see on *imperio*, 52, 11.

69, 18. *captus est*: agrees with the nearer subject.<sup>3</sup>

69, 20. *nocte*: abl. expressing duration.<sup>4</sup> — *Lingonum*: north of the Haedui.

69, 21. *vulnera, sepulturam*: evidently Caesar's victory had been dearly bought.

69, 22. *potuissent*: with causal *cum*.

69, 23. *Lingonas*: cf. *Allobrogas*, 60, 18; this is a Greek acc. ending,<sup>5</sup> and was frequently applied by the Romans to any foreign name, whether Greek or not. — *ne . . . iuvarent*: 'that they were not to aid,' indir. quotation<sup>6</sup> of Caesar's message, *nolite . . . iuvare*.

69, 24. *qui si iuvisset*: 'and if they should,' for *si iuveritis*, fut. perf., of dir. disc.; see on *si quid . . . accidisset*, 64, 28. — *se, etc.*: = *se eodem loco* ('on the same footing') *Lingonas habiturum quo Helvetios haberet*.

69, 28. CHAPTER 27. *Qui*: see on *qua*, 51, 11.

69, 30. *eos*: the Helvetii.

70, 1. *essent*: implied indir. disc. (see on *habuerit*, 53, 10), representing *estis* in Caesar's order. — *iussisset*: sc. *Caesar*, an abrupt change of subject, as in 63, 1.

70, 2. *Eo*: as in 68, 28; for its position, see on *horum*, 51, 6. — *pervenit*: observe the perf. indic. with *postquam*.<sup>7</sup> — *servos*: the fugitives of 66, 29.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	486 (429)	630	424, d (259, a)	393	230, 1
2	598 (515, iii)	863	549 (326)	587	309, 3
3	392 (463, i)	471	317, c (205, d)	285, 1	255, 2
4	417, 2 (379, 1)	633	424, b (256, b)	393, 2	231, 1
5	109, 5 (68)	179-80	81, 5 (63, f)	66, 4	47, 3
6	642, 4 (523, iii, N.)	1023	588, N. 2 (339, N. 2)	652	316, a
7	602, (528, N. 1)	882	543 (324)	561	287, 1

70, 3. *perfugissent*: for *perfugerunt* of the actual demand; cf. *essent*, l. 1.

70, 4. *ea*: neuter, referring to persons and things taken collectively. — *conquiruntur*, etc.: the pres. of vivid narration (hist. pres.) is regular with *dum*, meaning 'while'.<sup>1</sup>

70, 6. *perterriti*: agrees with the persons implied in *millia*.<sup>2</sup> — *ne . . . supplicio adficerentur*: 'that<sup>3</sup> they should be visited with punishment' (viz. death).

70, 8. *quod . . . existimarent*: see on *existimarent*, 67, 2.

70, 10. *prima*: denoting a part,<sup>4</sup> as often; cf. *medio* and *summo*, 67, 10 f. — *ad*: 'towards.'

70, 12. CHAPTER 28. *Quod*: cf. *qui*, 69, 28. — *resciit*: note that *ubi* takes the same construction as *postquam*, l. 2; see also 54, 6; 55, 14, etc. — *quorum*: its antecedent is *his*, the indir. obj. of *imperavit*.

70, 13. *uti*, etc.: dir. obj. of *imperavit*. — *sibi*: 'in his eyes,' dat. of relation or reference.<sup>5</sup> — *purgati*: part. used as pred. adj. with the complementary infin.<sup>6</sup>

70, 14. *vellent*: cf. *essent*, l. 1. — *in . . . habuit*: a euphemism; they were put to death or sold into slavery.

70, 16. *in deditionem accepit*: they thus became not only the subjects, but the wards of Rome. — *Helvetios*, etc.: of the tribes named in 54, 12 ff., only the Rauraci are not accounted for. Possibly their name has fallen out of the Mss.

70, 19. *tolerarent*: characteristic.<sup>7</sup>

70, 20. *facerent*: 'furnish.' — *ipsos*: the Helvetii, etc., in distinction from the Allobroges.

70, 22. *ea . . . ratione*: 'on this account.'

70, 23. *ne . . . transirent*: neg. clause of pure purpose.

70, 26. *Boios*: contrasted with the tribes that returned home, hence occupying the most prominent place in the sentence. It is obj. of *conlocarent*. — *petentibus Haeduis*: 'to the request of the Haedui,' indir. obj. of *concessit*.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	604, 1 (467, iii, 4)	917	556 & N. (276, e)	229, R.	293, i
2	394, 7 (438, 6)	477	286, b (187, d)	211, R. 1, b	235, B, 2, c
3	567, 1 (498, iii, N. 1)	897	564 (331, f)	550, 2	296, 2
4	497, 4 (440, N. 1)	565	293 (193)	291, R. 2	241, 1
5	425, 4 (384, 4, N. 3)	546	378 & 1 (235)	352	188, 1
6	612, 1 (536, 2, 1)	957	458 (271, c)	206, R. 3	328, 2
7	591, 1 (503, i)	838	535, a (320, a)	631, 2	283, 2

70, 27. *virtute*: pred. abl. of quality with *esse* implied. — *erant cogniti*: sc. *Boi*. — *ut . . . conlocarent*: obj. of *petentibus*.

70, 28. *concessit*: 'he gave his consent.'

70, 29. *parem . . . atque ipsi erant*: 'same . . . as<sup>1</sup> they themselves enjoyed.'

71, 1. CHAPTER 29. *tabulae*: 'tablets,' much like folding slates, but made of wood. The inner surface was coated with wax to hold the writing.

71, 2. *litteris*: 'letters'; the words were Celtic. The Gauls in general knew nothing of Greek, as we see from Caesar's use of it in a secret despatch to one of his officers. The druids were acquainted with the alphabet at least (138, 6); and inscriptions in the Celtic language, but with Greek letters, have been found in southern Gaul. — *et*: connects *reperit* and *relatae*. As usual, the copula (*sunt*) is expressed with only one participle.

71, 4. *qui*: interrog. adj.<sup>2</sup> pron. introducing an indir. quest.

71, 5. *possent*: characteristic. — *pueri*, etc.: sc. *exissent*.

71, 6. *capitum*: 'souls,' depending on *millia*.

71, 8. *ex his*: sc. *summa erat eorum* (antecedent of *qui*).

71, 9. *ad millia CCCLXVIII*: *ad* must be an adv. here, as *millia* is pred. nom., governing the number of the verb.<sup>3</sup> Generally with numerals *ad* may be taken as a prep.

## BOOK SECOND

Campaign of 57 B.C. — [In the winter of 58–57 B.C., while Caesar was holding court and attending to other civil duties of his governorship in Cisalpine Gaul, numerous reports reached him that the Belgic tribes, afraid that the Roman arms would next be turned upon them, had all joined a conspiracy against him. With the same rapidity of action which he had shown in the previous year against the Helvetii, Caesar raised two new legions in his Cisalpine province, and at the opening of the campaigning season led his army, now consisting of eight legions and an uncertain number of cavalry and auxiliaries, over

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	657, 1, N. (554, i, 2, N.)	760	324, c (156, a)	643	341, 1, c
2	183, 2 (188, ii, 1)	284	148, b (104, a)	106, R.	90
3	390 (462)	473	316, b (204, b)	211, R. 1, c	254, 3

the Marne (Matrona) into the territory of the Remi. This tribe at once submitted and became a faithful ally. Bibrax, an important Reman town, was relieved by Caesar from a vigorous assault of the confederate Belgae, who a few days later suffered such a disastrous defeat on the Aisne (Axona) that they dispersed to their homes, soothing their pride with the agreement to rally for the defense of any district that might be invaded by the Romans. In quick succession Caesar entered the countries of the Suessiones, Bellovaci, and Ambiani, all of whom surrendered with hardly a show of opposition.]

In the Nervii, however, Caesar met a foe worthy of his steel, who not only scorned all thought of submission and declared that they would not accept any terms of peace, but fought so valiantly on the banks of the Sambre (Sabis) that they all but won a decisive victory from his veteran legions, and Caesar himself was obliged to enter the battle before the day was finally saved. Having lost a large proportion of their army in this battle, the Nervii immediately surrendered, and were kindly treated by Caesar, who warmly admired their splendid courage and ability as warriors.

[The Atuatici were next attacked. Terrified by the sight of the Roman siege engines, they offered their submission, but making a treacherous assault on the Romans the next night, they were overpowered, and all of them, numbering 53,000 men, women, and children, were sold as slaves. At the same time several maritime tribes of northwestern Gaul were subdued by Crassus, and a number of German states, impressed by the uninterrupted successes of Caesar, sent envoys to promise obedience to all his commands.

In Italy his victories aroused great enthusiasm, and the senate decreed him the unprecedented honor of a thanksgiving service for fifteen days.]

PAGE 72, LINE 1. CHAPTER 15. *Eorum*: = the Ambiani, whose surrender had just been related. This word stands first in the sentence, not for emphasis, but to connect the thought with the preceding sentence.<sup>1</sup>—*quorum*: = *eorum*,<sup>2</sup> 'their'; a rel., equivalent to a dem., and never to be translated literally, is very frequent at the beginning of sentences, being due to the tendency, which is much stronger in Latin than in English, to preserve the connection of the thought.

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 669, 1	1151			350, 9
2 510 (453)	843-44	308, f & n. (180, f)	610	251, 6

72, 2. *cum quaereret*: 'upon inquiring'; see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29.

72, 3. *sic*: 'the following facts'; related in indir. disc., which is introduced in Eng. by 'that.'—*esse . . . mercatoribus* (dat. of poss.<sup>1</sup>): 'traders had'; for the fact, cf. 51, 8 f.

72, 4. *pati*: sc. *eos*; the subject of an infin. is not infrequently to be implied from the context, provided its omission causes no ambiguity.—*vini*: partit. gen. with *nihil*.<sup>2</sup>

72, 6. *animos*: 'character.'—*existimarent*: subj. in a subordinate clause of a quotation,<sup>3</sup> representing the pres. indic.<sup>4</sup> of dir. disc. The tense depends on the past introductory verb<sup>5</sup> *reperiebat*, and denotes action not completed<sup>6</sup> at the time of the main verb. Observe that, contrary to Eng. idiom, the infins. in a quotation do not follow the sequence of the introductory verb, but keep the tense they had in dir. disc.; see on *praestarent*, 52, 11.—*esse*: the *eos* implied with *pati* is still the subject.

72, 7. *magnae virtutis*: gen. of quality,<sup>7</sup> equiv. to an adj. and so united to *feros* by *-que*.

72, 8. *qui . . . dedidissent*: 'for having surrendered,' a rel. clause expressing cause;<sup>8</sup> hence it had the subj. in dir. disc. The tense, originally perf., follows the sequence of *reperiebat*, and denotes action completed<sup>9</sup> at the time of the main verb.

72, 9. *patriam*: adj.—*sese*: subject of the following infins., referring to the implied subject (*eos*) of *confirmare*.

72, 10. *missuros*: indir. disc. depending on *confirmare*. The tense represents a fut. indic. of their actual declaration. In the fut. infin. *esse* is often omitted.

Caesar's information directly quoted would be: *Nullus est aditus ad eos mercatoribus; nihil patiuntur vini . . . inferri, quod . . . existimant; sunt homines feri magnaeque virtutis; increpitant atque*

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	430 (387)	542	373 (231)	349	190
2	441 (397, 1)	564	346, a, 1 (216, a, 1)	369	201, 1
3	643 (524)	1026	580 (336, 2)	650	314, 1
4	588, 1 (516, i)	851	540 (321)	540	286, 1
5	543 (491)	1031	585; 483 (336, B; 286)	509, 1	318; 267, 2
6	545, ii, 1 (493, 1)	799	484, b (286, R. b)	510	267, 3
7	440, 3 (396, v)	558	345 (215)	365	203
8	592 (517)	839	535, e (320, e)	633	283, 3, a
9	545, ii, 2 (493, 2)	799	484, b (286, R. b)	510	267, 3

*incusant* . . . qui se . . . *dediderint* . . . *proiecerint*; *confirmant* sese . . . *accepturos*.

Direct form of the clauses depending on *existimarent*, l. 6, and *confirmare*, l. 9: His rebus *relanquescunt animi et remittitur virtus*, and Neque legatos *mittemus* (or *missuri*) neque ullam . . . *accipiemus* (or *accepturi sumus*).

72, 12. CHAPTER 16. *Cum* . . . *fecisset*: cf. the tense with *cum quaereret*, l. 2, and see on *cum* . . . *conaretur*, 53, 29. — *eorum*: the Nervii. Caesar entered their territory from the southwest, and was now north of the Sambre (Sabis). For his route before reaching the Nervii, see summary of Book II, p. 287. — *triduum*: acc. of duration of time.<sup>1</sup> — *inveniebat*: followed by indir. disc. to the end of the chapter.

72, 13. *Sabim*: see on *Ararim*, 59, 1.

72, 14. *millia*: acc. of extent, not affected in construction by *amplius*.<sup>2</sup> — *trans*: on the south bank.

72, 15. *una*: adv.

72, 16. *his* and *uti* . . . *experirentur*: see on *civitati*, 52, 9.

72, 17. *utrisque*: the pl. is used only of two groups. — *persuaserant*: the indic.<sup>3</sup> shows that this is merely an explanation for the reader, and not a part of what Caesar learned from prisoners.

72, 19. *mulieres*: obj. of *coniecisse*, the implied subject of which is *eos*, clearly referring to the Nervii, who are the people most prominent in the narrative. — *quique*: = *eosque qui*, see on *qui*, 51, 2. •

72, 20. *eum*: 'a.' — *quo*: 'to which,' adv.

72, 21. *esset*: subj. in a clause of characteristic<sup>4</sup> introduced by a rel. adv. (= *in quem*).

Direct discourse of ll. 13-21: *Sabis flumen* . . . *abest*; *trans id flumen omnes Nervii consederunt* *adventumque* . . . *expectant* . . . *expectantur* *etiam ab iis Atuatuorum copiae atque sunt in itinere*; *mulieres quique* . . . *videbantur* . . . *coniecissent*, *quo* . . . *non esset* (possibly *sit*, depending on a perf. definite, but secondary sequence is usual<sup>5</sup>).

73, 2. CHAPTER 17. *qui* . . . *deligant*: 'to select,' rel. clause of

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	417 (379)	513	423 (256)	336	181, 1
2	471, 4 (417. N. 2)	618	407, c (247, c)	296, R. 4	217, 3
3	543, 3 (524, 2 1)	Cf. 1028	583 (336. b)	628, R. (a)	314, 3
4	591, 1 (503, 1)	836	535 (320)	631, 2	283, 1
5	546 (492, 2, N. 1)	785	485, a (287, a)	511, R. 3	268, 1

purpose.<sup>1</sup> Cf. the primary sequence,<sup>2</sup> depending on a pres. of vivid narration (hist. pres.<sup>3</sup>), with that of *occuparet*, 53, 10. — *castris idoneum*: see Intro. § 43.

73, 3. *Cum . . . facerent*: 'inasmuch as several . . . were following Caesar and marching along with him.' The subj. is regularly used with causal *cum*.<sup>4</sup> The part., as often, is best translated by a verb. — *ex . . . Gallis*: equivalent to a partit. gen. with *com-plures*.<sup>5</sup>

73, 5. *ut*: observe that the indic. follows, hence it does not mean 'that.'

73, 6. *eorum . . . perspecta*: 'having observed our army's way of marching in those days'; the Latin gen. is often not to be expressed by 'of,' and the abl. abs. should not be translated literally.

73, 7. *nocte*: abl. of time when.<sup>6</sup>

73, 8. *singulas*: 'each two' (as they marched along one by one).

73, 9. *numerus*: 'amount.'

73, 10. *negoti*: cf. *vini*, 72, 4. — *castra*: used inexactly of the place selected for the camp. — *venisset*, *abessent*: for fut. perf. and fut. indic.<sup>7</sup> of dir. disc.; for the subj., see on *existimarent*, 72, 6.

73, 11. *spatium*: extent of space.<sup>8</sup> — *hanc*: the *prima legio*. — *sub sarcinis*: *i.e.* before the soldiers could lay down their packs and equip themselves for fighting.

73, 12. *qua . . . direptis*: abl. abs. expressing condition, equivalent to fut. perf. indic., 'if this should be routed,' etc.; the apodosis is *futurum*, 'the result would be.' — *ut . . . auderent*: subst. clause of result, subject of *futurum*,<sup>9</sup> taking its sequence from *demonstrarunt*, l. 8.

73, 13. *Adiuvabat*, etc.: the subject is the subst. clause *quod . . . effecerant*:<sup>10</sup> 'there was support, too, for the plan of those who reported the matter in the fact that the Nervii,' etc.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	590 (497, i)	835	531, 2 (317, 2)	630	282, 2
2	546 (495, ii)	805	485, e (287, e)	511, R. 1	268, 3
3	532, 3 (467, iii)	733	469 (276, d)	229	259, 3
4	598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2
5	444 (397, 3, N. 3)	563	346, c (216, c)	372, R. 2	201, 1, a
6	486 (429)	630	423 (256)	393	230
7	600, i (521, i)	855	547 (325, c)	580	289
8	417 (379)	513	425 (257)	335	181
9	571, 1 (501, i, 1)	902	569, a (332, a, 2)	553, 3	297, 2
10	588, 3 (540, iv, N.)	848	572 & N. (333 & N.)	525, 1	299, 1, b

73, 15. *equitatu*: abl. of specification.<sup>1</sup>—*nihil possent*: 'had no strength'; for the mood, cf. *facerent*, l. 4.—*neque enim*: 'and in fact . . . not.'

73, 16. *rei*: 'branch of the service'; *res* often refers to a preceding subst., here to *equitatu*. The dat. is essential complement or indir. obj. of an intr. verb; cf. *his*, 72, 16.—*quicquid . . . copiis*: 'whatever strength they have lies in their foot-forces.'

73, 17. *quo . . . impedirent*: 'in order to hamper'; *quo* is the regular final particle if there is a comparative in the purpose clause.<sup>2</sup>—*praedandi*: gerund; see on *proficiscendum*, 52, 25.

73, 18. *venissent*: subj. of implied indir. disc.,<sup>3</sup> i.e. not depending on a formal verb of saying or thinking, but implying by the mood that it is an indirect quotation of the thought in the minds of the Nervii when they formed their purpose, which was, 'In order to hamper the cavalry of our neighbors in case they come (lit., 'shall have come') against us, we will construct hedges.' As the plpf. tense expresses completed action and the thought is future, the original tense must have been fut. perf.;<sup>4</sup> cf. *venisset*, l. 10.—*teneris*, etc.: 'they cut into young trees and bent them over, and as the branches grew out thickly on the sides (lit., 'in width') and bramble-bushes and briars were planted between the trees, they had produced the result that these hedges,' etc.

73, 20. *ut . . . praerberent*: complementary or subst. clause of result, obj. of *effecerant*.<sup>5</sup>—*instar*: in apposition with *munimentum*.

73, 21. *quo*: 'through which' (lit., 'into which' = *in quod*, cf. 72, 20).—*intrari, perspicere*: impers. passives.

73, 22. *posset*: rel. clause of result,<sup>6</sup> 'so that through it not only no entrance could be made, but no view even could be gained.' Similar hedges may be seen to-day in the neighborhood of the Sambre.

73, 23. *sibi*: dat. of agent with the gerundive.<sup>7</sup>—*consilium*: the plan of attack suggested in ll. 9-12.

73, 25. CHAPTER 18. *haec*: 'as follows.'—*locum*: see on *itineribus*, 54, 18.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	480 (424)	650	418 (253)	397	226
2	568, 7 (497, ii, 2)	908	531, a (317, b)	545, 2	282, 1, a
3	649, i (528, 1)	791	592, 1 (341, b)	508, 3	323
4	540 (473)	748	478 (281)	244	264
5	571, 3 (501, ii, 1)	902	568 (332)	553, 1	297, 1
6	591, 2 (500, i)	836	537, 2 (319, 2)	631	284, 2
7	431 (388)	544	374 (232)	355	189, 1

73, 26. *aequaliter declivis*: 'with even decline.' This is the hill of Neuf-Mesnil on the north bank of the Sambre. The site of the battle is fixed by the fact that no other part of the river corresponds to all the details given by Caesar.

73, 27. *quod*: agrees with *flumen*; cf. 52, 14 and 16, where the pron. agrees with the proper name. — *supra*, in 72, 13.

73, 28. *pari acclivitate*: 'of like ascent,' abl. of quality<sup>1</sup> limiting *collis*, equiv. to an adj. 'equally steep'; cf. *magnae virtutis*, 72, 7. Note that both the gen. and the abl. of quality require a limiting adj. or its equivalent. — *adversus*, etc.: 'facing this (the hill of Neuf-Mesnil) and opposite to it,' on the south bank of the river.

73, 29. *passus* CC [= *ducentos*]: cf. *spatium*, l. 11. — *infimus* 'at the foot,'<sup>2</sup> contrasted with *ab* (see on *a*, 51, 16) *superiore parte*, 'on the upper part.'

73, 30. *perspici*: impers. as in l. 22. — *posset*: pure result.<sup>3</sup>

74, 2. *secundum*: preposition.

74, 3. *Fluminis*: the change of subject from the hill to the river is made clear at once by putting this word first. If *altitudo* preceded, a Roman reader would be expecting a measurement of the mountain. Latin puts at the beginning of sentences either emphasized words (as here) or phrases which unite the thought closely with what precedes; see on *eorum* and *quorum*, 72, 1. — *pedum*: gen. of quality, used predicatively like *magnae virtutis*, 72, 7.

74, 5. CHAPTER 19. *omnibus copiis*: the abl. of accompaniment<sup>4</sup> may be used without *cum* in military phrases when there is a limiting adj. — *aliter se habebat ac*: 'was different from what,' etc. (lit., 'had itself otherwise than'<sup>5</sup>; with this use of *ac* cf. *parem . . . atque*, 70, 29). The verb is sing. because the subjects form one unit; see on *dividit*, 51, 5.

74, 7. *hostibus*: essential complement or indir. obj. of an intr. cpd. verb.<sup>6</sup> — *consuetudine*: cf. *moribus*, 53, 23.

74, 8. *expeditas*: *i.e.* not impeded by the slowly moving baggage train; but the soldiers carried their individual packs (*sarcinae*). See Intro. § 42.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	473, 2 (419, ii)	643	415 (251)	400	224
2	497, 4 (440, 2, N. 1)	565	293 (193)	291, R. 2	241, 1
3	570 (500, ii)	905	537, 1 (319, 1)	552, 2	284, 1
4	474, 2, N. 1 (419, 1, 1)	634	413, a (248, a, N.)	392, P. 1	222, 1
5	657, 1, N. (554, i, 2, N.)	760	324, c (156, a)	643	341, 1, c
6	429 (386)	532	370 (228)	347	187, iii

74, 9. *conlocarat*: cf. the form<sup>1</sup> with *demonstrarunt*, 73, 8. Beware of confusing this verb with *colligo*.

74, 10. *proxime*: the XIIIth and XIVth legions had been levied by Caesar in Cisalpine Gaul in the spring of this year. As in the battle with the Helvetii, the raw recruits are kept in the background; cf. 68, 1 ff., and see on *ab iis*, 68, 3.

74, 11. *praesidio*: dat. of tendency or service,<sup>2</sup> accompanied as usual by a dat. of interest, 'were a protection to the baggage.' On the Roman order of march, see *Intro.* § 45.

74, 13. *Cum . . . recipere*, etc.: note the imperf., expressing action going on at the time of the main verb *coeperunt*; see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29. The Roman cavalry and light-armed troops, by keeping the enemy occupied on the south side of the river, thwarted the plan of attacking immediately the first legion to arrive; see 73, 10 ff.

74, 14. *silvas*, *silva*: probably denoting by the pl. the different parts of the woods into which the enemy ran, and by the sing. the whole woods collectively.

75, 1. *quem ad finem*: 'to the limit to which,' the antecedent standing only in the rel. clause. Cf. 73, 25, where the antecedent (*loci*) is repeated in the rel. clause.

75, 2. *porrecta*, etc.: 'the stretch of (lit., 'stretched') open ground.' — *cedentes*: 'as they retreated,' agreeing with the implied obj. (*eos*) of *insequi*.

75, 3. *opere dimenso*, etc.: 'marked out the works and began,' etc. (lit., 'the works having been marked out they began'). For the pass. use of a dep. perf. part., see on *depopulatis*, 58, 17. Cf. this perf. part., denoting action complete at the time of *coeperunt*, with the pres. *cedentes*, which expresses action going on at the time of *auderent*.

75, 5. *Ubi*: see on 54, 6. — *prima*: 'the first part of,' see on *infimus* in 73, 29.

75, 6. *quod tempus*: 'the time which.'

75, 7. *committendi proeli*: 'for beginning battle,' limits *tempus*; see on *eorum . . . perspecta*, 73, 6. — *ut*: 'just as,' expressing manner.

75, 8. *sese confirmaverant*: 'had resolved.'

75, 12. *viderentur*: cf. *posset*, 73, 30.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	238 (235)	385	181, a (128, a, 1)	131, 1	116, 1
2	433 (390, i)	547	382, 1 (233, a)	356	191, 2, a

75, 13. *adverso colle*: 'up the hill,' abl. abs. expressing the way by which.<sup>1</sup>

75, 14. *occupati*: adj., 'busy' on the works of fortification (*opere*). Caesar here neglected, while building camp, the usual precaution of keeping a detachment under arms. 'His carelessness cost him dear.'

75, 15. CHAPTER 20 *Caesari*: see on *sibi*, 73, 23.

75, 17. *agenda*: 'to be done,' gerundive; <sup>2</sup> so *proponendum* (sc. *erat*), *revocandi* (sc. *erant*), etc.

75, 18. *vexillum*: a large red banner was displayed at the general's quarters as a signal for battle.

75, 19. *signum*: the signal for "falling in."

75, 20. *opere*: as in l. 14.

75, 21. *paulo*: amount of difference.<sup>3</sup>—*longius*: 'too far.'<sup>4</sup>—*aggeris*: 'materials for the rampart' of the camp; an unusual meaning. —*petendi*: 'of searching for materials' (lit., 'of materials to be sought'), gerundive, attributive with *aggeris*; the other gerundives of this sentence are predicative, but all are equiv. to verbal adjs.,<sup>5</sup> agreeing with their substantives. See on *proficiscendum*, 52, 25.

75, 22. *causa*: 'for the sake of,' so regularly when following a gen. —*arcessendi* [*erant*]: the subject is the implied antecedent (*ii*) of *qui*; see on *qui*, 51, 2.

75, 24. *cohortandi*: see on *cohortatus*, 68, 10. — *signum*: for beginning battle.

75, 29. *subsidio*: see on *praesidio*, 74, 11.

75, 30. *proeliis*: abl. of means.

76, 1. *quid* . . . *oporteret*: indir. quest.,<sup>6</sup> obj. of *praescribere*, taking its sequence from the finite verb (*poterant*) on which *praescribere* depends.<sup>7</sup>

76, 2. *et quod*, etc.: the second of the two helpful circumstances. — *ab opere*, etc.: 'the several lieutenants . . . from the works and their several legions.' Each legion was under the immediate command of a lieutenant. See Intro. § 32.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1		644	429, α (258, ε)		218, 9
2	237 (234)	356	194, δ (129)	129	115
3	479, 1 (423)	655	414 (250)	403	223
4	498 (444, 1)	678	291, α (93, α)	297, 2	240, 1
5	623 (543)	988	503 (296)	427	339, 1
6	649, ii (529, i)	810	573 (334)	467	315, 1
7	548 (495, iv)	808	484, δ (286, R. δ)	518	Cf. 270, 1, 2

76, 4. *nisi munitis castris*: 'until the camp had been fortified.'

76, 5. *nihil*: adverbial acc.,<sup>1</sup> equiv. to an emphasized *non*, 'they did not wait any longer at all' (*iam* with a neg. = 'no longer').

76, 7. CHAPTER 21. *necessariis*, etc.: 'having given only the necessary orders.'

76, 9. *decucurrit*: sc. *in eam partem*. For the antecedent standing only in the rel. clause, cf. *quem ad finem*, 75, 1. — *ad . . . decimam*: for the position of the armies at the beginning of the battle see the plan, p. 74. This was Caesar's favorite legion, as he himself says elsewhere.

76, 10. *non longiore oratione* (abl. of means) . . . *quam uti*: 'in a speech not longer than merely that,' etc.

76, 11. *uti . . . sustinerent*: complementary or subst. clauses, objs. of *cohortatus*.<sup>2</sup>

76, 12. *animo*: loc. abl.<sup>3</sup> — *que*: 'but.'

76, 13. *quam quo*: 'than a distance to which'; cf. *quo*, 72, 20. — *posset*: characteristic. See on *esset*, 72, 21.

76, 16. *pugnantibus*: 'already fighting'; for the omission of the pronoun (*is*), cf. *cedentes*, 75, 2. For the case, see on *hostibus*, 74, 7.

76, 17. *hostium*: poss. gen. with *animus*.

76, 18. *insignia*: 'ornaments,' such as the crests of the helmets, which may have served to distinguish the legions, and doubtless indicated the rank of the wearer; also metal decorations for valor, worn on the breast and arms. These had been stowed away during the march.

76, 19. *galeas*: on the march the soldier carried his helmet suspended on his breast. The shield, which was often highly ornamented, was kept in a leather case when not in use.

76, 20. *scutis*: abl. of separation.<sup>4</sup>

76, 21. *defuerit*: pure result; for the tense, see on *debuerint*, 58, 15. — *Quam . . . in partem*: 'to whatever place.'

76, 22. *quaeque*, etc.: 'and whatever standards he caught sight of first, by these he took his position.'

76, 23. *suis*: sc. *signis*; each maniple had its standard. See Introd. § 40. — *dimitteret*: neg. clause of pure purpose.<sup>5</sup>

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	416, 2 (378, 2)	507	390, d, N. 2 (240, a)	333, 1	176, 3
2	565 (498, i)	894	563 (331)	546	295, 1
3	485, 1 (425, 1, 2)	625	429, 3 (254, a)	385, N. 1	228, 1
4	462 (413)	600	401 (243)	390, 2	214
5	568 (497, ii)	899	531, 1 (317, 1)	545, 3	282, 1

76, 24. CHAPTER 22. *ut*: cannot mean 'that' with the indic.

76, 26. *cum* . . . *resisterent* . . . *impediretur*: cf. *cum* . . . *facerent*, 73, 3 f. — *diversae*: 'separately.'<sup>1</sup> — *aliae alia in parte*: 'some in one place, some in another,' the regular meaning of *alius* when repeated in different cases.

76, 27. *ante*: see 73, 18 ff.

76, 28. *interiectis*: with *saepibus*, abl. abs. expressing cause. — *neque* . . . *poterant*: the main clause, 'no definite reserves could be posted,' etc., i.e. with definite orders to support the tenth legion for instance; for Caesar could not tell where reinforcements were to be most needed.

76, 29. *quid* . . . *esset*: indir. quest. depending on *provideri*, and equiv. to a subst. in the nominative parallel with *subsidia* and *imperia*. For sequence, see on *quid* . . . *oporteret*, l. 1. — Render this long Latin sentence by two sentences in English. Make *instructo exercitu* the leading clause of the first sentence, 'the army was drawn up,' and begin a new sentence with *cum*. English does not admit so readily as Latin many subordinate clauses in one sentence.

77, 1. *fortunae*: contrasted with *rerum*, 'circumstances,' and depending on *eventus*.

77, 4. CHAPTER 23. *acie*: gen.<sup>2</sup> For the positions of the Roman and Belgian forces at the beginning of the battle, see the plan, p. 74. — *pilis*: see on 68, 12.

77, 6. *Atrebates*: acc. — *ea pars*: the Roman left.

77, 7. *loco superiore*: the higher ground up which the enemy charged after crossing the river; see 75, 13.

77, 8. *conantes*: see on *cedentes*, 75, 2.

77, 9. *impeditam*: 'hampered as they were' by the river. — *Ipsi*: the Roman pursuers.

77, 10. *progressi*: they drove the enemy up the hill south of the Sambre (73, 28). — *rursus resistentes hostes*: acc.; note the pres. part. expressing action not completed at the time of the main verb (*coniecerunt*), 'as the enemy were again making a stand.'

77, 11. *redintegrato*, etc.: 'they renewed . . . and threw them,' etc.

77, 12. *diversae*: as in 76, 26.

77, 13. *quibuscum*: see on 51, 10.

77, 14. *ex loco*: with *profligatis*.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	497 (443)		290 (191)		239
2	134, 2 (120)	236	98, N. (74, a)	63, N. 1	52, 3

- 77, 15. **a fronte**: 'on the front'; see on *a*, 51, 16.
- 77, 16. **cum**: causal.
- 77, 17. **intervallo**: amount of difference.<sup>1</sup> — **constitisset**: with two or more sing. subjects the verb is often sing.<sup>2</sup>
- 77, 18. **agmine**: abl. of manner.<sup>3</sup> — **duce Boduognato**: 'under the leadership of B.,' abl. abs.
- 77, 20. **aperto latere**: apparently the left flank, exposed by the departure of the other legions in pursuit of their adversaries. — **legiones**: the XIIIth and VIIIth. — **summum castrorum** (poss. gen.) **locum**: 'the summit occupied by the camp.'
- 77, 22. CHAPTER 24. **levis armaturae**: gen. of quality.<sup>4</sup> These were the slingers and bowmen of 74, 11 f. See Intro. § 29.
- 77, 23. **una**: adv. — **quos**: refers to both *equites* and *pedites*.
- 77, 24. **dixeram**: in 75, 10.
- 77, 25. **adversis**: 'face to face.' For the case of *hostibus*, cf. *pugnantis*, 76, 16.
- 77, 27. **summo iugo**: the camp was laid out on the sloping summit of the hill so that the rear gate should be at the highest point.
- 77, 28. **victores**: 'victoriously,' cf. *diversae*, 76, 26.
- 77, 29. **egressi**: translate this part. by a finite verb and begin the next clause with 'but.' — **respexissent**: with this tense, which denotes that the action of looking back preceded their flight, cf. *reciperent*, l. 25, meaning that they were *in the act* of retreating when they met the enemy; see on *cum* . . . *conaretur*, 53, 29.
- 77, 30. **versari**: this tense denotes an action still going on at the time of *vidissent*, whereas *transisse* (l. 28) expresses an action completed at the time of *conspexerant*.<sup>5</sup>
- 78, 1. **qui**, etc.: the baggage train was coming up, with the XIIIth and XIVth legions in the rear; see 74, 10, and the plan.
- 78, 2. **alii aliam**, etc.: cf. *aliae alia*, etc., 76, 26. — **ferebantur**: 'rushed,' reflexive use of the pass.<sup>6</sup>
- 78, 4. **virtutis opinio**: 'reputation for courage.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	417, 3 (379, a)	655	425, b (257, b)	403	223
2	392 (463, i)	471	317, c (205, d)	285, Exc. 3	255, a
3	473, 3 (419, iii)	636	412 (248)	399	220, 1
4	440, 3 (396, v)	558	345 (215)	365	203
5	617 (537)	978	486 (288)	281, 1 & 2	270, 1, a & b
6	517 (465)	687	156, a (111, a)	218	256, 1

78, 5. *multitudine*: abl. of means.

78, 6. *compleri*, etc.: indir. disc., depending on *vidissent*. For the tense, see on *versari*, 77, 30. — *legiones*: the XIII and VIII.

78, 7. *Numidas*: the *sagittarii* of 74, 12.

78, 9. *domum*: limit of motion.<sup>1</sup>

78, 10. *pulsos* [*esse*]: indir. disc. — *castris*: abl. of means with *positos*<sup>2</sup> [*esse*].

78, 12. CHAPTER 25. *Caesar*: subject of *processit*, 79, 4. This sentence is an unusually long example of the Latin period. The principal subordinate ideas are expressed by a participle (*profectus*, l. 15), a long clause introduced by *ubi* (l. 15) and closing with *posset* (79, 2), and an abl. abs. *scuto . . . detracto* (79, 2). In translation, — which should not be undertaken until the meaning of the whole sentence is understood in the Latin, — end the first sentence with *profectus*; omit *ubi*, and render the participles in the abl. abs. by finite verbs, making as many separate sentences as seems desirable.

78, 15. *signis*: each of the thirty maniples of a legion had its own standard, which it followed in battle, but in this instance, owing to the confusion with which the men had fallen in (76, 21 f.) and the suddenness of the enemy's attack, no definite arrangement of troops was possible, and the standards had all been gathered in one place.

78, 17. *sibi . . . impedimento*: 'hindered each other in fighting'; see on *praesidio*, 74, 11.

78, 19. *centurionibus*: there were six in each cohort; see *Intro.* § 35.

78, 20. *signifero, signo*: 'a (not 'the') standard-bearer, a standard.' There were three maniples in a cohort, each having its own standard, but the cohort as a whole had no separate standard.

78, 23. *in his*: 'among them.' — *primipilo*: with *confecto*. *Baculus* is active again in the following winter (83, 28).

78, 27. *esse tardiores*: 'were too slow,'<sup>3</sup> indir. disc., depending like the following infins. on *vidit* (l. 18).

78, 28. *ab novissimis*: 'in the rear'; cf. *a fronte*, 77, 15. — *proelio*: abl. of separation.<sup>4</sup>

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	419, 1 (380, 2, 1)	519	427, 2 (258, δ)	337	182, 1, δ
2	477, 1 (421, 1)	646	410, N. (249, N.)	407, N. 1	218, 1
3	498 (444, 1)	678	291, α (93, α)	297, 2	240, 1
4	462 (414)	600	402 (243, δ)	390, 2	214

78, 29. *neque . . . et*: correlatives; translate, 'while they did not . . . yet they were,' etc.

79, 1. *vidit*: repeated from 78, 18, for the sake of clearness.

79, 2. *posset*: characteristic.<sup>1</sup> The XIIIth and XIVth legions were not yet on hand, being in the rear of the baggage train, which was just coming up (78, 1). — *militi*: dat. of the optional complement expressing disadvantage;<sup>2</sup> render by 'from.'

79, 3. *eo*: adv.

79, 4. *nominatim appellatis*: this helps us to understand Caesar's popularity with his troops. See also on *omnium*, 68, 8. Miles Standish boasts in Longfellow's poem, *The Courtship of Miles Standish* (Ch. I):

"And, like Caesar, I know the name of each of my soldiers!"

79, 6. *manipulos laxare*: 'to open out the ranks,' that each man might have more room for wielding his sword.

79, 7. *quo . . . possent*: see on *quo . . . impedirent*, 73, 17. — *gladiis*: cf. *castris*, 78, 10.

79, 8. *Cuius*: = *eius*, see on *quorum*, 72, 1. — *adventu*: abl. of cause.

79, 9. *militibus*: dat. of essential complement or indir. obj. with a transitive cpd. verb.<sup>3</sup> — *cum*: causal.

79, 11. *extremis . . . rebus*: 'extreme danger'; see on *res*, 53, 22.

In connection with this episode, cf. the comments which Longfellow puts into the mouth of Miles Standish (Ch. II):

"Now do you know what he did on a certain occasion in Flanders,  
When the rear-guard of his army retreated, the front giving way too,  
And the immortal Twelfth Legion was crowded so closely together  
There was no room for their swords? Why, he seized a shield from a soldier,  
Put himself straight at the head of his troops, and commanded the captains,  
Calling on each by his name, to order forward the ensigns;  
Then to widen the ranks, and give more room for their weapons;  
So he won the day, the battle of something-or-other.  
That's what I always say; if you wish a thing to be well done,  
You must do it yourself, you must not leave it to others!"

79, 17. CHAPTER 26. *ut . . . coniungerent*: complementary or subst. clause, second obj. of *monuit*.<sup>4</sup>

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	591, 1 (503, 1)	838	535, a (320, a)	631, 2	283, 2
2	427 (385, ii, 2)	539	381 (229)	347, R. 5.	188, a, d
3	429, 1 (386, 1)	534	370, a & N. 1 (228, N. 1)	347, R. 3	187, iii, e
4	565 (498, i)	894	563 (331)	546	295, 1

79, 18. *conversa*, etc.: 'face about and charge the enemy.' Probably the result of this manoeuvre was to present a front to the enemy on all sides. This may have been effected, if the two legions were drawn up side by side, by the rear lines facing about while the maniples on the extreme wings faced out.

79, 20. *cum*: causal. — *aliis alii*: cf. *aliae alia*, etc., 76, 26.

79, 21. *ne . . . circumvenirentur*: complementary or subst. clause, obj. of a verb of fearing.<sup>1</sup> The tense expresses action going on at the time of *timerent*, which itself denotes incomplete action at the time of the past tense *coeperunt*.<sup>2</sup> — *aversi*: 'in the rear' (lit., 'being turned away' from the enemy).

79, 23. *duarum*: the XIIIth and XIVth.

79, 25. *proelio*, etc.: 'received word of the battle, and quickening their speed they were caught sight of'; remember that the abl. abs. is not to be translated literally. — *summo*: near the Roman camp.

79, 26. *Labienus*: he was in command of the xth legion, which with the ixth had pursued the Atrebates across the river (77, 3 ff.).

79, 28. *gererentur*: indir. quest.

79, 29. *subsidio*: dat. of purpose,<sup>3</sup> accompanied as usual by a dat. of interest. — *Qui*: pl., of the *milites* implied in *legionem*.

80, 1. *versaretur*: see on *captus est*, 69, 18.

80, 2. *nihil*, etc.: 'they made all possible speed' (lit., 'made nothing left for themselves in regard to speed'). — *reliqui*: pred. gen.<sup>4</sup>

80, 4. CHAPTER 27. *qui . . . procubuissent*: 'such as had fallen,' a characteristic clause; cf. *posset*, 79, 2.

80, 5. *scutis*: abl. of means. — *redintegrent*, *occurrerent*, *praeferrent*: pure result.<sup>5</sup>

80, 6. *hostes*: acc. — *inermes*: 'though unarmed,' with *calones*. — *armatis*: for the case, cf. *pugnantibus*, 76, 16.

80, 7. *delerent*: pure purpose.<sup>6</sup>

80, 8. *pugnando*: gerund, abl. of specification,<sup>7</sup> 'showed themselves superior in fighting.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	567, 1 (498, iii, n. 1)	897	564 (331, f)	550, 2	296, 2
2	545, ii, 1 (493, 1)	799; 804	484, b (286, R. b)	510	267, 3
3	433, 2 (390, ii)	548	382, 1 (233)	356, N. 1	191, 2, b
4	447 & 1 (403)	556	343, b (214, c)	369, R. 2	198, 3
5	570 (500, ii)	905	537, 1 (319, 1)	552, 1	284, 1
6	568 (497, ii)	899	531, 1 (317, 1)	545, 1	282, 1
7	480 (424)	650	418 (253)	397	226

80, 9. *extrema*: 'last.'

80, 10. *iacentibus*: for the case, cf. *armatis*, l. 6.

80, 11. *his*: the *proximi*.

80, 12. *superessent*: cf. *procubuissent*, l. 4. — *ut ex tumulo*: 'as from a mound.'

80, 13. *conicerent*: in the same construction as *insisterent*. — *pila*: not so general a word as *tela*.

80, 14. *ut . . . deberet*: 'so that the verdict ought to be that it was not without reason that men of such great courage,'<sup>1</sup> etc. The result depends on the whole of the preceding sentence, *At . . . remitterent*.

80, 16. *altissimas*: the banks here are steep and over twenty feet high. — *quae*: refers to the preceding infins., 'deeds which.' — *facilia*: pred. adj.

80, 17. *ex*: 'instead of.' The Nervii gave Caesar one of his hardest contests and well deserved his praise of their prowess. Cf. his commendation of the Helvetii, 69, 12.

80, 18. CHAPTER 28. *ad internecionem*: an exaggeration, although Caesar, judging from the reports of the envoys who came to sue for peace (l. 25 f), may have believed it to be the truth. In 54 B.C. the Nervii were strong enough to join a revolt against Caesar, and in 52 B.C. they furnished a contingent of 6000 men for the relief of Alesia (159, 14 f.).

80, 20. *natu*: abl. of specification. — *pueris*: 'children,' so often in the pl.

80, 21. *dixeramus*: in 72, 19 ff.

80, 22. *cum*: as in 79, 20. — *victoribus*, etc.: 'that for the victors nothing was (sc. *esse*) forbidden (lit., 'hindered'), for the conquered there was no security.'

80, 23. *consensu*: manner.

80, 24. *commemoranda*: see on *petendi*, 75, 21.

80, 25. *DC*: note that this is abl. (*sescentis*), while *D* after *ad* is acc.

80, 26. *possent*: characteristic, hence it was subj. in dir. disc.

80, 27. *Quos*: see on *quorum*, 72, 1. — *usus* [*esse*] *videretur*: 'that he might be seen to have shown.'

80, 29. *uti*: 'to remain in the possession of.' — *fnitimis*: for the case, cf. *rei*, 73, 16. — *ut . . . prohiberent*: cf. *ut . . . coniungerent*, 79, 17.

80, 30. *iniuria*: see on 55, 24.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	440, 3 (396, v)	558	345 (215)	365	203, 1

## BOOK THIRD

**Campaign of 56 B.C.** — At the end of the Belgian campaign Caesar quartered his legions for the winter among the Carnutes, Turoni, and Andes, tribes dwelling along the Loire (Liger), and himself returned as in the previous year to his Cisalpine province. At the same time he sent Galba with a small force into the Alpine region just east of Geneva for the purpose of opening up the road from Italy to Gaul over the Great St. Bernard, a route which had hitherto been extremely dangerous and subject to heavy tolls. This object, in spite of a few successful engagements, Galba was unable to accomplish, and he was soon forced to retreat for the winter into the district of the Allobroges.

During the winter a revolt broke out among the maritime states of northwestern Gaul. The initial step was taken by the Veneti, who seized two Roman officials sent to them to demand grain for the legions. The revolt spread rapidly and was joined by most of the tribes along the northern coast. To meet the dangers which threatened from many sides Caesar divided his army. Labienus was sent to the Treveri with orders to hold the Belgae in allegiance and to prevent the Germans from assisting the disloyal states. Crassus was despatched to Aquitania, while Sabinus undertook to keep the Venelli and their neighbors occupied at home. Decimus Brutus was put in charge of the fleet which had been collected to coöperate with Caesar himself in overpowering the Veneti. While Crassus and Sabinus had but little trouble in subduing the districts intrusted to them, Caesar found that the task he had taken upon himself was decidedly difficult. It was only towards the end of summer that by means of his fleet, which had long been detained at the mouth of the Loire by storms, he was able to inflict a crushing blow. This is the earliest recorded battle fought on the Atlantic.

All of the maritime states from Spain to the Rhine, with the exception of the Morini and the Menapii in northern Belgium, were now subject to Rome. Although the campaigning season was nearly over, Caesar led his army against these bold tribes, but his expedition was rendered fruitless by severe and continuous storms. His legions were quartered for the winter among the Auleri, Lexovii, and other peoples lately subdued.

PAGE 81, LINE 1. CHAPTER 1. If Caesar had here observed his custom of including in a single book the events of each year, he would

have described Galba's Alpine expedition in the second book. — *Cum* . . . *proficisceretur*: note the force of the tense with temporal *cum*; see on *cum* . . . *conaretur*, 53, 29. With the subj. the temporal clause does not date, or define the time of, the main action, but merely states a subordinate circumstance attending the main action. — *Italiam*: see on 57, 26.

81, 2. *Galbam*: although always befriended by Caesar, Galba joined the conspiracy against his life. He was great-grandfather of the emperor Galba.

81, 5. *summas Alpes*: 'the highest part of the Alps,' including Mont Blanc (15,780 feet), the Matterhorn (14,705), and Monte Rosa (15,215).

81, 6. *iter*: the route over the Great St. Bernard, which descends to Martigny (Octodurus). This was the nearest way from Italy to central or northern Gaul. — *periculo*: arising from the hostility of the mountaineers rather than from the difficulties of the way. Both *periculo* and *portoribus* express manner.<sup>1</sup>

81, 7. *consuerant*: 'were (not 'had been') accustomed,' the perf. meaning 'I am (*i.e.* 'have become') accustomed.'<sup>2</sup> With the contracted form cf. *conlocarat*, 74, 9.

81, 8. *arbitraretur*: implied indirect discourse (see on *habuerit*, 53, 10), the subj. implying that, in giving Galba permission to winter his legion in the Alps, Caesar said *si* . . . *arbitraberis*, 'if you (shall) think it necessary.' — *uti* . . . *conlocaret*: complementary or subst. clause, dir. obj. of *permisit*.<sup>3</sup>

81, 9. *secundis* . . . *facta*: translate these ablatives absolute like indic. clauses, 'Galba fought several successful engagements,' etc. Begin a new sentence with *missis*, and a third with *constituit*, introducing the former by 'consequently,' 'accordingly,' or the like, and the latter by 'so.'

81, 14. *qui vicus*: see on *qua*, 51, 11.

82, 2. *flumine*: the Dranse, a mountain stream which flows into the Rhone at the great bend. — *divideretur*: with causal *cum*.<sup>4</sup>

82, 3. *vacuam*, etc.: 'that had been left free from them.'<sup>5</sup>

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	473, 3, N. (419, iii, N. 1)	636	412, α (248, N.)	399	220
2	299, 2 (297, i, 2)		205, N. 2 (143, ε, N.)	175, 5	262, A.
3	565 (498, i)	894	563 (331)	546	295, 2
4	598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2
5	465 (414, iii)	604	402, α, N. (243)	390, 3, N. 1	214, 1, d, N. 1

82, 4. *Eum locum*: the part occupied by Galba was fortified like a regular camp.

82, 5. CHAPTER 2. *hibernorum*: 'of their winter encampment.'—*transissent*: cf. the tense with *proficisceretur*, 81, 1. For the contraction, see on 59, 30.

82, 8. *concesserat*: not a part of the scouts' report, but an explanation of Caesar for the reader; hence the indic.<sup>1</sup> *Impenderent*,<sup>2</sup> on the other hand, represents *impending* of the original report. For the sequence, depending not on *teneri* but on *factus est*, see on *debuerint*, 58, 15.

82, 11. *ut . . . caperent*: a complementary or subst. clause in apposition with *id*, and expressing result.<sup>3</sup>

82, 12. *neque eam plenissimam*: 'and that not in its full strength'; the reason is explained by the ablatives absolute. This legion had also met heavy losses in the battle with the Nervii (78, 16 ff.).

82, 13. *compluribus*: with *absentibus*.

82, 16. *cum . . . decurrerent*: 'when they themselves should rush down,' representing *decurremus*<sup>4</sup> of their original thought.

82, 18. *Accedebat quod*: 'furthermore' (lit., 'there was added the fact that'). The clause with *quod* is subject<sup>5</sup> of *accedebat*.

82, 19. *abstractos* [esse]: indir. disc. depending on *dolebant*.—*nomine*: abl. of manner.

82, 22. *sibi persuasum habebant*: 'they had the firm conviction' (lit., 'held it persuaded to themselves,' see on 61, 6). The conviction is expressed by indir. disc., *Romanos . . . conari*, etc., with which *persuasum* agrees as a neuter pred. adj.

82, 25. CHAPTER 3. *opus hibernorum*: 'the work on the winter quarters,' adapting the village to a military camp, but not including the building of fortifications (*munitiones*).—*essent perfectae*: see on *captus est*, 69, 18.

82, 28. *nihil*, etc.: 'that there need be no fear of war.'

82, 29. *consilio*: probably composed of the tribunes of the legion and the centurions of the first cohort; see Intro. § 36.

	H	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	643, 4 (524, 2)	1028	583 (336, <i>δ</i> )	628, R. ( <i>a</i> )	314, 3
2	643 (524)	1026	580 (336, 2)	650	314, 1
3	571, 4 (501, iii)	904	570 (cf. 332, <i>f</i> )	557 & R.	297, 3
4	600, i (521, i)	855	547 (325, <i>c</i> )	580	289
5	588, 3 (540, iv, N.)	848	572 & N. (333 & N.)	525, 1	299, 1, <i>δ</i>

82, 30. *periculi*: partit. gen. with *tantum*.<sup>1</sup>

83, 2. *multitudine*: not agent, as in 82, 9, but means.

83, 3. *subsidio*: dat. of purpose.<sup>2</sup> — *veniri*: impers.,<sup>3</sup> with *posset* implied from *possent*, 'and nobody could come to their relief.'

83, 5. *ut . . . contenderent*: complementary or subst. clause of purpose,<sup>4</sup> in apposition with *sententiae*.

83, 6. *pervenissent*: subj. of attraction.<sup>5</sup>

83, 7. *Maiori . . . parti placuit*: 'the majority voted.' The infins. are the subjects of *placuit*.

83, 10. CHAPTER 4. *vix ut*: see on *vix qua*, 54, 20.

83, 11. *constituissent*: see on *pertinerent*, 52, 25.

83, 13. *decurrere, conicere*: 'came running down,' 'and kept hurling'; see on *flagitare*, 61, 20.

83, 14. *integris viribus*: 'so long as their strength was unimpaired,' abl. abs. expressing time.

83, 16. *superiore*: of the rampart, see 82, 4.

83, 17. *defensoribus*: abl. of separation.<sup>6</sup>

83, 18. *hoc* (abl. of cause) *superari quod*: 'were at a disadvantage from the fact that' (lit., 'on this account, namely, because'); the clause with *quod* is in apposition with *hoc*, and takes the indic. because Caesar states the reason as his own.

83, 19. *defessi*: 'when exhausted.' — *integris viribus*: abl. of quality.<sup>7</sup>

83, 20. *quarum rerum*: partit. with *nihil*,<sup>8</sup> 'whereas none of these (see on *qua*, 51, 11) things.'

83, 21. *non modo . . . sed ne . . . quidem*, etc.: 'not only was there no opportunity given to the exhausted man . . . but not even to the wounded man,' etc. The negative in *ne . . . quidem* applies also to the first clause. Sometimes *non modo non* is written, as in 73, 21.

83, 23. *sui recipiendi*: 'of recovering himself.' Observe that *excedendi* is a gerund, while *relinquendi* and *recipiendi* are gerundives; see on *proficiscendum*, 52, 25.

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 442 (397, 3)	564	346, a, 3 (216, a, 3)	369	201, 2
2 433, 1 (390, N. 2)	548	382, 1 (233, a)	356, N. 1	191, 1
3 518, 1 (465, 1)	314	208, d (146, d)	208, 2	138, iv.
4 564, iii (499, 3)	892	561, a (317, 3)	546, N. 2	294
5 652, 1 (529, ii, N. 1)	793	593 (342)	663, 1	324, 1
6 462 (414, 1)	601	401 (243, e)	390, 2	214, 1, δ
7 473, 2 (419, ii)	643	415 (251)	400	224
8 441 (397, 1)	564	346, a, 1 (216, e, 1)	369	201, 1

83, 24. CHAPTER 5. *Cum* . . . *pugnaretur*: 'when the battle had been raging' (and was still raging<sup>1</sup>). — *horis*: see on *millibus*, 61, 17.

83, 26. *languidioribus nostris*: 'as our men were growing weaker,' abl. abs. expressing cause.<sup>2</sup>

83, 27. *fossas*: pl., because the ditch was being filled at several places; cf. *ripis*, 77, 14.

83, 30. *diximus*: see 78, 24 f.

84, 2. *unam*: regularly emphatic, 'only one.' — *si* . . . *experirentur*: the condition, in apposition with *spem*, is indirectly quoted from *si* . . . *experiemur*. Secondary sequence<sup>3</sup> is common with the pres. of vivid narration (hist. pres.), the action being past though stated as present.<sup>4</sup>

84, 3. *auxilium*: 'resource.'

84, 4. *intermitterent*: indir. disc. for *intermittite*,<sup>5</sup> 'he tells the soldiers they are to stop fighting.'

84, 5. *tantummodo* . . . *exciperent*: 'merely receive,' not throwing any weapons back, but keeping them to use when the sortie is made.

84, 6. *post*: beware of confusing *post* (adv.) with *postquam* (conj.).

84, 8. CHAPTER 6. *Quod*: see on *qui*, 51, 2.

84, 9. *portis*: abl. of the way by which.<sup>6</sup> — *cognoscendi*: gerund depending on *facultatem*.

84, 10. *fieret*: though depending on *cognoscendi*, it takes its sequence<sup>7</sup> from *relinquunt* (see on *si* . . . *experirentur*, l. 2). — *sui colligendi*: 'of rallying' ('pulling themselves together'); *sui*, having the form of a singular, is accompanied, even when plural, by a singular gerundive.<sup>8</sup> Another explanation makes *sui* obj. gen. limiting a gerund.

84, 11. *eos* . . . *circumventos interficiunt*: 'those who had, etc., were surrounded and slain'; for the pass. in translation, see on *qui*, 51, 2.

84, 12. *potiundorum*: see on *faciundi*, 55, 24.

84, 13. *millibus XXX*: a comparison with the population in this district to-day makes it almost certain that this number is exaggerated, but it is probably the estimate reported to Caesar by Galba.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	535, 1 (469, ii, 2)	738	471, <i>b</i> (277, <i>b</i> )	234	260, 4
2	489, 1 (431, i)	640	419, <i>a</i> ; 420, 2 (255, <i>a</i> & <i>d</i> , 2)	409	227, 1 & 2, <i>d</i>
3	546 (495, ii)	805	485, <i>c</i> (287, <i>c</i> )	511, R. I	268, 3
4	532, 3 (467, iii)	733	469, N. (276, <i>d</i> )	229	259, 3
5	642, 4 (523, iii)	1023	588 (339)	652	316
6	476 (420, 1, 3)	644	429, <i>a</i> (258, <i>e</i> )	401	218, 9
7	548 (495, iv)	808		518	
8	626, 3 (542, i, N. 1)	1000	504, <i>c</i> (298, <i>a</i> )	428, R. I	339, 5

84, 17. *armis*: abl. of separation with *exutis*, which belongs with *copiis*. They were so hotly pursued that they threw their arms away in order to run faster.

84, 19. *saepius*: 'too often.'<sup>1</sup>

84, 20. *alio . . . viderat*: 'remembered that he had come into winter quarters with one purpose (see 81, 5-8), but saw that he had met with other results.'

84, 21. *rebus*: for the case, cf. *pugnantibus*, 76, 16.

84, 26. CHAPTER 7. *cum*: concessive.<sup>2</sup>

84, 27. *inita hieme*: abl. abs. expressing time. — *Illyricum*: this was the eastern part of Caesar's Cisalpine province. Caesar had been in Cisalpine Gaul during Galba's campaign.

85, 5. *proximus*: 'nearest' (of all Caesar's officers). The others were stationed for the winter among the Turoni and the Carnutes. — *mare*: the acc. is sometimes used with *proximus* as with *prope*; but see 51, 9 f., where the dat. is used.

85, 8. *complures*: with *civitates*.

85, 10. *Coriosolitas*: see on *Lingonas*, 69, 23.

85, 12. CHAPTER 8. *Huius civitatis*: the last mentioned. The Veneti were the principal seafaring people of Gaul and controlled the carrying trade with Britain. Their monopoly was in danger from the Romans, for Caesar's intention to invade Britain was already known. Consequently, although in common with other Aremoric states they had submitted to Crassus in the summer of 57 B.C., they seized the first opportunity to assert their independence, and hoped by uniting all their allies to overthrow Caesar's ambitious designs.

85, 13. *orae*: partit. gen. with the superlative,<sup>3</sup> and itself limited by the poss. gen. *regionum*.

85, 14. *consuerunt*: see on *consuerant*, 81, 7.

85, 15. *scientia, usu*: abl. of specification, cf. *virtute*, 51, 12.

85, 17. *portibus interiectis*: abl. abs. expressing cause; 'and since in the midst of the mighty violence . . . there are only a few scattered harbors.' — *omnes*: obj. of *habent*, with *vectigales* as pred. acc. As the Veneti had a monopoly of the harbors on this stormy coast, they exacted heavy tolls from all shipmasters who entered them.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	498 (444, 1)	678	291, a (93, a)	297, 2	240, 1
2	598 (515, iii)	863	549 (326)	587	309, 3
3	442 (397, 3)	560	346, a, 2 (216, a, 2)	372	201, 1

85, 19. *retinendi*: translate 'by holding.'

85, 20. *dedissent*: in the previous summer; see on *huius civitatis*, l. 12.

85, 21. *ut*: with the indic. cannot mean 'that.'—*subita*, etc.: the inconstancy of the Gauls is often mentioned by Caesar and others.

85, 24. *communi consilio*: 'with a common purpose'; abl. of manner.

85, 27. *acceperint*: implied indir. disc. (see on *habuerit*, 53, 10), for *accepistis* of the actual exhortation. With the primary sequence, cf. *si . . . experientur*, 84, 2 f., and see note.—*quam*: 'than.'

85, 30. *Si*, etc.: indir. quotation of the message.—*remittat*: cf. *intermitterent*, 84, 4.

86, 2. CHAPTER 9. *longius*: 'too far' to take command himself.—*naves longas*: see Intro. § 48.

86, 6. *per . . . potuit*: 'the season of the year allowed' (lit., 'he could, owing to the season'). He probably reached his army in May. He was at Lucca in April, arranging affairs of state with Pompey and Crassus. See Intro. § 9.

86, 9. *quantum . . . admisissent*: indir. quest.

86, 10. *legatos . . . retentos [esse]*: indir. disc. depending on *intellegabant*, and in apposition with *facinus*, 'namely, that envoys,' etc.—*quod nomen*: 'a name which,' see on *quod tempus*, 75, 6. An appositive word which is also the antecedent of a rel. pron. is taken into the rel. clause.

86, 14. *instituunt*: 'begin.'—*hoc . . . quod*: see on *hoc superari quod*, 83, 18.—*natura*: loc. abl. with *confidebant*.<sup>1</sup>

87, 1. *inscientiam*: i.e. of the Romans.

87, 2. *neque . . . confidebant*: the connective belongs with *confidebant*, the negative with *posse*; 'and they trusted that our armies could not.'

87, 3. *diutius*: 'very long.'

87, 4. *iam ut*, etc.: 'even supposing everything turned out'; the only other instance in Caesar of *ut* introducing an assumption or concession<sup>2</sup> is in 198, 12.

87, 5. *navibus*: abl. of specification.—*posse*: indir. disc. depending on *perspiciabant*, l. 9.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	485, 1 (425, 1, 1, N.)	629	431 & N. (254, b)	389	228, 1
2	586, ii (515, iii)	901	527, a (313, a)	608	

- 87, 7. *gesturi essent*: see on *obtenturus esset*, 53, 16.
- 87, 8. *aliam . . . atque*: see on *aliter . . . ac*, 74, 5. — *concluso mari*: i.e. the Mediterranean, where the Romans were most at home.
- 87, 10. *frumenta*: see on 61, 22.
- 87, 12. *quam plurimas possunt*: cf. *quam maximis potest*, 55, 9.
- 87, 13. *Socios . . . adsciscunt*: cf. 54, 16 f. — *sibi*: dat. of interest or reference.<sup>1</sup>
- 87, 14. *Morinos, Menapios*: in northern Belgium; the other peoples named were neighbors of the Veneti.
- 87, 19. CHAPTER 10. *iniuria retentorum equitum*: 'the outrage of holding Roman knights'; in the genitive phrase the participle contains the leading idea.<sup>2</sup> The tribunes (85, 7) were regularly chosen from the equestrian rank; see *Introd.* § 34.
- 87, 21. *ne . . . arbitrarentur*: a subst. clause, equiv. to another nominative in apposition with *multa* (l. 18); translate, 'the fear that,<sup>3</sup> if this region should be disregarded, the remaining peoples,' etc.
- 87, 23. *cum*: causal. — *novis rebus*<sup>4</sup> *studere*: cf. *ut . . . consilia*, 85, 21 f.
- 87, 25. *natura*: abl. of cause.
- 87, 26. *odisse*: of present force, see on *consuesse*, 60, 21.
- 87, 27. *conspirarent*: the imperf. in secondary sequence, representing a pres. subj.<sup>5</sup> of dir. disc. — *sibi*: see on 73, 23.
- 87, 30. CHAPTER 11. *flumini*: cf. *mare*, 85, 5, and see note.
- 88, 1. *adeat*: coördinated with *mandat*, 'bids him visit the Remi,' and equiv. to an obj. clause subordinated by *ut*; <sup>6</sup> cf. *faciat*, 65, 5.
- 88, 2. *auxilio*: dat. of purpose,<sup>7</sup> without the usual dat. of interest accompanying it; cf. 63, 26. — *arcessiti* [esse] *dicebantur*: 'were said to have been summoned'; when dependent on a passive verb of saying used personally,<sup>8</sup> the infin. is complementary, not in indir. disc., and a pred. subst. or adj., including the part. in the perf. infin., is in the nom.<sup>9</sup>

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	425, 4, N. (384, 4, N. 2)	538	377 (235, a)	350, 1	188, 1, N.
2	636, 4 (549, 5, N. 2)	1013	497 (292, a)	664, R. 2	337, 5
3	567, 1 (498, iii, N. 1)	897	Cf. 564 (331, f)	550, 1	296, 2
4	426, 1 (385)	531	367 (227)	346, R. 2	187, ii, a
5	605, 1 (520, i, 2)	878	551, c (327, a)	577	292, 1, b
6	565, 4 (499, 2)	781	565 & N. 1 (331, f, R.)	546, R. 2	295, 8
7	433, 3 (390, ii, N. 2)	548	382, 1 (233, a)	356 & N. 1	191, 1
8	611, 1 (534, 1, N. 1)	962	582 (330, b)		332, c
9	612, 1 (536, 2, 1, N.)	957	458 (271, c)		328, 2

88, 3. *conentur*: implied indir. disc., for a fut. indic. of the actual command; see on *habuerit*, 53, 10.

88, 6. *nationibus*: pl., of the different tribes of Aquitania. — *Galliam*: used in a restricted sense, as in 51, 19, of the land of the Galli; see 51, 4. Probably Caesar was needlessly alarmed as to the danger of the Aquitanians taking part in the Venetan war, for, being of different stock and speech, they never made common cause with the rest of the Gauls.

88, 9. *qui . . . curet*: rel. clause of purpose,<sup>1</sup> 'to see that their troops were kept back.' For the gerundive, see on 59, 18. — *Brutum*: Brutus, like Galba (see on 81, 2), showed the basest ingratitude to Caesar by joining the conspiracy against his life. Do not confuse Decimus Brutus with his more famous kinsman, Marcus.

88, 12. *possit*: for an original *poteris*; see on *conentur*, l. 3.

88, 14. CHAPTER 12. *eius modi*: pred. gen. of quality.<sup>2</sup>

88, 16. *pedibus*: abl. of means, 'by land.' — *haberent*: in a complementary or subst. clause of result in apposition with *eius modi*.<sup>3</sup> — *cum*: temporal.

88, 17. *spatio*: time within which.<sup>4</sup>

88, 19. *adfectarentur*: subj. of attraction,<sup>5</sup> the causal clause being an essential part of the result. — The high tide overflowed the isthmus connecting a town with the mainland. At low tide the town was left high and dry on all sides, so that a ship which had come near to the town at high tide was obliged to go out with the ebbing tide or be stranded on the shallows. — *utraque re*: 'by both circumstances.'

88, 20. *operis*: the Roman 'works,' explained by the abls. abs. *extruso . . . adaequatis*.

88, 21. *superati*: agrees with the subject of *coeperant*. — *extruso*, etc.: 'when the sea had been shut off by a massive dike and the works had been made equal in height to the walls of the town.' Apparently the Romans built a broad dike or embankment across the low ground which was overflowed at high tide, and as it approached the town its elevation was increased until it equaled the height of the town walls. Thus it not only gave uninterrupted access to the town by land, but also served

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	590 (497, i)	835	531, 2 (317, 2)	630	282, 2
2	440, 3 (396, v)	558	345 (215)	365	203, 5
3	571, 4 (501, iii)	892; 902	570 (319, 3)	557	297, 3
4	487 (429)	631	423 (256)	393	231
5	652, 1 (529, ii, N. 1, 1)	793	593 (342)	629	324, 1

as a siege mound (see *Introd.* § 47). — *aggere ac molibus*: lit., 'by a mound and massive structures,' but as only one structure is meant, it is equiv. to 'by a massive dike.'

88, 23. *cuius rei*: 'of which,' referring to *navium*.

88, 24. *deportabant*, etc.: conclusion of the condition *si . . . coeperant*, the imperf. showing that this was their customary conduct as one town after another was attacked.

88, 26. *eo . . . quod*: 'from the fact that' (lit., 'on that account, because'); *eo* is abl. of cause and is explained by the appositive causal clause. — *partem*: acc. of duration of time.

88, 28. *detinebantur*: doubtless near the mouth of the Loire; see 86, 3. The Roman ships were not so well adapted as those of the Veneti to the rough waters of this coast, and the Romans themselves were unused to the open ocean. — *summa*: with *difficultas*; the separation of words belonging together emphasizes them both.<sup>1</sup> — *vasto . . . portibus*: abls. abs., expressing cause.

89, 1. CHAPTER 13. *Namque*: introduces a further explanation of *facilius*, 88, 26, 'but the Veneti were not troubled, for'; *namque* generally implies an omission which is easily supplied from the context. — *ipsorum*: 'their own.'

89, 2. *armatae*: not 'armed.' — *carinae*: sc. *erant*; so through l. 10.

89, 3. *quo*: see on *quo*, 56, 7.

89, 5. *erectae*: 'straight.'

89, 6. *accommodatae*: 'being adapted,' applies to both *prorae* and *puppae*.

89, 7. *robore*: abl. of material.<sup>2</sup> — *quamvis*; the indef. pron.

89, 8. *transtra*: 'cross-beams,' supporting the deck and strengthening the sides. The usual meaning, 'rowers' benches,' is not possible here, for the Venetan ships were propelled by sails alone; see 91, 4 f. — *ex . . . trabibus*: 'of timbers a foot thick.'

89, 9. *digiti . . . crassitudine*: 'of a thumb's thickness,' abl. of quality, with a gen. instead of the usual adj.<sup>3</sup> — *pro funibus*: this implies that the Romans used ropes.

89, 10. *pelles*, etc.: 'skins and leather thinly dressed were used for sails.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	665, 4 (561, iii)	1149	598, 6 (344, 6)	672, a, 3	350, 11,
2	470 (415, iii)	610	403, 2 (244, 2)	396	
3	473, 2 (419, ii)	643	415 (251)	400	224, 2

89, 14. *tanta onera navium*: 'such heavy ships'; not 'ships of such burden,' which has a different meaning.

89, 16. *classi*: dat. of possessor, but translate, 'the encounter of our fleet.'

89, 17. *pulsu remorum*: 'in rowing'; for the abl., cf. *scientia*, 85, 15. — *reliqua*, etc.: 'while in all other respects, considering the nature of the locality and the violence of the storms, the Venetan ships had an equipment more suitable and appropriate than ours.' Grammatically *reliqua* is subject of *essent*, which is parallel with *praestaret*; *illis* [navibus] is dat. of possessor.

89, 19. *iis*: essential complement or indir. obj. of *nocere*.<sup>1</sup>

89, 21. *adigebatur*: 'could be thrown so as to reach its mark,' the potential use of the verb; cf. *transitur*, 54, 26.

89, 22. *copulis*, etc.: the Romans always endeavored in a naval battle to run alongside of the enemy's ships, to make them fast to their own by grappling hooks, and to board them; for in a hand-to-hand fight they had good hopes of proving superior, but as seamen they never showed remarkable cleverness. — *Accedebat ut*: 'furthermore,' cf. *accedebat quod*, 82, 18. The subjects of *accedebat* are the complementary or subst. result clauses *ut . . . ferrent*,<sup>2</sup> etc.

89, 23. *se vento dedissent*: 'they (the Venetan ships) ran before the wind'; a stereotyped nautical phrase, hence *ventus* is repeated. — *et* (before *tempestatem*) . . . *et* . . . *et*: correlatives, 'not only . . . but also . . . and.'

89, 24. *consisterent*: 'anchored.' — *aestu*: personified and given the construction of a voluntary agent.<sup>3</sup>

89, 25. *nihil*: see on 76, 5.

89, 26. *navibus*: cf. *sibi*, 87, 27. — *casus*: 'the occurrence.'

89, 29. CHAPTER 14. *neque iis*, etc.: 'and that they could not be harmed' (lit., 'it could not be harmed to them'); verbs which, like *noceo*, take a dat. of the essential complement (indir. obj.) are impersonal in the passive, and the dat. is retained.<sup>4</sup>

89, 30. *Quae*: see on *quorum*, 72, 1.

90, 2. *armorum*: not 'arms' merely; cf. *armatae*, 89, 2.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	426, 1 (385, 1)	531	367 (227)	346, R. 2	187, ii, a
2	571, 1 (501, i, 1)	902	569, 2 (332, a, 2)	553, 3	297, 2
3	468, 1 (415, i, 2)	614	405, N. 3 (246)	401, R. 1	216, 1
4	426, 3 (384, 5)	530	372 (230)	346, R. 1	187, ii, b

90, 3. **portu**: probably in the Auray River.

90, 4. **Bruto**: essential complement (indir. obj.) of *constabat*.

90, 5. **tribunis**, etc.: these were army officers, and the fighters on the ships were legionaries. In ancient times a naval service distinct from the military was unknown. See Introd. § 48.

90, 8. **Rostro**: instrumental, as in 89, 19. — **noceri**, etc.: impers. (see on 89, 29) without a complement, 'no harm could be done.' — **cognoverant**: 'they knew,' not however implying that there had been any naval engagement. — **turribus . . . excitatis**: that the abl. abs. is concessive is seen from the following *tamen*.

90, 9. **ex . . . navibus**: 'on the . . . ships'; see on *a*, 51, 16.

90, 11. **gravius**: they gained velocity by their descent from the higher level.

90, 12. **usui**: see on *auxilio*, 88, 2.

90, 13. **longuriis**: dat. of essential complement (indir. obj.) with the cpd. participles. — **forma**: abl. of quality, 'of a shape not unlike that of wall-hooks.'

91, 1. **falcium**: poss. gen. with an implied *formae* depending on *absimili*. These hooks were used for pulling down city walls. — **cum**: 'as often as,' 'every time'; temporal and conditional clauses expressing repeated action commonly take the indicative.<sup>1</sup>

91, 4. **navibus**: dat. of interest or reference.<sup>2</sup>

91, 6. **uno tempore**: 'in a single moment.'

91, 9. **res gerebatur**: 'the action was taking place.' This is the earliest recorded battle fought on the Atlantic Ocean. — **paulo fortius**: 'unusually brave'; *paulo* denotes the amount of difference<sup>3</sup> between these and ordinary deeds.

91, 10. **colles**: probably the heights of St. Gildas.

91, 12. CHAPTER 15. **cum**: as in l. 1. — **singulas**, etc.: as soon as a Venetan ship had been disabled in its sails, which were its only means of propulsion, the Romans had no trouble in surrounding it with two or three of their ships and overpowering it by their usual mode of fighting; see on *copulis*, 89, 22.

91, 16. **cum**: causal.<sup>4</sup>

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	601, 4 (521, ii, 1)	854	542: 518, 6 (322: 309, c)	584	288, 3
2	425, 4, N. (384, 4, N. 2)	538	377 (235, a)	350, 1	188, 1, N.
3	479, 1 (423)	655	414 (250)	403	223
4	598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2

91, 17. *conversis*, etc.: *i.e.* so as to sail before the wind. The battle probably took place in late summer (see 88, 26 f.), and at that season in these regions to-day the wind usually dies out about noon.

91, 23. *cum . . . pugnaretur*: 'since the battle lasted,' explaining how it happened that night afforded escape to a few of the enemy. — *hora . . . quarta*: between nine and ten in the forenoon.

91, 26. CHAPTER 16. *cum . . . tum*: 'not only . . . but furthermore.'<sup>1</sup>

91, 27. *aetatis*: gen. of quality.

91, 28. *aliquid*, etc.: 'some degree of discretion or of prestige.' — *consili*: partit. gen.;<sup>2</sup> so *navium* with *quod*, 'what ships there had been anywhere.'

91, 30. *quo*: rel. adv., introducing a characteristic clause;<sup>3</sup> the implied antecedent may be expressed in translation, 'they had neither a refuge to which they might withdraw nor a means of defending their towns.'

92, 2. *eo*: abl. of cause, explained by the appositive purpose clause *quo . . . conservaretur*; cf. *eo . . . minus . . . quod*, 60, 8 f. Translate *eo gravius* 'the more severely.'

92, 3. *vindicandum* [esse]; impers., 'that punishment must be inflicted.' — *quo*: see on 56, 7.

92, 5. *sub corona*: this phrase arose, as the Romans believed, from an ancient custom, which had long since died out, of putting wreaths on the heads of captives in war who were to be sold at auction. The sale was conducted by the quaestor, and the principal purchasers were wholesale slave dealers. Caesar is said by Plutarch to have taken a million captives in his Gallic campaigns, a large part of whom were probably sold into slavery. — It is not to be supposed that the state of the Veneti was utterly annihilated, for they are named later (159, 20) as contributors to the force which was mustered by the Gauls for the relief of Alesia. But their position as leaders was gone forever.

92, 6. CHAPTER 17. *geruntur*: see on *conquiruntur*, 70, 4.

92, 7. *copiis*: see 88, 8.

92, 11. *copias*: probably forces not regularly organized as an *exercitus*. — *his paucis diebus*: 'within a few days' after Sabinus's arrival.

92, 13. *nolebant*: for the pl., see end of note on *exirent*, 52, 10.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	657, 4, N. 1 (554, i, 5)	864	224, a (155, a)	588	290, 2
2	441 (397, 3)	564	346, a, 3 (216, a, 3)	371	201, 2
3	591, 1 (503, i)	836	535, a (320, a)	631, 2	283, 1

92, 18. *omnibus rebus*: 'in all respects.'<sup>1</sup>—*loco*: cf. *locis*, 54, 26.—*castris*: loc. abl. with instrumental force, hence used without *in*.<sup>2</sup>

92, 19. *millium*: sc. *passuum*.—*spatio*: abl. of the amount of difference,<sup>3</sup> 'at a distance.'—*consedisset, faceret*: subj. with concessive *cum*. Note the difference in tense, the former expressing completed, the latter incomplete, action at the time of the main verb *tenebat*.

92, 21. *hostibus*: dat. of interest or reference.<sup>4</sup>

92, 22. *non nihil*: 'somewhat,' the defining or cognate acc.<sup>5</sup>

92, 26. *eo*: Caesar.

92, 27. *legato*: dat. of the agent<sup>6</sup> with the impers. gerundive *dimicandum* [esse], 'that a lieutenant ought to fight.'

93, 3. CHAPTER 18. *auxili causa*: 'as a reënforcement,' see Introd. § 29.—*Huic* and *uti* . . . *transeat*: see on *civitati*, 52, 9.

93, 5. *pro perfuga*: 'as a deserter.'

93, 7. *prematur*: indir. quest., like *velit*, l. 5.

93, 8. *neque longius*, etc.: 'and that not later than the next night Sabinus will,' etc. (lit., 'and that it is not farther away but that on the next night Sabinus will,' etc.).

93, 9. *educat*: with *quin*, depending on a neg. expression of abstaining.<sup>7</sup> The clause is subject of *abesse*.

93, 12. *iri oportere*: 'that they ought to go.' An impersonal passive<sup>8</sup> of forms of *eo* is not uncommon; it must be translated as active.

93, 13. *superiorum dierum*: 'on the previous days,' see on *eorum* . . . *perspecta*, 73, 6.

93, 15. *erat provisum*: impers., 'provision had been made.'

93, 16. *quod fere*, etc.: 'the fact that,' etc.; the clause is appositive<sup>9</sup> with *res* (l. 13). Cf. our proverb, "the wish is father to the thought," and the remark in parenthesis, 173, 22 ff.

93, 17. *non prius . . . quam*: 'not . . . until.' *Ante* and *prius* regularly stand in the main clause when it is negative; otherwise they are

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	480 (424)	650	418 (253)	397	226
2	476, 3 (425, 1, 1)	628	429, 1 (258, f, 1)	389	218, 7
3	479, 3 (423, N. 2)	655	425, b (257, b)	403, N. 1	223
4	425, 4, N. (384, 4, N. 2)	538	377 (235, a)	350, 1	188, 1, N.
5	409, 1 (371, ii)	507	390, c (238, b)	333, 1	176, 3, a
6	431 (388)	544	374, a (232)	355	189, 1
7	595, 1 (504)	913	559 (319, d')	555	298
8	518, 1 (465, 1)	686	208, d (146, d')	208, 2	138, iv
9	588, 3 (540, iv, N.)	848	572, N. (333, N.)	525, 2	299, 1, a

usually, but not always, united with *quam* at the head of the subordinate clause.

93, 18. *sit concessum*: implied indir. disc.,<sup>1</sup> representing fut. perf.<sup>2</sup> of the direct thought, which was, *Non prius vos dimittemus quam a vobis erit concessum*, etc.

93, 19. *arma uti*, etc.: see on *vix qua*, 54, 20. — *uti capiant*: complementary or subst. clause of purpose, subject of *sit concessum*.

93, 20. *ut explorata victoria*: 'as if victory were certain,' abl. abs. expressing condition; cf. *hac parte neglecta*, 87, 21.

93, 21. *quibus . . . compleant*: rel. clause of purpose.

93, 24. CHAPTER 19. *passus mille*: acc. of extent of space with *acclivis*.

93, 25. *quam minimum spati*: 'the least possible time,' subject of *daretur*.

93, 28. *cupientibus*: sc. *iis* (dat.); translate, 'for which they are eager.'

94, 8. *ad bella suscipienda*, etc.: cf. *omnes . . . excitari*, 87, 23 f.

94, 9. *animus, mens*: '*spirit, purpose*.'

94, 13. CHAPTER 20. *Aquitaniam*: see 88, 4 f., and second sentence of the note on *Galliam*, 88, 6. — *ante*: referring inexactly to 51, 2 and 52, 2 ff.

94, 15. *tertia pars*: it will be seen by consulting the map (see frontispiece) that this is an exaggerated estimate; but see on *spectant in*, 52, 1. — *cum intellegeret*: in translating begin a new sentence here, making *cum . . . pervenisset* (l. 12 f.) an independent statement, 'Crassus arrived,' etc.

94, 16. *sibi*: see on *legato*, 92, 27. — *annis*: abl. of the amount of difference; cf. *paulo*, 91, 9. These defeats occurred in 78 B.C., when the Aquitanians were in alliance with Sertorius, and Manlius was governor of the Roman province (*Provincia*).

94, 19. *non*: immediately precedes the word it limits. A negation which amounts to a strong affirmation of its opposite is called litotes, as here 'no ordinary' = 'extraordinary'; cf. *minime . . . saepe*, 51, 7 f.

94, 20. Translate the abl. abs. of this sentence as independent statements, 'he made provision for a supply of grain,' etc.

94, 21. *comparato*: observe the agreement; cf. *captus est*, 69, 18. —

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	649, i (528, 1)	791	592, 2 (341, c)	662	323
2	Cf. 605 (520, i, 1)	878	551, c (327, a)	574	291, 1

*viris . . . evocatis*: these were veterans who had served their full time in the Roman army. See *Intro.* § 27.

94, 22. *Tolosa*, etc.: these towns are all important cities to-day. For their modern names, see *Vocab.*

94, 23. *provinciae*: in apposition<sup>1</sup> with *Galliae*. — *finitimae*: limits *civitates*, and governs *regionibus*<sup>2</sup> (= *Aquitaniae*):

95, 4. CHAPTER 21. *superioribus*: of 78 B.C., see on *annis*, 94, 16. — *victoriis*: loc. (or instrumental) abl. with *freti*.<sup>3</sup>

95, 6. *quid . . . possent*: indir. quest., subject of *perspici*. — *imperatore*: 'commander-in-chief,' while *dux* is a general word for 'officer.' — *sine reliquis legionibus*: Crassus had only twelve cohorts of legionary soldiers, with a considerable body of cavalry and auxiliaries; see 88, 4 f. and 94, 20 f.

95, 7. *adulescentulo duce*: abl. abs., 'under the leadership of a mere boy': see on *consulibus*, 52, 8. Crassus is often called *adulescens* (see 85, 4): here the diminutive is used for rhetorical effect.

95, 14. *Quibus . . . resistentibus*: translate as a causal clause, 'since,' etc.

95, 16. *alias . . . alias*: correlative adverbs.

95, 17. *cuius rei*: 'a work in which'; the gen. is obj. with *peritis-simi*.<sup>4</sup>

95, 19. *locis*: see on *locis*, 54, 26. — *ubi*: in translating, begin a new sentence here. — *diligentia*: causal abl., possibly referring to counter-mines dug by the Romans.

95, 22. *faciunt*: sc. *id* as obj.; translate 'they comply.'

95, 24. CHAPTER 22. *ex*: depends on *eruptionem facere*, 96, 2.

95, 26. *quorum . . . condicio*: 'whose terms of union are as follows' (*haec*).

95, 27. *ut . . . fruuntur*: complementary or substantive clause, in apposition with *haec*.<sup>5</sup> The *soldurii* are said to have lived with their chief, to have eaten at the same table, and to have dressed like him. — *commodis*: instrumental abl., serving as obj. of *fruuntur*.<sup>6</sup>

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	393 (363)	463	282 (184)	321	169, 1
2	434 (391)	536	384 (234)	359	192, 1
3	476, 1 (425, ii, 1, N.)	629	431, a (254, δ, 2)	401, N. 6	218, 3
4	451, 1 (399, i, 2)	573	349, a (218)	374	204, 1
5	564, iii (499, 3)	892	561, a (331, head-note)	557, R.	297, 3
6	477, 1 (421, i)	646	410, N. (249, N.)	407, N. 1	218, 1

95, 28. *dediderint, accidat*: subj. of attraction.<sup>1</sup> *Accidit* generally implies misfortune, cf. 63, 19.

95, 29. *ferant, consciant*: same constr. as *fruantur*.

95, 30. *memoria*: see on 59, 9.

96, 1. *quisquam*: chiefly used when there is a negative expressed or implied.<sup>2</sup>

96, 2. *recusaret*: see on *possent*, 54, 19. — *cum his*: repeating *cum* . . . *devotis*, 95, 25.

96, 3. *conatus, sublato*: translate as finite verbs.

96, 5. *repulsus*: expresses concession, as is seen from *tamen* with *impetravit*. — *uti* . . . *impetravit*: 'obtained the privilege of using,' etc.; see on *impetrat ut*, etc., 57, 8. — *eadem*: 'the same as the rest' (95, 21 f.).

96, 10. CHAPTER 23. *paucis diebus quibus*: 'within a few days after' (lit., 'within which'); both the antecedent and the relative are abl. of time within which.

96, 11. *ventum erat*: cf. *iri*, 93, 12.

96, 14. *citerioris*: i.e. with reference to Rome. — *Hispaniae*: pred. gen. of possession. — *finitimae*: nom., as in 94, 23. The people of northern Spain were kindred of the Aquitanians; see on *lingua*, 51, 3.

96, 16. *auctoritate*: 'prestige,' arising from their victories of 78 B.C. (94, 16 ff.) and from the presence of Spanish officers and soldiers who had fought under Sertorius against Rome. The abl. denotes manner, *multitudine* is instrumental.

96, 17. *Duces*: pred. nom.<sup>3</sup>

96, 18. *Sertorio*: invited to Spain in 80 B.C. by the rebellious Lusitanians, he maintained with varying fortunes for eight years a fierce struggle against the authority of the Roman senate.

96, 19. *consuetudine*: cf. 74, 7.

96, 20. *loca* . . . *munire*: this important feature of defensive tactics was not adopted by the rest of the Gauls until four years later under Vercingetorix.

96, 21. *Quod*: 'but'; see on *quod si*, 60, 15.

96, 23. *diduci*: 'could be separated,' see on *transitur*, 54, 26. — *et* . . . *et*: 'not only . . . and . . . but also'; cf. 89, 23 f.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	652, 1 (529, ii, N. 1)	793	593 (342)	663, 1	324, 1
2	513 (457)	1071	312 (202, c)	317, 1	252, 4
3	410, 1 (373, 2)	460	393, a (239, a, N. 2)	206	168, 2, 6

96, 26. *non cunctandum . . . quin . . . decertaret*: 'that there ought to be no delay about fighting,' etc.; *cunctandum* [esse] is impers. pass.; for *decertaret*, see on *educat*, 93, 9.

96, 27. *idem sentire*: 'had the same feeling'; see on *non nihil*, 92, 22.

96, 28. *pugnae*: dat. of the optional complement or interest.<sup>1</sup>

96, 29. CHAPTER 24. *duplici*: the double line was adopted when a force was small. The usual formation was in three lines. See *Intro.* § 46.

96, 30. *in mediam*: the newly levied auxiliaries (94, 20 f.) could not be trusted to stand their ground if placed in their usual position on the wings.

97, 4. *obsessis . . . intercluso*: translate the abls. abs. as infins. parallel with *potiri*.—*victoria*: see on *imperio*, 52, 11.

97, 6. *coepissent*: implied indir. disc., representing *coeperint* (fut. perf.) of the original thought, which was, 'If they begin to retreat, we will attack,' etc.; see on *habuerit*, 53, 10.—*impeditos*: sc. *eos*, obj. of *adoriri*, which is complementary infin.<sup>2</sup>

97, 7. *animo*: abl. of specification with *infirmiores*.

97, 8. *castris*: see on 92, 18.

97, 9. *sua*: refers to *hostes*, the subject.

97, 10. *opinione timoris*: 'the impression they gave of fear.'

97, 11. *effecissent, audirentur*: observe the difference in tense.

97, 12. *expectari*: impers. pass., subject of *oportere*; its own subject is the clause with *quin*, 'that an advance on the camp ought not to be delayed any longer.' This is the only instance mentioned by Caesar of an attack by the Romans on a fortified Gallic camp.

97, 17. CHAPTER 25. *quibus*: essential complement or indir. obj. of *confidebat*, which commonly takes the dat. of persons, the abl. of things.

97, 18. *lapidibus . . . comportandis*: gerundives expressing means.<sup>3</sup>—*ad aggerem*: a mound, such as the Romans used in besieging towns (see *Intro.* § 47), was built up against the enemy's rampart (which must have been of unusual height) to enable the attacking force to scale the defenses.

97, 19. *speciem*, etc.: 'were giving the semblance and the impression of being combatants.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	425, 2 (384, ii, 1, 2))	537	376 (235, n.)	350, 2	188, 1
2	607 (533)	954	456 (271)	423	328, 1
3	630 (544, 1; 542, iv)	1002	507 (301)	431	339, 1; 338, 4, a

97, 20. *ac non*: 'not *neque*, as *non timide* is a case of litotes (see on *non*, 94, 19), 'with no sign of fear.' This brave conduct of the enemy was not what the Romans had been led to expect; see l. 10 f.

97, 21. *pugnaretur*: 'the battle was being fought.'—*loco superiore*: the high rampart.

97, 22. *circumitis*, etc.: translate as active, 'having ridden round the camp.'

97, 23. *ab*: see on *a*, 51, 16.

97, 28. CHAPTER 26. *praesidio*: dat. of purpose,<sup>1</sup> accompanied by a dat. of interest (*castris*), 'left as a protection for the camp.'

98, 1. *eas*: 'that part of.'

98, 2. *prius . . . quam*: separated as in 93, 17 f.

98, 3. *videri*: sc. *possent* from the following *posset*.—*quid rei*: cf. *quid consili*, 96, 30 f.

98, 4. *posset*: the subj. is used with *prius quam* of an action which is prevented by the main act.<sup>2</sup>

98, 5. *quod*: 'a thing which,' referring to *redintegratis viribus*.

98, 7. *per*: 'over.'

98, 9. *campis*: instrumental, denoting the route taken.<sup>3</sup>

98, 10. *quae*: subject of *convenisse*, which itself is subject of the impers. *constabat*.

98, 16. CHAPTER 27. *paucae*, etc.: 'only a few nations, the most remote.'

98, 17. *tempore*: loc. (or instrumental) abl.;<sup>4</sup> see on *quibus*, 97, 17.

98, 18. CHAPTER 28. *prope exacta*: Caesar had used up most of the summer in the campaign against the Veneti; see 88, 26 f.

98, 20. *essent*: subj. of characteristic.

98, 21. *arbitratus*: the perf. part. of deponent verbs is sometimes used like a present.

98, 23. *alia . . . ac*: 'different from'; see on *aliter . . . ac*, 74, 5.

99, 5. *compluribus*: of the enemy.—*longius*: 'too far'; see on *cupidius*, 61, 8.

99, 6. *locis*: cf. *campis*, 98, 9.

99, 7. CHAPTER 29. *caedere instituit*: 'made a beginning of cutting.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	433 (390, i)	548	382, 1 (233, a)	356	191, 2, δ
2	605, ii (520, ii)	880	551, δ (327)	577, 1	292, 1, δ
3	476 (420, 1, 31)	644	429, α (258, g)	401	218, 9
4	476, 3 (425, ii, 1, N.)	629	431 & N. (254, δ)	401, N. 6	219, 1

99, 8. *inermibus . . . militibus*: abl. abs., 'while the soldiers,' etc.

99, 9. *ab*: cf. 97, 23.—*materiam . . . conversam . . . conlocabat*: 'he was placing the timber so that the branches were turned toward the enemy.'

99, 10. *pro vallo*: cf. 69, 13 f.

99, 12. *confecto*: 'had been cleared.' With *cum* begin a new sentence.

99, 13. *extrema*: 'the rear of'; cf. *summas*, 81, 5.—*tenerentur*: note the tense of incomplete action, 'were being reached.'

99, 14. *ipsi*: the enemy.

99, 16. *sub pellibus*: *i.e.* in the tents, which were of leather.

99, 19. *Aulercis*, etc.: see 92, 12 ff.

## BOOK FOURTH

**Campaign of 55 B.C.**—In the winter of 56-55 B.C., while Caesar was attending to the civil duties of his governorship in Cisalpine Gaul, the report reached him that two German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, had crossed the Rhine and settled down in the Menapian territory. Their presence was a grave menace to Roman authority in Gaul. Caesar knew that the inconstant Gallic peoples, all of whom, except the Morini and the Menapii (99, 17 ff.) and a few mountain tribes in Aquitania (98, 16 f.) and in Helvetia (84, 19 ff.), had now submitted to the rule of Rome, would most likely invite these invading Germans to assist them in overthrowing their Roman master. Accordingly he returned to his army earlier than usual, and marched straightway against the Germans, who had by this time moved as far south as the country of the Eburones and the Condrusi. Having been treacherously attacked during a truce, with no less treachery he fell upon the enemy in camp the next day and massacred almost their entire force, men, women, and children. Their cavalry alone escaped across the Rhine and found refuge among the Sugambri, who refused Caesar's demand for their surrender.

Although Gaul was thus freed from present danger, Caesar believed that it would be a safeguard against future invasions if he should show the Germans that they were not secure even on their own soil. He was desirous, too, of punishing the Sugambri for harboring his enemies. Furthermore, the ambition of being the first Roman to lead an army

across the Rhine doubtless was not without its influence. In order to impress the barbarians as thoroughly as possible with the ability and resourcefulness of the Romans, he was not content to cross by boats in the barbarian way, but from some point on the Treveran bank, not far from the mouth of the Moselle (Mosella), he built a bridge, so strong and substantial that, as Plutarch says, one who saw it could hardly believe that it had been made in ten days. The Germans, with the exception of the Ubii, who had put themselves under his protection, decamped at his approach; and as he was unwilling to incur the risk of following them into their boundless forests, he devastated their territories and returned to Gaul.

The year 55 B.C. is of great interest to English-speaking peoples, because it marks the first visit of Romans to Britain. This expedition was only a reconnaissance preliminary to a more extensive enterprise the next year.

This season's campaigning was closed by the subjugation of the Morini. The Menapian territory was ravaged, but the people took refuge again, as in the previous year, in their dense forests.

PAGE 100, LINE 2. CHAPTER 1. Cn. . . *consulibus*: = 55 B.C.; see on *M.*, 52, 7, and *consulibus*, 52, 8. Before 46 B.C., when Caesar established the Julian system, which is still in use, there was much confusion in the Roman calendar (see on 55, 5). The year 55 B.C. began more than a month before the winter solstice, so that Caesar here speaks of the winter of 56-55 as belonging altogether to the year 55.

100, 4. *transierunt*: probably not far from where the Waal (Vacalus) branches off from the Rhine.

100, 5. *quo*: adv. = *in quod*.

100, 6. *annos*: expresses the duration of *exagitati*. — *premebantur*, etc.: note the tense expressing continuance, and the mood showing that Caesar states the reason on his own authority.<sup>1</sup>

100, 9. *pagos*: 'divisions,' probably used here of the people, not of the country. — *ex quibus* . . . *singula millia*: 'from each of which . . . a thousand.'<sup>2</sup>

100, 10. *causa*: observe that in this meaning it regularly follows its genitive; cf. *causa transeundi*, l. 5, in a different meaning.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	588, i (516, i)	851	540 (321)	539	286, 1
2	164, 1 (174, 2, 1)	1080	137, a (95, a)	97, R. 2	81, 4, a

100, 12. **anno post**: 'the year after.'<sup>1</sup>

100, 13. **ratio atque usus**: 'theory and practice.'

100, 14. **privati**, etc.: private ownership of land belongs to a more advanced state of civilization than had been reached by these peoples.  
— **agri**: partit. gen. with *nihil*.

100, 15. **anno**: abl. of comparison with *longius*.

100, 16. **frumento**: abl. of means. — **maximam partem**: adverbial acc.<sup>2</sup>

100, 18. **quae res**: 'and this way of living'; see on *quorum*, 72, 1, and *res*, 53, 22. — **genere**: abl. of cause.

100, 19. **a pueris**: 'from childhood.' — **officio**: abl. of means, the regular construction with *adsuefacio* in Caesar's time; a little later the dat. began to be used, thus corresponding to the English idiom.

100, 21. **magnitudine**: pred. use of abl. of quality.<sup>3</sup>

101, 1. **homines**: pred. acc.; sc. *eos* as dir. obj.

101, 2. **ut . . . haberent . . . et lavarentur**: complementary or subst. clauses of result,<sup>4</sup> in apposition with *eam consuetudinem*. Note the secondary sequence depending on a perf. definite.<sup>5</sup> Translate, 'and they have acquired the custom, although their country is very cold (*i.e.* from a Roman's point of view; abl. abs. expressing concession), of having no clothing . . . and of bathing,' etc. — **vestitus**: partit. gen. with *quicquam*.

101, 4. **lavarentur**: reflexive use of the passive.<sup>6</sup>

101, 5. CHAPTER 2. **eo, ut . . . habeant**: 'for the sake of their having purchasers of what they have taken in war'; *eo*, 'on that account,' is explained by the appositive purpose clause; cf. 60, 8 f., where a causal clause explains *eo*; *ceperint* and *vendant* are in characteristic clauses.<sup>7</sup>

101, 6. **quam quo**: introduces an untenable reason (equivalent to *non quo*), 'than because.'<sup>8</sup>

101, 7. **ad se**: omit in translation.

101, 8. **pretio**: abl. of price.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	479, 3 (423, N. 2)	655	414 (250)	403, N. 4	223
2	416, 2 (378, 2)	508	397, a (240, b)	334, R. 2	185, 1
3	473, 2, N. 2 (419, ii)	643	415, N. (251, N.)	400	224, 1
4	571, 4 (501, iii)	902	570 (319, 3)	557	297, 3
5	546 (495, i)	785	485, a (287, a)	511, R. 3	268, 1
6	517 (465)	687	156, a (111, a)	218	256, 1
7	591, 1 (503, i)	836	535 (320)	631, 2	283, 1
8	588, ii, 2 (516, ii, 2)	852	540, N. 3 (321, R.)	541, N. 2	286, 1, b

101, 9. *importatis*: limits *iumentis*.

101, 11. *summi ut sint laboris*: subst. clause of result, equiv. to a pred. acc., 'capable of the hardest work'; *laboris* is pred. gen. of quality.  
— *proeliis*: abl. of time when.

101, 12. *pedibus*: abl. of manner.

101, 16. *quamvis pauci*: 'however few.'

101, 17. *Vinum*: cf. what is said of the Nervii, 72, 4 ff.

101, 20. CHAPTER 3. *Publice*: 'for a state.' — *laudem*: 'title to praise.'

101, 21. *vacare agros*: 'for lands to be unoccupied,' subject of *esse*.<sup>1</sup>

101, 22. *numerus . . . posse*: indir. disc., subject of *significari*.

101, 23. *a*: 'from.'

101, 24. *agri*: nom.

101, 28. *mercatores*: on the influence of traders in Gaul, see 51, 8 f.

101, 29. *moribus*: see on *officio*, 100, 19. — *cum*: concessive, as *tamen* shows.

101, 30. *experti*: the appositive part. expressing concession,<sup>2</sup> 'in spite of having made the attempt.'

102, 1. *gravitatem*: 'importance.'

102, 2. *vectigales, humilliores*: see on *homines*, 101, 1.

102, 4. CHAPTER 4. *causa*: 'position.'

102, 8. *quas regiones*: 'districts which'; avoid making the rel. pron. an adj. in Eng., as 'which districts.'

102, 9. *ad*: 'on.'

102, 11. *multitudinis*: = 430,000, according to 108, 1.

102, 12. *trans, cis*: from the Gallic or Roman standpoint.

102, 13. *Illi . . . cum*: 'the Germans made all sorts of attempts, but since,' etc.

102, 14. *vi contendere*: 'to use force.'

102, 18. *itinere*: abl. abs. with *confecto*. — *equitatu*: abl. of means; the infantry could not have covered the distance so quickly.

102, 23. *fieret*: subj. because the action was prevented by the main action,<sup>3</sup> 'before that part . . . could be informed.'

102, 24. *partem*: cf. *annos*, 100, 6.

102, 25. *copiis*: 'stores.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	615, 2 (538, 2)	971	452, 1 (270, 1)	422	330
2	638, 2 (549, 2)	1017	496 (292)	667	337, 2, c
3	605, ii (520, ii)	880	551, δ (327)	577, 1	292, 1, δ

102, 26. CHAPTER 5. *infirmitem*: cf. 87, 23. Caesar feared that the Gauls would welcome the Germans and endeavor with their aid to drive out the Roman conqueror.

102, 29. *nihil . . . committendum*: 'that no confidence at all ought to be placed in them.' *Nihil* is adv. acc., and the gerundive (sc. *esse*) is impersonal.

102, 30. *consuetudinis*: pred. gen. of possession.<sup>1</sup>—*uti . . . cogant, quaerant, circumsistat, cogat*: in apposition with *hoc*, 'it is a Gallic custom to force,' etc.

103, 3. *et . . . vulgus circumsistat*: 'and for a crowd to flock around.'

103, 6. *quorum eos . . . paenitere*, etc.: 'of which they must repent.'<sup>2</sup> *Eos* is obj. of *paenitere* (cf. *Genesis* 6, 6, 'And it repented the Lord that he had made man on the earth'), which is itself subject of *est*.

103, 7. *rumoribus*: essential complement or indir. obj. of *serviant*, 'are slaves to.'

103, 8. *plerique*: the *viatores*.—*eorum*: 'of the questioners.'—*facta respondeant*: 'mold their answers.'

103, 9. CHAPTER 6. *graviori*: 'too serious.'—*bello*: essential complement or indir. obj. of an intr. compound verb.<sup>3</sup>

103, 10. *consueat*: see on *consueant*, 81, 7.—*exercitum*: quartered in several states west of the Seine; see 99, 19 f.

103, 11. *suspensus erat*: in an explanatory rel. clause, not considered as a part of the quotation which depends on *cognovit*; hence the indic.<sup>4</sup>

103, 12. *facta*: sc. *esse*.—*missas, invitatos*: sc. *esse*; these indir. disc. clauses are in apposition with *ea*.

103, 13. *ab Rheno*: i.e. to come farther into Gaul.

103, 14. *omnia . . . parata*: depends on the idea of promising contained in *invitados*, 'with the promise that everything which they should demand would be made ready by them.' The actual promise was, *omnia quae postulaveritis* (fut. perf.) *a nobis erunt parata*.

103, 23. CHAPTER 7. *locis*: see on *itineribus*, 54, 18.

103, 24. *dierum*: gen. of quality.—*iter*: acc., cf. *viam*, 102, 17.

103, 25. *neque . . . neque*: 'not . . . and not either,' 'That the Ger-

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	447 (402)	556	343, b (214, c)	366, R. 2	198, 3
2	457 (409, iii)	585	354, b (221, b)	377	209
3	429 (386)	532	370 (228)	347, R. 2	187, iii, 1
4	643, 3 (529, N. 1, 2))	1028	583 (336, b)	628, R. 2	314, 3

mans are not making war first on Rome, and yet they do not refuse either,' etc.

103, 27. *laccessantur*: 'if they are attacked,' for fut. indic. of dir. disc. Although the verb which introduces the quotation is past, Caesar uses primary sequence<sup>1</sup> throughout this speech, thus more nearly reproducing the original form. — *quin* . . . *contendant*: obj. of the neg. verb of refusing. See on *educat*, 93, 9.

103, 28. *consuetudo sit* . . . *tradita*: 'it is the custom . . . handed down.' — *quicumque*: the antecedent (*iis*, indir. obj. of *resistere*) may be omitted in English as well as in Latin.

103, 29. *Haec tamen dicere*: 'they have this to say however.' The subject of an infin. may be omitted if there is no chance for ambiguity. It is here first expressed with *concedere*, 104, 3.

104, 1. *iis*: the Romans.

104, 2. *attribuant*: 'let the Romans assign,' for imper., *tribuunt*, of dir. disc.<sup>2</sup> — *eos*: sc. *agros*. — *possederint*: from *possido*.

104, 4. *reliquum* . . . *neminem*: 'but there is not any one else on earth.'

104, 5. *possint*: in a characteristic clause,<sup>3</sup> hence it was subj. in the dir. disc.

104, 6. CHAPTER 8. *quae*: obj. of *respondere*, which is implied as subject of *visum est*.

104, 8. *remanerent*: for fut. indic. of dir. disc. The secondary sequence depends on *fuisset*, but the remaining subjs. of this passage preserve their original tense, in violation of sequence; see on *liceat*, 55, 20. Do not imitate this shift of sequence in translation.

104, 10. *occupare*: see on *obtinere*, 51, 15. With its implied subject *eos* (antecedent of *qui*) it is subject of *esse*.

104, 13. *et* . . . *querantur et* . . . *petant*: 'complaining . . . and asking'; the pres. part. is not so freely used in Latin as in English.

104, 14. *hoc* . . . *imperaturum*: 'that he would enjoin this upon the Ubii.'

104, 17. CHAPTER 9. *post diem tertium*: 'in two days.' The Romans reckoned the day of departure as the first day; we leave it out of account.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	644, 1 (525, 1)	1032	585, 6 & N. (336, B, a & N. 1)	654, N.	318
2	642 (523, iii)	1023	588 (339)	652	316
3	591, 1 (503, i)	838	535, a (320, a)	631, 2	283, 2

104, 18. **propius**: used as a prep.<sup>1</sup>

104, 19. **ab**: 'from.'

104, 21. **trans**: to the west side.

104, 24. CHAPTER 10. **Vosego**: Caesar comprehends under this name not only the Vosges Mountains, but also the plateau of Langres, in which the Meuse rises, and the Monts Faucilles, which unite the plateau with the Vosges.

104, 25. **parte . . . recepta**: 'taking up a branch from the Rhine.' The Waal (Vacalus) is to-day much the most important mouth of the Rhine.

104, 27. **inde**: from the junction of the Meuse and the Waal, which may have been farther east than at present. — **millibus**: as in 61, 17.

104, 28. **ex**: 'in'; cf. *ab . . . finibus oriuntur*, 51, 19, and see on *a*, 51, 16.

104, 29. **spatio**: 'course,' abl. of manner. — **Nantuatum**, etc.: the list of peoples whose territories are here said to have touched the Rhine is neither accurate nor complete (see on *spectant in*, 52, 1). The Nantuates were south of Lake Geneva (*Lacus Lemannus*); see 81, 3 ff. The word *per* is applicable to the Triboci only.

105, 2. **multis . . . effectis**: 'making many large islands.' The abl. abs. is not to be translated literally.

105, 4. **ex . . . qui**: 'some of whom,' lit., 'from whom there are [some] who' (not 'of the sort who,' which would require a subj. of characteristic).

105, 5. **capitibus**: 'mouths,' abl. of means.

105, 6. CHAPTER 11. **passuum XII millibus**: Caesar had continued to draw nearer to the Germans; cf. 103, 24 and 104, 18. f. For the abl., see on *passibus*, 65, 27.

105, 7. **erat constitutum**: refers to the promise of the envoys to return in two days; see 104, 17.

105, 11. **antecessissent**: implied indir. disc.; see on *habuerit*, 53, 10. — **praemitteret**: without obj., 'send ahead to the cavalry.' The Roman army when on the march was usually led by cavalry and light-armed troops (Introd. § 45), whose duty in case of meeting the enemy was to hold him at bay until the infantry could be made ready for fighting.

105, 12. **sibique ut**: the pronoun is emphatic, in contrast with *eos equites*; cf. *vix qua*, 54, 20.

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 420, 5 (437, 1)	659	432, a (261, a)	416, 22	141, 3

105, 14. *iure iurando*: 'under oath,' manner.—*ea condicione* . . . *usuros*: 'would avail themselves of those terms'; see 104, 12 f.

105, 16. *daret*: *ut* might have been expressed again, as with *faceret*, l. 13.

105, 17. *eodem*, etc.: 'tended to the same end'; *eodem* and *illo* are advs., explained by the appositive purpose clause.

105, 18. *abessent*: in a subordinate clause of indir. disc.

105, 21. *convenirent*: for *convenire* of dir. disc.; cf. *attribuant*, 104, 2.

105, 23. *qui nuntiarent*: 'men to announce'; see on *qui*, 51, 2.—*ne* . . . *laccesserent*: 'that they were not to attack,' indir. disc. for  *nolite laccessere*.<sup>1</sup>

105, 24. *sustinerent*: cf. *convenirent*, l. 21. The Romans were to act merely on the defensive.

105, 25. *accessisset*: for perf. subj. of dir. disc., expressing an accomplished expectation, 'until he should [have] come.' The imperf. (for the pres. subj.<sup>2</sup> of dir. disc.) would be more usual, not implying accomplishment.

105, 26. CHAPTER 12. *ubi primum*: 'as soon as,' takes the same constr. as *ubi*.<sup>3</sup>

105, 27. *millium*: gen. of definition, or appositional gen.<sup>4</sup>

105, 28. *equites*: acc., *amplius* having no influence on the constr.;<sup>5</sup> but cf. *amplius* . . . *millibus*, 61, 17.

105, 29. *nihil timentibus nostris*: 'and while our men were in no fear of anything.'

106, 1. *indutiis*: dat. of purpose.<sup>6</sup>

106, 2. *rursus*, etc.: the Romans rallied after a few moments of fright.

106, 3. *suffossis*, etc.: 'and stabbing our horses underneath dismounted many of our men.' Begin a new sentence with *reliquos*.

106, 5. *non prius* . . . *quam*: see on 93, 17.

106, 7. *venissent*: attracted into the subj. (from the perf. indic.<sup>7</sup>) because it is an essential part of the result clause.<sup>8</sup>

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	561, 1; 642, 4 (489, 1; 523, iii, N.)	728; 1023	450, 1; 588, N. 2 (269, a, 2; 339, N. 2)	271, 2; 652	276, c; 316, a
2	603, ii, 2 (519, ii, 2)	922	553 (328)	572	293, iii, 2
3	602 (518)	881	543 (324)	561	287, 1
4	440, 4 (396, vi)	569	343, d (214, f)	361, 1	202
5	471, 4 (417, 1, N. 2)	618	407, c (247, c)	296, R. 4	217, 3
6	425, 3 (384, ii, 1, 3)	548	382, a (233, b)	356, N. 2	191, 1
7	605, ii, 1 (520, N. 1)	879	551, a (327)	576	291, 2
8	652, 1 (529, ii, N. 1, 1)	793	593 (342)	663, 1	324, 1

106, 9. **Piso**: probably this man had been given Roman citizenship, and as was regularly done he took the name of the Roman patron through whose agency he had been honored.

106, 10. **genere**: abl. of source.<sup>1</sup>

106, 11. **amicus**: see on *amicus*, 53, 9.—**Hic, illum**: 'he, him,' never 'this one, that one.'

106, 13. **ipse . . . quoad**: 'but upon his horse being wounded he was himself dismounted, yet as long as,' etc. Cf. this use<sup>2</sup> of *quoad* with that in 105, 24.

106, 16. **incitato equo**: 'he put spurs to his horse.'

106, 20. CHAPTER 13. **ab iis qui**: 'from men who,' with a clause of characteristic. The treachery of the Germans gave Caesar a welcome excuse for attacking them at once; for the superiority, which had just been proved, of the German over the Gallic cavalry, as well as the untrustworthiness of the Gauls, made clear the folly of waiting until the German cavalry should be reinforced.

106, 21. **expectare**: subject of *esse*.<sup>3</sup>—**dum . . . augerentur**: cf. *quoad* . . . *accessisset*, 105, 24 f.

106, 23. **dementiae**: pred. gen. of possession,<sup>4</sup> 'was an act of the utmost folly.'

106, 24. **auctoritatis**: partit. gen. with *quantum*, 'how great an influence.' The partit. gen. is usually separated from the word upon which it depends.

106, 25. **quibus**: the enemy.

106, 27. **quaestore**: probably here, as on some other occasions, the quartermaster was given an equal military authority with the lieutenants, having command of a legion. See Introd. § 33.—**ne . . . praetermitteret**: 'not to let any<sup>5</sup> day for a battle go by,' in apposition with *consilio*.

106, 28. **pugnae**: gen. of poss.

106, 29. **quod**: 'in that'; the clause is in apposition with *res*.<sup>6</sup>—**eadem**: 'the same as before.'—**perfidia**: possibly the German chiefs and elders came in good faith to excuse the attack of their cavalry, but Caesar may well have believed that they were planning further treachery.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	469, 2 (415, ii)	609	403, a (244, a)	395	215
2	603, i (519, i)	918	555 (328, 2)	569	293, ii
3	615 (538)	972	452 (270)	422	327, i
4	447 (402)	557	343, b (214, c)	366	198, 3
5	186 (190)	1064	149, b (105, d)	315	252, i
6	588, 3 (540, iv, N.)	848	572, N. (333, N.)	525, i	299, i, a

107, 1. *natu*: see on 80, 20. — *simul . . . simul*: 'partly . . . partly.'

107, 2. *sui*: pl.<sup>1</sup>; cf. 83, 23, where it is sing. — *quod . . . commissis-*  
*sent*: the subj. is used on the principle of implied indir. disc., to show  
 that Caesar is quoting the reason put forward by the Germans.<sup>2</sup> — *contra*  
*atque*: 'contrary to what.' — *esset dictum, petissent, possent*: subjs. of  
 attraction.

107, 4. *ut . . . impetrarent*: 'that if they had any influence, they  
 might carry their point in the matter of a truce by deception.'

107, 5. *illos*: same persons as *quos*. Caesar's treachery in arrest-  
 ing the German envoys was every whit as black as that of the Veneti  
 (85, 18 ff.), whom he punished with the utmost severity, that, as he says  
 (92, 3 f.), the rights of ambassadors might be respected.

107, 7. *subsequi*: as the cavalry had shown its unreliability, it was  
 ordered to bring up the rear; it usually led the march (see on *prae-*  
*mitteret*, 105, 11).

107, 8. CHAPTER 14. *Acie triplici*: i.e. in three parallel columns,  
 so that a line of battle might be formed as soon as the enemy appeared  
 (see Introd. § 45).

107, 9. *prius . . . quam*: see on 93, 17.

107, 10. *quid ageretur*: 'what was going on,' depending on *sentire*.

107, 11. *possent*: see on *fieret*, 102, 23.

107, 12. *et . . . et*: 'both . . . and.' — *suorum*: the envoys who had  
 gone to Caesar, l. 1.

107, 14. *ne . . . an . . . an*: 'whether . . . or . . . or.'<sup>8</sup>

107, 15. *praestaret*: impers., having the infins. as subjects. — *Quo-*  
*rum*: see on 72, 1.

107, 18. *qui*: see on 51, 2.

107, 20. *puerorum*: gen. of definition or appositional gen.<sup>4</sup> Like the  
 Helvetii they had migrated bag and baggage, and were seeking a new  
 home in Gaul.

107, 22. *ad quos*, etc.: however justifiable Caesar's attack on the  
 enemy may have been in the light of their attack upon him the day  
 before, and necessary though it was from a military and political stand-  
 point for the Germans to be kept out of Gaul, there was surely no excuse

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	626, 3 (542, 1, N. 1)	1000	504, c (298, a)	428, R. 1	339, 5
2	588, ii (516, ii)	851	540 & N. 1 (321 & N. 1)	541	286, 1
3	380 (353, 1)	811, 813	335 (211)	458, 460	300, 4
4	440, 4 (396, vi)	568	343, d (214, f)	361, 1	302

for his detention of the envoys or for his cold-blooded slaughter of women and children. When a public recognition of his victory was being voted in the senate at Rome, Cato led the opposition, declaring that Caesar ought to be handed over to the barbarians in order that the wrath of heaven might fall upon him alone and not on the state. See Plutarch, *Life of Caesar*, 22.

107, 24. CHAPTER 15. *Germani*: *i.e.* those who engaged with the Romans.—*clamore audito cum . . . viderent*: 'hearing the outcry . . . and seeing,' etc.

107, 25. *abiectis, relictis*: translate by finite verbs, 'they threw away,' etc.

107, 27. *Rheni*: loosely used for the Waal (Vacalus) branch; see 104, 26 and note on *inde*, 104, 27.—*reliqua*: 'further.'

107, 30. *ex . . . timore*: translate, 'relieved from fear.'

108, 1. *cum*: causal, explaining  *tanti*.—*capitum*: partit. with *millium*, which is gen. of definition, as in 105, 27. The number seems incredible, but an exaggeration is not surprising if we remember how easily to-day extravagant reports are circulated in time of danger.

108, 8. CHAPTER 16. *Caesar, etc.*: on Caesar's invasion of Germany, see summary of Book IV, p. 321 f.

108, 9. *illa*: 'the following.'—*iustissima*: 'the most forcible.'

108, 11. *cum intellegent*: implied indir. disc., representing Caesar's thought as *suis . . . timebunt cum intellegent*.

108, 13. *Accessit . . . quod*: see on *accedebat quod*, 82, 18.

108, 14. *supra*: in 104, 20 ff.—*commemoravi*: Caesar, the *author*, sometimes speaks in the first person, but his achievements are always described in the third.

108, 18. *quos*: the Sugambri.

108, 19. *dederent*: coördinated with *postularent*; see on *adeat*, 88, 1.

108, 20. The answer of the Sugambri is no less insolent than that of the Usipetes and Tencteri, 103, 25 ff.—*Rhenum finire*: the Rhine remained the boundary between Gaul and the barbarians until the fifth century. In later times Germans have generally possessed territory west of the river, and to-day the dearest ambition of the French people is to recover Alsace-Lorraine, which was taken by Germany in the war of 1870-71.

108, 21. *Germanos . . . transire*: subject of an implied *esse, aequum* being in the predicate.

108, 22. *cur . . . postularet*: indir. quest., for an original *cur tui . . .*

*postulas*. — *sui imperi*: poss. gen. used predicatively.<sup>1</sup> — *esse*: the infin. with *postularet*, 'expect,' which in the sense of 'ask' takes the subj. (generally with *ut*, but see *dederent*, l. 19). Translate, 'why did he expect anything across the Rhine to be under his control or power?'

108, 27. *premerentur*: implied indir. disc., giving the reason of the Ubii, not of the writer; see on *quod* . . . *commisissent*, 107, 2.

108, 28. *exercitum, Rhenum*: see on *partes, flumen*, 58, 29. — *transportaret*: same constr. as *ferret*, l. 26.

109, 1. *sibi*: dat. of interest or reference; translate with *ad*, etc., 'for their help.'

109, 2. *opinionem*: 'reputation.' — *eius*: 'his.'

109, 3. *Ariovisto pulso*: see end of summary of Book I, p. 249. The abl. abs. expresses cause, 'because of the rout,' etc.

109, 10. CHAPTER 17. *dignitatis*: cf. *imperi*, 108, 22. Translate this sentence, 'but as to crossing in boats he not only thought it was not sufficiently safe but he also made up his mind that it was not in keeping with his own high position or that of Rome.' This preserves the prominence of *transire* (which is the subject of both *tutum esse* and *dignitatis esse*), and brings out the force of *neque* . . . *neque*, which frequently cannot be properly rendered by 'neither . . . nor.'

109, 12. *latitudinem*: probably Caesar crossed the Rhine at some point not more than ten miles north of the Moselle. Excavations of 1898–1899 furnished uncertain additional evidence in favor of Neuwied, eight miles north of the mouth of the Moselle. Napoleon and many others have preferred Bonn, which is only a few miles south of the mouth of the Sieg (Siga). The bridge cannot have been less than a quarter of a mile long.

109, 15. *Rationem*, etc.: 'the style of bridge he adopted was as follows.' — Too finished a structure should not be assumed, as only ten days were given to building it. It is probable that the different parts of the bridge were fastened together by ropes. — *Tigna bina*: 'pairs<sup>2</sup> of logs.'

110, 1. *ab imo*: 'at the lower ends'; see on *a*, 51, 16. — *dimensa*: 'proportioned'; pass., as in *opere dimenso*, 75, 3.

110, 2. *intervallo*: measure of difference, 'at a distance of two feet apart.' — *inter se*: 'together.' Two logs were laid on the ground two

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	447 (402)	556	343, <i>b</i> (214, <i>c</i> )	366	198, 3
2	164, 4 (174, 2, 4)	1073	137, <i>d</i> (95, <i>d</i> )	97, R. 2	81, 4, <i>a</i>

feet apart and fastened together by crosspieces. Probably about 100 such pairs were needed.

110, 3. *Haec*: translate, 'one of these pairs.' — *cum*: see on 91, 1. — *machinationibus*: a general word for machines, perhaps here derricks on rafts. — *defixerat*: merely of fixing the pointed ends of the pair in the bed of the river, while *adegerat* applies to driving the logs home with pile-drivers.

110, 4. *sublicae modo*: 'like a pile,' *i.e.* perpendicularly.

110, 5. *secundum naturam fluminis*: 'in the direction of the current.'

110, 6. *duo*: *sc. tigna*. Opposite the first pair of logs and slanting toward them another pair was set up at a distance of forty feet down-stream (*ab inferiore parte*).

110, 7. *quadragenum*: an old form of gen. pl., = *quadragenorum*; cf. *Mediomatricum*, 104, 30.

110, 9. *Haec utraque*: *sc. tigna bina*; subject of *distinebantur*. — *insuper . . . immissis*: abl. abs. expressing means. — *trabibus*: one of these beams (marked C in the cut) hewn, at least at the extremities, so as exactly to fit into the space between the two logs of each pair, and resting on the uppermost crosspieces which fastened the pair together, joined each upper pair with its corresponding pair down-stream.

110, 10. *quantum*: adverbial acc. — *utrimque*: applied, like *utraque*, to each pair of logs.

110, 11. *fibulis*: what the nature of these fasteners was is not known. The cut on p. 109 shows as simple and effective a device as any that has been proposed. — If a pair of logs tended to yield to the force of the current, the rope-bound fasteners would press more firmly both against the connecting beams and the logs themselves. — *ab extrema parte*: the (upper) end of the pair of logs. Translate this sentence, 'on both these pairs beams were let down from above, two feet in thickness, just filling the space between the logs of each pair; and by these beams and two fasteners on each pair of logs at the end these opposite pairs were held apart' (*i.e.* prevented from slanting more and more towards each other). — *quibus . . . revinctis*: 'and as these logs were kept apart and fastened back in opposite directions.'

110, 13. *ea*: 'such.' — *rerum*: 'the structure.' — *quo maior . . . hoc artius*: 'the greater the force with which the water rushed on, the more closely'; cf. *eo gravius . . . quo minus*, 60, 10 f.

110, 14. *incitavisset*: subj. of attraction. — *inligata*: *sc. tigna*. — *Haec*, etc.: 'these frames (consisting of *tigna* and *trabes*) were joined

together by timber laid on straight,' *i.e.* lengthwise of the bridge. Across these timbers poles (probably small trees stripped of branches) were laid, lying in the direction of the stream, and over the poles wicker-work was spread, woven of saplings and branches.

110, 16. *nihilo setius*: implying that the bridge was strong enough without these additions. — *et*: correlates with *et* in l. 19, 'piles were driven both on the down-stream side slantwise . . . and likewise others a little distance above the bridge.'

110, 17. *oblique*: slanting athwart the stream. — *pro ariete subiectae*: 'put underneath as a buttress'; cf. *pro vallo*, 69, 13 f. Probably each lower pair of logs was supported by two props, one on each side, leaning forward obliquely towards each other. They would in addition stiffen the bridge against longitudinal vibration.

110, 18. *exciperent*: 'should support,' purpose.

110, 19. *aliae*: it has commonly been assumed that three piles were planted before each upper pair of logs on the up-stream side, but there is no indication of the number in the text.

110, 22. *neu*, etc.: 'and that they (referring to *earum rerum*) might not damage the bridge.'

110, 23. CHAPTER 18. *quibus*: see on *paucis diebus quibus*, 96, 10. — *coepta erat*: the pass. is used with the pass. infin.

110, 25. *partem*: 'end.'

110, 26. *Sugambrorum*: see 108, 17 ff.

111, 1. *hortantibus iis*: 'at the instigation of those.'

111, 3. *in solitudinem*: observe that in Latin the idiom is limit of motion; in English, place where.

111, 4. CHAPTER 19. *moratus, incensis*: note the shift from the nom. to the abl. abs.; see on *exustis*, 54, 14. Translate the abl. parts. as active finite verbs.

111, 7. *premerentur*: implied indir. disc.; this would be formal indir. disc. if Caesar had written an infin., as *se daturum pollicitus*.

111, 9. *more suo*: cf. *moribus suis*, 53, 23.

111, 10. *uti . . . convenirent*: subst. clauses, objs. of the idea of urging (which may be expressed in translation) implied in *nuntios dimisisse*.

111, 13. *medium*: 'in the middle,' pred. adj.

111, 17. *ut . . . liberaret*: subst. clauses in apposition with *rebus*, and expressing the purpose of Caesar's expedition. Translate, 'namely, inspiring fear . . . avenging,' etc.

III, 19. XVIII: to be read *duodeviginti*.

III, 20. *pröfectum*: not *pröfectum* from *proficiscor*.

III, 22. CHAPTER 20. *Exigua . . . reliqua*: abl. abs. denoting concession; connect in translation with the clause *etsi*<sup>1</sup> . . . *hiemes*, 'although but a small part of the summer was left and the winters,' etc.

III, 23. *ad septentriones*: cf. 51, 18, and 61, 21.

III, 24. *in Britanniam*: see summary of Book IV, p. 322.—Although this expedition was without important results, except as it prepared the way for the more extensive operations of the following summer, it yet marks one of the most noteworthy events in the history of Europe. Plutarch's words (*Life of Caesar*, 23) are interesting: "By invading an island, the reported extent of which had made its existence a matter of controversy among historians, many of whom questioned whether it were not a mere name and fiction, not a real place, he might be said to have carried the Roman empire beyond the limits of the known world."

III, 25. *bellis*: abl. of time when.

III, 26. *sumministrata*, etc.: the only instance mentioned by Caesar is in the Venetan war, 87, 15.

III, 27. *magno . . . usui*: dat. of tendency or service,<sup>2</sup> accompanied by a dat. of interest *sibi*, 'it would be a great advantage to him.'

III, 1. *si . . . adisset*, etc.: the conditional clauses serve as subjects of *fore*. The plpf. tenses represent fut. perfs. of dir. disc.

III, 3. *fere*: belongs with the following words, 'were generally unknown.' Probably the Venetan shipmasters, who controlled the carrying trade between Gaul and Britain (see 85, 14, and note on 85, 12), and some of the Belgian peoples were best informed. — *Neque enim . . . quiesquam*<sup>3</sup>: 'and in fact nobody.'

III, 4. *illo*: adv. — his: dat., depending on the adj. *notum*.<sup>4</sup>

III, 6. *Gallias*: pl., of the divisions of Gaul (51, 1).

III, 7. *neque quanta*, etc.: the indir. quests. depend on *reperire*, l. 11.

III, 9. *usum belli*: 'experience in war.'

III, 10. *maiozem*: 'rather large.'<sup>5</sup>

III, 13. CHAPTER 21. *faceret*: see on *priusquam* . . . *conaretur*, 64, 11. — *idoneum esse*: sc. *eum*, meaning Volusenus. His lack of suc-

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	585 (515, ii, 1)	943	527, c (313, c)	604	309, a
2	433 (390, i)	547	382, 1 (233, a)	356	191, a, a
3	513 (457)	1071	312 (105, h)	317, 1	252, 4
4	434 (391)	536	383 (234)	359	192, 1
5	498 (444, 1)	678	291, a (93, a)	297, 2	240, 1

cess shows, however, that he was not fitted for the task (see 113, 2 ff.), although he had the reputation of being a courageous and prudent officer (83, 30 f.).

112, 17. in Britanniam: depending on the verbal noun *traiectus*. If Caesar sailed from Port Itius, as he did the next year on his second expedition (124, 5 f.), the distance to Britain was only about thirty Roman miles (124, 7). Port Itius is probably to be identified with Wissant.

112, 19. quam . . . classem: 'the fleet which,' the antecedent appearing only in the rel. clause. — For this fleet, see 86, 2 f.

112, 23. dare: complementary infin. Verbs of promising commonly take the fut. infin. in indir. disc.<sup>1</sup> — imperio: indir. obj. of an intr. cpd. verb.

112, 26. Atrebatibus superatis: see 77, 6 ff.

112, 27. regem: eleven Gallic kings are named by Caesar. Probably monarchy had once prevailed throughout Gaul, but had been superseded in most states by republican or aristocratic forms of government. — ibi: among the Atrebates.

112, 29. his regionibus: in Belgium. — magni habebatur: 'was considered valuable.'<sup>2</sup>

112, 30. quas possit: the rel. clause often precedes its antecedent. The subj. is due to implied indir. disc., representing Caesar's order, as, *Quas poteris adi civitates*. — adeat, hortetur, nuntiet: coördinated with *imperat*; see on *faciat*, 65, 5.

113, 1. fidem sequantur: 'seek the protection.' — se: indir. refl.,<sup>3</sup> referring to the subject of the main verb *imperat*.

113, 2. quantum . . . potuit: 'so far as opportunity could be given a man.'

113, 4. auderet: characteristic subj.

113, 5. perspexisset: for sequence, see on *ut occuparet*, 53, 9.

113, 7. CHAPTER 22. moratur: see on *conquiruntur*, 70, 4.

113, 8. superioris temporis: 'of a previous occasion,' i.e. the autumn of 56 B.C.; see 98, 19 ff.

113, 9. excusarent: in a rel. clause of purpose.<sup>4</sup> — homines, etc.: in apposition with the subject, 'being foreigners,' etc.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	619, 1 (537, N. 1)	986	580, c & N. (330, f & N.)	531, N. 4	Cf. 269, 1, <i>exx.</i>
2	448 (404)	576	417 (252, a)	380, 1	203, 3
3	504 (449, 1)	1046	300, 2 (196, a, 2)	521	244, ii, a
4	590 (497, i)	835	531, 2 (317, 2)	630	282, 2

113, 10. *consuetudinis*: obj. gen. with *imperiti*.<sup>1</sup> The reference is to the leniency of Rome towards all who submitted voluntarily.

113, 11. *fecissent*: implied indir. disc., giving Caesar's quotation of the reason offered by the envoys.—*imperasset*: observe that this plpf. depending on *pollicerentur* (which by its meaning refers to the future) denotes different time from *fecissent*.

113, 12. *pollicerentur*: in the same construction as *excusarent*.

113, 13. *neque . . . neque . . . neque*: 'not . . . and not . . . and not.'

113, 14. *anni tempus*: it was in August, too late to begin a campaign.

113, 15. *has . . . antependendas*: 'that occupation with such trivial matters ought to be given precedence of Britain.'

113, 18. *Navibus . . . onerariis*: see Intro. § 48.

113, 19. *quot*, etc.: 'a number which he judged to be sufficient,' etc.

113, 20. *duas . . . legiones*: the vii<sup>th</sup> and x<sup>th</sup>, as we learn from 115, 24 and 119, 2.

113, 22. *quod . . . navium*: 'what ships.'<sup>2</sup>

113, 25. *distribuit*: sc. *eas*.

113, 26. *Huc accedebant*: 'there were also' ('to these were added').

113, 28. *eo loco*: Port Itius, see on 112, 17.—*a millibus passuum viii*: 'eight miles away.'

113, 29. *tenebantur*, etc.: 'were kept from being able.'<sup>3</sup>

114, 3. *ducendum*: acc. of the gerundive, expressing purpose with a verb of giving.<sup>4</sup>

114, 6. CHAPTER 23. *tertia fere vigilia*: not far from midnight.

114, 7. *ulteriorem portum*: where the eighteen ships assigned to the cavalry were detained (113, 26 ff.). This harbor, called *superior* in 117, 14, was probably at or near modern Calais, which is not quite eight miles northeast of Wissant. This part of the French coast has changed greatly since Caesar's time.

114, 8. *paulo tardius*: 'a little too slowly,' *i.e.* to take advantage of the favorable wind. They did not sail for three days (see 117, 11 f.).

114, 10. *attigit*: astronomical calculation, considering the full moon mentioned in 117, 23 and the equinox (121, 7), sets the landing of

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 450 (399)	573	349, a (218, a)	374	204, 1
2 441 (397, 3)	564	346, a, 3 (216, a, 3)	369	201, 2
3 568, 8, (497, ii, 2)	900	558, b (331, e, 2)	549	295, 3
4 622 (544, N. 2)	994	500, 4 (294, d')	430	337, 7, b, 2

Caesar in Britain on August 27. The passage had taken eight or nine hours. Steamers now make the trip from Calais to Dover in less than two hours.

114, 12. *ita montibus*, etc.: 'was so closely bounded by mountains.' Caesar had apparently arrived off the chalk cliffs near Dover, which in clear weather were visible even from Gaul. It was from these white cliffs that the name Albion arose.

114, 15. *dum . . . convenirent*: 'for the rest of his ships to come up'; see on 55, 26.

114, 18. *monuit*: its obj. is the coördinate clause *ad nutum . . . administrarentur*; see on *faciat*, 65, 5. — *ut . . . postularent*: implied indir. disc. for *ut . . . postulant*<sup>1</sup> of Caesar's original admonition; 'as (see Vocab., s.v. *ut*) the theory of military science and especially manœuvres by sea require.'

114, 19. *ut quae . . . haberent*: 'since they have sudden and unsteady movement'; a causal rel. clause,<sup>2</sup> having *habeant* in the original speech. General truths in subordinate clauses take the present tense in English, but in Latin they follow the laws of sequence.

114, 24. *progressus*: from off Dover, probably northeastward to the neighborhood of Deal. — *constituit*: the vessels were moored as far inshore as possible; see l. 29 f. After the battle the ships of war were beached (117, 26).

114, 26. CHAPTER 24. *quo genere*: 'a class of warriors which,' referring to *essedariis*. Their mode of fighting is described in 119, 21 ff. See on *quod nomen*, 86, 10.

114, 27. *consuerunt*: see on *consuerant*, 81, 7. — *copiis*: accompaniment.<sup>3</sup>

114, 28. *prohibebant*: 'tried to prevent,' the conative use of the imperf.<sup>4</sup>

114, 29. *has*: 'the following.'

114, 30. *alto*: 'deep water.' — *militibus*: dat. of agent with the gerundives; limited by *pressis*.

115, 1. *locis*: loc. abl. — *manibus*: abl. abs., expressing attendant circumstance. Translate this sentence, 'and the soldiers, moreover, on

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	316, 2 (311, 2)	888			
2	592, 1 (517, 3, 1)	839-40	535, e, N. 1 (320, e, N. 1)	626, N. 1	283, 3, a
3	474, 2, N. 1 (419, iii, 1, 1)	634	413, a (248, a, N.)	392, R. 1	222, 1
4	530 (469, ii, 1)	739	471, c (277, c)	233	260, 3

unfamiliar ground, with hands hampered, and weighed down as they were with a great and heavy load of arms, had at one and the same time to leap down,' etc.

115, 4. *cum illi*, etc.: 'while the Britons,' etc. The clause describes a subordinate circumstance accompanying the main action; see on *cum* . . . *conaretur*, 53, 29.

115, 6. *insuefactos*: 'well trained.'

115, 7. *generis*: obj. gen. with *imperiti*.<sup>1</sup>

115, 8. *pedestribus*: 'on land.'

115, 11. CHAPTER 25. *inusitator*: 'stranger' than that of the transports, as they were less like the ships of traders. See beginning of note on 85, 12.

115, 14. *inde*: 'from their position' on the water's edge.

115, 16. *quae res*: see on *quo genere*, 114, 26.

115, 18. *remorum motu*: evidently the Britons, like the Veneti (see 91, 4 f.), propelled their ships by sails only.

115, 24. *qui*: 'the man who'; see on *qui*, 51, 2. — *decimae*: as in the battle with the Nervii (79, 29 ff.), so here, Caesar's favorite legion decides the issue.

115, 25. *ut* . . . *eveniret*: a subst. clause, second obj. of *obtestatus*; see on *Haedus frumentum*, 61, 19. — *ea res*: 'his action.'

115, 29. *certe*: 'at any rate.'

115, 30. *praestitero*: 'shall have done.'

116, 2. *inter se*: 'each other'; see on 51, 4.

116, 3. *ne* . . . *admitteretur*: translate as active, 'not to be guilty of.' — *dedecus*: *i.e.* the loss of the eagle.

116, 4. *Hos*, etc.: 'likewise, men from the nearest ships, catching sight of them, followed after and,' etc.

116, 6. CHAPTER 26. *utrisque*: the pl. is used of two groups, the sing. of two individuals.

116, 8. *signa subsequi*: each manipule had its own standard, but here, as in the battle with the Nervii (76, 21 f.), men did not try to find their proper manipule.

116, 9. *alius*, etc.: 'men from different ships' ('one man from one ship, another from another'). — *quibuscumque signis*: the implied antecedent (*his signis*, indir. obj. of the cpd. vb. *adgregabat*) may be omitted also in translation, 'gathered round whatever,' etc.

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
I 451, 1 (399, 1, 2)	573	349, a (218, a)	374	204, 1

116, 11. *ubi*: 'whenever'; this meaning is shown by the plpf. tense in the subordinate clause with the imperf. in the main clause, these tenses being regularly so used to show customary or repeated past action.

116, 13. *ab*: 'on.'

116, 14. *in universos*: 'against the whole body.'

116, 16. *quos*: 'whomsoever'; see on *ubi*, l. 11.

116, 17. *simul* = *simul atque*.

116, 18. *suis* . . . *consecutis*: 'and all their comrades had come up.'

116, 19. *neque*: 'but . . . not.' — *longius*: 'very far.'

116, 20. *equites*: see on *paulo tardius*, 114, 8.

116, 21. *Hoc*, etc.: 'this was the only thing Caesar (dat. of possessor) lacked for his previous good fortune.'

116, 25. CHAPTER 27. *daturos*: sc. *se*; see on *pati*, 72, 4. — *quae imperasset*: representing *quae imperaveris* (fut. perf.) of dir. disc.

116, 27. *supra*: see 112, 26. In translation subordinate *supra demonstraveram*, 'who, as I pointed out above, was sent ahead.'

116, 28. *illi*: = *Britanni*.

116, 29. *cum*: concessive. — *oratoris modo*: 'in the character of an envoy.'

117, 2. *imprudentiam*: 'lack of discretion.'

117, 3. *ignosceretur*: sc. *sibi*; verbs which in the active take the dat. are impersonal in the passive, and the dat. remains.<sup>1</sup> — *quod* . . . *intulissent*: 'because, as he said, they had,' etc.: implied indir. disc.

117, 4. *legatis missis*: see 112, 23.

117, 11. CHAPTER 28. *post diem quartum quam*<sup>2</sup> . . . *ventum*: 'three days (see on 104, 17) after the arrival,' etc., i.e. August 30; see on 114, 10.

117, 13. *supra*: see 113, 26.

117, 14. *superiore portu*: see on *ulteriorem portum*, 114, 7.

117, 16. *viderentur*: 'were in sight.'

117, 19. *propius*: see on 104, 18. — *sui*: 'to themselves,' obj. gen.

117, 20. *tamen*: applies to the concessive abl. abs. *ancoris iactis*; 'and since, though they had cast anchor, they were nevertheless filling with water.'

117, 21. *adversa nocte*: 'even in the face of night'; concessive abl. abs.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	426, 3 (384, 5)	530, end	372 (230)	217	187, ii, δ
2	488, 2 (430, N. 1, 3)	658	434 (262)	403, N. 4 {δ}	357, 1

- 117, 23. CHAPTER 29. *luna*: see on 114, 10.
- 117, 24. *maritimos*: omit in translation.
- 117, 25. *incognitum*: it would seem as if the Romans might have observed this fact during the Venetan war (cf. 88, 29). There is almost no tide in the Mediterranean.
- 117, 28. *nostris*: the men in camp. — *administrandi*, etc.: 'of controlling or helping the ships.'
- 118, 1. *amissis*: 'owing to the loss of,' etc. — *id quod*<sup>1</sup>: *id* is in apposition with the antecedent sentence; *quod* is subject of *accidere*, which with its subject acc. is in turn the subject of *erat*.<sup>2</sup>
- 118, 4. *possent*: characteristic.
- 118, 5. *hiemari* (impers. pass.) . . . *oportere*: 'that the winter ought to be spent.'
- 118, 9. CHAPTER 30. *inter se*: see on 51, 4.
- 118, 11. *quae* . . . *quod*: 'which was more contracted, too, from the fact that'; see on *hoc facilius* . . . *quod*, 52, 12.
- 118, 13. *optimum*: pred. adj. with *esse*, which is in indir. disc. with *duxerunt* (= 'thought'); the subjects of *esse* are *prohibere* and *producere*. — *factu*: see on 53, 14.
- 118, 14. *rebellione facta*: 'to renew hostilities.'
- 118, 15. *rem*: 'the struggle.' — *his* . . . *interclusis*: abl. abs. expressing condition.
- 118, 18. *castris*: the Roman camp; the Britons had given up all warlike operations (117, 8 ff.).
- 118, 19. *deducere*: the men who had gone to their homes a few days before (117, 8) were now brought back secretly.
- 118, 21. CHAPTER 31. *ex eventu*: 'from what had happened to,' etc.
- 118, 22. *ex eo, quod*: 'from the fact that'; the causal clause is in apposition with the neuter *eo*. — *fore* . . . *accidit*: 'that that was coming which actually did happen.'
- 118, 25. *quae* . . . *naves, earum*: 'of those ships which'; see on 59, 11.
- 118, 26. *aere*: bronze, which was early used for a great variety of purposes, was more serviceable in ships than iron because of its freedom from rust.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	399, 6 (445, 7)	830	307, d (200, e)	614, R. 2	247, 1, b
2	615, 1 (538, 1)	971	452 (270)	422	330

118, 29. *ut . . . posset*: an *impers.* clause of result, obj. of *effecit*; <sup>1</sup> 'he made it possible to sail fairly well with the rest.'

119, 1. CHAPTER 32. *Dum*: as in 113, 6. — *legione . . . missa*: translate as a main clause, 'one legion had been sent.'

119, 2. *frumentatum*: see on *rogatum*, 58, 12.

119, 3. *neque ulla . . . interposita*: 'and no suspicion of war for that time had been aroused.'

119, 4. *hominum*: Britons. Since some of them remained at work in their fields and others kept coming (note the *freq.* or intensive *vb.*<sup>2</sup>) even into the enemy's camp, the Romans were thrown off their guard.

119, 5. *ii*: begin a new sentence, 'presently those.' — *in statione*: one cohort was usually on guard before each of the four gates of the camp. See *Introd.* § 44.

119, 7. *quam consuetudo ferret*: 'than usual.' — *parte*: 'direction.'

119, 8. *id quod erat*: 'the truth.'

119, 9. *aliquid . . . consili*<sup>3</sup>: 'namely, that some new plan had been formed,' etc.; *indir. disc.* in apposition with *id*.

119, 11. *reliquas*: *i.e.* four cohorts. Of the two legions which Caesar brought to Britain (113, 20) the seventh was out foraging; four cohorts of the tenth, which had been on guard at the four gates of the camp and so were already armed, were ordered out to relieve the seventh; only two cohorts could be spared to take their places, probably half a cohort being assigned to each gate; the remaining four cohorts were to arm and follow Caesar at once. — *armari*: 'to arm,' refl. use of the passive.<sup>4</sup>

119, 12. *paulo longius*: 'some little distance.'

119, 14. *conferta legione*: 'that the legion was crowded closely together and,' etc.

119, 16. *una*: note the full force, 'only one.'

119, 19. *paucis interfectis*: 'they killed a few and,' etc. — *incertis ordinibus*: 'since the ranks were not formed.'

119, 21. CHAPTER 33. *pugnae*: here with the force of a verbal noun ('fighting'), and so more easily modified by a prepositional phrase.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	566 (501, ii, 1)	902	568 (332)	553, 1	297, 1
2	364 (336)	93	263, 2 (167, 6)	191, 1	155, 2
3	441 (397, 3)	564	346, a, 3 (216, a, 3)	369	201, 2
4	517 (465)	687	156, a (111, a)	218	256, 1

119, 23. *equorum*: subjective gen., 'terror caused by the horses.'  
— *ordines*: of the enemy.

119, 24. *cum*: 'whenever'; this meaning is shown by the perf. tense in the subordinate clause with the pres. in the main clause, these tenses being regularly so used to show customary or repeated present action; cf. the note on 116, 11.

119, 25. *equitum*: of their own army.

119, 26. *pedibus*: cf. 101, 12.

119, 28. *illi*: 'the fighting men,' of whom there may have been six on each chariot.

119, 29. *receptum*: substantive.

120, 1. *tantum* . . . *efficiunt*: 'acquire such skill.'

120, 3. *incitatos*: 'even on the gallop.'

120, 4. *iugo*: the yoke, which held the two horses together and supported the pole. See the cut, p. 119.

120, 6. CHAPTER 34. *rebus*: abl. of means. — *nostris*: indir. obj. of *tulit*. — *novitate*: abl. of cause, 'owing to,' etc.

120, 11. *alienum* and *suo*: opposed to each other, 'unfavorable' and 'favorable.'

120, 13. *haec*: the battle. — *qui* . . . *reliqui*: the Britons who had stayed at work in the fields as a blind, 119, 4.

120, 15. *quae* . . . *containerent*: 'so severe as to keep.'

120, 19. *sui liberandi*: see on *sui colligendi*, 84, 10.

120, 20. *expulissent*: for fut. perf. of dir. disc.

120, 23. CHAPTER 35. *idem* . . . *fore*: 'that the result would be the same as,' etc.

120, 24. *ut* . . . *effugerent*: a subst. clause of result, in apposition with *idem*.<sup>1</sup>

120, 26. *equites XXX*: not enough to be very effective in attack, but useful in pursuing and cutting down a flying enemy.

120, 27. *ante*: see 112, 26 ff., and 116, 26 ff.

120, 30. *tanto spatîo*: 'over as long a course,' a strange use of the abl. of manner; cf. 104, 29.

121, 5. CHAPTER 36. *His*: dat. of interest or reference, expressing disadvantage. — *ante*: see 117, 5 f.

121, 7. *die*: note the gender; 'since the season of the equinox was near.' Caesar was probably in Britain about three weeks (see on 114, 10).

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 571, 4 (501, iii)	904	570 (330, /)	557	297, 3

121, 11. *quos reliquae*: 'as the rest.'

121, 12. *paulo infra*: 'a little farther down,' *i.e.* southwest from Port Itius (see on 112, 17). The current along the French coast runs to the west.

121, 13. CHAPTER 37. *Quibus ex navibus*: the two transports just mentioned.

121, 14. *in castra*: probably the camp of Sulpicius at Port Itius; see 114, 3 f.

121, 15. *proficiscens*: 'at his departure.'

121, 16. *pacatos*: see 113, 7 ff.

121, 17. *non ita magno*: 'not a very large.'—*sese interfici*: 'to be killed'; an infin. used as obj. of verbs of wishing generally takes a subject acc. only when the subject is different from that of the governing verb.<sup>1</sup>

121, 18. *nollent*: implied indir. disc., representing an original *non vultis*.—*orbe facto*: when a body of troops was attacked on all sides it sometimes formed in a circle, all facing out.

121, 19. *ad clamorem*: 'at a shout.'—*hominum*: of the enemy; it belongs with *millia*.

121, 21. *suis auxilio*: see on 63, 26.

121, 23. *horis*: abl. of comparison; commonly *amplius* has no influence on the construction; see *equites*, 105, 28, and note.

121, 24. *Postea . . . quam*: 'after.'

122, 3. CHAPTER 38. *Qui cum*: 'and since they,' the Morini.—*sic citates*: abstract substantives are sometimes used in the pl. when the abstract idea pertains to several things.

122, 4. *reciperent*: subj. of characteristic, 'they had no place to which they could retreat.'—*quo perfugio*: see on *quod nomen*, 86, 10. For the fact, see 98, 26 f.

122, 6. *Titurius, Cotta*: see 114, 1.

122, 8. *frumentis*: note the pl.; see Vocab.

122, 9. *in . . . silvas*: see on *in solitudinem*, 111, 3.

122, 12. *neglexerunt*: an admission that the expedition was without important results; see on 111, 24.

122, 14. *His rebus gestis*: 'for these exploits,' abl. abs. expressing cause.—*ex*: 'in accordance with.'—*dierum xx*: this unprecedented honor was longer by five days than any previous thanksgiving celebrated

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 614 (535, ii)	965-66	563, 6 (331, 6, N.)	532, R. 2	331, iv, a

at Rome. While it shows how proud the Romans were of Caesar's achievements in penetrating with a Roman army into two unknown countries, it was not decreed without strong opposition in the senate; see on *ad quos*, 107, 22.

## BOOK FIFTH

**Campaign of 54 B.C.** — The winter of 55-54 B.C. was spent in building a fleet and making other preparations for an invasion of Britain in force the following summer. Five legions and two thousand cavalry were taken across the Channel. In several engagements Caesar was victorious, and many tribes sent him hostages in token of submission. Still, he advanced only to the Thames and left no permanent results of his six or eight weeks' campaign. It was almost a hundred years before the Romans again visited Britain, in the reign of the emperor Claudius. Enough had been learned of the island, however, to dispel the common notion of its unbounded wealth.

[Owing to drought and scanty harvests Caesar scattered his army more than usual for the following winter. One legion under the command of Quintus Cicero, brother of the orator, was stationed among the Nervii; while another, under the trusted Labienus, was quartered on the Treveran frontier of the Remi. Sabinus and Cotta were given joint command of one legion and five unorganized cohorts stationed among the Eburones. The remaining five legions were distributed among the Esuvii, Morini, and Bellovaci.

This wide separation of the Roman forces appeared to the Gauls to afford a good opportunity to strike for freedom. The first attack was made by Ambiorix, chief of the Eburones, who, pretending friendship and gratitude to Caesar, warned Sabinus and Cotta that their only hope of escape from an overwhelming force of Gauls and Germans who would fall upon them within two days was to abandon their post and unite with Cicero or Labienus. In spite of the stout opposition of Cotta and many other officers this advice was adopted. The Romans had gone only two miles when Ambiorix fell upon them from an ambush and cut them to pieces almost to a man. Without delay he then marched into the country of the Nervii, Caesar's old enemy of three years before, and easily persuaded them to join in an attack on Cicero's camp. After a gallant defense from siege and assault, during which not one man in ten

escaped without wounds, Cicero finally succeeded, after many failures, in getting word to Caesar, who came with all haste to his relief and put the enemy to rout.

Labienus's camp was attacked by the Treveri, but their repulse and the death of their chief, Indutiomarus, quieted Gaul for a season. For the first time Caesar spent the winter in Gaul, making his headquarters at Amiens (Samarobriva) in the country of the Ambiani.]

PAGE 123, LINE 1. CHAPTER 1. *L. . . consulibus*: = 54 B.C. The consuls took office on January 1, which, owing to the confusion of the Roman calendar, came some six or eight weeks earlier than at present. Consequently Caesar may have gone to Italy early in the winter. See on 100, 2.

123, 2. *Italiam*: see on 57, 26.

123, 3. *legatis*: Caesar had eight legions at this time, each under the command of a lieutenant; see on *ab opere*, 76, 2.

123, 4. *quam plurimas possint . . . naves*: 'the largest possible number of ships'; see on *quam maximis potest*, 55, 9. — *possint*: implied indir. disc.

123, 5. *naves aedificandas . . . curent*: 'have ships built.'<sup>1</sup>

123, 6. *Earum*: applying only to the new ships, not to the *veteres*. — *modum*: 'style.'

123, 7. *humiliores*: sc. *eas*, obj. of *facit*.

123, 8. *quam quibus*: = *quam eae sunt quibus*; see on *qui*, 51, 2. — *nostro*: the Mediterranean. — *id* (sc. *facit*) . . . *quod*: 'he does this all the more from the fact that he,' etc.

123, 10. *minus magnos*: 'not so large' as in the Mediterranean. This observation is incorrect. The existence of tides, too, does not materially influence the size of waves, but merely changes their form.

123, 11. *iumentorum*: including principally the cavalry horses. — *latiores*: sc. *eas facit*.

123, 12. *actuarias*: pred. adj. The addition of oars made the fleet more independent of wind and tide.

123, 14. *armandas*: cf. *armatae*, 89, 2, and *armorum*, 90, 2. — *Hispania*: Spain produced abundant material for making both ropes and metal implements.

123, 16. CHAPTER 2. *His . . . rebus*: referring to the punishment of the barbarous Pirustae, who had invaded Illyricum, a part of Caesar's

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B
1	622 (544, 2, N. 2)	994	500, 4 (294, d')	430	337, 7, δ, 2

province; see *Introd.* § 8. This is briefly related in the last half of Ch. 1, which is omitted in this book.

123, 17. *proficiscitur*: Caesar cannot have been away from his army much more than five months. During this time he traveled at least 2000 miles, from Belgium (122, 10) to Illyricum and back.

123, 19. *studio*: 'owing to the enthusiasm.'—in . . . *inopia*: 'although in,' etc.

124, 1. *cuius*: for *quod*, an unusual attraction of the rel. to the case of the antecedent.<sup>1</sup>

124, 2. *neque . . . quin*: 'and were not far from the point where.' The clause *quin . . . possint* is in apposition with *eo*, the use of *quin*<sup>2</sup> instead of *ut* being due to *abesse*.

124, 5. *Itium*: see on 112, 17.

124, 7. *millium*: gen. of quality with *traiectum*.

124, 8. *huic rei*: 'for this purpose,' of assembling all the troops at Port Itius.—*quod . . . militum* (partit. gen.): 'as many soldiers as.'

124, 9. CHAPTER 8. *His rebus*: in the omitted chapters Caesar tells of quieting a disaffection of the Treveri, and of the open revolt of Dumnorix the Haeduan, which ended in his death.

124, 11. *portus*: Port Itius and the *ulterior portus* of 114, 7.

124, 13. *pro tempore*, etc.: 'according to the time and the circumstance.'

124, 14. *pari . . . quem*: 'the same . . . as,' i.e. 2000.

124, 16. *provectus, intermisso*: translate as finite vbs.

124, 17. *longius*: his proper course from Port Itius was northwest to the vicinity of Dover and Deal, but the current carried him too far northward.

124, 19. *contendit*, etc.: at about daybreak the tide began to run to the southwest, and Caesar taking advantage of (*secutus*) this fact strove by rowing to reach the coast near Deal (see on *progressus*, 114, 24).

124, 22. *vectoriis*, etc.: 'in heavy transports,' abl. of means.

124, 23. *non intermisso*: 'with no respite from.'

124, 28. *quae cum*, etc.: 'of which, including those of the year before' (the *veteres* of 123, 5).—*sui* (with *commodi*) *quisque*: see on *sibi quemque*, 54, 11. The private ships probably belonged to officers, traders,

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	399, 5 (445, 8)		306, a (199, a)	617	250, 5
2	595, 1 (504, 3, 2)	913	558 (332, g)	555, 1	295, 3 & a

and others who accompanied the expedition for the sake of pleasure or profit.

124, 29. DCCC: = *octingentae*, agreeing with *quae*; see on *equites*, 105, 28.

125, 5. CHAPTER 9. *cohortibus* X: probably two from each of his five legions (124, 14).

125, 7. *navibus*: dat. of interest or reference. — *molli atque aperto*: = *aperto ac plano* of 114, 24.

125, 11. *equitatu*, etc.: accompaniment<sup>1</sup>; *cum* is commonly used if there is no adj.

125, 12. *flumen*: the Stour, which flows northeast through Canterbury and empties into the sea about six miles north of Deal. Caesar must have marched west, as in this direction the river is about twelve miles from his landing place. — *prohibere*: 'hinder' from crossing.

125, 17. *domestici belli* . . . *causa*: 'for use in civil war.'

125, 23. *rari propugnabant*: 'scattered here and there hurled forth weapons.'

125, 28. *aggere*: probably only a simple mound of earth built up against the enemy's fortification in the manner of the Roman siege mound (see *Intro.* § 47).

126, 4. CHAPTER 10. *tripertito*: by three routes.

126, 7. *extremi*: 'the rear' of the enemy.

126, 8. *Atrio*: see 125, 9.

126, 11. *funes*: cf. *pro funibus*, 89, 9, and see note. — *sustinerent*: observe that the subj. shows this reason to be Atrius's.

126, 13. *concursum*: 'colliding.'

126, 15. CHAPTER 11. *in itinere resistere*: 'merely to resist on the march,' i.e. merely to defend themselves if attacked as they marched back to camp.

126, 17. *sic ut*: 'the state of affairs being such that.' — *amissis*: abl. abs. expressing concession.

126, 18. *negotio*: abl. of manner.

126, 19. *deligit*: this word shows that Caesar had no separate force of carpenters, but selected from the ranks such men as could be of most service for a given undertaking. — *Labiens*: in command on the continent; see 124, 9 ff.

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
I 474, 2, N. 1 (419, 1, 1)	634	413, 2 (248, 2, N.)	392, R. 1	222, 1

126, 20. **ut . . . instituat**: a complementary or subst. clause, obj. of *scribit*, which is here equiv. to a vb. of command, 'writes L. to build.'<sup>1</sup> An infin. would be in indir. disc., 'writes L. that he is building.' — **possit**, sint: implied indir. disc.; cf. *fugerant* in l. 5, where the main vb. *misit* gives no implication of indir. disc. — **legionibus**: abl. of means.

126, 21. **operae**, etc.: gen. of quality, 'an undertaking requiring much labor and exertion.'

126, 24. **ne . . . intermissis**: 'not granting even in the night-time any respite to the soldiers' toil.'

126, 27. **quas ante**: 'as before,' see 125, 5 f.

126, 28. **eodem**: adv.

126, 30. **summa . . . administrandi**: 'the chief command and management of the war.'

127, 3. **a mari**: Caesar reckons according to his line of march from his landing place.

127, 4. **Huic . . . intercesserant**: 'he had been engaged in,' etc.

127, 6. **hunc**, etc.: 'had given him chief command of the whole war.'

127, 8. CHAPTER 12. **quos . . . dicunt**: 'of whom they say there is a tradition that they originated,' etc.; *quos natos* [esse] is the subject of *proditum* [esse]. Many peoples in antiquity had the mistaken notion that their race sprang from the soil of the country in which they lived. The Britons of Caesar's day were Celtic, and they are believed to have been preceded by Iberians. See on *Celtae*, 51, 3.

127, 11. **nominibus**: for instance, there were Atrebates and Belgae in southern Britain, and Parisii on the east coast in modern Yorkshire. — **quibus . . . civitatibus**: see on *itineribus*, 54, 18.

127, 13. **Hominum**: 'population.'

127, 14. **Gallicis**: Gallic houses were round (cf. Indian wigwams), made of boards or wickerwork of stakes and interwoven branches, and had thatched roofs.

127, 15. **aureo**: gold coins antedating Caesar's visit have been found in England.

127, 16. **ad certum pondus**: among most primitive peoples the use of metals by weight precedes coinage.

127, 17. **Mediterraneis**: i.e. Cornwall, which was so far from that part of the island visited by Caesar that he might easily imagine it to

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 564, 1 (498, 1)	894	563 (331)	546	295, 1

be inland. The tin of Cornwall had been exported by Phoenicians as early as the tenth century B.C.

128, 1. *maritimis*: iron is now found principally in the interior, and the supply is abundant.

128, 3. *fagum, abietem*: both are native in Britain.

128, 4. *gustare*: subject of *esse* implied. — *haec*: neuter, referring to things of different genders.<sup>1</sup> — *animi causa*: 'for amusement.'

128, 6. *frigoribus*: see on 61, 21. The Gulf Stream tempers the climate of England.

128, 10. CHAPTER 13. *inferior*: instead of *alter*, correlated to *alter* above.

128, 11. *ad meridiem*: not a bad mistake, as Land's End really points southwest.

128, 12. *Hispaniam*: Tacitus, writing 150 years later, puts Ireland between Britain and Spain (*Agricola*, 24).

128, 14. *spatio*: abl. of quality, parallel with *minor*.

128, 15. *atque*: 'as'; see on 70, 29. Translate the phrase, 'lying just as far from it as the distance from Gaul to Britain.' Note that *transmissus* is gen. — *In . . . cursu*: 'in the middle of this passage.'

128, 16. *Mona*: evidently the Isle of Man; Tacitus (*Agricola*, 14). gives the name to Anglesey.

128, 17. *oblectae*: sc. *esse*, 'to be near'; probably the islands off the coast of Scotland are meant.

128, 18. *non nulli*: probably Greek travelers. In the last part of the fourth century B.C., Pytheas of Marseilles (Massilia) wrote of his voyage in a Phoenician ship from Cadiz (Gades) to Britain and beyond. — *dies*, etc.: not true for any part of Britain.

128, 20. *nisi*: 'but.' — *certis . . . mensuris*: 'from exact measurements with water,' i.e. by the *clepsydra* or water-clock, which measured time by the dripping of water through a small orifice, on the principle of a sand-glass. — *breviores*: the shortest nights of summer are about an hour and a half shorter in London than in Rome.

128, 22. *ut fert*, etc.: 'as they suppose.' — *millium*: pred. gen. of quality; cf. 124, 7. For the omission of *passuum*, cf. 92, 19.

128, 27. CHAPTER 14. *Ex his*: the Britons.

128, 29. *omnis*: see on 51, 1.

128, 30. *frumenta*, etc.: the tribes on the southern coast were more

H. L. M. A. G. B.  
 1 398, 1 (445, 3, N. 1) 485, 480 296, 1; 287, 3 (195; 187, 6) Cf. 286, 1 Cf. 235, B, 2, 6, 8

civilized; see 118, 14 and 24, and 119, 2 and 16. — *lacte*, etc.: so the Suebi, see 100, 17 and 101, 2.

129, 2. *vitro*: the woad plant is still cultivated in some parts of Europe, the dye extracted from its leaves being mainly used to improve the quality of indigo. — *hoc*: abl. of cause.

129, 3. *capillo, parte*: abls. of quality; 'they have,' etc.

129, 5. *deni duodenique*: 'ten or twelve.' — *inter se*: 'together.'

129, 7. *qui . . . nati*: 'the offspring of these wives.'

129, 8. *quo*: adv. (= *ad quos*), with *eorum* as its antecedent.

129, 9. CHAPTER 15. The account of Caesar's exploits, which was interrupted by Chs. 12-14, is resumed.

129, 10. *itinere*: *i.e.* on the march back from the naval camp (126, 28).

129, 11. *ita*: 'with the result.' — *partibus*: see on *locis*, 54, 26.

129, 12. *fuerint*: for the tense, see on *debuerint*, 58, 15.

129, 14. *intermisso spatio*: 'after a time.'

129, 18. *atque his primis*: 'and these the first'; the first cohort of a legion had the best men; see *Intro.* § 28.

129, 19. *peregriguo . . . se*: 'with a very short distance between them.'

129, 20. *novo genere*: *i.e.* the method of the *essedarii* explained in 119, 21 ff.

129, 21. *per medios*: through the space between the two cohorts. — *perruperunt illi* (l. 14) is still the subject.

129, 28. CHAPTER 16. *neque . . . auderent*: if small detachments withdrew from the ranks, they were exposed to attack from the chariots.

130, 1. *equites . . . dimicare*: depending on *intellectum est* above.

130, 2. *illi*: the fighters on chariots.

130, 4. *dispari*: the Roman cavalry, not being supported by infantry, was at a disadvantage with the enemy, some of whom were fighting on foot and some from chariots.

130, 5. *ratio*: 'character.' — *et cedentibus et insequentibus*: 'to our men whether retiring or pursuing.' The war chariots gave the Britons a constant advantage.

130, 6. *Accedebat huc ut*: 'in addition to this'; see on 89, 22.

130, 8. *stationes*, etc.: 'reserves posted here and there.'

130, 9. *alios alii*, etc. 'they followed one another in succession.'

130, 17. CHAPTER 17. *sic uti*, etc.: 'with such boldness that

they did not hold off from the ranks of the legions' (hendiadys), *i.e.* they did not confine their attacks to the cavalry or to detached bodies of foragers.

130, 19. *subsidio*: see on *tempore*, 98, 17.

130, 20. *egerunt*: *quoad* takes the indic. to express an actual fact;<sup>1</sup> for the constr. to denote expectation or purpose, see *accessisset*, 105, 25, and note.

130, 21. *sui colligendi*: see on 84, 10. With the combination of gerundive and gerunds in l. 21 f., cf. 83, 21 ff.

130, 22. *Ex*: 'after.'

130, 23. *quae . . . auxilia*: see 126, 29 f.

130, 24. *summis copiis*: 'in full force.'

130, 26. CHAPTER 18. *consilio*: their plan of campaign is described in Ch. 19.

130, 29. *hoc*: sc. *loco*. Caesar probably crossed the Thames not far from Hampton Court, about 22 miles above London Bridge.

131, 2. *praeſixisque*: 'driven into the edge of the bank.'

131, 3. *defixae*: 'driven into the bed of the stream.'

131, 5. *ea, eo*: 'such.'

131, 6. *ierunt*: Caesar leaves us in the dark as to how his men got round the stakes in the river and on the shore. It is possible that the lines of stakes were not planted far enough to be effective.—*capite*: abl. of amount of difference; 'although only their heads were above water.' Modern armies consider it dangerous to ford a stream which is over three feet deep.

131, 9. CHAPTER 19. *supra*: in 130, 24 f.

131, 10. *contentionis*: 'of keeping up the struggle.'—*amplioribus*: 'the greater part of.'

131, 11. *servabat*: 'kept watch of.'

131, 12. *excedebat*, etc.: translate these imperfs. with 'would,' to express customary action.

131, 16. *viis*, etc.: 'by all the highways and byways'; abls. of means. The chariots must have been narrow to pass between the trees, and their wheels were probably of good size so as to go easily over rough ground.

131, 18. *periculo . . . equitum*: 'danger to our cavalry'; *equitum* is possessive gen.—*hoc metu*: 'owing to their fear of this.'

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 603, ii, 1 (519, ii, 1)	922	554 (328)	571	293, iii, 1

131, 19. *Relinquebatur ut*: 'the result was that,' etc.; the clauses with *ut* are subjects of *relinquebatur*.

131, 20. *discedi*, etc.: *impers.*, 'permit his men to go away.'

131, 21. *tantum . . . quantum*: 'only so much . . . as.'—*hostibus*: see on *neque iis*, 89, 29.

131, 22. *quantum*, etc.: as no detachments of cavalry or infantry could venture far from the main army, only a comparatively small territory could be ravaged.

131, 28. CHAPTER 20. *ipse*: Mandubracius.

131, 30. *sese*: obj. of *dedituros*; the subject of an infin. is frequently omitted when it can be easily implied.

132, 2. *qui*: Mandubracius; introducing a rel. clause of purpose.

132, 3. *imperat*: see on 55, 11.—*exercitui*: dat. of interest or reference, expressing advantage.

132, 7. CHAPTER 21. *Cenimagni*, etc.: Caesar's kindness to the Trinovantes leads to the submission of other tribes.

132, 9. *oppidum*: thought to be at St. Albans, about twenty miles northwest of London.

132, 11. *convenerit*: note the sequence with the pres. of vivid narration<sup>1</sup> (hist. pres.).

132, 12. *oppidum . . . vocant*: 'call it a town'; the following definition shows the British town to have been not a place of residence or of business, but a stronghold.—*cum*: see on 119, 24.

132, 14. *consuerunt*: see on *consuesse*, 60, 21.

132, 20. *multi*: persons, not cattle.

132, 22. CHAPTER 22. *supra*: in 128, 28.

132, 23. *reges*: apparently monarchy prevailed in Britain at that period.

132, 26. *castra navalia*: see 126, 22 f. and 26 f.

133, 3. *Commium*: see 112, 26.

133, 5. *Galliae motus*: see on *subita*, 85, 21.—*neque multum aestatis*: it was toward the middle of September (see l. 23). Caesar was probably in Britain about two months.

133, 6. *extrahi*: 'be wasted.'

133, 7. *quid . . . vectigalis*: 'what tribute'; the partit. gen. is often separated from the word on which it depends. This tribute was never paid, as no troops were left to enforce it.

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 546 (495, ii)	805	485, e (287, e)	511, R. 1	268, 3
MATH. CAESAR — 23				

133, 8. *interdicit atque imperat . . . ne*: 'he most emphatically orders . . . not to.'

133, 14. CHAPTER 23. *commeatibus*: 'trips'; abl. of manner.

133, 15. *uti . . . desideraretur*: complementary or subst. clause of result, subject of *accidit*.

133, 16. *tot navigationibus*: 'in spite of so many voyages'; abl. abs. expressing concession.

133, 17. *quae . . . portaret*: 'fit to carry'; characteristic.

133, 18. *ex iis*: 'of those'; antecedent of both *quae* and *quas*.

133, 20. *postea*: *i.e.* after receiving Caesar's orders from Britain (126, 19 ff.).—*numero*: abl. of specification, limiting LX.

133, 21. *locum*: 'their destination,' Britain.—*caperent, reicerentur*: in the same constr. as *desideraretur*, l. 17.

133, 24. *angustius*: 'in rather close quarters' on the ships.

133, 25. *consecuta*: see on *depopulatis*, 58, 17. The abl. abs. of deponent vbs. is rare.—*cum solvisset*: translate as if independent, 'he set sail.'

134, 1. CHAPTER 44. The incident related in this chapter occurred during the siege of Quintus Cicero's camp by the Eburones, Nervii, and their allies, under the lead of Ambiorix (see summary of Book V, p. 345). It illustrates well the caliber of the Roman soldiers, of whom King Pyrrhus of Epirus, 225 years before, had said, "With such soldiers as these I could conquer the world!"—*legione*: the one stationed with Cicero in the territory of the Nervii.

134, 2. *primis ordinibus*, etc.: 'were nearing promotion to the first rank of centurions'; see Introd. § 35.

134, 3. *perpetuas*: 'endless.'

134, 4. *omnibus annis*: 'every year.'—*de loco*: 'for precedence.'—*summis simultatibus*: 'with keenest rivalry.'

134, 6. *Quid dubitas*: 'why do you hesitate?'

134, 7. *locum*: 'opportunity.'

134, 8. *Haec*: for position, see on *horum*, 51, 6.

134, 10. *inrumpit*: sc. *in eam partem*, antecedent of *quae pars*.—*sese . . . vallo continet*: 'stay behind the rampart'; *vallo* is abl. of means.

134, 12. *mediocri . . . relicto*: between Pullo and the enemy.

134, 13. *quo*: the same man as *hunc*, both referring to *unum*. *Percussum et exanimatum*, agreeing with *hunc*, or *Quem percussum*, etc., omitting *hunc*, would be more regular than the abl. abs. here.

134, 14. *illum*: Pullo.

134, 16. *Pulloni*: dat. of interest or reference, expressing disadvantage; <sup>1</sup> 'Pullo has his shield pierced through.'

134, 17. *Avertit*, etc.: 'this accident turns the scabbard away,' *i.e.* from its usual position. The sword was worn on the right side so as not to interfere with the shield, which was carried on the left arm. — *conanti*: see on *Pulloni*, l. 16; 'as he tries.'

134, 19. *illi, laboranti*: essential complements or indir. objs. of intr. cpd. vbs.<sup>2</sup>

134, 21. *comminus rem gerit*: 'engages in hand-to-hand combat.'

134, 23. *in . . . inferiorem*: 'stumbling into a hole.'

134, 26. *summa cum laude*: 'greeted with shouts of praise.'

134, 27. *Sic*: 'thus,' not correlated with *ut*, which = 'so that.' — *in contentione*: 'in their rivalry.'

134, 28. *inimicus*: 'though an enemy.'

134, 29. *posset*: the subject is the following indir. quest. — *antefereendus*: note the gerundive force, 'worthy to be considered superior.'

## BOOK SIXTH

**Campaign of 53 B.C.** — [The successes of Ambiorix in 54 B.C. had given new spirit to several states of northeastern Gaul. Caesar, seeing that trouble was brewing, raised two new legions; and these, with the legion loaned him by Pompey, gave him an army of ten legions. With his usual promptness he struck the first blow. The Nervii, Senones, and Carnutes were speedily brought to submission. The Menapii, the only tribe of Gaul that had not yet sued for peace, were reduced by a force led by Caesar himself. Meanwhile Labienus conquered the Treveri.]

The next move, a second expedition into Germany, was no more successful than that of 55 B.C. The Suebi, whom he wished to punish for aiding the Gauls, withdrew, bag and baggage, to the remotest part of their territory, where the Romans could not safely follow.]

At this point Caesar interrupts his narrative to give an interesting account of the customs of the Gauls and of the Germans, and a descrip-

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	425, 4, N. (384, 4, N. 2)	538	376 (235, N.)	350, 1	188, 1, N.
2	429 (386)	532	370 (228)	347	187, iii, 1

tion of some of the strange animals of the Hercynian Forest in southern Germany.

[Returning to Gaul, Caesar devoted his whole attention to destroying Ambiorix and the Eburones (see summary of Book V, p. 345). The army in three divisions devastated the country. Neighboring tribes were invited to join in the work and enrich themselves with booty. Parties of native cavalry scoured the whole district in search of Ambiorix, who, however, always evaded his pursuers.

Finally the pursuit was abandoned and the army was quartered for the winter of 53-52 B.C. among the Treveri, the Lingones, and the Senones. Before leaving for Italy Caesar put to death the Senonian chief, Acco, who had been the leader of the revolt of the Senones and the Carnutes the previous spring.]

PAGE 135, LINE 1. CHAPTER II. *locum*: 'point' in the narrative. Caesar had just told of his second expedition into Germany. He crossed the Rhine by a bridge which he built not far above his place of crossing in 55 B.C. (see on 109, 12). He wished to punish the Germans for aiding his enemies in Gaul, and to prevent them from harboring Ambiorix in the campaign which he meant to begin, upon his return to Gaul, against that daring and unscrupulous chieftain (see summary above). His journey was largely fruitless, however, owing to the impossibility of safely pursuing the German tribes into their forest retreats.

135, 2. *de . . . proponere*: 'to give an account of,' etc. — *quo*: 'in what respect'; abl. of specification, from *quid*.

135, 5. *partibus*: 'districts.'

135, 7. *principes sunt qui*: 'the leaders are the men who'; the rel. clause defines the antecedent, whereas the next clause *quorum . . . redeat*, instead of defining or restricting the antecedent *principes*, refers to it as an indefinite class, 'men (not 'the men') to whose decision'; hence the subj. of characteristic.

135, 8. *eorum iudicio*: 'in their judgment'; <sup>1</sup> *eorum* means the Gauls. — *quorum*: has the same antecedent as *qui*; see on l. 7.

135, 9. *summa . . . redeat*: 'the chief control . . . is referred.'

135, 10. *Id*: 'this practice.' — *eius rei causa*: 'to the end,' explained by the appositive clause of purpose *ne . . . egeret*. Note the sequence <sup>2</sup> of *egeret*, depending on the perf. infin. *institutum* [esse].

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	480 (424)	650	418 (253)	397	226
2	548 (495, iv)	809	485, j & N. (287, i; 336, B, N. 2)	518	268, 2

- 135, 11. *auxili*: with a verb of want.<sup>1</sup>  
 135, 13. *si faciat*: fut. condition of the less vivid form.<sup>2</sup>  
 135, 14. *ratio*: 'system.'—*est*, etc.: 'exists in general throughout all Gaul'; *Galliae* is pred. poss. gen. with *est*.<sup>3</sup>  
 135, 15. *divisae sunt*: see on *est* . . . *divisa*, 51, 1.  
 135, 16. CHAPTER 12. *Cum*: with the indic., dating, or defining the time of, the main action.<sup>4</sup>  
 135, 18. *Hi*: 'the latter.'  
 135, 19. *antiquitus*: the Haedui owed much of their influence to the Romans, with whom they formed an alliance about 123 B.C.  
 135, 21. *Ariovistum*: a German king, who entered Gaul in 61 B.C. to assist the Sequani against their more powerful rivals, the Haedui. The Haedui appealed to Rome for aid, but without success until Caesar, in the first year of his governorship (58 B.C.), after his defeat of the Helvetii, took up their cause and expelled the Germans from Gaul. See summary of Book I, p. 249.  
 136, 5. *iurare*: sc. *eos* as subject, meaning the Haedui. — *consili*: for its position, see on *quid* . . . *vectigalis*, 133, 7.  
 136, 6. *occupatam possiderent*: 'seized and kept possession of.'  
 136, 8. *Diviciacus*: see on *principatum*, 53, 11. He went to Rome in 61 B.C.  
 136, 9. *infecta re*: 'without success.'  
 136, 10. *facta*, etc.: 'there came a change of circumstances.' Translate all these abls. abs. as coördinate independent sentences.  
 136, 14. *reliquis rebus*: begin a new sentence, 'In all other respects too'; abl. of specification.  
 136, 16. *quos quod*, etc.: 'and because it was understood that they were equally (with the Haedui) in favor with Caesar.'  
 136, 18. *se* . . . *dicabant*: 'attached themselves as dependents to the Remi.'  
 136, 20. *repente collectam*: *i.e.* within the five years since Caesar came into Gaul.  
 136, 21. *Eo* . . . *statu*: 'in such a condition'; pred. abl. of quality.  
 136, 23. CHAPTER 13. *aliquo* . . . *numero*: 'of some account.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	458, 2 (410, v, 1)	594	356 & N. (223 & N.)	383, 1	212, 1
2	576 (509)	936	516, 2 & 6 (307, 2 & 6)	596, 1	303
3	447 (401)	556	343, 6 (214, c)	366 & R. 1	198, 3
4	600, 1 (521, 1)	856	545 (323, 325)	580	288, A

- 136, 25. *quae*: 'being a class which.'
- 136, 26. *nulli*, etc.: 'is admitted to no consultation.'
- 136, 29. *quibus*: dat. of poss., 'and they have over them,' etc.
- 137, 2. *druidum*: 'that of the druids.' For the gen., cf. *millium*, 105, 27, and see note.—*Illi*: 'the former.'
- 137, 5. *disciplinae causa*: 'for instruction' in the system of the druids.
- 137, 6. *hi*: the druids. — *eos*: the Gauls.
- 137, 7. *quod*: indef. adj. pron.,<sup>1</sup> with *facinus*.
- 137, 9. *idem*: 'they likewise.'<sup>2</sup>
- 137, 10. *qui*: 'any,' adj. like *quod*, l. 7. — *decreto*: loc. abl.
- 137, 11. *sacrificiis*: abl. of separation.
- 137, 12. *Quibus*: dat. of essential complement or indir. obj., used regularly with the impers. pass. of intr. vbs.;<sup>3</sup> 'those who are thus excluded.'
- 137, 13. *his*: dat. of optional complement, expressing disadvantage;<sup>4</sup> 'all move away from them.'
- 137, 14. *quid*: indef. subst. pron.; cf. *quod*, l. 7.
- 137, 18. *qui*: as a subst. *quis* is commoner; cf. l. 10.
- 137, 25. *Disciplina*: 'the system,' i.e. of the druids.—in *Britannia*: Tacitus (*Agricola*, 11) implies, on the contrary, that the system was introduced into Britain from Gaul. Which view is correct cannot be determined. Britain, being less exposed to foreign influences, doubtless retained a purer form of the system than Gaul.
- 138, 1. CHAPTER 14. in *disciplinam conveniunt*: 'come together to study the system.'
- 138, 3. *ibi*: in the druids' school. — *versuum*: their instructions could be more easily learned in verse than in prose.
- 138, 4. *vicanos*: English, with less exactness, uses the cardinal numeral.
- 138, 5. *ea*: 'these instructions.' — *litteris*: 'to writing.' — *cum*: concessive.
- 138, 6. *rationibus*: 'transactions.' — *Graecis*: see on *litteris*, 71, 2.
- 138, 9. *litteris*: see on *tempore*, 98, 17.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	512, 1 (455, 1)	287	149 & b (104, a)	107, 1	91
2	508, 3 (451, 3)	1059	298, b (195, e)	310	248, 1
3	426, 3 (384, 5)	530, end	372 (230)	217	187, ii, b
4	427 (385, 2)	537	381 (229)	350, 2	188, 2, d

138, 10. *accidit ut*, etc.: this is just as true now as it was then.

138, 13. *transire*: the doctrine of the transmigration of souls is still held by the Buddhists.

138, 14. *excitari*: *impers.*, 'men are spurred on.'

138, 18. CHAPTER 15. *Alterum . . . equitum*: see 137, 1 f.

138, 21. *uti . . . propulsarent*: 'either they themselves inflicting wrongs or warding off wrongs inflicted upon them'; a clause of result in apposition with *quod*.

138, 22. *ut quisque . . . ita*, etc.: 'the more distinguished one of them is . . . the more,'<sup>1</sup> etc.

138, 23. *ambactos*, etc.: cf. the great body of slaves and retainers brought by Orgetorix to his trial, 53, 26 ff.

138, 24. *Hanc unam*, etc.: 'this is the only . . . which they know.'

138, 29. CHAPTER 16. *homines immolant*: if we consider other cruel Gallic practices related by Caesar, this statement appears credible enough. Even at Rome as late as 216 B.C. a human sacrifice was allowed on one occasion, although Livy, who tells about it (22, 57), takes pains to add that this was not a Roman custom.

139, 3. *habent instituta*: see on *coactum habebat*, 61, 6.

139, 4. *simulacra*: probably huge images of wickerwork in human form.

139, 6. *quibus*: *i.e.* the *simulacra*.

139, 7. *furto*: in England till the eighteenth century theft was punishable with death.

139, 11. CHAPTER 17. *Mercurium, Apollinem* (l. 15), etc.: Caesar means to say merely that the Gallic gods had attributes similar to those of the Roman gods mentioned, not that they were known by these names.

139, 13. *itinerum*: 'of journeys,' *i.e.* he not only points out the way, but also accompanies the traveler.

139, 20. *cum*: see on 119, 24. — *ceperint*: 'they shall succeed in taking,' implied indir. disc. for fut. perf. indic. of the actual vow.

139, 25. *religione*: 'religious obligation.' — *posita*: 'what has been deposited' in consecrated places.

139, 28. CHAPTER 18. *ab Dite*: the god of the lower world. Apparently they believed themselves sprung from the soil. See on 127, 8.

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 515, 5 (458, 2)	889	Cf. 313, 6, N. 1 (cf. 93, c, end)	642, R. 2	Cf. 252, 5, c

139, 30. *Ob eam causam*: *i.e.* because they were descended, as they thought, from the god who ruled the world of darkness and night.

140, 1. *noctium*: the Germans, too, reckoned time by nights instead of by days (Tacitus, *Germania*, 11). Our words 'fortnight' and 'sennight' are relics of the custom. Primitive peoples mark time by the changes of the moon rather than of the sun.

140, 2. *ut . . . subsequatur*: *i.e.* the calendar day began at sunset.

140, 6. *filium . . . adsistere*: 'for a son to appear'; the clause is subject of *esse* implied, *turpe* being a pred. adj.

140, 8. CHAPTER 19. *Viri, etc.*: 'husbands, upon receiving property from their wives as a dowry, take an equal amount from their own possessions and, after an appraisal, add it to the dowry in a common fund.' Of course this custom could not be observed among the poor.

140, 12. *uter . . . superavit*: 'whichever of them has outlived the other.'—*vita*: abl. of specification.

140, 14. *vitae . . . potestatem*: so the Roman head of a household had the power of life and death over all his family.

140, 15. *inlustriore loco natus*: 'of higher rank'; *loco* is abl. of source.

140, 16. *si . . . venit*: 'if it looks suspicious.'

140, 17. *de uxoribus, etc.*: 'they hold an investigation of the wives.' This looks as if polygamy was practiced among the Gallic, as we know it was among the German, nobles.

140, 18. *si compertum est*: *impers.*, 'if there is a discovery.'

140, 20. *pro cultu*: 'considering the civilization.'—*magnifica, etc.*: apparently the modern Frenchman comes honestly by his love of show.

140, 21. *vivis, etc.*: 'were dear to them when alive.'—*ignem*: burial of the dead was also practiced among the Gauls, although apparently it was less common than cremation. Graves have been excavated in which were found armor, rings, vases, and bones of animals.

140, 22. *supra hanc memoriam*: 'before our time.'

140, 23. *iustis, etc.*: 'after the regular funeral service was finished.'

140, 25. CHAPTER 20. *Quae civitates*: 'those states which'; the antecedent is an implied *vae civitates*, subject of *habent*.—*commodius*: 'to best advantage.'

140, 26. *habent, etc.*: 'have it established by law'; *sanctum* is pred. adj. agreeing with the clauses *uti . . . communicet*, which are objs. of *habent*.

140, 27. *quis, quid, quo* (l. 29): *subst.*; see on *qui*, 137, 18.

- 140, 28. *acceperit*: implied indir. disc. for fut. perf. of the actual law.
- 140, 29. *neve*: the regular particle to connect two purpose clauses if the second is negative.—*quod . . . cognitum est*: see 103, 5 ff.
- 141, 2. *quae visa sunt*: 'what they see fit.'
- 141, 4. *per concilium*: 'in the council.'
- 141, 6. CHAPTER 21. *druides*: it is certain that the Germans had priests, although their powers were not so extensive as those of the druids.—*qui . . . praesint*: 'to have charge of,' rel. clause of purpose.
- 141, 9. *Solem*, etc.: probably Caesar was mistaken in this. Tacitus, writing 150 years later, mentions several other gods (*Germania*, 9), some of whom may, to be sure, have been introduced into Germany after Caesar's time. In most matters the accounts of Caesar and Tacitus agree.
- 141, 11. *Vita*, etc.: with this account, to l. 26, cf. 100, 14-101, 4, where the Suebi are described.
- 141, 12. *a parvis*: 'from childhood.'
- 141, 14. *hoc*: 'by this means.'—*nervos*: not 'nerves.'
- 141, 16. *in . . . rebus*: 'they regard as disgraceful.'
- 141, 18. *magna . . . nuda*: abl. abs.
- 141, 20. CHAPTER 22. *Agri culturae*: though they were not devoted to agriculture, yet they pursued it to some extent; see 100, 13.
- 141, 23. *in annos singulos*: 'for a year at a time.'
- 141, 24. *gentibus cognationibusque*: 'to families and clans.'—*quique*: sc. *his* as antecedent, 'and to those who.'
- 141, 25. *quantum . . . agri*: 'the quantity of land and the location which they see fit.'
- 141, 26. *alio*: adv.
- 141, 27. *ne*, etc.: the subj. clauses are in apposition with *causas*.—*adsidua consuetudine*: 'by a permanent way of living.'—*agri cultura*: 'for agriculture'; abl. of price.<sup>1</sup>
- 142, 3. *pecuniae*, etc.: cf. I *Timothy* 6, 10, "The love of money is the root of all evil."
- 142, 4. *animi aequitate*: 'owing to their contentment,' explained by the causal clause *cum . . . videat*.
- 142, 6. CHAPTER 23. *laus*: 'title to praise'; cf. 101, 20 ff.
- 142, 7. *finibus*: 'the border lands.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	478, 4 (422, N. 2)	652	417, 6 (252, c)	404, N. 1	225

142, 8. *Hoc*: 'it,' explained by the appositive infin. clauses, 'for their neighbors to,' etc.

142, 10. *hoc*: 'by this means.'

142, 12. *qui* . . . *praesint*: as in 141, 6 f.

142, 14. *principes*: they were elected in the assembly (*Germania*, 12).

142, 15. *minuunt*: 'settle.'

142, 16. *Latrocinia*, etc.: this principle prevails in all semicivilized communities.

142, 17. *cuiusque*: 'any.'

142, 18. *ubi*: 'whenever,' see on *cum*, 119, 24. — *quis*: as in 140, 27.

142, 19. *ducem*: *i.e.* of a freebooting expedition. — *qui* . . . *profiteantur*: 'that those who wish to follow are to hand in their names,' indir. disc. for *qui* . . . *volunt profiteantur*<sup>1</sup> (hortatory). Note the primary sequence depending on the perfect definite<sup>2</sup> (*dixit*), which in statements of customary or repeated action may often be best translated as present.

142, 23. *omniumque*, etc.: 'and in all matters henceforth confidence is withheld from them.'<sup>3</sup>

143, 1. CHAPTER 24. *trans Rhenum*: it is now generally believed that the Gallic peoples which in Caesar's time were east of the Rhine had not migrated from Gaul, but had remained there when most of their kinsmen moved farther westward.

143, 2. *circum* . . . *silvam*: *i.e.* in southern Germany.

143, 4. *Volcae Tectosages*: the larger part of this tribe had settled in southern Gaul, and were at this time included in the Roman province, north of the Pyrenees.

143, 6. *iustitiae, laudis*: for the case, see on *belli*, 52, 21; 'reputation for justice and achievement in war.'

143, 9. *provinciarum*: the Roman provinces, Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul.

143, 10. *multa*: dir. obj. of *largitur*, *Gallis* being indir. obj. — *ad* . . . *usus*: 'contributing to their abundance and their advantages.'

143, 12. *ipsi*: the Gauls, *illis* meaning the Germans.

143, 15. CHAPTER 25. *latitudo*: from north to south. — *iter*: acc. of extent, cf. 103, 24. — *expedito*: 'for an unencumbered traveler.'<sup>4</sup>

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	642 (523, iii)	1023	588, a (339, R.)	652	316
2	546 (492, 2, N. 1)	785	485, a (287, a)	509, 2 (b)	Cf. 268, 1
3	427 (385, ii, 2)	539	381 (229)	345, R. 1	188, 2, d
4	425, 4 (384, ii, 1, 2)	537	376 (235)	350, 1	188, 1

143, 17. *ab*: see on *a*, 51, 16.

143, 18. *recta . . . regione*: 'straight on in the direction of,' etc. This vast forest extended from the Rhine, through southern Germany and Austria-Hungary, to the Carpathian Mountains.

143, 20. *diversis . . . regionibus*: 'in a different direction from,' etc.

143, 22. *huius*: 'this part of,' *i.e.* western. — *qui . . . dicat*: 'who can say,' subj. of characteristic.

143, 23. *initium*: on the east; we should say 'the end.' — *cum*: concessive.

143, 25. *quae* (also in 26): 'such as,' introducing characteristic clauses. — *reliquis*: 'any other.'

143, 26. *memoriae prodenda*: 'worthy to be recorded.'

143, 27. *haec*: 'the following.'

144, 1. CHAPTER 26. *cervi figura*: 'with the shape of a stag'; abl. of quality, with a limiting gen. instead of an adj.

144, 2. *unum cornu*: it is probable that Caesar is trying to describe the reindeer, which once roamed as far south as Germany. But he cannot have seen the animal, except perhaps in a profile view, for otherwise he would not have given it only one horn.

144, 3. *ab eius summo*: 'at the end of it.'

144, 4. *palmae ramique*: 'palms and branches.' The horns of the reindeer are partly palmate, *i.e.* flat like the palm of the hand, with projections like fingers.

144, 5. *natura*: most other deer have horns only in the male. The horns of the female reindeer are, however, smaller than those of the male.

144, 7. CHAPTER 27. *alces*: the European elk is closely related to the American moose. The American elk, or *wapiti*, is a different animal.

144, 8. *varietas*: 'variety in color.'

144, 9. *mutilae*, etc.: 'and they have mutilated horns.' This statement is not inapplicable to irregular palmate antlers, with their short projections. See Fig. 26.

144, 10. *crura*, etc.: the following fairy tale seems peculiar from a man of Caesar's common sense, but it is always easy to believe strange yarns from a new country. The story appears again in more than one Roman writer. — *sine . . . articulis*: the animal's clumsy gait doubtless led to this notion.

144, 11. *adfectae*: 'thrown down.'

144, 12. *sese*: belongs with both *infin.*, which mean about the same thing; translate 'rise to a standing position.'

145, 4. *omnes*: limits *arbores*. — *ab*: as in 143, 17.

145, 5. *tantum ut*, etc.: 'but not too far for them to retain perfectly the appearance of standing firmly' (lit., 'only so far that the utmost appearance of them standing is left').

145, 6. *Huc*: 'against them.'

145, 9. CHAPTER 28. *uri*: just what animal Caesar was trying to describe is uncertain. It may have become extinct. Doubtless the account is far from accurate, as Caesar probably saw none of the animals described.

145, 11. *specie*, etc.: cf. *cervi figura*, 144, 1.

145, 16. *relatis . . . cornibus*: 'display the horns publicly.' — *quae sint*, etc.: 'as evidence'; cf. *qui praesint*, 141, 6 f.

145, 18. *ne . . . excepti*: 'not even if they are very young when caught.'

145, 20. *ab labris*: 'at the brim.' Horns were still used as drinking-cups in the Middle Ages.

## BOOK SEVENTH

**Campaign of 52 B.C.** — [This was the most decisive of Caesar's campaigns in Gaul. A widespread revolt was planned during the winter of 53–52 B.C. Many of the Gallic nobles were enraged by Acco's execution (see end of summary of Book VI, p. 356). The time appeared to be favorable, too, for an outbreak, because political disturbances in Rome seemed likely to detain Caesar in his Cisalpine province.]

Vercingetorix, a young Arvernian chief, the most distinguished patriot and leader that ancient Gaul produced, soon became the moving spirit of the insurrection. Most of the states of western Gaul rallied to his standard. His purpose was to invade the Roman province, win over as many of the provincials as possible, and cut off Caesar from his legions in the north.

This scheme was thwarted by Caesar's characteristic swiftness of action. Returning from Italy, he planted garrisons along the frontier of the province, crossed the Cévennes in the dead of winter, spreading dismay among the Arverni, and slipped away to his legions before the Gauls could offer the least opposition. Mobilizing his whole army at

Sens (Agedincum), in the Senonian country, he set out to find Vercingetorix, capturing several towns on the way and arranging for as large a supply of provisions as he could get in the winter. He first crossed swords with Vercingetorix in a cavalry skirmish in which he gained the victory. The Gallic leader thereupon adopted the policy of avoiding a battle and conquering the Romans by starvation, urging his countrymen to burn all their towns and granaries. Avaricum, a strongly fortified town of the Bituriges, which was defended, although against his advice, was captured by the Romans after a heroic defense, and he led his army away to Gergovia, the capital of his own people.]

Caesar undertook to besiege Gergovia, but, as the rebellion was gaining strength and there was danger that he might be hemmed in, he soon sought a way of retiring without giving the appearance of flight. He had an opportunity in a few days to storm the enemy's outworks, but the overwhelming numbers of the Gauls quickly turned a momentary success into a repulse, and after a day or two of cavalry skirmishes, in which the Romans had the advantage, he led his army away to join Labienus, who with four legions was carrying on a successful campaign round Paris (Lutetia).

[The disaster before Gergovia was the only defeat suffered by the Romans when under Caesar's personal command, during the entire war. Caesar's prestige was broken, and all the states of Celtic and Belgic Gaul, except the Remi, Lingones, and Treveri, joined the confederacy against him. Vercingetorix was elected commander-in-chief. In the territory of the Lingones he was defeated in a cavalry battle and retired to Alesia, a stronghold of the Mandubii, which he had chosen as his base. Caesar, having united his ten legions, at once set to work to shut up the Gallic army in the town.]

The campaign round Alesia was the most remarkable of the whole war. Caesar encircled the town with a line of forts and camps eleven miles in length. He also defended himself against attacks, either from the town or from without, by an elaborate series of trenches, buried spikes, and earthworks. When Vercingetorix found his position growing desperate, he sent to all the states of Gaul, begging them to despatch an army to his relief. Upon the arrival of the relieving army, numbering over 250,000 men, three fierce battles were fought in rapid succession, all of which resulted favorably to the Romans. The army of relief dispersed and great numbers of them were captured or killed in their flight.

Nothing remained for the besieged but to surrender. Their arms were given up and one captive was handed over to each of Caesar's soldiers as booty.

Vercingetorix, as is related by other writers, although Caesar himself says nothing of it, was kept in prison at Rome for six years, when he was exhibited as one of the most brilliant trophies in Caesar's triumph. He was then put to death.

Caesar made his headquarters for the winter at Bibracte, the Haeduan capital. His legions were distributed where they could best protect his friends and restrain the disloyal.

PAGE 146, LINE 1. CHAPTER 43. After the capture of Avaricum (see summary, end of first bracket, p. 365) Caesar sent Labienus with four legions northward to engage the confederates who had collected among the Senones and the Parisii. He himself with six legions followed Vercingetorix to Gergovia, the capital of the Arverni. There he established his large camp southeast of Gergovia. A few days later he dislodged a weak garrison of the enemy from the precipitous hill, the Roche Blanche, south of the town, and posted two legions there, facilitating intercourse between his large and small camps by digging two parallel trenches from one to the other.

**Ipse**: Caesar. — **maiores . . . motum**: the Haedui, the strongest state in Gaul (136, 21 f.) and long friendly to Rome (see on 135, 19), were plotting rebellion, and Caesar knew that their example would lead many other tribes to follow suit.

146, 3. **a**: 'from the neighborhood of,' so with names of towns.<sup>1</sup>

146, 4. **contraheret**: *i.e.* unite his six legions with the four under Labienus. — **ne . . . videretur**: neg. clause of purpose, 'without his departure seeming,' etc.

146, 7. CHAPTER 44. **Haec**: *i.e.* the plans just mentioned.

146, 8. **bene . . . rei**: 'of success.' — **minora castra**: on the Roche Blanche.

146, 9. **operis**: 'works,' the Roman defenses.

146, 10. **collem**: the part of the Heights of Risolles marked *A* on the plan.

146, 11. **hominibus**: abl. of separation.

146, 14. **Constabat inter omnes**: 'all agreed in reporting.'

146, 15. **dorsum . . . eius iugi**: 'the top of that ridge,' connecting

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 462, 3 (412, 3, N.)	606	428, a (258, a, N. 1)	391, R. 1	329, 2

Risolles with Gergovia, marked *C* on the plan. The Gauls were fortifying the western side of the ridge, where alone it was accessible. Consequently they were not visible from the Roche Blanche.

146, 17. *alteram*: 'the farther' (from the Roman camp), the west side.

146, 18. *nec iam aliter sentire . . . quin . . . viderentur*: 'and they had no other thought, now that one hill had been seized by the Romans, than that if they should lose another, they would be seen to have been,' etc. *Nec aliter sentire* is equivalent to *nec dubitare*, hence the use of *quin*.<sup>1</sup>

146, 19. *omni exitu et pabulatione*: 'every possibility of going out to forage.' On the north the hill of Gergovia was too precipitous to be passable.

148, 2. CHAPTER 45. *eo*: *i.e.* to the west side of the ridge which the Gauls were fortifying.

148, 3. *tumultuosius*: 'more noisily than usual,' so as to attract the enemy's attention. The movements described in ll. 1-14 were only a diversion. Caesar's real purpose was to raid the Gallic camp when it had been left defenseless by the rallying of the Gauls to protect the western approaches. He thought that, if this plan succeeded, he could withdraw from Gergovia without losing prestige.

148, 4. *impedimentorum*: 'beasts of burden.'

148, 5. *stramenta*: 'pack-saddles,' which were not adapted for riding.

148, 6. *cassidibus*: accompaniment. — *specie*, etc.: manner.

148, 7. *collibus circumvehi*: 'to ride round (to the west side of Risolles) over the hills.' *Collibus* is abl. of means, denoting the route taken.

148, 9. *easdem . . . regiones*: *i.e.* to the west of Risolles.

148, 11. *neque*: 'and yet . . . not.' — *tanto spatio*: abl. abs., 'at so great a distance.' — *certi quid esset*: 'what it really meant'; *certi* is partit. gen.

148, 12. *eodem iugo*: the same in constr. and meaning as *collibus*, l. 7. This legion probably halted not far from the present village of Chano-nat.

148, 14. *illo*: cf. *eo*, l. 2.

148, 17. *raros*: 'in small groups.'

148, 21. *ne . . . progrediantur*: complementary or substantive clause

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
I 595, 1 (504, 3, 2)	913	558, a (332, 6, R.)	555, 2	295, 3, a

of purpose, depending on *contineant*,<sup>1</sup> 'restrain the soldiers from advancing,' etc.

148, 22. *incommodi*: partit. gen. with *quid*.

148, 23. *occasionis*: pred. gen. of possession, 'that it is a question of opportunity, not of battle.' The absence of the Gauls from their camp gave an opportunity to raid it, but the superiority of the enemy in numbers and the nature of the ground were not favorable for a battle.

148, 27. CHAPTER 46. *recta regione*: 'in a straight line.'—*si . . . intercederet*: 'if there were no windings in the route,' a condition of action non-occurrent or contrary to fact.<sup>2</sup> The apodosis *aberat*, expressing a fact independent of the protasis, takes the indicative.

148, 28. *MCC* = *mille ducentos*.—*huc*: 'to this,' *i.e.* to the distance of 1200 paces.—*circuitus*: partit. with *quicquid*.

148, 29. *A medio*, etc.: 'about half-way up the hill.'

148, 30. *in longitudinem*, *ut . . . ferebat*: 'lengthwise of the mountain' ('along the length according to the nature [*i.e.* form] of the mountain'; see *Vocab.*, s.v. *fero*, for similar idioms).

149, 1. *VI pedum*: 'six feet high'; gen. of quality.

149, 2. *inferiore*, etc.: the part of the sidehill below the six-foot wall.

149, 4. *densissimis castris*: the contingent of each state had its own separate camp. As there were many states represented and the space between the wall of the town and the outer wall (*VI pedum murus*) was but little over half a mile wide, the camps were crowded closely together.

149, 5. *munitionem*: the six-foot wall.

149, 6. *trinis*: 'three.'<sup>3</sup>—*castris*: see on *imperio*, 52, II.

149, 9. *nuda*: he had taken off his breastplate.

149, 11. CHAPTER 47. *id quod*, etc.: the raiding of the camp; see on *tumultuosius*, 148, 3.—*animo*: loc. abl.

149, 12. *decimae*: Caesar's favorite Tenth was stationed as a reserve on the west slope of the hill on which Merdogne village (or Gergovie) now stands; see 10th legion, 1st position, on the plan. From this point Caesar had a view of the Gallic camps several hundred yards distant across a valley.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	566 (498)	898	558, <i>δ</i> (331, <i>ε</i> , 2)	548	295, 3
2	579, 1 (570, N. 2)	938	517, <i>α</i> (308, <i>α</i> )	597, R. I	304, 2
3	164, 3 (174, 2, 3)	1081	137, <i>δ</i> (95, <i>δ</i> )	97, R. 3	81, 4, <i>δ</i>

149, 14. *reliquarum*: the raiders. — *non audito*: translate as a finite verb with *militēs* as subject, and begin a new sentence with *tamen*.

149, 16. *retinebantur*: conative use of the imperf., 'an effort was made to hold them back.'

149, 19. *neque . . . prius . . . quam*: see on 93, 17.

149, 20. *muro*: the course of this wall and the positions of the gates, as well as the outlines of Caesar's large and small camps and the parallel trenches connecting them, have been discovered by excavations conducted under the direction of the Emperor Napoleon III.

149, 23. *aberrant*: *i.e.* from the south side of town.

149, 27. *neu . . . ne . . . quidem . . . abstinere*: 'and not refuse to spare even women,' etc. For *neu*, see on *neve*, 140, 29. — *Avarici*: of the 40,000 men, women, and children in Avaricum at the time of its capture (see summary, end of first bracket, p. 365), only 800 escaped massacre.

149, 29. *per manus demissae*: 'let down by the hands of friends' (who were on the wall).

149, 30. *quem . . . dixisse*: subject of *constabat*; translate, 'who, as all agreed in reporting, said among his men,' etc.

150, 1. *Avaricensibus praemiis*: Caesar had offered rewards to those who should be the first to scale the walls of Avaricum. Fabius hoped that similar rewards might be given here.

150, 2. *prius*: adv., 'before him.'

150, 6. CHAPTER 48. *alteram*: as in 146, 17.

150, 7. *supra*: in 146, 20 f.

150, 8. *primo*: adv.

150, 11. *Eorum*, etc.: 'each one of them as soon as he had come'; they did not wait to come in a body. — *sub*: 'at the foot of,' and on the outside of the wall.

150, 15. *passum capillum*: a sign of grief.

150, 17. *cursu*: they had run more than a mile up a steep ascent.

150, 18. *non facile . . . sustinebant*: 'they could not easily withstand.'

150, 21. CHAPTER 49. *castris*: dat. of interest; *praesidio* is dat. of purpose.

150, 22. *sub . . . colle*: at the foot of the Roche Blanche. The detachment under Sextius was to attack the enemy's right wing in case they pursued the Romans down the hill from Gergovia. The tenth legion was to attack the enemy's left.

150, 24. *vidisset*: implied indir. disc., representing a fut. perf.; see on *habuerit*, 53, 10.—*quo minus*: depending on *terreret*, which is equiv. to a verb of hindering; <sup>1</sup> translate as if *hostes* were the obj. of *terrere*, 'frighten the enemy from pursuing.'

150, 25. *progressus*: Caesar moved down the hillside a short distance so as to be in position to attack the enemy's left and to support his own troops if they should flee. See on the plan (p. 147) 10th legion, 2d position.

150, 28. CHAPTER 50. *loco*, etc.: see on *tempore*, 98, 17.

150, 29. *ab latere . . . aperto*: 'on our men's exposed flank'; *nostris* is dat. of optional complement, expressing disadvantage ('exposed for our men').

150, 30. *manus*: *i.e.* of the enemy.

151, 1. *miserat*: see 148, 25.—*similitudine armorum*: 'from the resemblance of their arms to those of the enemy.'

151, 2. *dextris . . . exsertis*: pred. abl. of quality, sc. *esse*; 'to have the right shoulders uncovered.'

151, 3. *insigne pactum*: 'the sign agreed upon,' *i.e.* to designate friendly Gauls.

151, 6. *Fabius*, etc.: see 149, 30.

151, 9. *excidere*: 'to cut away,' so as to gain an entrance. Apparently only Fabius and his three comrades scaled the wall.

151, 12. *quidem*: translated only by emphasizing *vestrae*.

151, 13. *quos*: the antecedent is implied in *vestrae*.

151, 19. *post paulum*: adverbs, 'a little later.'

151, 20. *ac . . . fuit*: 'but he saved his men'; *i.e.* by engaging the enemy until they had time to escape.

151, 21. CHAPTER 51. *cum . . . premerentur*: 'being hard pressed on every side'; see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29.

151, 22. *amissis*: 'with a loss of.'

151, 24. *aequiore loco*: in the plain northeast of the Roche Blanche; see on the plan (p. 147), 10th legion, 3d position.

151, 26. *eductae*: see 150, 20 ff.

151, 27. *superiorem*: *i.e.* higher on the slope of the Roche Blanche than their first position; see on the plan, Sextius, 2d position.—*Legiones*: the raiding legions, which had been pursued down the hill from Gergovia.

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 568, 8 (497, ii, 2)	909	558, 6 (331, e, 2)	549	295, 3

151, 30. *reduxit*: Vercingetorix was unwilling to risk a battle on level ground. — *minus DCC*: = *minus septingenti*; the construction of words denoting number is often not affected by *minus*, *amplius*, etc.; see on *equites*, 105, 28.

152, 5. CHAPTER 52. *recipiendi*: the gerund of this vb. occurs rarely, where we should expect the gerundive with the refl. *sui*.

152, 7. *quod . . . sensisset*: 'a thing which he himself had understood,' etc.

152, 8. *sine dūce*: with *deprehensis*, 'caught without a leader.' This refers to an occasion when Vercingetorix had gone away from his army without leaving any officer in charge. The Roman troops were eager to attack, but Caesar refused because of the secure position of the enemy.

152, 11. *quos . . . potuisset*: a clause of characteristic, while *admiraretur* is subj. merely because it is in a subordinate clause of indir. disc.

152, 14. *reprehendere*: an independent clause of indir. disc.; sc. *se* as subject.

152, 18. CHAPTER 53. *ad extremam*, etc.: 'towards the end of' his speech.'

152, 20. *quod . . . attulisset*: implied indir. disc.

152, 22. *ante*: see 146, 1 ff.

152, 26. *atque eo secundo*: 'and that with success.'

152, 27. *satis . . . factum*: Caesar hoped to impress both upon the enemy and his own men that his departure was not a flight. He did not try, however, with this phrase, to cover up the fact of his repulse, for he admits this plainly enough in 151, 21 ff., and 152, 20 f.

154, 1. CHAPTER 69. *oppidum*: Alesia, to which Vercingetorix had retired after being defeated by Caesar's cavalry in the country of the Lingones (see summary of Book VII, second bracket, p. 365), occupied the summit of a precipitous hill, not so high as the plateau of Gergovia, but even more secure from assault. This hill is the modern Mont Auxois, on the southwestern slope of which is the village of Alise-Sainte-Reine.

154, 2. *loco*: loc. abl.,<sup>2</sup> 'in a very elevated position.'

154, 4. *flumina*: the Ose on the north and the Oserain on the south.

154, 5. *planities*: the plain of the Laumes, west of Mont Auxois.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	497, 4 (440, N. 1 & 2)	565	293 (193)	291, R. 2	241, 1
2	485, 2 (425, ii, 2)	626	429, 1 (258, f, 1)	385, N. 1	228, 1, δ

154, 6. *mediocri* . . . *spatio*: 'no great distance away.'

154, 7. *pari altitudinis fastigio*: abl. of quality, limiting *colles*, 'of equal height' (equal to Mont Auxois).

154, 8. *muro*: the wall of Alesia. — *quae pars* . . . *spectabat*: this clause is repeated by *hunc* . . . *locum*; translate, 'that part of the hill facing east had all been filled by forces of the Gauls.'

154, 9. *fossam*: see *PQRS* on the plan, p. 153. The exact position of these defenses of the Gallic camp has been fixed by excavations under the direction of Emperor Napoleon III.

154, 11. *munitionis*: the course of Caesar's lines of contravallation and of circumvallation, for by far the greater part of their length, was determined by Napoleon's excavations.

154, 12. *tenebat*: 'extended.' — *Castra*: traces of four infantry and four cavalry camps and of five redoubts (10, 11, 15, 18, 22, on the plan) have been discovered. The locations of the other redoubts are merely conjectural.

154, 16. CHAPTER 70. *Opere*: the Roman works of l. 11 ff.

154, 18. *supra*: in l. 5.

154, 20. *Germanos*: Caesar had just obtained from Germany important additions to his cavalry force. The German cavalry was much superior to that of the Gauls.

154, 22. *Praesidio*: 'support.' — *nostris*: dat. of interest or reference, expressing advantage;<sup>1</sup> translate, 'of our men.'

154, 24. *angustioribus*: pred. adj., 'as the gates had been left rather narrow.' These gates were in the stone wall inclosing the enemy's camp, *PQRS* on the plan.

155, 2. *munitiones*: the Gallic wall and trench. — *veniri*: *impers.*, 'that the enemy were coming.'

155, 4. *portas*: the gates of the town were closed that the camp might not be left without defenders.

155, 8. CHAPTER 71. *perficiantur*: 'can be finished'; the subj. is used with *priusquam* in clauses representing an act not as accomplished but as anticipated.<sup>2</sup>

155, 10. *suam quisque*: see on *sibi quemque*, 54, 11.

155, 12. *cogant*: the subject is not *quisque*, but all the men who depart; *omnes* is the obj. — *in illos merita* (subst.): 'services to them.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	425, 4, N. (384, 4, N. 2)	538	377 (235, a)	350, 2	188, 1, N.
2	605, 1 (520, 1, 2)	878, cf. 880	551, c (327, a)	577, 1	292, 1, δ

155, 13. *se . . . meritum* (part.): 'him who has best served the interests of their common liberty.'

155, 15. *fuerint*: perf. subj. for fut. perf. of dir. disc.

155, 17. *Ratione inita*: 'by actual calculation.'—*dierum*: gen. of quality.

155, 18. *tolerari*: impers., 'they can hold out.'

155, 19. *qua*, etc.: 'where gaps had been left in our works' (of contravallation).

155, 20. *Frumentum*: *i.e.* in Alesia.

155, 22. *paruerint*: implied indir. disc.; for the tense, cf. *fuerint*, l. 15.

155, 29. CHAPTER 72. *pedum xx*: in breadth.—*derectis*: 'perpendicular,' more fully explained by the result clause. Trenches usually had sloping sides. The object in digging this ditch, which extended only from the Ose to the Oserain, was to protect Caesar's troops at the point where they were most exposed to attack while building their line of contravallation, *i.e.* on the west side of Mont Auxois. Excavations show it to have been about nine feet deep.

155, 30. *solum*: 'the bottom.'

156, 1. *distarent*: subj. of attraction.<sup>1</sup>

156, 2. *pedes cccc*: probably a copyist's mistake for *passus cccc*, as this is the approximate distance between the remains of the twenty-foot trench and of the line of contravallation.—*hoc consilio*: explained by the appositive purpose clauses<sup>2</sup> *ne . . . advolaret . . . possent*.—*tantum . . . spatium*: eleven miles, see 154, 11 f.

156, 3. *esset . . . complexus, cingeretur*: implied indir. disc., being a part of Caesar's thought when he formed his plan.—*totum opus*: the contravallation.

156, 4. *corona*: 'an encircling line,' filling the whole contravallation.

156, 5. *advolaret, possent*: for the change in number, cf. *adeat, cogant*, 155, 10 and 12.

156, 7. *Hoc . . . spatio*: *i.e.* 400 paces, see on *pedes cccc*, l. 2.—*duas fossas*: of these only the inner trench surrounded Alesia, the outer extended merely from the Ose to the foot of the Heights of Flavigny. It was only in the plain that the strongest defenses were required.

156, 8. *altitudine*: the excavations show the depth of both trenches

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	652, 1 (529, ii, N. 1)	793	593 (342)	663, 1	324, 1
2	564, iii (499, 3)	892	561, a (331, headnote)	546, N. 2	294

to have been from eight to nine feet. — *campestribus . . . locis*: 'on the low lands of the plain.' In the rest of its course it was too high to be flooded.

156, 10. *Post*: *i.e.* from the point of view of Alesia. — *aggerem ac vallum*: 'embankment and palisade'; *vallum* alone would have expressed the idea, as its common meaning is a palisaded rampart. — *XII pedum*: the *agger* was probably about nine feet high, and the *valli*, composing the palisade (*vallum*), increased the height some three feet.

156, 11. *loricam*: 'breastwork,' made of interwoven branches and put in front of the palisade to strengthen it. — *pinnae*: 'battlements,' probably made by building the breastwork four or five feet higher at intervals than elsewhere. — *cervis*: 'spreading branches,' planted in the embankment at the foot of the breastwork; see Fig. 28.

156, 12. *pluteorum*: 'screens,' the sections of wickerwork of which the *lorica* was composed.

156, 13. *toto opere*: 'on the whole line of works' round Alesia, see Fig. 31. — *quae . . . distarent*: 'so that they were eighty feet apart,' *rel. clause of result*.<sup>1</sup>

157, 2. CHAPTER 73. *necesse*: pred. adj. with *erat*, the subjects being the three infins. — *deminutis*, etc.: 'and our troops were diminished.'

157, 3. *progrediebantur*: for building material and supplies.

157, 6. *addendum*: impers., 'that an addition ought to be made. — *quo*: see on *quo . . . impedirent*, 73, 17.

157, 10. *perpetuae*: these continuous trenches, parallel with the line of contravallation, surrounded Alesia, being interrupted only where the nature of the ground made such elaborate defenses unnecessary. — *Huc*: 'in these,' the five-foot trenches.

157, 11. *stipites*: including both the *trunci* and the *rami*, l. 8. — *ab infimo revincti*: 'fastened down at the bottom.'

157, 12. *ab ramis eminebant*: 'projected from the ground with their branches only.' — *Quini*: probably the five rows of trunks were in five trenches lying parallel and near together so as to allow the intertwining of the branches. See on *octoni*, 158, 3. — *coniuncti*, etc.: 'joined to one another and intertwined.'

157, 13. *quo*: adv., 'among them,' the rows of sharp branches.

157, 14. *cippos*: 'boundary stakes,' a soldier's joke. See Fig. 28.

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
x 591, 2 (500, 1)	836	537, 2 (319, 2)	631	284, 2

157, 15. *Ante*: towards the town. — in *quincuncem dispositis*: 'arranged in diagonal order,' like dots on the five-spot of dice.

157, 18. *paulatim* . . . *fastigio*: translate, 'with sloping sides and gradually narrowing towards the bottom.' They were about six feet across at the top.

157, 21. *crassitudine*: abl. of quality, the gen. *feminis* taking the place of an adj.

157, 22. *praeusti*: so as to harden the point.

157, 24. *singuli*, etc.: 'a foot of each trunk at the bottom of the pit was packed in firmly trodden earth.' Thus the trunks were left exposed for about two feet of their length, but they were covered over with brush. See Figs. 28 and 29.

158, 3. *octoni*: the distributive denotes that there were eight rows in every section of the contravallation where elaborate defenses were required; cf. *quini*, 157, 12.

158, 6. *taleae*: 'stakes,' buried so that only the iron hooks protruded from the ground. Five of these hooks and 86 pits (*scrobes*), 157, 16, were discovered during the excavations. See Figs. 28 and 30.

158, 10. CHAPTER 74. *regiones*, etc.: 'keeping to as level ground as he could.'

158, 11. *pro*: 'considering.'

158, 12. *pares*, etc.: a line of circumvallation was built to protect the Roman camps from attack by the Gallic army which was being mustered for the relief of Alesia.

158, 13. *diversas ab his*: 'facing the opposite direction from the former.'

158, 17. *habere* . . . *convectum*: see on *coactum habebat*, 61, 6. In spite of Caesar's precautions his army finally suffered so severely from lack of supplies, that four years later the recollection of what they had borne at Alesia encouraged his men to endure without a murmur the still greater hardships of the siege of Pompey near Dyrrachium (210, 22).

159, 2. CHAPTER 75. *non omnes*: subject of *convocandos* [esse]. As usual, *non* is placed immediately before the word it limits.

159, 3. *censuit*: 'urged,' see 155, 11 f.

159, 5. *civitati*: see on *imperat*, 55, 11.

159, 6. *rationem habere*: 'to have any way.'

159, 12. *duodena millia*: note the distributive, 'twelve thousand each.'

159, 21. *Bellovaci*: they took up arms against Caesar the next year, but without success.

159, 24. *pro*: 'in consideration of.'

159, 26. CHAPTER 76. *antea*: see 112, 26 ff., 120, 26, 133, 3.

159, 28. *civitatem*: the Atrebatas.

159, 29. *ipsi*: 'to him himself'; he had been made ruler over the Morini, who were thus punished for their obstinate resistance to Caesar (see 98, 19 ff. and 121, 15 ff.).

159, 30. *universae*: an exaggeration; the Aquitanians (see on *Galliam*, 88, 6), Remi, Lingones, and Treveri (see summary of Book VII, second bracket, p. 365) did not join the uprising.

160, 2. *moveretur*: sc. *Gallia* as subject. — *que*: 'but.'

160, 3. *animo* . . . *incumberent*: 'gave their hearts and their resources to that war.'

160, 4. *CCL*: sc. *millibus*.

160, 5. *haec*: sc. *millia*; translate, 'these troops.'

160, 9. *delecti ex civitatibus*: 'men selected from the states.' This civil advisory board was apparently to act as a check on the military officers. The efficiency of the latter was still further weakened by dividing the command between four men.

160, 11. *ad*; see on *ad*, 55, 10.

160, 13. *arbitraretur*: subj. of characteristic.<sup>1</sup> — *ancipiti proelio*: abl. abs., 'in a battle with two fronts.' — *cum*: 'when.'

160, 14. *eruptione*: abl. of cause, 'there would be fighting due to a sally.' — *pugnaretur, cernerentur*: representing fut. indic. of the actual thought of the Gauls.

160, 17. CHAPTER 77. *die*: for the gender, see on *die*, 53, 25.

160, 18. *quid* . . . *gereretur*: see l. 4 ff.

160, 21. *suppeterent*: implied indir. disc., representing pres. indic. of the opinion as it was expressed in the council.

160, 22. *non praetereunda* [esse]: 'to deserve not to be passed over.'

160, 26. *auctoritatis*: pred. gen. of quality.

160, 29. *mihi res est*: 'my business is.'

160, 30. *omnium* . . . *consensu*: 'as you all agree.'

161, 2. *ista*: a dem. or rel. pron. used as subject of a clause usually agrees in gender and number with a pred. subst. — *posse*: in apposition with *ista*.

161, 3. *Qui*, etc.: 'men to offer,' etc., a clause of characteristic.

161, 5. *tantum* . . . *potest*: 'has such great influence.' — *dignitas*:

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	591, 1 (503, 1)	838	535, 2 (320, 2)	631, 2	283, 2

of those who favor making a sally. — *si . . . viderem*: 'if I saw' (implying 'I do not see').<sup>1</sup>

161, 6. *praeterquam vitae nostrae*: 'except of our lives.'

161, 7. *respiciamus*: hortatory, 'let us,' etc.

161, 8. *millibus LXXX*: see 155, 16.

161, 9. *propinquis*, etc.: dats. of poss. with *fore*.

161, 10. *animi*: with *quid*, 'what heart.'

161, 11. *Nolite . . . exspoliare . . . prosternere . . . subicere*: the commonest form of prohibition.<sup>2</sup>

161, 18. *animi causa*: see 128, 4 f. The enclitic *-ne* is often added to an emphatic word of a question.<sup>3</sup> — *exerceri*: with reflexive force, 'are taking exercise' ('exercising themselves').

161, 19. *illorum*: Gauls in the relieving army.

161, 20. *his*: Romans. — *testibus*: pred. apposition, 'as witnesses,' followed by indir. disc.

161, 23. *Quid ergo*, etc.: 'what then is proposed by my plan?' The answer, *facere*, etc., is subject of *mei consili* (pred. gen. of possession<sup>4</sup>) *est* implied from the question.

161, 24. *Cimbrorum*, etc.: the Cimbri and Teutones were Germanic peoples from the shores of the Baltic and the North Sea, who overran Gaul and Spain, 113-102 B.C. They had planned to invade Italy when they were annihilated by the great Marius, the Teutones in southern Gaul, 102 B.C., and the Cimbri in northern Italy the following year.

161, 29. *institui*, *prodi*: subjects of *esse* implied, *pulcherrimum* being pred. adj., 'for it to be adopted . . . was most glorious.'

161, 30. *illi . . . bello*: dat. of poss., 'what similarity had that war to this?' — *Depopulata*: see on 58, 17.

162, 5. *quos*: a rel. not infrequently precedes its antecedent (here *horum*).

162, 9. *finitimam Galliam*: 'the neighboring part of Gaul,' i.e. the Roman Province.

162, 10. *securibus*: axes were borne before military commanders to symbolize their power of punishing with death.

162, 14. CHAPTER 78. *experiantur*: has the same subject as the

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 579 (510, N. 1)	938	517 (308)	597	304, 1
2 561, 1 (489, 1)	728	450 (269, a, 2)	271, 2	276, c
3 378, 2 (351, 2)	699	332 (210, a)	454 & R. 1	162, 2, c
4 447 (402)	556	343, b (214, c)	366 & R. 1	198, 3

main vb. *constituunt*. — descendant: subj. with *prius quam* of action anticipated.

162, 15. *utendum* [esse]: 'that they must avail themselves,' indir. disc. depending on the idea of saying in *constituunt*. This merely repeats indirectly a declaration of the Gauls, while *ut excedant, experiantur*, is expressed as their purpose. Cf. the impersonal use<sup>1</sup> of the intr. verb *utendum* with the personal use of the transitive *subeundam*.

162, 20. *cibo iuarent*: 'give them food.' Caesar was quite unable to comply with this request, even if he had so desired (see on 158, 17), and these unfortunate victims of one of the cruel necessities of war starved to death, as we are told by another writer, between the Roman lines and the walls of their own city.

162, 24. CHAPTER 79. colle: the heights of Mussy-la-Fosse, south-west of Alesia; see plan, p. 153.

162, 28. *demonstravimus*: in 154, 5.

163, 1. *Concurrunt*: the Gauls in Alesia.

163, 4. *fossam*; the twenty-foot trench, see plan and 155, 29. — *agere*: 'earth.'

163, 6. CHAPTER 80. *exercitu*: i.e. the infantry; the cavalry were sent out to engage the enemy. — *utranique*: the outer and inner lines of defense.

163, 7. *suum quisque*: see on *sibi quemque*, 54, 11.

163, 10. *castris*; see 154, 12 f.

163, 12. *inter equites*, etc.: this idea was borrowed from the Germans, whose cavalry in Caesar's army was always superior to the Gauls'; see l. 25 f. and 154, 20, 24 f.

163, 13. *qui . . . sustinerent*: rel. clauses of purpose.

163, 15. *complures*: of Caesar's cavalry.

163, 18. *qui . . . continebantur*: the besieged.

163, 21. *neque . . . factum*: 'and no brave or cowardly deed.' Participles used as substantives are usually modified by adverbs instead of by adjectives. — *utrosque*: both Gauls and Romans.

163, 24. *Cum . . . pugnaretur*: 'when the battle had been raging' (and was still raging<sup>2</sup>).

163, 27. *sagittarii*: they were not so well trained as the German

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	621, 2 (301, 1)	992	500, 3 (294, c, n.)	427, n. 4	337, 7, δ, 1
2	535, 1 (469, ii, 2)	738	471, δ (277, δ)	234	260, 4

archers, who, as we learn from Caesar, were able in a rout to keep up with the horsemen by taking hold of the horses' manes.

163, 28. *cedentes*: acc.

164, 4. CHAPTER 81. *Uno*: 'a single'; emphasized, as usual. — *Galli*: *i.e.* the relieving force.

164, 5. *cratium*: 'hurdles,' of interwoven branches, with which to cover over the trenches. — *harpagonum*: 'hooks,' on long poles, for tearing down the fortifications.

164, 7. *campestres*: 'in the plain' of the Laumes, referring to Caesar's outer line west of Alesia.

164, 8. *qua*: 'that by this,' introducing a rel. clause of purpose. — *qui . . . obsidebantur*: since this clause merely defines the subject of *possent*, and is not considered as an essential part of the purpose, the verb is not attracted into the subjunctive.

164, 14. *ut . . . attributus*: for the fact, see 163, 7 f.

164, 15. *librilibus*: 'throwing stones of a pound in weight.'

164, 17. *glandibus*: 'lead bullets,' hurled by slings.

164, 18. *tenebris*: this battle was fought between midnight and dawn, see l. 6 and 165, 1.

164, 21. *Antonius*: the famous Mark Antony. He was a lieutenant of Caesar in 52 and 51 B.C., and afterwards in the Civil War.

164, 24: *his*: serves as antecedent of *qua ex parte*, but denotes persons rather than place. The dat. expresses interest, accompanying *auxilio*, which is a dat. of purpose.

164, 26. CHAPTER 82. *Dum*: 'so long as.' — *plus . . . proficiebant*: 'they were more effective' than they were when they came nearer.

164, 28. *stimulis*: see 158, 6 ff. — *scrobes*: see 157, 15 ff.

164, 29. *delati*, etc.: 'falling into the pits were wounded,' by being impaled on the *stipites* (157, 20).

164, 30. *pilis muralibus*: heavier than the ordinary javelin.

165, 2. *aperto*: as often, of the right side, which was not protected by the shield. But see on *ab latere aperto*, 69, 1. — *superioribus*: on the Heights of Flavigny.

165, 3. *interiores*: the besieged Gauls in Alesia.

165, 5. *priores fossas*: the trench twenty feet wide. The pl. refers to different parts of the trench. — *explant*: like *proferunt* depending on *dum*.

165, 7. *appropinquarent*: see on *perficiantur*, 155, 8.

165, 12. CHAPTER 83. *collis*: Mont Réa.

165, 15. *castra*: *D* on the plan, p. 153. Wherever possible the Romans avoided camping near the foot of a hill, as the enemy by seizing the summit could win a great advantage. The lack of this precaution here cost Caesar dear.

165, 19. *numero*: referring only to the relieving army, which numbered, according to 160, 4, about 258,000 men.

165, 20. *quid . . . placeat*: 'what they think best to do, and in what way.'

165, 22. *videatur*: implied indir. disc., representing fut. indic. in the original thought, *adibimus cum meridies esse videbitur*.

165, 27. *ea castra*: of Reginus and Rebilus.

166, 3. CHAPTER 84. *falces*: like the *harpagones* of 164, 5.

166, 7. *locis*: essential complement or indir. obj. of the intr. cpd. vb.

166, 8. *Multum . . . valet*: 'tends greatly.'—*post tergum*: some of the Romans were on the inner line of defense facing the Gauls from Alesia, and some were on the outer line facing the relieving army. The men in each line accordingly felt that their safety depended on the success of their comrades behind them.

166, 9. *pugnantibus*: 'as they are fighting,' dat. of interest or reference.—*periculum*: we should say 'safety.'

166, 12. CHAPTER 85. *locum*: without doubt, on the northwest slope of the Heights of Flavigny, marked *J.C.* on the plan, p. 153.—*quaque*: from *quisque*.

166, 14. *Utrisque*: *i.e.* both Gauls and Romans. For the dat., cf. *pugnantibus*, l. 9. Translate, 'the thought comes to the minds of both armies.'

166, 15. *unum*: 'the one of all.'—*maxime*, etc.: 'there is call for the greatest effort.'

166, 18. *munitiones*: the *castra* of 165, 28.

166, 20. *Iniquum*: see on *castra*, 165, 15.—*ad declivitatem fastigium*: 'downward slope.'

166, 22. *Agger*: earth and other materials thrown on the Roman defenses (*in munitionem coniectus*), covering over the *cippi*, *lilia*, and *stimuli* (157, 8 ff.).

166, 26. CHAPTER 86. *Labienum*: supposed to have been in command of the troops on the Heights of Bussy, northeast of Alesia.

166, 28. *deductis cohortibus*: 'to draw off his cohorts' from the rampart.

166, 29. *eruptione pugnet*: 'make a sally.' The clause is obj. of

*imperat*, with which it is coördinate (not subordinated by *ut*). — *nisi*: belongs with *necessario* only.

167, 2. *Interiores*: as in 165, 3.

167, 3. *munitio*: the *cippi*, etc., which were planted only in the plain. The Roman works on the hills had no need of these additional defenses.

167, 4. *ascensu*: abl. of specification. — *temptant*: the Gauls thought that owing to the lack of *cippi*, etc., the works on the hills might be successfully attacked. The attempt was probably made on the Heights of Flavigny.

167, 5. *propugnantes*: acc.

167, 7. *loricam*: see on 156, 11.

167, 8. CHAPTER 87. *Brutum*: see on 88, 9.

167, 11. *eo*: *i.e.* to the camp on Mont Réa.

167, 13. *circumire exteriores*, etc.: probably the cavalry that were to go round the outer line of defenses marched out from the camp near Grésigny (*G* on the plan, p. 153). The hills prevented their movements from being seen by the enemy. Any such manœuvre attempted from the cavalry camps in the plain (*H, I, K*) would have been frustrated by the Gauls of the relieving army.

167, 18. *faciendum*: *i.e.* to make a sally, in accordance with Caesar's directions in 166, 28 f.

167, 20. CHAPTER 88. *colore*, etc.: the *imperator* wore over his armor the *paludamentum*, a cloak of light purple or scarlet.

167, 21. *insigni*: 'as a distinguishing garb,' in pred. apposition to *quo*.

167, 23. *superioribus*: *i.e.* on Mont Réa above the Roman lines. — *declivia*, etc.: the slopes of Flavigny, from which Caesar came.

167, 25. *excipit*: 'follows.' The shout of the Romans and the Gauls fighting at Mont Réa was taken up by the Romans all along their lines.

167, 26. *Nostri*, etc.: the Romans made a sally, hurling their javelins and then rushing to close quarters to settle the combat with their swords.

167, 27. *equitatus*: the body from camp *G*, see on l. 13. — *cernitur*: *i.e.* by the Gauls.

167, 28. *aliae*: the cohorts with Caesar. — Note the rapidity and the vividness of this closing narrative, expressed by the annalistic presents (see on *civitates*, 53, 6) and by the short disconnected sentences.

168, 3. *Conspicati*: when the subject changes, it is usually expressed,

but here the words *ex oppido* make it clear that the Gauls from Alesia are meant.

168, 7. *Gallorum*: of the relieving army.

168, 8. *Quod nisi*: 'but if . . . not,' see on *quod si*, 60, 15. — *crebris subsidiis*: 'by repeatedly going to the support of each other.'

168, 22. CHAPTER 89. *ad utramque rem*: 'for either fate.'

168, 26. *Vercingetorix*: until 46 B.C. he was kept in prison at Rome. Then after being led as one of the principal trophies in Caesar's triumphal procession he was put to death.

168, 28. *si . . . posset*: indir. quest., 'to see if,' etc.

168, 29. *capita singula*: 'one man apiece.'

169, 2. CHAPTER 90. *recipit*: before this great rebellion the Haedui had been Caesar's firm allies.

169, 8. *huic*: Labienus.

169, 10. *ne quam*, etc.: the Remi, second only to the Haedui in power (136, 22), submitted without opposition to the Romans in the second year of Caesar's governorship, and were one of the few tribes which remained loyal in the outbreak of the present year (see on 159, 30). The Bellovaci were subdued the next year (51 B.C.) after a stubborn resistance.

169, 17. *dierum XX*: see on *dierum XX*, 122, 14. This unusual honor shows that the home government appreciated the importance of this year's victories. The backbone of Gallic resistance to Rome had been broken by the splendid victory of Alesia. In the following year, 51 B.C., although a few states made a gallant struggle for independence, all opposition was finally crushed, and the foundation was securely laid for the complete Romanization of Gaul. Thus France of to-day, like Spain and Italy, is a Latin country, and the French language is one of several daughters of Latin.

## CIVIL WAR

### BOOK FIRST

[Campaign of 49 B.C.—Italy and Spain.—The Civil War (see *Introd.* §§ 12, 13) opened in January, 49 B.C., with Caesar's passage over the Rubicon, the little stream which divided his province of Cisalpine Gaul from Italy. Caesar first made a rapid and victorious march

down the east coast of Italy to Brundisium, whither the Pompeians fled in hot haste with the purpose of mobilizing their forces where, if necessary, they could be most easily transported across the Adriatic. In fact, when Caesar arrived at Brundisium, the consuls and a large part of the army had already sailed to Dyrrachium. Caesar endeavored to blockade Pompey and his remaining troops in the city, but Pompey cleverly effected his escape by sea and joined the consuls in Macedonia (March, 49 B.C.). Being unable to follow without considerable delay owing to lack of ships, Caesar determined to secure the West, where Pompey was hardly less strong than in the East. He first marched to Rome and made himself master of the public funds. Sicily and Sardinia, which supplied Rome with grain, were easily occupied during the summer by two of his lieutenants, Curio and Valerius. Caesar himself hastened to Marseilles (Massilia), which he found supporting the cause of Pompey. Arranging for the siege of this town, the only place in Gaul which took sides against him, he hurried on to Spain, — whither his Gallic legions had already been despatched, — to encounter a strong Pompeian army under Afranius and Petreius. Near Ilerda, in northeastern Spain, he snatched victory from the very jaws of defeat, and the whole peninsula submitted without further opposition (August and September, 49 B.C.). Following the policy he had adopted in Italy at the beginning of the war, Caesar dismissed all the captives, officers and men, some of whom enlisted in his army, while others poorly requited his clemency by joining Pompey in Macedonia.]

## BOOK SECOND

**Campaign of 49 B.C. — Marseilles and Africa.** — [Marseilles (Massilia) held out for about six months (April–October, 49 B.C.). Trebonius, who had distinguished himself in Britain and at Alesia (130, 15, and 164, 22), conducted the siege skillfully and vigorously by land, while Decimus Brutus, who had made a reputation as a naval officer by his cleverness in the war with the Veneti seven years before (88, 9). He also did important service at Alesia, 167, 8), twice defeated the enemy on the sea. Finally the Massiliots were reduced to such straits by their lack of supplies, the weakened condition of their walls, and their despair of receiving help from Pompey, that upon Caesar's arrival from Spain, in October, the town was immediately surrendered. Granting a general pardon Caesar hastened on to Rome.]

Curio, after securing Sicily (see summary of Book I, p. 383), crossed over to Africa to engage the Pompeian forces there under Varus. Meeting at first with the utmost success, he was soon entrapped by the Numidian allies of Varus, and perished with almost all his army (August, 49 B.C.). This was a severe blow to Caesar's cause, not only because it encouraged the enemy, just at the time of their overthrow in Spain, but also because in Curio Caesar lost his ablest political supporter and one of his bravest and most skillful officers.

Apart from this disaster, however, the first year of the war was highly successful for Caesar. The Pompeians, on the other hand, only gained a trifling advantage with their fleet in the upper Adriatic and reduced most of Illyricum. Results so pitifully small, considering Pompey's great superiority by sea, and the power of his name and influence throughout the Roman world, except only in Caesar's provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum, suggest an astonishing degree of mismanagement and confusion in the ranks of the senatorial party.

PAGE 170, LINE 1. CHAPTER 23. *Isdem temporibus: i.e.* during the campaigns in Spain and at Marseilles; see summaries of Books I and II, p. 383. — **Curio**: if Plutarch may be believed (*Life of Pompey*, 58), Caesar won over Curio, who had previously sided with the senatorial party, by paying off his debts. Curio served Caesar well in the controversy with the senate (50 B.C.), accompanied him on the march to Brundisium, and from there was sent to seize Sicily (see summary of Book I, p. 383). A few weeks later, early in August, he sailed from Sicily to Africa. — **Africam**: *i.e.* the district round Carthage, which had been made a province, under the name 'Africa,' in 146 B.C. It comprised the upper eastern part of modern Tunis.

170, 3. **Vari**: a Pompeian officer, whose troops had deserted him and joined Caesar during the triumphal march from the Rubicon to Brundisium. He had fled to Africa, and finding the province without a governor he assumed the office and raised an army of two legions. He accomplished his schemes easily because of his acquaintance in Africa, where he had been governor a few years before.

170, 4. **acceperat**: when he was sent to Sicily.

170, 5. **consumpta**: abl. abs. with *biduo* and *nocte*, agreeing with the nearer subst.

170, 9. **L. Caesar**: a distant relative of Julius Caesar who supported the cause of the senate throughout the war. His father was a lieutenant

of Caesar in Gaul, but after the outbreak of the Civil War he remained at Rome.

170, 10. *ex praedonum bello*: 'just after the pirates' war' of 67 B.C.; see *Introd.* § 22.

170, 11. *reficiendas*: see on *pontem . . . faciendum curat*, 59, 18. These ships would be likely to need rather extensive repairs if they had been lying on the shore eighteen years.

170, 12. *veritus*: with *L. Caesar*. — *ex alto*: he was lying off Clupea (*ad Clupeam*), which is near the end of a promontory running well out to sea. See the plan, p. 171.

170, 14. *Hadrumentum*: on the coast to the south of Clupea.

170, 15. *Longus*: he had been governor of Africa the year before.

170, 16. *Caesaris*: Lucius.

171, 2. *praesidio, navibus*: datives.

171, 6. CHAPTER 24. *Uticam*: capital of the province and headquarters of the Pompeians.

171, 7. *eodem*: adv.

171, 8. *bidui*: probably a mistake. The distance from Anquillaria to the Bagrada, which was nearly seventy miles, could hardly have been covered by infantry in two days.

171, 9. *Rebilum*: he had been with Caesar in Gaul (165, 16). He was one of the few to survive Curio's expedition.

171, 11. *Castra Cornelia*: so called from the elder Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus, who had a camp here in 204 B.C., during the war with Hannibal. Both this place and Utica are now at some distance from the sea owing to changes in the coast line.

171, 12. *Id*: refers to *is locus*, but follows Latin usage in agreeing with the pred. subst. in its own clause.

171, 14. *fastigio*: abl. of quality.

172, 1. *passus mille*: a mistake. The distance is nearly three miles.

172, 2. *quo mare succedit*: 'through which the sea-water comes up.'

172, 5. CHAPTER 25. *muro . . . coniuncta*: 'close to the wall of the town,' hendiadys.

172, 6. *ad portam*: 'near the gate.'

172, 7. *oppido, theatro*: abl. of means, limiting *munita*.

172, 8. *substructionibus*: abl. of cause, limiting the abl. abs. *aditu . . . angusto*. The camp was protected on one side by the wall of the town, on another by the theatre, the substructure of which, supporting

the rising and semicircular rows of seats, was probably built up in two or more tiers of arches. See the illustrations under 'amphitheatre' or 'theatre' in the English dictionaries.

172, 10. *portari atque agi*: 'things were being carried and animals driven.'

172, 11. *viis*: abl. of means, expressing the way by which; 'over crowded roads.'

172, 13. *loco praedae*: 'as booty.'

172, 16. *Iuba*: Juba naturally supported the Pompeians, for his father had been restored to the throne of Numidia by Pompey more than thirty years before. He also had a private grudge against Curio, who, when tribune the year before, had proposed to annex his kingdom to the Roman domain.

172, 24. *pronuntiari*: 'the announcement to be made.'

172, 25. *in . . . loco*: in this meaning *loco* commonly omits *in*, as in l. 13.

173, 1. CHAPTER 26. *in castra*: Rebilus had been left in command, 171, 9 f.

173, 3. *imperator*: this was merely an honorary title given by the soldiers to their commander after an important victory. In the present case a victory trifling in itself may have assumed importance in the eyes of the soldiers as it resulted in their gaining an abundance of supplies from the transports.

173, 7. *rege*: Juba.

173, 13. *possent*: subj. with *priusquam*, of an act anticipated.<sup>1</sup>

173, 15. *equitatuque*, etc.: of the enemy's cavalry; abl. abs. expressing concession.

173, 16. *litora*: for the pl., see on *priores fossas*, 165, 5. — *oppidum*: Utica.

173, 18. CHAPTER 27. *Marsi*: Curio's men were largely from the Marsian and Paelignian districts in central Italy. Enlisted as Pompeians, they joined Caesar on the march to Brundisium.

173, 22. *serviunt*: 'tickle,' by telling what would be welcome news. — *quae volumus*, etc.: the two clauses in parenthesis explain in inverse order (the chiasmic arrangement) the *sive . . . sive* clauses. The centurions thought that Varus would believe in the truth of what he was glad to hear, and they hoped that Curio's soldiers would be as faithless

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 605, ii (520, ii)	880	551, b (327)	577, 1	292, 1, b

as they themselves had been. Cf. *quod fere*, etc., 93, 16 f., and see note.

173, 24. *confirmant quidem certe*: 'make at any rate a positive assertion'; *quidem* emphasizes the preceding word, *certe* = 'at any rate.'

173, 25. *maximeque . . . facultatem*: the point is that if Curio's men, who had formerly been in Pompey's service, should see and talk with Varus's soldiers, they would probably return to their old allegiance.

174, 1. *una valle*, etc.: 'with only a little valley between them.'

174, 4. CHAPTER 28. *Corfini*: it was at Corfinium, on the route from the Rubicon to Brundisium, that one of Pompey's strongest forces surrendered to Caesar, including the two legions now with Curio. At the surrender Quinctilius, instead of joining Caesar, had gone to Africa.

174, 7. *Corfinio*: abl. of separation, not to be translated as locative.

174, 8: *idem . . . constarent*: 'the centuries and the maniples remained the same.' See Introd. § 28.

174, 11. *primam*: best translated with *sacramenti*, although it limits *memoriam*, as if *sacramenti memoriam* were a cpd. Then, as now, enlisting soldiers were required to take the oath of allegiance. — *Domitium*: Domitius Ahenobarbus was Pompey's lieutenant in command at Corfinium, and Quinctilius was his quaestor.

174, 12. *dixissent*: subj. in implied indir. disc.

174, 13. *qui . . . perpassi*: at Corfinium.

174, 14. *pro his*: Curio and his officers.

174, 15. *Huc*: 'to this.'

174, 16. *ad spem*: 'to inspire a hope'; cf. the common use of the gerundive with *ad* to express purpose. — *quae*: interrog., introducing an indir. quest. in apposition with *pauca*, 'as to what they ought,' etc.

174, 18. *nullam . . . significatio*: 'there was no sign made in any way,' either of approval or disapproval.

174, 20. CHAPTER 29. *At*: although Curio's soldiers had shown no sympathy with the suggestions of Quinctilius, their loyalty was nevertheless seen to be wavering. Consequently Curio and his faithful officers and men were filled with apprehension. — *omnium*: *i.e.* of the loyal.

174, 22. *opiniones fingebat*: 'kept inventing fancies'; *opinio* often implies a mere notion or conjecture as contrasted with *sententia*, a well-grounded opinion.

174, 23. *Hoc*: 'this invention.'

174, 24. *uno auctore*: abl. abs., 'starting from a single source.'

174, 25. *plures . . . videbantur*: 'there seemed to be several sources of the story'; and so what might be only the creation of some frightened soldier's imagination appeared to be a well-authenticated fact. — *Erat civile bellum*: 'it was a civil war,' *i.e.* a war in which men might change sides without any lack of patriotism. With this statement, and those that follow, through *iactaverant*, 175, 3, Caesar is justifying the apprehensions of Curio and his faithful supporters. Curio's two legions, which had been in Pompey's army only a few months before, would be seriously weakened if many men should follow the example of the two Marsian centurions and their twenty-two comrades (173, 18 f.). — The text of the rest of this chapter is very uncertain, and is the product largely of modern scholars' conjectures; the manuscripts are badly corrupted.

174, 26. *genus hominum*, etc.: 'it was a class of men which could do what it pleased and follow what party it would,' *i.e.* they were independent Italians, and could follow either Caesar or Pompey. The subjunctives express characteristic.

174, 27. *legiones*: pred. of *erant* implied; *eae* is subject.

174, 28. *nam*: follows not the previous statement itself, but its implication 'and so they were not attached to Caesar,' *for* his favors to individual soldiers had been outshone by his favors to whole communities. The bond of personal gratitude was therefore weak. — *beneficia*: translate as subject, making the vb. passive, 'the favors had been lessened in value.' No exactions had been made of his fallen foes by Caesar, except that in Italy the private soldiers were enrolled in his own army. The officers were allowed to go free with all their possessions.

174, 29. *conferrentur*: the subject is *beneficia* implied. This rel. clause is represented as quoted from the soldiers' remarks, implied indir. disc.; 'with which, as it was said, they were bestowed,' etc. — *etiam . . . coniuncta*: 'even those that had been united to the opposite party.' From the time that he crossed the Rubicon Caesar had forbidden private soldiers to enter a town armed; and when Corfinium was surrendered late in the evening, he postponed its occupation till dawn in order to avoid all possibility of plunder and outrage in the dark.

174, 30. *enim*: connects the following sentence with *legiones . . . fuerant*, not with *nam . . . coniuncta*. — *Marsia*, etc.: see on 173, 18.

175, 2. *centuriones militesque*: in pred. apposition with the antecedent (*ii* implied) of the second *qui*, 'those who had remained in

their tents, both centurions and privates.' There was danger that the men remaining in the army, being fellow-countrymen of the deserters, might show the same disloyalty. — *Non nulli*, etc.: 'some had thrown out rather offensive remarks.'

175, 3. *Sermones*, etc.: 'remarks of the soldiers of doubtful meaning were given the harsher interpretation.'

175, 4. *diligentiores*: 'uncommonly watchful,' *i.e.* for all signs of disloyalty.

175, 6. CHAPTER 30. *consilio*: a council of war was composed of the superior officers; see *Introd.* § 36.

175, 8. *conandum*: *impers.*, 'that efforts should be made.'

175, 9. *huius . . . consiliis*: 'to plans of this sort (*i.e.* of desertion) on the part of the soldiers.'

175, 12. *experiri, perpeti*: subjects of *praestare*, 'it was better.'

175, 13. *gravissimum supplicium*: 'the utmost penalty,' *i.e.* death. They knew that if they fell into the power of Varus they would be put to death. The Pompeians showed none of Caesar's clemency.

175, 14. *Erant qui censerent*: 'some urged.'<sup>1</sup> — *de tertia vigilia*: about one o'clock.

175, 15. *ut . . . sanarentur*: 'that after some little time the soldiers might be restored to their right minds.'

175, 17. *accidisset*: for fut. perf. of *dir. disc.*, 'if anything disastrous should occur.'

175, 18. *daretur*: in a second purpose clause with *ut* (l. 15).

175, 20. CHAPTER 31. *quantum . . . superesse*: 'that there was as great an excess of spirit in one proposition as there was lack of it in the other.' *Sententiae* is dat. of possessor, *animi* is partit. gen. with *quantum* and *tantum*.

175, 21. *hos*: 'the latter,'<sup>2</sup> *i.e.* those who had spoken last (l. 14 ff.); *illos*, 'the former,' whose proposition is given in l. 7 ff.

175, 25. *accepto magno detrimento*: 'with heavy loss.'

175, 26. *Quasi . . . concilient*:<sup>3</sup> 'as if it were not the case that good fortune in exploits gains,' etc.

175, 29. *quid habet*: 'what does it mean?'

176, 1. *sibi parum credi*: 'that they are not much trusted.' *Intr.*

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	591, 1 (503, i)	838	535, a (320, a)	631, a	283, 2
2	506 (450, 2 & N.)	1052	297, a & b (102, a & b)	307, R. 1	246, 1
3	584, 2 (513, ii, N. 1)	944-45	324 & N. 2 (312 & R.)	608	307

vbs., whether pass. or act., may have an indir. obj.; in the pass. they are impers.<sup>1</sup>

176, 2. *illis, his*: 'the latter, the former,' a rarer use than that in 175, 21 f.; see *hic* in Vocab. *His*, though referring here rather unusually to the more distant word (*pudentes*), designates the persons who were actually nearer the speaker. Curio implies that only men of honor were present in the council. The dat. expresses interest or reference. — *augeat*: 'would increase,' a protasis<sup>2</sup> being implied, 'if they should know of it.'

176, 4. *explorata habeamus*: 'we should<sup>2</sup> regard as certain.'

176, 6. *quanto*: amount of difference with *praestet*, which contains a comparative idea, 'how much better it would be!'

176, 7. *An*: expresses emphasis,<sup>3</sup> 'or is it not the case that, like the wounds of the body, so the troubles of an army ought to be concealed?'

176, 10. *addunt*: 'add the injunction'; here equivalent to a vb. of commanding, hence the obj. clause with *ut*. — *quo*: see on *quo* . . . *impedirent*, 73, 17.

176, 11. *huius modi res*: such as plots of disloyalty.

176, 13. *tanti . . . animi*: pred. gen. of quality.

176, 15. *spe*: abl. of separation, 'abandon hope.'

176, 16. *magnaue . . . confido*: 'and I trust that I shall soon come to a decision on the matter, in great part in harmony with you.'

176, 21. CHAPTER 32. *auctoritate*: 'example.' A strong force went over to Caesar at Corfinium (see on *Corfini*, 174, 4), so that the influence of its example was important. — *fecerit*: result clauses sometimes take the perf., which is independent of sequence (*usus sit* would regularly be followed by a secondary tense) and represents the result as an accomplished fact.

176, 23. *et Caesar*, etc.: 'Caesar formed a most kindly opinion of you, while the other side felt most bitterly.' The Pompeians lost what Caesar gained.

176, 26. *Italia excessit*: with Pompey's departure from Brundisium (see summary of Book I, p. 383) Caesar was left the undisputed master of Italy, after a campaign of only two months, in which not a single pitched battle had been fought.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	426, 3 (384, 5)	530, end	372 (230)	346, R. 1	187, ii, b
2	576 (509)	936	516, 2 & b (307, 2 & b)	596, 1	303
3	380, 3 (353, 2)	702	335, b (211, b)	457, 1	162, 4, a

176, 27. *sine quibus*, etc.: because these provinces furnished the largest part of the grain supply of Rome and Italy.

176, 30. *sunt qui*: men like Quinctilius (174, 10 ff.).

177, 2. *quid . . . gravius*, etc.: 'what harsher measure can they enact in regard to you?'—*irati*: 'in their anger,' at Curio's men for deserting them and joining Caesar.

177, 3. *eos*: the Caesareans; *eorum*, the Pompeians.

177, 5. *in Hispania*: the victory of Ilerda, at the beginning of August (see summary of Book I, p. 383).

177, 7. *duces*: Afranius and Petreius.—*provincias*: Hither and Farther Spain, the former including the northern and eastern parts of the peninsula, the latter the southern and western.

177, 8. *diebus XL quibus*: 'within forty days after'; the rel., like its antecedent, is abl. of time within which.

177, 9. *qui . . . resistent*: *i.e.* the Pompeians, now that they have been crushed in Spain.

177, 10. *incerta victoria*: abl. abs., 'while victory was uncertain.'

177, 11. *cum*: concessive.

177, 13. *prioris sacramenti*, etc.: see 174, 11.

177, 14. *Domitius*: when Caesar arrived at Corfinium on his march south from the Rubicon, Domitius Ahenobarbus, Pompey's lieutenant in command there, not feeling strong enough to stand a siege or to engage in open battle, plotted with his closest friends to run away and leave the army to its fate. Upon the discovery of his cowardly scheme the soldiers arrested him and his accomplices and surrendered to Caesar, who dismissed Domitius and his aristocratic officers unharmed and enrolled their legions in his own army.

177, 18. *qui*: 'how,' adv.—*proiectis . . . imperio*: things which Domitius had practically done in plotting to desert his army.

177, 20. *Fingitur*, etc.: ironical, 'there is being invented a new idea of your sacred obligation.'—*ut . . . respiciatis*: a subst. clause in apposition with *religio*.

177, 22. *capitis deminutione*: 'loss of civil rights.' A Roman taken prisoner in war lost all his social and political privileges; but if he was allowed to return home through release or escape, his rights were restored.

177, 26. *laboris*: limits *praemia*.

177, 27. *qui . . . dubitatis*: 'and what (*qualis*) the end (*qui*, the antecedent of which is *eventu*) is going to be, even you are not in doubt.'

177, 28. *quem . . . processit*: modifying *fortunam*, 'so far as the war has yet advanced.'

177, 29. *cur praeteream*: 'why should I pass by.'<sup>1</sup>

178, 2. *adveniens*: 'by my mere approach,' referring to Lucius Caesar's flight (170, 12 ff.).

178, 3. *sinuque*, etc.: 'and from the very bosom of the enemy.'

178, 4. *eoque*, etc.: 'and have driven them to that pass.'

178, 6. *commeatu iuvare*: 'be provided with supplies.'

178, 7. *Italiae fugam*: 'the flight from Italy,' see on *Italia excessit*, 176, 26.

178, 8. *praeiudicia*: in apposition with the three accs., *ignominiam*, etc.; 'precedents for,' etc., portending another disaster for the Pompeians in Africa.

178, 9. *aequimini*: 'you throw in your lot with the disgrace at Corfinium!' etc.

178, 10. *imperatoris*: see on 173, 3.—*cuius*, etc.: 'if you regret this.'<sup>2</sup>

178, 11. *meum . . . nomen*: *i.e.* *Caesaris miles*.

178, 16. CHAPTER 33. *viderentur*: pass., 'they were seen.'

178, 17. *sit*: an obj. clause coördinate with *cohortantur*; see on *faciat*, 65, 5.

178, 20. *sit data*: 'should be given,' implied indir. disc., representing fut. perf. indic.

178, 23. *Varus . . . Attius*: until the time of the Empire, when there was great confusion in the order of personal names, the family name commonly followed the gentile or clan name. Cf. this same name in 170, 3.

178, 24. *sive . . . detur*: implied indir. disc., being a part of the purpose *ne . . . praetermittat*.—*solicítandi milites*: 'of tampering with the soldiers' of Curio.

178, 27. CHAPTER 34. *supra*: in 174, 1.

178, 28. *non ita*: 'not so very.'—*Hanc*: object of *transire*, referring to *vallis*, l. 27.

178, 29. *si . . . conarentur*: indir. quest. depending on *expectabat*.

178, 30. *quo*: as in 176, 10.—*aequiore loco*: 'in the more favorable position,' *i.e.* above the enemy as they came up out of the valley.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	557 (486, ii)	723	444, a (268)	259	277 & a
2	457 (409, iii)	585	354, b (221, b)	377	209, 1

179, 1. **Simul**, etc.: the thought of this sentence has no immediate connection with the one before it. A statement about Curio's army has apparently been lost. — **levis** . . . **complures**: 'several men of light equipment (gen. of quality) interspersed among them.' This custom was borrowed from the German cavalry employed by Caesar in Gaul. For the use of the footmen, see 163, 12 ff.

179, 2. **cum**, etc.: 'were seen descending,' etc.

179, 6. **qui**: sc. *ii* as antecedent (see on *qui*, 51, 2), which is limited by *levis armaturae*.

179, 7. **circumveniebantur**: they were bunglers; Germans would have escaped. See on 163, 27.

179, 8. **Huc** . . . **conversa**: 'turned this way.'

179, 9. **Rebilus**: see on 171, 9.

179, 12. **unum**: 'merely' ('one thing only').

179, 13. **quae** . . . **confirmassent**: see 178, 17 f. The subj. is due to implied indir. disc., 'which, as he said, they had,' etc.

179, 14. **Adeoque** . . . **vallis**: 'and the valley was such an obstruction' (lit., 'was so obstructed'), because of its steep slopes (178, 28).

179, 15. **nisi sublevati**: 'except when supported,' being pushed ahead by those behind them.

179, 16. **animus** . . . **militum**: 'the soldiers'; Latin frequently assigns an action to a man's *animus*, 'the mind, the heart,' when English, with less exactness, speaks only of the man. *Animus* is collective here; the pl. is commoner when applied to a number of persons.

179, 19. **priusquam**, etc.: see on *possent*, 173, 13.

179, 22. CHAPTER 35. **ex infimis ordinibus**: 'a centurion of the lowest rank,' see Intro. § 35.

179, 23. **de exercitu**: with *primus*, 'was the first from Curio's army to overtake,' etc.; cf. *ex* . . . *militibus*, l. 25 f., depending on *unus*, and see on *ex* . . . *Gallis*, 73, 3.

179, 26. **eius**: = *Vari*.

179, 29. **paulumque afuit quin**: 'he lacked little of killing' (lit., 'it was not far away but that he killed'); *afuit* is impers., having as its subject the clause with *quin*; see on *educat*, 93, 9.

180, 6. **cum** . . . **tum**: 'not only . . . but also.'

180, 7. **quod** . . . **indigebant**: 'the fact that the soldiers were without,' etc. This subst. clause<sup>1</sup> is an additional subject of *prohibebat*.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
I	588, 3 (516, i)	848	572 & N. (333 & N.)	525, 1	299, 1, 6

180, 15. **bucinator**: he gave the signals for the change of sentries during the night.

180, 16. **ad speciem**: 'to keep up appearances,' so that Curio should think Varus's army was still in camp. It will be remembered that this camp was built right beside the city of Utica (172, 5 f.).

180, 20. CHAPTER 36. **multitudo**: 'the common people,' including the farmers from the country round about (cf. 172, 10 ff.).—**belli**: obj. gen. with *insolens*.—**Uticenses**: the citizens, enjoying political rights.

180, 21. **illi**: = *Caesari*.

180, 22. **conventus**: 'a Roman association,' the collective name of Romans living in a provincial town. Cf. 'the American colony' in Berlin or Paris.—**qui . . . constaret**: 'consisting of,' etc., a clause of characteristic.—**generibus**: 'classes'; *i.e.* among the Romans in Utica there were adherents of Caesar as well as of Pompey.

181, 2. CHAPTER 37. **fides**, etc.: 'he could not be made to believe them.'

181, 4. **nuntiis ac litteris**: indicating reliable information, confirming the rumors which had been circulating two days or more; see 177, 5 ff.

181, 7. **millibus**: abl. of amount of difference, not affected by *minus*;<sup>1</sup> *longe* is redundant.

181, 8. **munitioibus**: Curio's camp near Utica (173, 4 f.).

181, 11. **duae legiones**: of the four legions received from Caesar, Curio had left two in Sicily (170, 3).

181, 13. **salis**: salt was commonly obtained by evaporating sea water in pits dug near the shore. To insure a constant supply of cheap salt at Rome the government very early assumed control of the business.

181, 20. CHAPTER 38. **perfugis**: these men, pretending to be deserters, were really in the service of Juba. Of course their report was false.

181, 21. **Leptitanorum**: the people of Leptis Minor, a town on the coast of the province of Africa, south of Clupea.

181, 26. **Multum . . . adiuvat**: 'contribute a great deal to the approval of this course.'

181, 27. **superioris temporis proventus**: 'the outcome of the past,' *i.e.* of his efforts in Sicily and Africa.

181, 28. **rei bene gerendae**: 'of success.' Severe as was the blow to

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	471, 4 (417, 1, N. 2)	618	407, c & N. (247, c & N.)	296, R. 4	217, 3

his cause from the overthrow of Curio, Caesar has no word of blame, but rather finds excuses, for his rashness.

182, 1. *prima nocte*: 'in the early part of the night.'

182, 4. *intervallo*: see 77, 17 and note.

182, 7. *nullis ordinibus*: 'helter-skelter.'

182, 14. CHAPTER 39. *convenit, cognovit, quaerit*: the narrative, by its lack of connectives, admirably represents Curio's haste.

182, 16. *Saburram*: sc. *castris praeesse*. — *Reliqua*: 'all further questions.' He would have done well to learn how far away Juba was; but he had no suspicion of the supposed deserters (181, 20).

182, 17. *signa*: 'maniples,' each of the thirty maniples in a legion having its own standard.

182, 18. *cum perfugis*: an abridged form of expression (for *cum perfugarum oratione*), common to many languages.

182, 20. *potuerint*: subj. of characteristic.

182, 22. *de referenda gratia*: 'about making requital for your services. — *per se*: i.e. without being exaggerated.

182, 26. *libenter praedicant*: 'like to boast.'

182, 28. *quicquid intercederet temporis*: 'whatever time was allowed to go by.'

182, 29. *ita . . . deērant*: 'so the hopefulness of Curio was equaled by the soldiers' enthusiasm.'

183, 1. *quam maxime . . . perterritos*: 'while they were in the greatest possible panic.'

183, 4. *ad spem*: 'in his hope' (lit., 'with reference to his hope').

183, 8. CHAPTER 40. *cui*: see on *quibus*, 97, 17.

183, 10. *elephantis*: elephants were first used in battle against Roman armies by Pyrrhus of Epirus at the battle of Heraclea, 280 B.C. During the Punic wars, in which elephants were used by the Carthaginians, the Romans became familiar with them and ceased to fear them.

183, 13. *simulatione timoris*: 'pretending to be afraid.'

183, 15. *cognovisset*: for fut. perf. of *dir. disc.*

183, 16. *praesentis . . . opinione*: 'his notion of the present movement,' i.e. that it represented fear. With this use of *opinio*, cf. 174, 22, and see note.

183, 21. CHAPTER 41. *spatio*: 'at a distance,' i.e. from the starting-point at Camp Cornelia. Cf. *intervallo*, 182, 4.

183, 23. *ad speciem*: as in 180, 16. The infantry were not to fight as yet.

- 183, 24. *Non deest negotio*: 'is equal to the emergency.'  
 183, 26. *ut defessis*: 'though exhausted.'  
 183, 28. *numero* CC: sc. *tantum*, 'only 200.' — *reliqui*, etc.: see l. 2 f.  
 183, 29. *hostes*: subject of *cedere*.  
 183, 30. *longius, vehementius*: 'very far, very rapidly.'  
 184, 2. *aversos proterere*: 'to trample down those in the rear.'  
 184, 3. *cum*: 'whenever'; this meaning is clear from the imperf., of repeated action, in the main clause. In subordinate clauses of repeated action the subj. is less common than the indic.:<sup>1</sup> cf. *fecerant*, 183, 29.  
 184, 5. *recipientes*: sc. *eos*, referring to the Romans.  
 184, 7. *casum subire*: 'to take the chances.'  
 184, 12. *extremo . . . tempore*: 'in the last moments of life.'  
 184, 14. *si quos*: instead of *iis quos*, to express better the great uncertainty whether any of their number would be saved; 'commended their parents to each other, in case fortune,' etc.  
 184, 15. *Plena erant omnia*: 'the air was full.'  
 184, 19. CHAPTER 42. *ut in miseris rebus*: 'considering their sad plight.'  
 184, 20. *universos*: limits *eos* implied, subject of *capere*.  
 184, 24. *integri procumbunt*: 'fall without a wound,' from exhaustion and discouragement.  
 184, 27. *Curio . . . interficitur*: see summary of Book II, p. 384. "The gay licentious braggart of the forum and camp, the darling of Cicero, the counsellor of Caesar, the prime mover of the civil war, of which he was the most distinguished victim, crowned a career of inconsistencies and a character of contradictions by dying magnanimously in the foremost ranks of slaughter rather than seek his personal safety after losing the army entrusted to him." Merivale, quoted by Moberly.  
 185, 2. *demonstratum est*: in 183, 2 f.  
 185, 4. *Milites = pedites*. — *ad unum*: 'to a man.'  
 185, 5. CHAPTER 43. *Rufus*: see 171, 1. He was now in command of the five cohorts left to guard the camp (182, 13).  
 185, 9. *primo*: like *prima*, 182, 1.  
 185, 13. *classem hostium*: L. Caesar's fleet at Hadrumentum; see 170, 16.

	H	L. M.	A.	G.	R.
1	601, 4 (518, 1)	794	518, c (309, b)	567, N.	288, 3, d

185, 15. *in classe*: the swift ships are meant, distinguished from the transports mentioned in the next line. All the large ships, instead of sending their boats to shore in obedience to Rufus's orders (l. 10), sailed away without taking thought of the unfortunates on shore.

185, 17. *incitabat*: 'instigated' to the same conduct. — *ad officium*, etc.: 'reported for duty.'

185, 19. *qui . . . conscenderent*: indir. quest. depending on the idea of decision in *contentio*, 'struggle to decide just who,' etc.

185, 20. *non nulli*: sc. *lenunculi*.

185, 23. CHAPTER 44. *qui . . . valerent . . . possent*: characteristic, 'who had influence either through friendship or pity,' etc. The pity would be chiefly for the *patres*, who had families dependent upon them.

185, 26. *numero*: cf. *loco*, 172, 13.

185, 30. *cum*: concessive. — *fidem*: his promise of safety to the soldiers who had surrendered.

186, 1. *neque*: = *neque tamen*, 'and yet did not dare.' — *Ipse*: Juba. With all the pride and swagger of a petty barbarian king, Juba took advantage of his great services to the Pompeians in destroying Curio's army to enter the capital of the Roman province and take control there for a few days, while Varus and the rest could do nothing but acquiesce with the best grace possible.

### BOOK THIRD

**Campaign of 48 B.C. — Macedonia and Thessaly.** — Arriving in Rome from Marseilles (see summary of Book II, first paragraph, p. 383) about the first of December, Caesar remained there only eleven days, during which he was elected consul for the next year, and then hastened on to Brundisium to direct the immediate transportation of his army across the Adriatic for the decisive struggle with Pompey.

During the nine months' respite granted by Caesar's campaign in the West, Pompey had been gathering a strong army and fleet from all the eastern peoples who were subject or allied to Rome. His headquarters were at Dyrrachium, and his fleet lined the coast. Probably his intention was to invade Italy the following spring, and nothing was further from his thoughts than that Caesar would bring the war into Greece.

On January 5, 48 B.C., in the midst of a storm, Caesar landed in

Epirus with about half his troops. The ships were returning for the rest of his army, which was at Brundisium under command of Antony, when they were destroyed by Pompey's admiral, Bibulus. It was nearly three months before Antony could effect a crossing. Meanwhile Caesar, immediately upon his arrival in Greece, had marched towards Dyrrachium, receiving without resistance the surrender of Oricum, Apollonia, and other towns. Pompey's army hastened to intercept him, and the opposing forces encamped on opposite banks of the Apsus. While here Caesar made once more futile attempts for peace. Finally, near the end of March, Antony succeeded with the aid of the greatest good fortune in landing near Lissus. Caesar, outgeneraling Pompey, joined Antony and cut Pompey off from his headquarters at Dyrrachium. With his control of the sea, however, Pompey was not much harmed by this move, and intrenching himself at Petra hill he decided to wear Caesar out by a policy of masterly inactivity. Caesar responded by attempting to blockade Pompey, but was obliged to extend his lines of circumvallation so far that they could not be properly defended, and Pompey finally broke through, inflicting a severe loss on Caesar.

Caesar at once withdrew to Apollonia and thence marched away to Thessaly. The Pompeians believed that the war was over, and the nobles in the army even fell to disputing over the distribution of the spoils and of the offices in Rome. Caesar encamped in the plain of Pharsalus, and Pompey, who had followed leisurely after, took up a position some miles to the north at Larissa. Although outnumbered more than two to one, Caesar was eager for a battle. But Pompey was slow to accept the challenge, and was only driven to it after some days by the taunts of his followers, who declared that he was prolonging the war merely for the sake of maintaining his command. By a skillful arrangement of his troops Caesar won a complete victory (August, 48 B.C.). Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously assassinated. Caesar, hastening in pursuit, arrived at Alexandria in October. Sorely against his will and the interests of Rome he was detained there for about nine months by the so-called Alexandrine War, which was caused by his efforts, through arbitration of the quarrel between young Ptolemy and his sister Cleopatra, to set them on the throne as joint rulers.

PAGE 187, LINE 1. CHAPTER I. Dictatore: 'as dictator.' Caesar learned at Marseilles of his appointment as dictator for the purpose of holding the consular elections for the year 48 B.C. These elections were regularly presided over by a consul, but both consuls of 49 B.C.

were with Pompey's army at Dyrrachium. The dictator was an extraordinary official, with absolute power, appointed in public crises for such time as circumstances required, but not to exceed six months.

187, 3. *per leges*: a law of 342 B.C. enacted that no man should be reëlected to an office until after an interval of ten years. Caesar had been consul in 59 B.C., consequently 48 B.C. was the first year in which he was eligible for a second term.—*consulem*: in pred. agreement with the subject of *fieri*, which is implied from *ei*. The dat. is more common.<sup>1</sup>—*liceret*: characteristic.

187, 4. *cum*: causal.<sup>2</sup>—*fides*, etc.: 'credit was somewhat contracted.' In the uncertainties of a time of war financiers are unwilling to lend money except at high rates of interest.—*tota Italia*: the abl. of place where, if limited by *totus*, is generally used without *in*.

187, 5. *neque . . . solverentur*: debtors refused to make payment because it was popularly believed that a general abolition of debts would result from the war. This was also a strong reason for the collapse of credit.—*credita pecuniae*: 'loans.'

187, 6. *arbitri darentur*: 'appraisers should be appointed.'—*fierent, tradarentur*: in the same construction as *darentur*.

187, 7. *possessionum et rerum*: 'of real estate and personal property.' Only the property of debtors would need to be appraised.—*quanti*: gen. of indefinite value,<sup>3</sup> 'at that value which each of these properties had before the war.' The subj. is due to implied indir. disc. Property had depreciated since the outbreak of the war.

187, 8. *eae*: 'these pieces of property,' at their value before the war.

187, 9. *Hoc*: 'this measure,' subject of *esse*, l. 12. If Caesar had been merely a revolutionary leader of the people and not the patriotic, far-seeing statesman that he was, he would have yielded to popular clamor and have declared the abolition of all debts. Instead, he sacrificed the favor of the debt-ridden populace, and passed a law which helped not only the debtor by increasing the value of his property which he could offer in payment of his liabilities, but also the creditor by securing him at least a partial payment of what was due him and relieving his fear of losing everything.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	612, 3 (536, 2, 3 & N.)	975	455, a (272, a, 2)	535, R. 3	327, 2 & a
2	598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2
3	448 (404)	576	417 (252, a)	380, 1	303, 3

187, 12. *existimationem*: 'credit'; the debtor's credit was protected by his being obliged to pay at least part of his debts.

187, 13. *praetoribus* . . . *ferentibus*: abl. abs., 'upon the praetors . . . bringing the bills before the people,' i.e. in the popular assembly. Caesar as dictator could have taken the step without consulting the assembly, but by allowing a popular vote he made the pardons doubly sure and avoided the appearance of arrogance towards the people (see 188, 2 ff.).

187, 14. *non nullos*: obj. of *restituit*, l. 18. — *ambitus*: gen. of the charge with *damnatos*.<sup>1</sup>

187, 15. *illis temporibus*: in 52 B.C., owing to political anarchy at Rome resulting from the intense partisan warfare between the senate and the popular party, Pompey was given dictatorial power under the name of 'consul without a colleague,' and his soldiers occupied the city. Among his laws was one increasing the penalty for bribery at elections, with retroactive force till the year 70 B.C., by which almost any politician of Rome, except perhaps Cato and Cicero, might have been sent into banishment. It was especially enforced against Caesar's friends, whom he now pardoned, justifying his action by the gross injustice of their trials (*iudicia*), which had been limited to a single day each, and the jurors who gave the verdict (*sententiam ferentibus*) had sometimes not been present when the evidence was being taken.

187, 18. *in integrum*: 'to their former standing,' i.e. which they had held before the trials. — *qui*: 'men who'; the antecedent is *non nullos*.

187, 19. *vellet*: implied indir. disc. — *proinde* . . . *si*: 'rating them just as if.' The subj. is regularly used in conditional comparisons;<sup>2</sup> the sequence follows *restituit*.

188, 1. *sui fecissent potestatem*: 'they had put themselves in his hands.' *Sui* is obj. gen. with *potestatem*; the subj. is due to implied indir. disc.,<sup>3</sup> being quoted as the reason in Caesar's mind when he granted the pardons.

188, 2. *enim*: refers back to the first clause of the previous sentence; see on *praetoribus* . . . *ferentibus*, 187, 13. — *prius*: 'rather.'

188, 4. *ingratus*: it was a greater favor, because it meant greater security, for the exiles to be recalled by a vote of the people rather than by Caesar's authority as dictator.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	456 (409, ii)	582	352 (220)	378	208
2	584 (513, ii)	944	524 (312)	602	307
3	649, i (cf. 528, 1)	866	592, N. (341, d, R.)	541	323

188, 6. CHAPTER 2. *feriis Latinis*: an ancient Latin festival of Jupiter Latiaris (god of the Latins), in which Rome had taken part for nearly 500 years. It was celebrated near the beginning of each year on the Alban Mount under the direction of the new consuls, who never entered upon a military campaign without thus assuring themselves of the favor of their guardian deity. By not neglecting this religious custom in spite of his haste to be off for Greece, Caesar "was making himself the supreme impersonation of the laws against Pompey with his hordes of Oriental auxiliaries." — *comitiis*: elections for other magistrates besides consuls.

188, 7. *dictatura*: abl. of separation.

188, 10. *tantum navium*: 'so few ships.'

188, 11. *LXX cohortes*: *i.e.* seven legions (see 190, 22 and Introd. § 28). The inability to take the whole army at once proved a serious handicap. It was nearly three months before Antony and the remaining legions joined Caesar.

188, 12. *Hoc . . . defuit*: 'this was the only thing that prevented Caesar from speedily finishing the war.' With *ad celeritatem*, cf. *ad spem*, 183, 4.

188, 14. *hoc . . . quod*: cf. *eo . . . quod*, 60, 8 f. — *infrequentiores*: 'in smaller numbers,' *i.e.* the legions lacked their full quotas.

188, 15. *defecerant*: 'had been lost.' Caesar's campaigns in Gaul, 58-51 B.C., are meant.

188, 16. *autumnus*: Caesar's army was in Apulia in December, according to the uncorrected calendar (see on 100, 2), which at this time was about two months ahead of the seasons. In southern Italy the autumns are very hot.

188, 17. *ex*: 'after.'

188, 19. CHAPTER 3. *annuum spatium*: really only some nine months and a half. Pompey had left Italy in March; see summary of Book I, p. 383.

188, 21. *Asia*: *i.e.* the Roman province, comprising Mysia, Lydia, Caria, and Phrygia. The introduction in chapters 3-5 of so many foreign names both of persons and places, together with a sprinkling of strange political titles, is highly effective in indicating the vastness and the barbaric character of Pompey's resources as contrasted with Caesar's little army of Italians and Gauls. The pupil should look up on a map all the places mentioned, in order to get a better idea of the extent of Roman influence in the East.

188, 24. *imperatam . . . exegerat*: 'he had required and collected from Asia,' etc. *Asiae*, etc., are indir. objs. of *imperatam*; see on *imperat*, 55, 11.

188, 25. *dynastis et tetrarchis*: petty rulers to whom Rome still allowed some degree of independence.

188, 26. *liberis Achaiae populis*: Achaia was the name given to the part of Greece south of Epirus and Thessaly from 146 B.C., when the whole country became subject to Rome and was placed under the supervision of the governor of Macedonia. The separate communities were left "free," in so far as they retained the ownership of their land and in purely local matters governed themselves. Democracy, however, was abolished and the government everywhere was intrusted to boards of wealthy men. All mutual and foreign relations were subject to Rome's dictation, and tribute was paid by most, if not all, of the states.

188, 27. *societates*: 'tax collecting companies.' The business of collecting the Roman revenues, both in Italy and in the provinces, was sold at auction by the censors in Rome, for terms of five years, to joint stock companies of capitalists, who paid the state a fixed sum annually and made their profits from the taxes collected. These companies occupied a place in the ancient financial world similar to that held by the steel and oil trusts of the present day. There was a president who conducted the bidding for the lease, and gave bonds to the state for the due performance of all the terms of the contract. The superintendent of the home office in Rome had general oversight of all the accounts, correspondence, etc., and had under his control a number of assistant managers in charge of the different departments. Since much of the revenue was paid in kind, storehouses, ships, and great bodies of slaves and subordinates were required for handling and marketing the produce. Taxes were levied on lands, mines, personal property, exports and imports, etc. Pompey apparently compelled the companies to pay him the sums which should have been turned over to the authorities of the state. — *quas ipse obtinebat*: Macedonia including Epirus and Thessaly, Illyricum, the only territory won from Caesar (see summary of Book II, last paragraph, p. 384), and Africa, which the ill-fated Curio had failed to rescue from the Pompeians.

189, 3. CHAPTER 4. *factam ex duabus*: two depleted legions were united.

189, 4. *veteranis*: legionary soldiers who, upon completing twenty years of service, had been honorably discharged.

189, 6. **Lentulus**: Lentulus Crus, consul of the year 49 B.C.

189, 8. **supplementi nomine**: 'as substitutes,' to take the places of men who had been lost.

189, 9. **Antonianos**: Gaius Antonius, younger brother of Mark Antony, was Caesar's commander in Illyricum in 49 B.C. In an attempt to relieve Dolabella and his fleet he was besieged on the island of Curicta and, partly through treachery of his centurion Pullo (221, 28), compelled to surrender with fifteen cohorts (see on *quas ipse obtinebat*, 188, 27). His men were enrolled in Pompey's army.

189, 10. **Scipione**: Pompey's father-in-law, governor of the province of Syria.

189, 11. **Creta**: the preposition, regularly omitted with the names of little islands, is sometimes omitted in the case of large islands.

189, 12. **numero**: abl. of specification, 'to the number.'

189, 14. **Gallos**: in the third century B.C. three tribes of Gauls invaded Asia Minor, and after overrunning the peninsula for about fifty years, were compelled to settle down in the district which was thenceforth called Galatia. Although they took on so much of the Greek civilization with which they were surrounded that they were called also Gallograeci and their country Gallograecia, still they preserved their own language with such persistency that in the fourth century A.D. their speech was said by Jerome to resemble that of the Treveri in Gaul. They were organized in twelve divisions, four to a tribe, each ruled by a tetrarch. It was to the descendants of these Gauls that St. Paul wrote his Epistle to the Galatians. — **Deiotarus**: a tetrarch in Galatia, who had received from Pompey considerable additions to his territory for his services in the Mithridatic war. — **Ariobarzanes**: king of Cappadocia, whose grandfather had been restored to his throne by Pompey.

189, 15. **ad**: adv., 'about.'

189, 17. **excellenti virtute**: abl. of quality, best taken with *cc*.

189, 19. **Ptolomaeum**: in 81 B.C. Egypt was left by will to Rome. Ptolemy Auletes was allowed, however, to assume the throne, and he bought freedom from interference afterwards by immense bribes. To meet these payments he oppressed his people so severely that he was finally driven from his kingdom. In 55 B.C., upon his promise of a further payment of 10,000 talents (\$12,000,000), he was restored, at Pompey's order, by a Roman army, made up partly of Gauls and Germans, under command of Gabinius. A detachment of these troops remained at Alexandria as a bodyguard for the king.

189, 20. **Pompeius filius**: Gnaeus, elder son of Pompey.

189, 23. **alter . . . venerat** = Domnilius. — **filius**: young Castor in 45 B.C. accused his grandfather, the tetrarch Deiotarus (l. 14), of having plotted to kill Caesar when he was in Asia in 47 B.C. One of Cicero's extant speeches was spoken in defense of Deiotarus.

189, 24. **Antiocho**: his kingdom had been secured to him by Pompey in 64 B.C.

189, 26. **Huc**: 'to these forces'; cf. 174, 15.

189, 27. **imperio, gratia**: abls. of manner; 'got together at his orders or as a favor to him.'

189, 28. **reliquarum . . . civitatum**: partit. gen., 'men of all other nations,' etc.

189, 29. **supra**: in l. 13 f., *vii millia*.

190, 3. CHAPTER 5. **Dyrrachi, Apolloniae**: the most important towns of western Macedonia, and the terminals of the Roman military road, the Via Egnatia, which connected them with Thessalonica and the East. Apollonia was at this time an educational centre. Caesar's grandnephew and heir, the young Octavian, who became the emperor Augustus, studied there.

190, 6. **omni ora**: without *in*, *omni* being equiv. to *tota*; see on *tota Italia*, 187, 4.

190, 8. **Cassius**: shortly after the battle of Pharsalus he surrendered to Caesar. Although he was well treated, being given both military and political offices, he was a leader with Brutus in the conspiracy against Caesar's life. See Shakspeare's *Julius Caesar*. — **Marcellus**: consul with Lentulus (189, 6) in 49 B.C.

190, 10. **officio maritimo**: 'naval service,' indir. obj. of *praepositus*.

190, 11. **Bibulus**: Caesar's colleague in the aedileship, 65 B.C., in the praetorship, 62 B.C., and in the consulship, 59 B.C. A stubborn, incapable aristocrat, he was always arrayed against Caesar, but never with success (see Introd. § 7). His appointment as admiral of the fleet was one item in the general mismanagement of Pompey's campaign in the first year of the war (see summary of Book II, last paragraph, p. 384). — **ad hunc . . . respiciebat**: 'devolved upon him.'

190, 13. CHAPTER 6. **Caesar . . . solvit** (l. 21) is the main verb of this long sentence. There are three principal subordinate clauses, *ut . . . venit* (l. 13), *contionatus . . . sperarent* (ll. 13-19), and *conclamantibus . . . facturos* (ll. 19-21). Translate in two sentences, ending the first with *sperarent* and making the participle *contionatus*

its main verb.—*contionatus*, etc.: 'he addressed his soldiers, saying,' followed by indir. disc.

190, 16. *relinquerent*, *conscenderent*, *sperarent*: 'they should leave,' etc., representing imperatives of the actual speech.<sup>1</sup>

190, 17. *quo*: see on 73, 17.

190, 19. *conclamantibus omnibus*: 'upon their all shouting out,' followed by indir. disc.—*imperaret*: cf. *relinquerent*, etc., l. 16.

190, 20. *imperavisset*: for *imperaveris*, fut. perf., of dir. disc.

190, 21. *II Non. Ian.*: read *secundo Nonas Ianuarias* or *pridie Nonas*, etc., but translate 'January 4.'<sup>2</sup> See on *autumnus*, 188, 16.

190, 22. *supra*: in 188, 11.

190, 23. *inter*: 'among'; a commoner position would be before *Cerauniorum*. For Caesar's campaign against Pompey during 48 B.C., see the map MACEDONIA AND THESSALY, p. 191.

190, 25. *arbitrabantur*: deponent verbs are rarely used passively. The perf. participle is most frequently so used; see *depopulatis*, 58, 17.

192, 1. *ad unam*: 'without exception'; cf. *ad unum*, 185, 4.

192, 3. CHAPTER 7. *Orici*: only a few miles north of Palaeste.

192, 5. *Corcyrae*: loc., as regularly with names of little islands; cf. *Creta*, 189, 11, and see note.

192, 6. *sibi*: see on *quibus*, 97, 17.

192, 7. *praesidio*: 'as a convoy,' dat. of purpose.

192, 8. *III*: 'only four.'—*neque . . . occurrit*: 'and Bibulus did not come up early enough' to hinder Caesar's landing; cf. l. 19 ff.—*impeditis . . . remigibus*: abls. abs. expressing cause.

192, 10. *prius . . . quam*: see on *non prius . . . quam*, 93, 17.

192, 11. *perferretur*: see on *perficiantur*, 155, 8.

192, 16. CHAPTER 8. *qui . . . adhiberet*: rel. clause of purpose; translate 'with orders to use,' etc.

192, 19. *offenderunt*: 'met with disaster.'

192, 21. *onustarum*: 'still laden' with soldiers, opposed by *inanibus* (dat.), 'empty ships only.'

192, 22. *indiligentiae . . . iracundiam*: 'the wrath due to his own carelessness and mistake.'

192, 25. *deterri*: an uncommon use of pres. instead of fut. infin. with a verb of hoping, 'hoping for the rest to be frightened off.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	642 (523, iii)	1023	588 (339)	652	316
2	754, iii, 1; 755 (642-44)	1172; 1174	631, d & e (376, d & e)	P. 491	371, 5; 372

**a Sasonis:** sc. *portu*. Bibulus tried to make up by his watchfulness for his previous carelessness. The whole coast of Macedonia and Illyricum was now patrolled by his ships.

**192, 28. gravissima hieme:** abl. abs. expressing concession, 'though the winter was very severe.'

**192, 29. si . . . posset:** indir. quest., 'to see if he could encounter Caesar's forces.' The sentence is incomplete in the manuscripts.

**193, 4. CHAPTER 10. Corfinium:** see on 174, 4. — **in Hispania:** see summary of Book I, near the end, p. 383.

**193, 5. iudicaverat:** the plpf. shows that Vibullius had received his commission to carry proposals of peace to Pompey at some time before Caesar's arrival at Palaeste, probably at the time of his second dismissal from Caesar. — **quem . . . mitteret:** a clause of characteristic limiting *idoneum*,<sup>1</sup> 'a fit person to send.'

**193, 8. haec:** observe that a subject demonstrative agrees in gender with a pred. subst.<sup>2</sup> — **summa:** 'substance.'

**193, 9. Debere:** standing first, the verb is more emphasized than its subject *utrumque*; translate 'it was the duty of both.'

**193, 11. quae . . . possent:** rel. clause of result limiting *satis magna*, 'great enough for them to be able to regard them as instruction and warnings to fear the chances that were still in store.' *Vi . . . timerent* is a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *disciplina* and *praeceptis*.

**193, 13. illum:** 'Pompey.' *Ab illo* would be expected to follow the passive *satis . . . accepta*; but *illum* implies the addition of *satis magna incommoda accepisse*. The omission is as natural in English as in Latin. — **amissa . . . XXX:** see summary of Book I, p. 383. Translate, 'through the loss of,' etc.

**193, 15. morte . . . exercitus:** see 184, 27 ff.

**193, 16. Antoni, etc.:** see on *Antonianos*, 189, 9. Caesar's losses during 49 B.C. were light in comparison with Pompey's; see summary of Book II, last paragraph, p. 384.

**193, 18. parcerent:** 'they should spare,' representing an exhortation, *parcamus*, of dir. disc.

**193, 19. satis essent documento:** 'were a sufficient proof,' dat. of tendency or service.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	591, 7 (503, ii, 2)	837	535, f (320, f)	552, R. 2	283, 1
2	396, 2 (445, 4)	483	296, a (195, d)	211, R. 5	246, 5

193, 25. *convenire*: 'to be agreed upon.'

193, 27. *rei publicae*: gen.<sup>1</sup>

194, 1. *depositis*, etc.: 'laying down their arms and letting the auxiliary troops go.' — *quibus*: abl.<sup>2</sup>

194, 5. CHAPTER 11. *Corcyrae*: Pompey's naval headquarters. *Vibullius*, who had come here upon his second dismissal from Caesar (193, 3 f.), was waiting for Pompey to return from a trip through the interior of Macedonia before presenting Caesar's proposals of peace. But upon learning of Caesar's arrival at Palaeste he started post-haste to meet Pompey.

194, 7. *ad id*: 'with reference to it,' i.e. Caesar's arrival.

194, 8. *de mandatis agi*: 'for action to be taken in the matter of his errand,' i.e. about peace.

194, 10. *omnibus hospitibus*: cf. *omni ora*, 190, 6, and see note.

194, 20. *Parthinorum*: a Greek people living near Dyrrachium; not Parthians.

194, 21. *cum*: introduces three verbs. — *Graecos*: the Parthini.

194, 23. *imperium populi Romani*: represented by Caesar, the duly elected consul; see end of note on *feriis Latinis*, 188, 6.

195, 2. CHAPTER 12. *negare*: infin. of intimation (hist. infin.<sup>8</sup>).

195, 3. *sibi iudicium*, etc.: 'take upon themselves a decision contrary to what all Italy . . . had decided.'

195, 8. *Epiros*: with Greek nom. ending.<sup>5</sup> — *imperaret*: for sequence, see on *ut . . . occuparet*, 53, 9.

195, 11. CHAPTER 13. *Dyrrachio*: indir. obj. of *timens* used intransitively, 'fearing for.' Caesar of course hoped to get possession of Dyrrachium, where Pompey had collected all his supplies (see 207, 13 f.).

195, 14. *eius exercitus*: 'in Pompey's army,' subjective gen. Pompey is subject of *coniunxerat* and *intermiserat*. The soldiers saw by Pompey's haste that he himself was much alarmed.

195, 20. *princeps*: adj. = *primus*, 'was the first to come forward.' Labienus was the ablest of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul, and enjoyed his utmost confidence. In 50 B.C. he was put in charge of Cisalpine Gaul,

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	449, 1 (408, 1, 1)	580	355 (222)	381	211, 1
2	476, 3 (425, 1, 1, N.)	629	431 & N. (254, b)	401, N. 6	219, 1
3	610 (536, 1)	708	463 (275)	647	335
4	516, 3 (459, 2)	760	324, c (156, a)	643 & N. 3	341, 1, c
5	89 (54)	155	52 (43)	65	27

but while holding this position of trust he was won over to the cause of Pompey and the senate, and at the outbreak of the Civil War he fled to the Pompeian army. Caesar had all his baggage sent after him unharmed. The only one of Caesar's officers to desert him, he showed himself throughout the war a monster, not only of ingratitude, but of cruelty and hate. He was killed at Munda in the closing battle of the Civil War, 45 B.C., being himself largely responsible for the manoeuvre which lost the day for the Pompeians.

195, 25. *ad* . . . *Apsum*: on the south side.

195, 26. *castellis vicisque*: *dat.* of interest, accompanying the *dat.* of service *praesidio*.

195, 27. *reliquarum* . . . *legionum*: the five legions at Brundisium, see 188, 9, and 190, 22.

195, 28. *sub pellibus*: this meant great hardship. Roman soldiers were generally quartered for the winter in towns or in wooden barracks.

196, 1. CHAPTER 14. *Calenus*: see 192, 15.

196, 3. *quantum*: 'so far as'; he embarked as many men as his supply of ships allowed.

196, 6. *litora*: 'parts of the coast.'

196, 9. *privatoque consilio*, etc.: 'and was being run under private management.'

196, 10. *delata*: *sc. est*. With two passives side by side the required form of *sum* is usually expressed but once.

196, 11. *servis*, etc.: 'all, slaves and free.' — *ad impuberes*: 'including the boys'; cf. the same use of *ad* in *ad unum*, 'to a man.' Bibulus displayed the same ferocity in 192, 23 f.

196, 12. *in* . . . *constitit*: 'depended on,' etc.

196, 13. *casu*: 'good luck,' *i.e.* the arrival of Caesar's letter in the nick of time.

196, 14. CHAPTER 15. *supra*, etc.: implied in l. 10.

196, 15. *sicuti* . . . *ita*: 'while . . . still'; in l. 22, 'not only . . . but even.'

196, 23. *uno tempore*: 'one time.'

196, 24. *difficilioribus*, etc.: 'having had unusually bad weather,' so that water could not be brought from Corcyra.

196, 25. *excipere*: 'to catch,' as it dripped from the skins.

196, 29. *in quibus* . . . *angustiis*: = *in iis angustiis in quibus eos esse demonstravi*.

196, 30. *Libo*: with his colleague Octavius (190, 10) he had con-

quered Illyricum in 49 B.C. by defeating Dolabella and Gaius Antonius; see on *Antonianos*, 189, 9.

197, 4. **ut . . . viderentur**: 'so that they really seemed about to treat for a settlement.'

197, 7. **sciebant**: Acilius and Murcus are the subjects.

197, 8. **profectum** [esse]: from *proficio*; 'something was thought to have been gained.' They supposed that Pompey had commissioned Bibulus and Libo to reply to the proposal for peace which Caesar had made through Vibullius (see 193, 9 ff.).

197, 12. CHAPTER 16. **expediendam**: 'arranging.' — **qua . . . utebatur**: 'with which he was scantily provided.'

197, 19. **ex aedilitate**: see on *Bibulus*, 190, 11.

197, 22. **Suam**: 'their,' including Bibulus, as is clear from the pl. *missuros*, l. 26, and *ipsis*, l. 28.

197, 23. **componeretur**: impers., 'a settlement might be made.'

197, 24. **de consili sententia**: 'by a vote of the council,' i.e. of the senators about Pompey, who considered themselves "the senate" and the only legitimate rulers of Rome.

197, 27. **per se**: 'by himself.'

197, 28. **manerent**: 'let . . . remain in force,' for *maneant* (hortatory) of Libo's own words. — **dum . . . posset**: 'until a message could come back from him.' Libo said *possit*, subj. of expected action with *dum*.<sup>1</sup>

197, 29. **de causa**: 'about the matter in dispute,' between Caesar and Pompey.

198, 1. CHAPTER 17. **Quibus de rebus**: refers to the *pauca* of the previous sentence. Apparently Libo had tried to impress Caesar with the folly of his engaging in a struggle against Pompey's overwhelming force. Caesar thought such boasting unworthy of an answer at the time or of mention in his history.

198, 2. **ut . . . prodantur**: a complementary or subst. result clause,<sup>2</sup> equiv. to a pred. acc. with the implied *esse* of which *satis* is subject. Sc. *cae res* as subject of *prodantur*.

198, 3. **causae**: partit. gen. with *satis*.

198, 5. **idque ipsi**, etc.: 'and that they themselves (Libo and Bibulus) guarantee that this should be done, or take the envoys and them-

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 603, 2 (519, 2)	921	553 (328)	572	293, iii. 2
2 571, 2 (501, i, 2)	902	571 (cf. 332, a, 2)	553, 4	297, 3

selves (*per se*) conduct them to him.' *Recipio*, meaning 'take the responsibility for, guarantee,' is equiv. to a vb. of promising.

198, 6. *Quod . . . pertineret*: 'as to the truce'; see on *quod . . . adortus esset*, 59, 29.

198, 7. *illi*: the Pompeians, who were preventing Caesar's troops at Brundisium from coming to him.

198, 8. *ipse*: precedes *ut* because emphatic, contrasted with *illi*.

198, 9. *Si hoc*, etc.: 'if they wished this restriction given up for them, they should give up for him (*ipsi*) their guards on the sea.' For *remitterent*, see on *relinquerent*, etc., 190, 16.

198, 10. *illud*: 'that restriction of theirs'; *id*, 'this of his.'

198, 11. *Nihilo minus*, etc.: 'none the less, however, it was possible to treat for a settlement, although these restrictions were not given up.' For concessive *ut*, see on 87, 4.

198, 12. *hanc rem*: 'this point,' *i.e.* the failure to remove the restrictions. — *illi*: sc. *rei* (from *rem*) = treating for a settlement; dat. of interest.

198, 13. *recipere*, etc.: infins. of intimation (hist.), 'would not receive,' etc.

198, 14. *periculum praestare eorum*: 'be responsible for their danger.'

198, 15. *instare*, etc.: 'while he kept insisting on a truce and struggled very earnestly for it'; *de indutiis* belongs with both infins.

198, 17. *vitandae*: belongs with both genitives, agreeing with the nearer.

198, 18. *reliquam*, etc.: 'further planning for the war.'

198, 22. CHAPTER 18. *curari*: 'be taken care of.' — *neque . . . vellet*: 'and yet was unwilling.'

198, 25. *quisque*: see 190, 7 ff. for the division commanders of Pompey's fleet.

198, 28. *e re*: 'expedient.'

198, 29. *Lucceio*: he had been a candidate for the consulship for 59 B.C., the year of Caesar and Bibulus. He was a historian, apparently of no mean ability. In 56 B.C. Cicero wrote him a letter, still preserved (*ad Fam.*, 5, 12), urging him to write a monograph of Cicero's life and even to set it forth in more glowing colors than the strict truth would warrant. In the Civil War he accompanied Pompey and was one of his most trusted advisers. — *Theophane*: a Greek from Mitylene, one of Pompey's most intimate friends and advisers. When Pompey, during his flight after the battle of Pharsalus, was considering in what part of

the world he could find the safest asylum, it was Theophanes who advised him to go to Egypt. He wrote an account of Pompey's career, which was accused of gross partisanship.

199, 3. *vita*: instrumental abl. with *opus est*.<sup>1</sup>

199, 4. *Cuius rei*, etc.: 'the reputation for which (*i.e.* owing everything to Caesar) it will not be possible to dispel.'

199, 5. *reductus* [esse]: 'to have been brought back,' contrasted with *profectus sum*, 'I went forth,' *i.e.* of his own accord.

199, 9. CHAPTER 19. *bina*: 'two'; see on *trinis*, 149, 6.

199, 13. *Mittit*: Caesar is subject.—*Vatinium*: as tribune of the people in 59 B.C. he was instrumental in procuring for Caesar the governorship of the Gauls and Illyricum for five years.

199, 15. *pronuntiavit*: 'called out, asking.'

199, 16. *liceretne*: 'whether it was permitted,' indir. quest.<sup>2</sup>

199, 17. *fugitivis*: the remnants of Sertorius's Spanish army, who had been allowed by Pompey to settle just north of the Pyrenees in Aquitania, 72 B.C.—*praedonibusque*: for Pompey's war with the pirates, see Introd. § 22.

199, 18. *id agerent*: 'they were working to the end,' followed by a purpose clause in apposition with *id*.

199, 23. *visurum quem ad modum*: 'would see how,' *i.e.* 'make provision that.'

199, 25. *isset*: contracted form of *iisset*.

199, 26. *eius rei*: 'of the outcome.'

200, 1. *ille*: Vatinus.

200, 3. *non nulli*: limits both *centuriones* and *milites*.—*Labienus*: the vb. of saying is frequently omitted with a direct quotation.

200, 4. *ergo*: 'then,' *i.e.* seeing that the soldiers are so bitterly hostile. Doubtless the throwing of the missiles was prearranged by Labienus. See on 195, 20.

200, 5. *nisi . . . relato*: 'unless Caesar's head be brought to us.'

200, 6. CHAPTER 23. *ab Orico*: 'from the neighborhood of Oricum.'<sup>3</sup> Libo's fleet had joined Bibulus off Oricum some days before (see 196, 14 f., and 30), and at Oricum Caesar and Libo had their interview (197, 16 f.).

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	477, iii (414, iv)	646	411 (243, e)	406	218, 2
2	649, ii, 2 (529, 1)	811	217, d; 574 (149, d; 334)	467	300, 1 & 8
3	462, 3 (412, 3, N.)	606	428, a (258, a, N. 1)	391, R. 1	229, 2

200, 9. *praestare*: as in 175, 11.

200, 10. *omnia litora*: *i.e.* from Sason to Curicum (192, 25 f.). During the stormy weather only the principal ports were guarded.

200, 15. *adeo* . . . *profecit*: 'he accomplished so much owing to his advantageous position.'

200, 16. *naves* . . . *iuberet*: 'telling him to order,' etc.; cf. *relinquerent*, etc., 190, 16, and see note.

200, 17. *vellet*: for *voles* of the letter itself.

200, 19. CHAPTER 24. *Antonius*: Mark Antony, one of Caesar's most skillful officers, was in command of the troops which Caesar had been obliged to leave at Brundisium (188, 9 ff.).

200, 20. *virtute*: see on *quibus*, 194, 1.

200, 21. *cratibus pluteisque*: 'with wickerwork screens,' hendiadys.

200, 22. *eoque*: adv. = *et in eas*.

200, 24. *per causam*: 'on the pretext'; so always in Caesar.

201, 2. *Antonianae*: = *Antoni*.

201, 4. *defensoribus*: the fighting men on board, 'marines.' — *suis*: refers to *unam*. The refl. sometimes refers to an emphatic word which is not the subject.

201, 5. *Ad hoc*, etc.: 'in addition to this loss they were prevented,' etc.; see on *accedebat ut*, 89, 22.

201, 10. CHAPTER 25. *Multi* . . . *erant*: 'many months had already passed,' *i.e.* since Caesar arrived in Greece. It was probably toward the end of March, about Feb. 1 according to the seasons; see on *autumnus*, 188, 16. As Caesar landed Jan. 5 (190, 21 f.), not quite three months had passed, but the time doubtless seemed longer to him in his impatience over the delay of his reinforcements.

201, 13. *praetermissae* [esse]: 'to have been allowed to go by.' There is a story told by later writers that Caesar, in his suspicion of Antony's loyalty, put to sea in an open twelve-oared boat, intending to cross to Brundisium and bring his troops over himself, but was driven back by a strong west wind.

201, 14. *certi* . . . *venti*: 'the very winds.' — *necessario committendum*: 'they must necessarily intrust themselves.'

201, 15. *eius* . . . *temporis*: partit. gen. with *amplius*, 'the more this season had gone by.'

201, 16. *tanto*: with both *alacriores* and *maiores*, abl. of amount of difference. — *ad custodias*: 'for guard duty,' pl. because several fleets were on duty.

201, 18. *quoniam* . . . at: 'since . . . yet'; these clauses quote indirectly the contents of the letters.

201, 19. *reliquos* . . . *exitus*: 'his further departures,' *i.e.* of his troops from Italy.

201, 20. *impedirent*: see on *relinquerent*, etc., 190, 16. — *duriusque*, etc.: 'and they were daily looking forward to a harder time for transportation owing to lighter winds.' Transports were dependent upon wind (see Introd. § 48), so that as the spring advanced every day became less favorable for Antony. Pompey's ships of war, on the other hand, being propelled by rowers, were more and more favored by the weather.

201, 23. *ne* . . . *dimitterent*: 'that they should not,' etc., indir. disc. for *nolite dimittere*.<sup>1</sup>

201, 24. *Labeatium*: a people just above Lissus, so far north that Pompey's coast guards were not numerous. A more desirable destination was the coast of Apollonia, near Caesar's camp on the south bank of the Apsus (195, 25 f.), and it was not well guarded by Pompey's fleet because in the stormy weather the commanders were unwilling to venture far from the harbors of Dyrrachium and Corcyra.

201, 25. *eicere*: 'run the ships on shore,' of a hurried and irregular landing.

201, 28. CHAPTER 26. *Illi*: refers to *suos*, l. 22, *i.e.* Caesar's troops at Brundisium.

202, 3. *praetervehuntur*: the wind was probably too strong for them to try to run their ships ashore at Apollonia.

202, 4. *Coponius*: see 190, 9.

202, 6. *cum* . . . *appropinquasset*: Caesar's transports depended altogether on wind; Coponius's ships of war were rowed, and so had the advantage when the wind died down. See Introd. § 48.

202, 12. *si* . . . *remisisset*: implied indir. disc. representing a fut. perf. of the actual thought in the soldiers' minds.

202, 13. *Nymphaeum*: a harbor of the Labeates (201, 24).

202, 16. *tempestatis* . . . *periculum*: the south wind, blowing straight into the harbor, would drive the transports violently on shore.

202, 20. CHAPTER 27. *modo*: 'a moment before.'

202, 23. *tempore commutato*: 'by a change of circumstances.'

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 642, 4 (523, iii, N.)	1023	588, a, N. 2 (339, N. 2)	652	316. a

202, 24. *ad unam*: see on 192, 1. — *constratae numero XVI*: 'sixteen of them being decked'; *numero* is abl. of specification.

202, 26. *propugnatorumque*: see on *defensoribus*, 201, 4.

202, 29. CHAPTER 28. *Nostrae naves duae*: 'two of our ships.' — in *noctem coniectae*: 'overtaken by night.'

203, 7. *CC*: *ducentos*, the case which would be required if the comparative were omitted.<sup>1</sup>

203, 8. *esset*: 'there is'; statements of general truths follow the sequence of tenses. In English the present tense is preferred.

203, 9. *salò nauseaeque*: 'seasickness,' hendiadys.

203, 13. *interficiuntur*: the ferocity of the Pompeians throughout the war was a sad contrast to Caesar's clemency; cf. 202, 27 f.

203, 14. *vitiis*: 'discomforts.' — *neque . . . et*: correlative; cf. *neque . . . neque*, where both clauses are neg., and *et . . . et*, where both are affirmative. Translate, 'did not think . . . but.'

203, 15. *tractandis . . . deditionis*: abls. of manner limiting *extracto*, 'after dragging out the first part of the night in discussing terms and in a pretense of surrender.'

203, 20. *CCCC*: limits *equitibus*. — *quique*: = *iisque* (in the same constr. as *equitibus*) *qui*, 'and men who followed them armed from the garrison.'

203, 23. CHAPTER 29. *conventus*: see on 180, 22.

203, 25. *attribuerat*: during his governorship of the Gauls and Illyricum. Lissus was in Illyricum.

203, 29. *quarum erat*, etc.: 'of which there was a total of,' etc.; *quarum* is poss. gen., *legionum*, etc., are gens. of definition or appositional gens.; see on *millium*, 105, 27.

204, 2. *quod*: a rel. pron. agrees in gender and number with a pred. subst. in its own clause rather than with its antecedent. Cf. *haec*, 193, 8.

204, 4. *traiecisset*: for a fut. perf. in Antony's thought.

204, 5. *quae opinio*: 'a notion that he would do this.'

204, 7. *quibus*, etc.: indir. quests. depending on *nuntios*, 'messengers to tell in what,' etc.

204, 8. *militum*: partit. with *quid*, 'what force of soldiers.'

204, 12. CHAPTER 30. *secundo austro*: 'with the south wind.'

204, 16. *venienti*: *i.e.* Antony.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	471, 4 (417, N. 2)	618	407, c (247, c)	296, R. 4	217, 3

- 204, 17. *si . . . posset*: indir. quest., 'to see if he could.'<sup>1</sup>
- 204, 19. *educunt*: a pl. vb. with *utroque* is rare.
- 204, 20. *Caesari*, etc.: 'Caesar had to take a longer, more round-about route up-stream.' The Apsus could not be bridged or forded so near its mouth. *Circuitu* is abl. of quality; *adverso flumine* is abl. abs.
- 204, 22. *expedito itinere*: 'by an unobstructed route.'
- 205, 2. *castris*: see on 92, 18.
- 205, 4. *Graecos*: the inhabitants of the country.
- 205, 8. *Asparagium*: a town on the Genusus, near its mouth. See the map, p. 191, for the assumed routes of Caesar and Antony.
- 205, 11. CHAPTER 39. *ut . . . est*: referring only to *deductis . . . praesidiis*, not to *Caesar . . . reliquit*. Caesar stated in Ch. 34 (omitted in this book) that upon his union with Antony he withdrew a legion from Oricum, and sent small detachments to secure the surrounding districts of central Macedonia, Thessaly, and Aetolia.
- 205, 13. *quas . . . traduxerat*: see 192, 7. These ships had been held at Palaeste when Caesar sent his transports back to Brundisium (192, 12 f.), and had afterward been brought round into the secure harbor of Oricum.
- 205, 14. *Acilius*: see 197, 1.
- 206, 1. *faucibus*: essential complement or indir. obj. of *obiecit*. The entrance to the inner harbor was very narrow; see the plan, p. 205.
- 206, 2. *summersam obiecit*: 'he sank a transport and blockaded the entrance.' This is a measure often adopted in modern warfare, as at Santiago de Cuba in the Spanish-American war of 1898, and at Port Arthur, in 1904, in the war between Russia and Japan.
- 206, 7. CHAPTER 40. *qui . . . praeerat*: see 190, 7.
- 206, 9. *contendens*: 'by great efforts.'—*atque*: connects *abduxit* with *vicit* (l. 16).
- 206, 11. *ad libram*: 'of equal height,' but higher than the tower on Acilius's ship (cf. *superiore*, l. 12).
- 206, 12. *ut . . . pugnans*, etc.: 'since he was fighting,' etc., giving the reasons for *vicit*.
- 206, 13. *reliquis partibus*: 'at the other points'; loc. abl., see on *locis*, 54, 26. If Oricum had not been attacked, it could have sent aid to the ship.
- 206, 18. *mole . . . obiecta*: 'where a narrow natural breakwater had

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
x 649, 3 (529, 1, N. 1)		812	576, a (334, f)	460, b	300, 3

been thrown up,' *i.e.* by the action of the waves. Oricum had once been on an island. — *paene insulam*: 'a peninsula.'

206, 20. *impulsas vectibus*: 'moving them along with levers.' — *ex utraque parte*: from the entrance and from the inner harbor itself.

206, 21. *deligatae*: used as an adj. parallel with *inanes*.

206, 26. *naves*: the *pontones* of 204, 2. The loss of his ships at Oricum and at Lissus was a severe blow to Caesar.

206, 28. *conventus*: see 203, 23.

207, 1. CHAPTER 41. Caesar, etc.: continuing the narrative of Ch. 30.

207, 2. *eodem*: adv.

207, 3. *Parthinorum*: see on 194, 20.

207, 7. *decernendi*: 'of a decisive engagement.'

207, 10. *magno circuitu*: Caesar started out in the opposite direction (*diverso itinere*, l. 15 f.) from Dyrrachium, leading Pompey to suppose that he was on a foraging expedition to the fertile districts farther east. But later in the day Pompey's scouts discovered Caesar's army hastening toward Dyrrachium. Upon learning this alarming news, Pompey set off by the shortest route to protect his base of supplies, but found Caesar, who had made one of his characteristically swift marches, already encamped before the town.

207, 12. *Dyrrachium . . . intercludi*: Caesar hoped to cut Pompey off from Dyrrachium, and to force him to fight in a position less favorable than that at Asparagium, or else to shut his great army up in the city, where it would soon be in hard straits.

207, 22. *primum*: adj. — *cerneretur*: 'was in sight.'

207, 24. CHAPTER 42. *propositum tenere*: 'hold to his purpose,' *i.e.* to enter Dyrrachium before Caesar arrived.

207, 26. *mediocrem*: 'fairly good.' Pompey's position at Petra hill was only a few miles below Dyrrachium, and in easy communication with it across the bay. See plan, p. 218.

208, 2. *convenire*: an act. infin. with *impero* is rare, occurring only in combination with a pass. or dep. infin., the latter being not uncommon with *impero*.

208, 5. *longius . . . ductum iri*: the comparatively rare fut. pass. infin., 'would be dragged out rather long.'

208, 9. *fecerat* = *faciendas curaverat*, 'had had built.'

208, 15. *cum . . . tum*: see on 91, 26.

208, 17. *haec providerat*: 'had foreseen this move.'

208, 19. *suffossisque*: apparently grain and supplies had been hidden in cellars or pits.

208, 25. CHAPTER 43. *haec spectans*: 'having these aims in view,' explained by the appositive purpose clauses *quo . . . posset, uti . . . prohiberet*, etc.

209, 3. *qua*: see on *quibus*, 194, 1.

209, 4. *niti videbatur*: 'was clearly relying' ('was seen to be relying').

209, 5. *percrebrisset*: 'should have been spread abroad,' implied indir. disc., for fut. perf. of the thought in Caesar's mind when he formed his plan.

209, 11. CHAPTER 44. *nisi . . . vellet*: 'unless he were willing,' a less vivid fut. condition in the past, the imperf. representing an original pres. subj.<sup>1</sup>

209, 13. *Relinquebatur*: impers., having as subject the result clauses with *ut*,<sup>2</sup> 'it remained for him to,' etc. — *extremam rationem belli*: 'the only method of warfare left.'

209, 15. *posset*: might be omitted, as with *quam plurimos* and *quam latissimas*.

209, 17. *multaque*: many kinds of crops, which were useful as green fodder. Grain could be brought by water from Dyrrachium.

209, 18. *quibus . . . pasceret*: 'on which he could feed,' etc., characteristic.

209, 20. *ne quo*: cf. *ne quem*, 106, 27, and see on *ne . . . praetermitteret*, *ib.*

209, 23. *operibus*: abl. of specification, 'the enemy won in the matter of works.'

209, 25. *cum*: 'whenever,' as is seen by the imperf. *mittebat* in the main clause.

209, 26. *loca*: indef., 'places.'

209, 27. *suis locis*: an unemphasized poss. pron. follows its subst.; here, as often, *suis* means 'his own,' in the sense of 'favorable' or 'suitable' for him.

209, 28. *magnum . . . numerum*: see 189, 11 ff.

210, 2. *quibus . . . vitarent*: purpose, 'with which to avoid.'

210, 4. CHAPTER 47. *tanto . . . numero*, etc.: abls. of cause, 'on

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	545, ii, 3 (509, N. 3)	936-37	516, f (307, f)	596, 2	303 & 6
2	571, i (501, i, 1)	902	569, 2 (332, a, 2)	553, 3	297, 2

account of the great number,' etc. Caesar's lines extended seventeen miles (218, 12). They inclosed Pompey's fortifications, which were fifteen miles long (209, 16 f.), and had to be built at some distance from them owing to Pompey's vigorous obstructive tactics. See plan, p. 218.

210, 7. *conati sunt, continuerunt*: gnomi perfs., stating what has regularly been true, 'whenever generals have attempted to besiege another, they have shut in an enemy,' etc.

210, 16. *quin . . . haberent*: 'without their (the ships) having.'<sup>1</sup>

210, 20. *in Hispania*: shortly before the battle of Ilerda (see summary of Book I, toward the end, p. 383) Caesar's army suffered severely from lack of supplies.

210, 21. *ad Alesiam*: the remarkable siege of Alesia is described in 154, 1 ff., but no mention is made of distress in the Roman army.

210, 23. *ad Avaricum*: see summary of *B.G.*, Book VII, p. 365.

210, 24. *Non*: put first, and then repeated, for emphasis, 'not even.' — *illi*: 'the brave fellows.' — *hordeum*: not so well liked by the Romans as corn or wheat. — *quin daretur*: see on *quin . . . contendant*, 103, 27, 'they did not refuse to accept even barley' (lit., 'but that barley should be given').

210, 25. *pecus*: meat was acceptable to the Roman soldier only when grain (*frumentum*) was not to be had.

210, 29. CHAPTER 48. *chaza*: not to be translated. — *Id . . . efficiebant*: 'they made this into a dish like bread.' Napoleon's soldiers on the retreat from Moscow prepared grass for food.

211, 5. CHAPTER 49. *frumenta*: observe the pl.

211, 10. *victuros*: note the quantity of *i*.

211, 13. *tolerari*: 'were barely kept alive.'

211, 15. *uti*: note the quantity of *u*.

211, 17. *insuetos, adfectos*: both limit *ipsos*, 'the men themselves,' but *insuetos* is in pred. apposition, 'unused, as they were, to work,' and explains *laboribus*, while *adfectos* is causal, 'because they were afflicted,' and is correlated by *tum* to the causal abs. following *cum*.

211, 22. *continere*: 'kept back'; a result clause. Caesar diverted the streams which flowed through the space Pompey had inclosed with his lines of defense.

211, 23. *sequi*: 'seek.'

211, 25. *qui . . . fontes*: 'these springs,' meaning the *putei*.

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 595 (504)	915	559 (319, d)	556	224, 3

211, 26. *longius*: 'too far.'

211, 29. *cui rei*: indir. obj. of *occurrere*, 'for which they saw that daily a better time was coming,' *i.e.* the grain was ripening every day, and so their chances of having a supply were constantly improving.

212, 4. CHAPTER 50. *ad munitiones*, etc.: 'were bivouacking near the lines.' — *universi*: so as to cause great damage with one volley.

212, 7. *ut*, etc.: 'to build,' etc., complementary or subst. result clauses in apposition with *remedia*. A considerable passage has been lost here, telling of Caesar's unsuccessful attack on Dyrrachium, and of the gallant defense of one of Caesar's redoubts by a single cohort against four legions of Pompey, until after several hours Sulla came to its relief as related in Ch. 51.

212, 8. CHAPTER 51. *Sulla*: nephew of the dictator Sulla, a good soldier, but a man of disreputable character. He had been kept out of the consulship for 65 B.C. by a charge of bribery which was proved against him. He was tried in 62 B.C. for complicity in Catiline's conspiracy, and although successfully defended by Cicero in a speech still extant, he was probably guilty. — *discedens*: to attack Dyrrachium (see on l. 7).

212, 9. *castris*: Caesar's main camp, between Pompey and Dyrrachium (207, 21 f.); see plan, p. 218. — *cohorti*: dat. of interest accompanying the dat. of purpose. This cohort (see on l. 7) was defending a redoubt at the northeastern part of Caesar's lines.

212, 15. *voluisset*: not changed in form by being quoted.<sup>1</sup>

212, 16. *potuisse*: represents *potuit* of the dir. disc.<sup>2</sup> — *non reprehendendum* [esse]: 'not to deserve blame.'

212, 17. *Aliae . . . atque*: 'different from.'

212, 18. *ad*: 'according to'; so in the next line.

212, 20. *hoc*: 'with this achievement,' *i.e.* the rescue of his comrades (*liberatis suis*, abl. abs.).

212, 21. *quae res*, etc.: 'an undertaking which anyhow (*i.e.* although victory seemed probable) might<sup>3</sup> perhaps have met with some mischance.'

212, 23. *res*: 'the situation.' — *ad*: see on *ad spem*, 183, 4.

212, 24. *in summo*: sc. *loco*, 'at the highest point,' where the redoubt was.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	647 (527, iii)	1037	589, δ, 1 (337, δ, 1)	597, R. 4	321, B
2	647, 3 (527, iii, N. 2, 1)	940	583, δ, 4 (308, c)	597, R. 3	304, 3, a
3	552: 554, 3 (485)	720	446 (311, a)	257, 1: 258	280

212, 25. *si . . . recipere* : 'if they were to retire'; see on *nisi . . . vellet*, 209, 11.

212, 28. *rem duxerant* : 'they had prolonged the attack.' — *necessario atque ex tempore* : 'in accordance with the necessities of the moment.' Upon the arrival of Sulla with his two legions (l. 10) Pompey had withdrawn from the attack on the redoubt, but fearing to retreat to his own lines because he supposed the Caesareans would pursue him down the slope, he seized a hill lying near but out of range of missiles from the redoubt, and encamped there for a few days. See on the plan, p. 218, Pompey's temporary camp.

213, 9. CHAPTER 52. *cohortibus* : abl. of means.

213, 10. *Germani* : see 189, 18.

213, 13. CHAPTER 53. *ad Dyrrachium* : see on 212, 7.

213, 15. *ad duo millia* : *ad* is an adv., 'about.'

213, 16. *evocatos . . . complures* : in apposition with *millia*, 'several being,' etc.

213, 18. *L. filius* : = *Luci filius*. — *eius* : 'the man,' in apposition with *Luci*. The elder Flaccus was praetor in 63 B.C., and assisted Cicero in overthrowing the Catilinarian conspiracy. The next year he was governor of the province of Asia. In 59 B.C. Cicero successfully defended him, in a speech that is still preserved, against the charge of Asiatic extortion, bringing into court the son, then a mere boy, to stir the sympathies of the jury.

213, 19. *Nostri* : a poss. pron. stands in agreement with *pauca* or a numeral rather than, as in English, in the partit. gen. Cf. *nostrae naves duae*, 202, 29.

213, 20. *castello illo* : the one relieved by Sulla, where the hardest fighting had occurred (see on 212, 7).

213, 21. *quin* : 'but that,' after a general negative, as in 210, 16.

213, 25. *Scaevae* : according to Suetonius (*Life of Caesar*, 68) he lost an eye, and was wounded in the thigh and shoulder, but would not surrender the gate which he was guarding.

213, 26. *ut . . . meritis* : 'according to his services to him.'

213, 27. *donatum*, etc. : translate as finite vbs. parallel with *pronuntiavit*. — *millibus cc.* : sc. *sestertium* (gen. pl.). So in English, when spoken, the words 'dollars' and 'cents' are often omitted. The sesterce was about four cents, so that Scaeva's reward amounted to over \$8000.

213, 28. *ab octavis ordinibus ad primipilum* : 'from the centurions

of the eighth cohort (lit., 'from the eighth grades') to first centurion of the legion.' On the promotion of centurions, see Introd. § 35.

214, 1. *militaribusque donis*: soldiers' ornaments and marks of honor, such as bracelets, crowns, spears (for show, not for service, like gift swords to-day), banners, etc.

214, 4. CHAPTER 54. *reliquis diebus*: 'on the remaining days.' Pompey stayed in the temporary camp five days. From the strength of his fortifications it is likely that he expected to be attacked there.

214, 5. *operibus*: the towers.

214, 8. *ad impediendum*: to hinder the Caesareans if they should attack him when he was marching away from camp.

214, 9. *antiquas*, etc.: his main camp on Petra hill (207, 26).

214, 12. CHAPTER 55. *aequum in locum*: between his and Pompey's main camps. — *si . . . vellet*: see on *si . . . posset*, 204, 17.

214, 13. *ut*: 'so that,' result.

214, 14. *tantum*: 'only so far,' from the rampart of Pompey's camp.

214, 15. *uti ne*: used generally with purpose clauses,<sup>1</sup> but sometimes, as here, with clauses that express an intended result.<sup>2</sup> In 213, 2, a pure result clause has *ut . . . non*.

214, 16. *famam opinionemque*: 'the fair report and esteem.' Since his successes against the pirates and Mithridates, 67-63 B.C., Pompey's fame, especially in the East, had far overshadowed that of any other military or political leader of the time. Caesar now and then implies, rather sarcastically, that Pompey is living too much on the reputation of his past achievements. See 209, 3 f.

214, 17. *tertia acies*: see Introd. § 46.

214, 20. CHAPTER 58. *equitatum*: cavalry which Pompey had sent by water from Petra hill to protect the town against Caesar's attack (see on 212, 7).

214, 22. *demonstravimus*: these approaches to Dyrrachium must have been described in the lost passage after Ch. 50. One approach was by a bridge over the stream connecting the lagoon with the bay; see plan, p. 218. The other was at the northern end of the lagoon where it is separated from the sea by a narrow isthmus; see map of *Macedonia and Thessaly*, p. 191.

215, 1. *alerent*: 'they had to feed,' the obligatory use of the verb.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	'B.
1	562, 2, 4th ex. (499, 1)	891	531, 1 (317)	545, R. I	282, δ
2	570, 4.		537, α, N. (319, α, N.)		

215, 2. *quae . . . sata*: see 209, 17 f.

215, 3. *Corcyra*: see on *Creta*, 189, 11. *Acarnania* would regularly have *ex*; but is attracted to the constr. of *Corcyra*. — *longo . . . spatio*: 'by a long voyage.'

215, 5. *hordeo adaugere*: 'to increase it by adding barley.'

215, 6. *tolerare*: cf. *tolerari*, 211, 13.

215, 8. *conandum*, etc.: 'that he ought to make some attempt in the way of a sortie.'

215, 12. CHAPTER 59. *multis annis*: expressing the space of time *within which*,<sup>1</sup> but to be translated like the acc. of duration, which might have been used.

215, 14. *optima*: pred. adj., 'had found most useful.'

215, 16. *senatum*: of the Allobroges.

215, 21. *amicitia*: see on *victoriis*, 95, 4.

215, 22. *stipendium*, etc.: these two Gauls appear to have been paymasters in the Gallic cavalry. They not only kept part of the soldiers' wages, but drew dead men's pay, and when booty was turned over to them for distribution among their troops, they kept it all themselves (*domum avertabant*).

215, 24. *illi*: the equites.

215, 28. CHAPTER 60. *neque*, etc.: 'thinking that this was no time for taking action.' He wanted to give all his attention to the siege of Pompey.

215, 29. *virtuti*: indir. obj. of *concedens*, 'making many allowances out of regard for their bravery.' — *rem . . . sustulit*: 'he quashed the whole proceeding.'

215, 30. *quod . . . haberent*: 'because, as he said, they were using their cavalymen for gain'; implied indir. disc., stating the reason which Caesar gave them for his reproof.

216, 1. *ut*, etc.: in contrast to the method which they were pursuing.

216, 2. *reliqua*: sc. *officia*, 'and to hope for future favors in keeping with his past services.'

216, 4. *ad omnes*: 'among all.'

216, 6. *ex domestico*, etc.: 'from their own judgments and guilty consciences.'

216, 7. *Quo pudore*: = *cuius rei pudore*, 'by a feeling of shame at the situation.'

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 417, 2 (379, 1)	631	424, 6, N. (256, 6, N.)	393, 2. 2	231, 1

216, 8. *liberari*: *i.e.* from punishment. They doubtless remembered how, five years before, in Gaul, Caesar had deferred the punishment of Acco till the campaigning season was over (see summary of *B.G.*, Book VI, last paragraph, p. 356).

216, 15. *clientibus*: appositive to *paucis*, 'a few men only.'

216, 22. *cum munere aliquo*: 'with some service' to him.

216, 26. *ac si*: like *quasi*, etc., taking the subj. of a conditional comparison.<sup>1</sup>

216, 30. CHAPTER 61. *honesto loco nati*: 'of honorable birth.'<sup>2</sup>

217, 1. *comitatu*: indefinite designations of military forces, if limited by an adj., may omit *cum*; <sup>3</sup> *iumentis* is attracted to the constr. of *comitatu*; if alone, it would take *cum*.

217, 4. *hoc . . . acciderat*: 'this was a new and unusual circumstance,' *i.e.* for deserters to come to him from Caesar.

217, 5. *circumduxit*: *quos* is the dir. obj., *praesidia* is a secondary obj. belonging closely with the preposition.<sup>4</sup>

217, 8. *vulgo vero universi . . . milites*: sc. *perfugerant*, 'in fact, the soldiers had deserted all together in a body (*vulgo*) who had been enrolled,' etc. — in *Epiro*: see 189, 8.

217, 9. *earumque regionum*: parallel with *in Epiro . . . conscripti*, limiting *milites*, 'and the soldiers of all those districts.'

217, 10. *quae . . . tenebantur*: see on 205, 11. Caesar's clemency, as well as his energy and success in the war thus far, were apparently having their effect in winning men to his side. — *hi*: the two Gauls. — *omnibus rebus*: *i.e.* in Caesar's army.

217, 11. *quid*: indef., as after *si*.

217, 12. *peritioribus*: indef., 'men well skilled.' — *rei*: obj. gen.<sup>5</sup> — *temporibusque . . . animadversa*: 'and having observed the times of doing things and the distances between places,' etc.

217, 14. *prout . . . ferebat*: explaining *varia*, 'according to the character or the energy of each of the men in charge of undertakings.'

217, 15. *haec*: summing up the clauses *cognitis . . . ferebat*.

217, 18. CHAPTER 62. *ut demonstratum est*: in 215, 9. — *tegimenta*: the advantage of these twig coverings appears in 219, 10 f.

	H.	L. M.	A	G	B
1	584 (513, ii)	944	524 (312)	602	307
2	469, 2 (415, ii)	604	403, a (244, a)	395	215
3	474, 2, M. 1 (419, iii, 1)	634	413, a (248, a, M.)	392, R. 1	222, 1
4	413 (376)	501	395 (239, b)	331, R. 1	179
5	450 (399)	573	349, a (218, a)	274	204, 1

217, 19. *aggerem*: 'rubbish,' for filling up Caesar's trenches (219, 6 f.).

217, 23. *cohortes LX*: the equivalent of six legions. Assuming an average of 3600 men to a legion (Introd. § 27), we may suppose that over 20,000 legionary soldiers, besides the strong force of light troops, were used in the attack on Caesar's lines.—*ex maximis castris*, etc.: Pompey's main camp at Petra hill and the posts here and there along his lines.

217, 24. *ad eam partem*, etc.: the southernmost part of Caesar's lines, running west toward the sea. A double line of fortifications had been built there, 600 feet apart, within which the Caesareans could repel attacks from the north or the south. See 218, 3 ff.

217, 25. *maximis castris Caesaris*: the main camp, at the north-western end of the lines.

217, 30. *positum habebat*: 'was keeping . . . stationed'; see on *coactum habebat*, 61, 6.

218, 3. CHAPTER 63. *pedum XV*: in width, as generally when only one dimension of a trench is given. The depth was probably about nine feet.

218, 4. *contra hostem*: *i.e.* facing Pompey's lines, which were a short distance away to the north.—*pedum X*: gen. of quality with *vallum*.

218, 5. *agger*: 'earthwork,' on which palisades were planted to protect the soldiers as they fought from the top of the rampart. The width of the earthwork, ten feet, was sufficient to allow the defenders to move about comfortably.

218, 7. *in contrariam partem*: facing south, as a defense against any troops that Pompey might land from his ships south of Caesar's lines.—*vallus*: = *vallum*.

218, 8. *Hoc*: explained by the appositive clause *ne . . . circumvenirentur*, which takes its constr. from *timens*.

218, 10. *ancipiti*: with one force attacking on the north and another on the south.

218, 11. *posset resisti*: *impers.*, 'it might be possible for resistance to be made.'—*omnium dierum*: 'of every day,' *poss.* gen.

218, 13. *perficiendi spatium*: 'time for completion.'

218, 14. *contra*: 'facing.'—*transversum vallum*: 'a cross wall,' uniting the two lines at their western end.

219, 4. *in excubiis*: between Caesar's two parallel lines. The two cohorts were sent from Marcellinus's camp (217, 29 f.), which was near

by; see the plan. — *accessere*: this form of the perf. third person pl. is rare in Caesar.

219, 6. *milites*: the light-armed men (217, 27), who landed at a point outside Caesar's lines and attacked the outer or southern wall.

219, 7. *legionarii*: the sixty cohorts who marched down from Pompey's main camp (217, 23) and attacked the inner or northern wall of Caesar's double lines.

219, 9. *ab utraque parte*: the archers, who had come by water (217, 21), were sent, some against the northern, some against the southern wall.

219, 12. *omnibus rebus*: 'in all respects.'

219, 13. *animadversum est*: the two deserters had told Pompey of the incompleteness of the cross wall (l. 1 f.), but the spot was now discovered and men from the ships poured in to attack in the rear Caesar's two cohorts who were defending the two parallel ramparts.

219, 18. CHAPTER 64. *cohortes*: of the ninth legion (217, 30).

219, 20. *fugientes*: acc.

219, 26. *a viribus deficeretur*: 'he was being deserted by his strength,' *viribus* being personified and made a voluntary agent.

219, 27. *Hanc*: sc. *aquilam*, the eagle being the standard of the Roman legion (Introd. § 40).

219, 29. *Nolite . . . committere*: see on 161, 11.

219, 30. *ut . . . admittatur*: obj. of *committere*.

220, 1. *incolumemque*: 'but,' etc.

220, 3. *principem priorem*: belonging in the first cohort, he was the third in rank of the sixty centurions of his legion. See Introd. § 35.

220, 6. CHAPTER 65. *cohortibus*: those of the ninth legion which had remained in camp.

220, 7. *proximum*: i.e. the post nearest to Marcellinus's camp, and lying north of it.

220, 12. *per castella*: 'from redoubt to redoubt.'

220, 15. *extra munitiones*: upon the rout of Caesar's cohorts from the double lines, Pompey had apparently led his legionaries to the south or outer side of these lines, where he was fortifying a new camp near the shore; see the plan.

220, 16. *ut . . . posset*: expresses the purpose of *egressum*, *nec . . . haberet* that of *manere*. — *nec minus*: 'and nevertheless.'

220, 18. *propositum*, etc.: 'he had not succeeded in his purpose,' i.e. of blockading Pompey. — *castra*: his new camp east of Pompey's.

220, 22. CHAPTER 66. *quod*: see on 204, 2.

220, 23. *vetera castra*: the old camp north of Caesar's double lines; see the plan.

220, 25. *ut demonstravimus*: in Ch. 45 f., omitted in this book.

220, 28. *quibusdam de causis*: probably he found that he could run his siege lines to better advantage farther south.

220, 29. *transtulerat*: to Marcellinus's camp.

220, 30. *eadem haec*: the old camp abandoned by Caesar's ninth legion.

221, 2. *relicto*, etc.: 'leaving the inner wall standing.' This was the rampart of the original camp, but was partly inclosed by Pompey. It is marked in red on the plan, p. 218.

221, 3. *maioribus*: sc. *castris*.

221, 4. *munitionem*: an earthwork and ditch running northeast from the camp to the Palamnus River, which had not been diverted from its course with the other streams (211, 18 f.).

221, 11. CHAPTER 67. *legionis*: the cohorts of 220, 21.

221, 16. *in opere*: 'engaged on the works,' building his new camp, which was about half a mile from Pompey's new camp.

221, 18. *reliquas cohortes*: i.e. the rest of his troops in the new camp. There were other legions in the redoubts along his lines.

221, 21. *duplici acie*: the double line, which was longer than the usual formation in triple line (see Introd. § 46), was preferable for surrounding the old camp and attacking on all sides at once. — *prima opinio*: i.e. that he could crush Pompey's legion (l. 15).

221, 28. *Pullone*: one of the brave centurions of 134, 1 ff. He joined Pompey after betraying Gaius Antonius in 49 B.C. See on *Antonianos*, 189, 9. — *demonstravimus*: probably in the lost passage after Ch. 8.

222, 1. *castellum*: the original camp of Caesar's ninth legion; see 221, 2.

222, 3. *repugnantes*: acc.

222, 8. CHAPTER 68. *supra*: in 221, 4 f.

222, 9. *portam*: the gate of the old camp. They thought that the wall running to the Palamnus was the rampart of the camp. If Caesar had provided for a reconnaissance before leaving his new camp, this blunder of his right wing might have been avoided.

222, 11. *Quod*: 'but,' as in *quod si*, see on 60, 15.

222, 12. *prorutis munitionibus*: a comparatively small breach was made, as is seen from l. 22 ff.

222, 14. CHAPTER 69. *satis*: 'rather.'

222, 15. *ab opere*: from the work of fortifying his new camp.

222, 16. *suis*: the legion in the old camp.

222, 17. *appropinquabat*: Pompey's cavalry must have ridden round the old camp, being hidden from view by the woods (220, 27, and the plan), and have appeared on the northeast of the camp to Caesar's cavalry, which had just passed through the breach in the wall that ran to the river (see l. 13).

222, 18. *acies*: the line of Pompey's five legions in battle array, probably southwest of the old camp.

222, 19. *Pompeiana legio*: the legion that had been so hard pressed in the old camp (l. 2) saw the reinforcements and began to fight with fresh courage.

222, 20. *decumana porta*: here the gate in the northwest wall of the camp. The legion had been pushed by Caesar's men to the extreme rear of the inclosure.

222, 22. *angusto itinere*: see on *prorutis munitionibus*, l. 12. — *per aggeres*: 'over the earthworks.'

222, 23. *receptui*: dat. of interest, 'fearing for,' etc.

222, 24. *dextrum cornu*: the body which had gone astray along the wall running to the river and had then breached it and passed through with the cavalry (l. 8 ff.). It was separated from the left wing (221, 24) by the rampart of the camp.

222, 25. *munitionem*: the wall to the river.

222, 27. *angustias*: 'a tight place.' They knew that if they all crowded to the narrow breach in the wall, Pompey's cavalry would cut many of them down before they could get through. — *ex . . . munitione*: 'from the ten-foot fortification.' This was also the height of Caesar's inner line south of the old camp (218, 4): If the trench was, also like Caesar's, fifteen feet wide, it was doubtless some nine feet deep (see on *pedum XV*, 218, 3), thus making a jump of nearly twenty feet. — *fossas*: pl., of different parts of the trench.

223, 1. *angustiis*: abl. of means, 'shut up in a tight place,' i.e. between the two ramparts of the old camp.

223, 2. *eodem . . . receptu*: 'by the same way of retreat as they had come,' an inexact expression for *eodem quo venerant itinere se recipientes*, 'retreating the same way they had come.'

223, 5. *idem iussi*, etc.: 'though receiving the same order, hastened to pursue the same course as before,' *i.e.* kept on in their flight. Plutarch says that when a big, strong soldier who was running away was ordered by Caesar to stand and face the enemy again, he seized his sword and would have killed his general if his arm had not been cut off by Caesar's attendant.

223, 6. *signa dimitterent*: 'threw away their standards.'

223, 8. CHAPTER 70. *His tantis*, etc.: 'the following helpful circumstances came to the relief of these great disasters, preventing the whole army's being destroyed, namely that Pompey,' etc.

223, 9. *quo minus*: depending on the idea of hindering<sup>1</sup> in the previous clause. — *quod . . . tardabantur*: subst. clauses in apposition<sup>2</sup> with *haec subsidia*.

223, 13. *angustiis*, etc.: 'by the narrow breach (in the wall which ran to the river), and that too, occupied,' etc. Cf. *atque his*, 129, 18, and note.

223, 14. *ad*: see on *ad spem*, 183, 4.

223, 17. *propriam expeditamque*: 'complete and easy.'

223, 22. CHAPTER 71. *equites*: 'knights.'

223, 23. *Placentia*: abl. of source, a usage far less common than the proper adj., which would be here *Placentinum*.

223, 25. *fossis*: see on *fossas*, 222, 27.

223, 28. *imperator*: see on 173, 3. Pompey allowed himself to be addressed by this title, but as his victory had been won over fellow-countrymen, he refrained from using it officially or from adopting the decoration which it usually carried.

223, 30. *praescribere*: the Romans signed their names at the beginning of letters and despatches, while the place and date of writing were put at the end.

224, 3. *quo . . . haberetur*: 'that greater confidence in the deserter (obj. gen.) might be felt.' Labienus, who had deserted Caesar at the outbreak of the war, was naturally distrusted by Pompey. He constantly sought to prove his loyalty by his cruelty toward his old comrades in Caesar's army.

224, 4. *appellans*: the dir. obj., as also of *interrogans* and *interfecit*, is *omnes*, l. 2. — *magna . . . contumelia*: abl. of manner.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	568, 8 (497, 2)	909	558, 8 (331, 2)	549	295, 3
2	588, 3 (540, iv, n.)	848	572 & n. (333 & n.)	525, 2	299, 1, a

224, 8. CHAPTER 72. *ratione belli*: 'the conduct of the war.' Pompey was advised to take his army at once to Italy, leaving only a small force to harry Caesar, who, being without ships, could follow him only by marching through Illyricum round the head of the Adriatic. Pompey rejected this advice because it looked too much like running away.

224, 9. *Non*: to bring out the emphasis which the negative receives from its position and repetition, translate, 'it was not the small number of our soldiers, it was not the unfavorableness,' etc.

224, 11. *praeoccupatis castris*: 'due to the seizure of the camp beforehand,' i.e. by Pompey's legion.

224, 12. *non abscisum*, etc.: 'it was not the cutting of our army into two divisions.' The perf. part. agreeing with a subst. frequently contains the main idea.<sup>1</sup>

224, 13. *causae fuisse*, etc.: 'that had been the cause of our defeat, as they thought.' *Paucitatem*, etc., are subjects of *fuisse*; *causae* is dat. of tendency or service.

224, 14. *non concursu*, etc.: translate the abl. abs. as if parallel with *dimicatum* [esse], 'that no fierce charge had been made, no real battle fought, but the men themselves,' etc.

224, 17. *communes . . . casus*: 'the chances of war that are common to all.'

224, 18. *quam*: adv. limiting *parvulae*, 'what trivial causes,' and like *quotiens*, l. 20, introducing an indir. quest. in apposition with *casus*. — *suspicionis*, etc.: gens. of definition or appositional gens.,<sup>2</sup> 'in the way of,' etc.

224, 19. *objectae religionis*: 'of opposing religious scruples.'

224, 21. *esset offensum*: impers.; cf. *offenderunt*, 192, 19. — *ac si*: see on 216, 26.

225, 4. CHAPTER 73. *unum*: emphatic by contrast with *multis*.

225, 5. *opponerent*: 'set against.' — *Habendam . . . gratiam*: 'they ought to be grateful.'

225, 6. *aliquo*: 'some . . . or other'; cf. *sine ullo vulnere*, 223, 26, 'without any wound.'

225, 7. *bellicosissimorum . . . ducibus*: to keep the Latin order of thought, translate, 'with their warlike men under highly skilled and

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	636, 4 (549, 5, N. 2)	1013	497 (292, a)	664, R. 2	337, 5
2	440, 4 (396, vi)	569	343, d (214, f)	361, i	202

well-trained leaders.' *Hominum* limits *ducibus*, which is concessive abl. abs. with the adjs.

225, 9. *provincias*: Sicily and Sardinia, which supplied great quantities of grain for the Roman market. For all these conquests, see summary of Book I, p. 383.

225, 10. *debere*: sc. *eos* as subject.—*inter medias*: 'in the very midst.'

225, 12. *transportati*: from Brundisium to Palaeste and Nymphaeum (192, 1 and 202, 13).—*non*: generally stands, as here, immediately before the word it limits.

225, 14. *cuiusvis* . . . *culpa*: 'to anybody's fault rather than his.'

225, 16. *castris*: the old camp. For the constr., see on *imperio*, 52, 11.

225, 17. *ipsorum*: 'their own.'—*aliquis*: generally subst., here = *aliqui*.

225, 20. *quod si esset factum*: 'if this should be done'; for the tense, see on 64, 28.

225, 21. *verteret*: intr., 'would turn to a blessing.' For the constr., see on *ut* . . . *auderent*, 73, 12.—*uti* . . . *accidisset*: 'as had happened.' The repulse at Gergovia, the only town in Gaul which made successful resistance to Caesar, is related in 150, 6 ff. The victory at Alesia, which broke the backbone of Gallic opposition, came a few weeks later (163, 6–168, 30). Similarly, in the present campaign, Caesar's admirable courage in the face of the complete failure of his elaborate plans for besieging Pompey, near Dyrrachium, had its effect on the spirit of his men, and in another month they overwhelmingly defeated Pompey's greatly superior force at Pharsalus.

225, 23. CHAPTER 74. *signiferos*: Caesar's punishment was merciful, as the penalty for throwing away standards was death.

225, 24. *loco movit*: *i.e.* he reduced them to the ranks.

225, 27. *desideraret*: 'waited for.'—*sibi quisque*: the regular order; see on *sibi quemque*, 54, 11.

225, 30. *ordinis*: 'rank,' gen. of quality. The lieutenants and tribunes are meant.—*ratione permoti*: 'moved by reason,' not merely by a desire to wipe out the disgrace of their defeat.

226, 1. *Contra ea*: 'contrary to these views,' 'on the other hand.'

226, 3. *refectis munitionibus*: abl. abs. expressing a concession, 'even if his lines should be repaired.'

226, 6. CHAPTER 75. *modo* . . . *habita ratione*: 'merely taking care.'

226, 7. *prima*: 'the first part of.'

226, 9. *confectum*: see on *non abscisum*, 224, 12; and cf. the common expression *ante urbem conditam*, 'before the founding of the city.'

226, 13. *institutum*: it was contrary to military usage to leave camp without sounding the signals for packing up and marching out. But by not giving the signals until the last division of the army was ready to march, Caesar concealed his plan from Pompey until his baggage and the larger part of his troops were well out of harm's way.

226, 16. *neque . . . moram . . . intulit*: 'allowed nothing to delay his pursuit.'

226, 18. *impeditos*: 'burdened with their baggage.'

226, 21. *neque . . . potuit*: 'but could not.' — *expedito itinere*: 'having an unobstructed road,' abl. abs. expressing cause.

226, 25. *antesignanos*: picked men who could be detailed for special services; as here, to support the cavalry according to the German custom; see on *levis . . . complures*, 179, 1.

226, 29. CHAPTER 76. *iusto itinere*: 'the regular march,' i.e. about twenty miles over the ordinary roads.

226, 30. *veteribus . . . castris*: see 207, 1 and 5.

227, 3. *per causam*: see on 200, 24. Both armies reached their old camps on opposite banks of the Genusus before noon (l. 13 f.). Pompey, seeing Caesar's cavalry start out to forage, as he supposed, thought he was going to remain there till the next day, and accordingly allowed many of his soldiers to return to their camp near Dyrrachium for their personal effects, which, owing to their hasty departure early in the morning, they had been obliged to leave behind. This gave Caesar a chance to gain a lead of eight miles, which Pompey was unable to overcome.

227, 4. *decumana porta*: see Introd. § 44. It is easy to see why Caesar chose this gate.

227, 12. *Quibus . . . impeditis*: 'as they were prevented from pursuing.' For *ad*, cf. 183, 4.

227, 13. *fore*: 'would be the case.'

227, 15. *uplicatoque*, etc.: 'increasing his march of that day'; it cannot mean doubling his forenoon's march, because the Genusus is some twenty miles from his camp near Dyrrachium, a *iustum iter* (226, 29) for a Roman army.

227, 18. CHAPTER 77. *similiter*: i.e. as on the previous night (226, 6 ff.).

227, 20. *esset imposita*: implied indir. disc., representing fut. perf. of the original thought.

227, 21. *expedito*: 'unencumbered,' by the baggage.

227, 23. *altissimis . . . itineribus*: concessive abls. abs., 'although the rivers were,' etc.

227, 25. *primi . . . suscepto*: causal abls. abs., 'since he had been delayed on the first day and his exertions on the remaining days were made in vain.'

227, 26. *cum*: concessive. — *se . . . extenderet*: 'he exerted himself with forced marches.' Pompey's army, with its large number of Roman gentlemen, who were unused to hardships, and hampered by its size, was no match in marching for Caesar's little force of devoted veterans.

227, 27. *quarto*: 'the third,' according to our way of reckoning. The Romans counted the day of departure as the first, we begin with the next day.

227, 30. CHAPTER 78. *urbibus*: dat. of interest; the abl. of place would require *in*.

228, 2. *tantum*: 'only so much.'

228, 3. *properanti*: 'because of his haste' (lit., 'for him hurrying,' sc. *ei*). — *Domitio*: dat. of interest. Domitius Calvinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants, was in central Macedonia, opposing two legions of Pompey's army under Scipio (189, 10 f.).

228, 4. *celeritate*: limits *ferebatur*, 'he was hurrying with all haste and the utmost (lit., 'spurred on by') eagerness.'

228, 5. *rei*: 'campaign.'

228, 6. *his rationibus*: abl. of manner, 'according to the following calculations,' explained by the appositive clauses of purpose *ut . . . decertare cogeret*, . . . *proficisceretur*, . . . *ferre cogeret*.

228, 7. *eodem*: to Macedonia to join Scipio, see on *Domitio*, l. 3. — *abductum*, *abstractum*: translate as vbs. parallel with *cogeret*, 'he might take him away,' etc.

228, 8. *Dyrrachi*: Pompey's headquarters (207, 13 f.).

228, 9. *pari condicione*: *i.e.* away from his base of supplies.

228, 10. *in Italiam*: see on 224, 8.

228, 11. *Italiae*: dat. of interest with *subsidio*, dat. of purpose.

228, 12. *se*: indir. refl., referring to Caesar, the subject of the main vb. *explicabat* (l. 6).

228, 14. *suis*: dir. refl., referring to the subject of its own clause, *illum*.

228, 18. *depositis*: abl. abs. with *iis* implied as antecedent of *qui*. — *Athamaniam*: a district of southeastern Epirus. See map, p. 191.

228, 21. *illo*: adv.

228, 22. *Oriciaque*: adj., 'and especially the coast near Oricum,' where the two legions still left in Italy could most conveniently land.

228, 26. CHAPTER 79. *suis, ad . . . adversarios*: so emphatic as to precede *ut* and *ne*.

228, 27. *ne . . . deēsset*: 'that he might not fail to take advantage of a favorable opportunity.'

228, 29. *Candaviam*: east of Dyrrachium. — *iter . . . expeditum*: see on *expedito itinere*, 226, 21. Pompey's route was along the Via Egnatia to Heraclia. This road was the main highway from Dyrrachium and Apollonia to Thessalonica and the East. — in *Macedoniam*: i.e. into Macedonia proper, which, before the organization of the province (see *Macedonia* in the Vocab.), extended only to the mountains east of the Drilon River.

229, 1. *quod*: 'the fact that.'

229, 2. *conlata habuisset*: 'had kept his camp near to,' etc.

229, 4. *subiecta*: 'below'; Candavia was mountainous.

229, 8. *quam res erat gesta*: 'than the facts warranted.'

229, 10. *Haec*: sc. *fama*.

229, 12. *dimissi*: 'messengers sent out.'

229, 15. *demonstravimus*: in 216, 28.

229, 17. *pristina sua consuetudine*: causal, 'owing to their former intimate relations with them.'

229, 18. *gloria elati*: 'puffed up with pride.'

229, 20. *vix . . . antecedens*: 'getting barely four hours' start.'

229, 22. *quod est*, etc.: 'which lies near the borders of Thessaly'; the participles have about the same meaning.

229, 25. CHAPTER 80. *quod*: agreeing with the pred. noun as usual; cf. 204, 2.

229, 26. *venientibus*: 'as you come.'<sup>1</sup> — *ab Epiro*: 'from the boundary of Epirus'; *ex* would mean 'out from.' — *quae gens*; the people of Gomphi.

229, 27. *ut . . . uteretur*: obj. of the idea of bidding contained in *legatos miserat*, 'telling him to make use of,' etc.

229, 29. *supra*: in l. 9.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
I 425, 4 (384, 4, N. 3)		546	378, 2 (235, 6)	353	188, 2, a
	MATH. CAESAR — 28				

229, 30. *quod . . . partibus*: 'and had exaggerated it many fold.' The subject is implied from *fama*; *partibus* expresses amount of difference.

230, 1. *praetor*: regularly used to translate the Greek word for 'general.' In the early years of the Republic at Rome it was the name of the highest magistrate or commander, but was superseded by 'consul.'

230, 6. *munitionibus*: see on *quibus*, 194, 1.

230, 9. *Larisam*: to the south, in the plain of Thessaly.

230, 11. *crates*: to be used in filling up the trench before the wall of Gomphi.

230, 13. *haberet*: the subjects are the infins. *potiri, inferri, fieri*, 'how great an advantage it would be to get possession,' etc.

231, 1. *civitatus*: indir. obj. of the cpd. vb.

231, 3. *horam nonam*: about three o'clock; see *hora* in the Vocab.

231, 5. *ad diripiendum*: Plutarch says that in addition to provisions wine was found here, which the soldiers drank freely, and under its influence dancing and carousing along their march, they shook off the illness with which their privations had afflicted them.

231, 7. *expugnati oppidi*: 'of the capture of the town'; see on *non abscisum*, 224, 12.

231, 14. CHAPTER 81. *Metropolitum*: *-um* for *-arum* is chiefly poetic except in names of peoples.<sup>1</sup>

231, 16. *quin*, etc.: 'which did not obey,' a characteristic clause after a general negative.<sup>2</sup>

231, 17. *Ille*: Caesar. — *quo*, rel., with antecedent *locum*.

231, 18. *frumenta*: observe the pl.

231, 19. *belli rationem*: 'campaign' (lit., 'war business'). — *conferre*: 'to transfer.'

231, 20. CHAPTER 82. *in Thessaliam*: Pompey marched by the Egnatian Way to Heraclia, and then turned southward to join Scipio at Larissa (230, 9).

231, 23. *parta iam victoria*: abl. abs., 'in a victory already won.' This spirit of overconfidence contributed to the completeness of the defeat which came soon.

231, 26. *honorem partitur*: *i.e.* he takes a colleague in the chief command. Scipio was Pompey's father-in-law, and had been his col-

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 80, 1 (49, 3)	139	43, d (36, d)	29, R. 3	21, 2, d
2 595, 4 (504, 1)	915	559 (319, d)	556	283, 4

league in the consulship for the last five months of 52 B.C. — *classicum*: the signals were sounded before the general's quarters. Pompey honors Scipio by having them sounded also at his quarters (*apud eum*).

231, 27. *praetorium*: this word came into use when *praetor* had its old meaning; see on 230, 1.

232, 4. *unius . . . diei*: 'that only a single day's work was left.'

232, 5. *illum*: Pompey.

232, 6. *numero*: as in 185, 26. — *dicerent*: indefinite 'they,' of the officers and nobles in the army. Plutarch says that everybody except Cato was eager to fight and tried to goad Pompey into a battle by such nicknames as Agamemnon and king of kings, implying that he took pleasure in exercising supreme command over so many of the great men of Rome.

232, 7. *praemiis*: 'the prizes,' of office.

232, 8. *in annosque*: 'and for years in advance.'

232, 10. *consilio*: 'the council,' see on 197, 24. — *oporteretne*, etc.: 'whether (see on *liceretne*, 199, 16) Lucilius Hirrus, inasmuch as he had been sent by Pompey to the Parthians, ought to be considered in his absence at the next election of praetors.' *Hirri* is obj. gen. with *rationem*; *rationem haberi* is subject of *oporteret*. Hirrus was unsuccessful in his efforts to raise allies among the Parthians. The controversy turned on the point whether, owing to the important work in which he was engaged, he should be exempt from the law requiring a candidate for office to present himself in person (see *Introd.* § 11).

232, 13. *cum . . . implorarent . . . recusarent*: temporal clauses, expressing by the imperf. tense action coincident with that of the main vb. *fuit* (see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29); translate, 'his friends appealing to Pompey's good faith to grant,' etc. — *praestaret*: an obj. clause coördinate<sup>1</sup> with *implorarent*, not subordinated by *ut*.

232, 14. *recepisset*: see on 198, 5. — *ne . . . videretur*: a pure clause of purpose. Hirrus is the subject.

232, 15. *reliqui*, etc.: parallel to *necessarii . . . implorarent*, 'the others refusing in equal hardship and danger to have<sup>2</sup> one man take precedence of them all.'

232, 17. CHAPTER 83. *sacerdotio Caesaris*: since 63 B.C. Caesar

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	565, 4 (499, 2)	781	565, a (331, f, r.)	546, r. 2	295, 8
2	596, 2 (505, ii, 1)	898	558, b (331, e, 2)	548	295, 3

had been *pontifex maximus* or head of the college of pontiffs, who had charge of the state religion. In order to be able to fix the dates of religious festivals they managed the calendar, which was variable and uncertain till Caesar, by virtue of his office as chief pontiff, introduced the reform which, with but slight change, is now in use in most civilized countries. As the priesthoods were held for life, it is apparent that the Pompeians had no thought of sparing Caesar in the victory which they felt perfectly confident was soon to be theirs.—**Domitius**: Ahenobarbus, not to be confused with Caesar's lieutenant (see on 228, 3). After his dismissal by Caesar at Corfinium (see on 177, 14), he took charge of the campaign of the Massiliots (see summary of Book II, p. 383), and upon their surrender to Caesar he fled to Pompey in Macedonia.—**Spintherque**: the Lentulus family had so many branches that additional family names, as Crus, Spinther, etc. (see *Lentulus* in the Vocab.), were assumed to distinguish them. The added name commonly followed the regular family name. With the order here cf. *Varus Attius*, 178, 23, and see note. Spinther, like Domitius Ahenobarbus, had been allowed to go free at the capture of Corfinium.

232, 20. *aetatis . . . ostentaret*: 'held up the honor due to his age.'—*urbanam gratiam*, etc.: 'his popularity and high position in the city,' i.e. at Rome.

232, 21. *adfinitate*: see on *honorem partitur*, 231, 26.

232, 22. *proditionis*, etc.: gen. of the charge; <sup>1</sup> 'of betraying his army,' at Ilerda in Spain the year before; see summary of Book I, p. 383. Afranius was a less capable officer than Petreius, and showed sooner a disposition to yield to Caesar. Rufus's object in bringing the accusation of treachery was to prevent the candidacy of Afranius for the consulship.

232, 24. *placere*: 'that it seemed best.'—*ternas . . . iis*: 'for three ballots to be given for voting to each of those.'

232, 25. *ordinis*: gen. of quality.

232, 26. *sententiasque . . . ferri*: 'and for verdicts to be passed on the men one by one.' This statement is no exaggeration. Cicero, who was himself a follower of Pompey, shows in several letters to his friends that the savage threats and bitter enmity of the nobles in Pompey's army towards all who had not actually taken up arms in their

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 456 (409, ii)	582	352 (220)	378	208, 1

support made him dread the outcome of a victory of his own party. Indeed Cicero is chiefly aimed at in the second clause, *quique*, etc., l. 27, for although he had joined Pompey in Macedonia, he had not taken any active part in the war, and had remained behind in Dyrrachium when Pompey started east on the present campaign.

232, 28. *unam fore*, etc.: 'that one ballot should be for voting that they ought,' etc. The fut. infin. is indir. disc. depending on *dixit*, l. 24, not, like *dari* and *ferri*, subject of *placere*; *qua* (lit., 'with which') introduces a rel. clause of purpose.

232, 30. *qua damnarent*: 'for condemning them to death.' The Pompeian nobles had no intention of giving their enemies a fair legal trial after the war was over, but they meant to secure the verdict which they desired by giving it themselves. — *capitis*: gen. of the penalty; cf. *proditionis*, l. 22. The penalty is sometimes expressed by the abl., as in the next clause.

233, 7. CHAPTER 84. *perspectum habere*: see on *coactum habebat*, 61, 6. The clause *quo . . . videretur* is rel. of result, 'for him to think that he had the spirit of his soldiers pretty well proved.'

233, 9. *propositi*: a partit. gen. is usually separated from the word on which it depends, here *quidnam*.

233, 11. *primo*: observe the difference between this word and *primum*; see Vocab. — *suis locis*: see on 209, 27.

233, 12. *continentibus*, etc.: 'but on successive days (contrasted with *primo*) in such a way as to go farther from his own camp.'

233, 13. *collibus Pompeianis*: upon his union with Scipio Pompey marched south and encamped about four miles from Caesar on the hills of Karadja Ahmet; see plan, p. 236. This move of his is not definitely mentioned, but the *una castra* of 231, 25 is doubtless this camp on the hills.

233, 14. *eius*: Caesar's. His army thought that Pompey was afraid to fight.

233, 15. *demonstravimus*: see 226, 24 f.

233, 16. *multis partibus*: 'far,' cf. 229, 30.

233, 17. *esset*: subj. of attraction, being an essential part of the clause *ut . . . iuberet*. — *antesignanis*: see on 226, 25.

233, 18. *mutatis . . . armis*: 'changing their arms (*i.e.* heavy for light) for the sake of speed.'

233, 21. *mille*: the subst. use (with dependent gen.) is rare in the sing., though regular in the pl.

233, 22. *usus*: 'need.'

233, 26. *supra*; in 216, 28 f.

233, 28. CHAPTER 85. *aciem*: marked *A* on the plan, p. 236. — *instruebat*: denoting repetition, during the successive days when Caesar was forming his line nearer and nearer to Pompey (l. 12 f.).

233, 29. *expectans*: 'waiting to see.' — *si . . . subiceret*: see on *si . . . conarentur*, 178, 29.

234, 2. *uti . . . itineribus*: complementary or subst. clauses in apposition with *hanc rationem*, 'namely, to move,' etc.

234, 3. *haec spectans*: see on 208, 25. — *movendis . . . locis*: abls. of means.

234, 6. *insolitum ad laborem*: Caesar speaks more than once of the disadvantage which Pompey was under of having in his army so many nobles and gentlemen who were unused to hard work; see 211, 17.

234, 8. *detensis*: the opposite idea to that of *tendi*, 231, 27.

234, 9. *paulo ante iter*: 'a little while before their start.' — *extra*: 'contrary to.'

234, 10. *non iniquo*: = *aequo* (litotes), 'favorable' to Caesar.

234, 11. *dimicari*: impers., 'a battle could be fought.' — *cum*, etc.: 'although his column was already at the gates,' ready to march out.

234, 14. *Animo*: 'in heart,' abl. of specification.

234, 17. CHAPTER 86. *hortatu*: abl. of cause, 'owing to,' etc. See 232, 1 ff.

234, 20. *Id*: 'that statement.'

234, 22. *rationem*: 'nature.'

234, 23. *Persuasi*: this word standing first emphasizes the idea that the only thing needed to insure a victory was a little persuasion on the part of the commander. We may imagine that Caesar, in the light of the outcome of the battle, so vastly different from what Pompey had confidently predicted, wrote these lines with the liveliest satisfaction.

234, 24. *esset accessum*: implied indir. disc. (so *iaceretur*, l. 27) representing a fut. perf.

234, 25. *ab latere aperto*: Caesar's right flank was exposed, whereas his left was protected by the Enipeus River; see plan, p. 236.

234, 26. *perturbatum*, etc.: 'to throw the army into confusion and put it to flight,' etc.

234, 29. *equitatu*: Pompey had 7000 cavalry, Caesar less than 1000. Pompey's plan would have succeeded if Caesar had not, by an unusual

arrangement of his infantry, guarded against just such an attack as was made; see 237, 12 ff.

235, 2. *reliquorum*: *i.e.* of all who were not present in the council, which was composed of nobles only. See on *de consili sententia*, 197, 24.

235, 3. CHAPTER 87. *excepit*: 'followed.' — *cum . . . despiceret*: 'while he expressed his contempt for,' etc.

235, 5. *Noli . . . existimare*: see on, 161, 11. — *Pompei*: cf. the case with that in l. 4.

235, 9. *quod . . . necesse*: 'which it was inevitable should happen, as there were so many battles' (abl. abs.).

235, 10. *autumni*: see 188, 16 ff., and note on *autumnus*.

235, 11. *in continenti*: *i.e.* in Italy; they were not brought across the water to Greece.

235, 12. *An*: see on 176, 7. — *ex iis*: with *factas*. — *per causam valetudinis*: implying that they were not really sick; see on 200, 24. This sentence is a rhetorical reinforcement of *multi sunt relict in continenti*. Labienus claims that men enough were left behind in Italy to make up entire cohorts, and that these men were practically deserters, their health being only a pretext to enable them to escape service against Pompey.

235, 14. *horum annorum*: 'of these last years,' *i.e.* the years of the Civil War, 49 and 48 B.C. — *citeriore Gallia*: see on *ulteriorem*, 55, 9.

235, 21. *animo*: 'in imagination'; abl. of means.

235, 23. *nihil*, etc.: 'no assertion seemed to be made in vain.'

235, 27. CHAPTER 88. *traditae a Caesare*: at the beginning of 53 B.C. Pompey, who was then on friendly terms with Caesar, lent him a legion to help make good the severe losses of the previous campaign in Gaul. In 50 B.C. the senate required Pompey and Caesar to furnish one legion apiece for the Parthian war (see *Vocab.*, s.v. *Parthi*). To meet this requisition Pompey demanded back the legion he had loaned Caesar, who thus lost two legions, both of which, instead of being sent against the Parthians, were kept by Pompey to be used against Caesar in case war should be the outcome of the quarrel between Caesar and the senate.

236, 1. *Mediam aciem*: 'the centre.' — *legionibus Syriacis*: two Roman legions which had been serving in Syria; see 189, 11.

236, 2. *Ciliciensis*: the "twin legion" of veterans; see 189, 3 f.

236, 3. *quas . . . docuimus*: this statement, which is not found in the

*Civil War*, may have belonged in the passage lost at the end of Ch. 50.  
— **Afranio**: see *Vocab.*

236, 4. **Has . . . habere**: 'that these were the strongest cohorts he had.'

236, 7. **millia XLV**: each of the eleven legions (= 110 cohorts, see *Introd.* § 28) accordingly had over 4000 men.

236, 8. **superiorum exercituum**: 'in his former armies.'

236, 11. **rivus**: the Enipeus, which in summer was only a small stream.

237, 1. **CHAPTER 89. superius institutum**: not the custom mentioned in 233, 15, but that of giving his favorite tenth legion the post of honor on the right wing.

237, 3. **erat . . . attenuata**: the ninth legion, which had been stationed under Marcellinus at the southern end of Caesar's lines near Dyrrachium (217, 30), suffered severely in the battles with Pompey (221, 19 f.).

237, 7. **quarum . . . XXII**: 'of which there was a total of 22,000.' This gives an average of 2750 men to each of the eight legions engaged; see *Introd.* § 27.

237, 8. **Antonium**: Mark Antony.

237, 10. **ipse . . . constitit**: on his right wing, for Pompey was on his own left (236, 1).—**iis rebus**: *i.e.* Pompey's disposition of his troops, especially his cavalry; see on 234, 29.

237, 12. **tertia acie**: his troops were drawn up in the usual triple line. See *Introd.* § 46.

237, 13. **singulas**: 'one from each legion.'—**quartam**: *sc. aciem*. See *B* on the plan.

237, 19. **CHAPTER 90. suaque . . . officia**: 'his constant services to it;' *temporis* is *gen.* of quality.

237, 20. **testibus . . . uti**: 'have the soldiers as witnesses.'

237, 22. **per Vatinius**: see 199, 13 ff.—**per Clodium**: when Caesar heard that Scipio had arrived in Macedonia from the East, he sent their common friend Clodius to beg him to intercede with Pompey for peace. But the request was not granted (Ch. 57, omitted in this book).

237, 23. **cum Libone**: see 197, 14 ff.

237, 25. **sanguine**: *cpds.* of *utor* take the same constr. as the simple verb.

237, 26. **exercitu**: *abl.* of separation.

237, 27. **signum**: for the whole army to advance, including the third

and fourth lines; but the latter were not to begin fighting until a special signal was given them with a flag (l. 16 f.).

237, 29. CHAPTER 91. *primum pilum*, etc.: 'had led the first manipule of the first cohort in the tenth legion,' *i.e.* had been the highest centurion in the favorite legion. See Introd. § 35.

238, 1. *manipulares* . . . *fuistis*: equiv. to a vocative, 'my old comrades.' Crastinus was not addressing the soldiers who were then serving in the first manipule of the tenth legion, over whom he had no command, but those of his fellow *evocati* who had ever served in a manipule with him as he had been promoted from manipule to manipule and cohort to cohort up to the highest centurionship of the whole legion.

238, 2. *quam instituistis*: 'which you have undertaken,' *i.e.* by reënlisting.

238, 4. *libertatem*: they had reënlisted for this war only, and would be released as soon as it was over.

238, 6. *ut* . . . *agas*: complementary or subst. clause of result, obj. of *faciam*,<sup>1</sup> 'I shall make you thank me.'

238, 8. *laeti*: 'gladly.'—*centuriae*: a division of the *evocati*, not of the tenth legion. As Caesar's legions averaged only 2750 men each (see on 237, 7) and there were 60 centuries in a legion (Introd. § 28), it is improbable, even if we suppose the first cohort to have been larger than the others, that any century of the legions had 120 men.

238, 13. CHAPTER 92. *neque* . . . *moverent*: 'without stirring from their position.'

238, 14. *distrahi*: the line would necessarily become more or less disordered in charging at full speed.

238, 15. *Triari*: see 190, 8.

238, 17. *dispositi*: 'his own men stationed,' etc.—*dispersos*: 'a scattered enemy,' meaning Caesar's army.—*levius*: 'with less force.'

238, 18. *retentis militibus*: abl. abs. expressing a condition, of which *casura* [esse] is the conclusion.—*pilis*: indir. obj. of an intr. cpd. vb., 'run to meet the javelins that had been thrown against them.'

238, 19. *fore*: 'that the result would be,' depending on *sperabat*.—*duplicato cursu*: 'by running double distance,' *i.e.* double what they would have to run if Pompey's army should advance to meet them in the middle of the field.

238, 21. *quidem*: 'at least.'—*ratione*: 'judgment.'

H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1 571, 3 (501, ii, 1)	902	568 (332)	553, 1	297, 1

238, 25. *signa . . . concinerent*: 'signals should be sounded on all sides at once,' with trumpets.

238, 28. CHAPTER 93. *infestis*: 'threatening,' *i.e.* pointed towards the enemy and ready to throw.

238, 29. *non concurri*: *impers.*, 'that there was no charge.'

238, 30. *usu periti*, etc.: Caesar liked to praise his soldiers. A similar commendation occurs in the account of the battle with the Nervii (75, 30 ff.).

239, 5. *Neque . . . defuerunt*: 'but the Pompeians were not caught napping.'

239, 7. *exceperunt*: *i.e.* with their shields.

239, 8. *pilisque*, etc.: the regular procedure in Roman battles was to charge at full speed, hurling the spear while yet some yards from the enemy, and then to fight at close quarters with the sword.

239, 9. *ut erat imperatum*: see 234, 23 ff.

239, 14. *a latere aperto*: see on 234, 25.

239, 15. *VIII cohortium*: pred. gen. of definition or material, limiting *quam*, 'consisting of eight cohorts,' one from each legion (237, 13).

239, 16. *signum*: with a flag (237, 17).

239, 19. *incitati fuga*: 'at full speed.'

239, 21. *praesidio*: *i.e.* the cavalry.

239, 23. *circumierunt*, etc.: the tables were turned completely on Pompey. His left wing was treated to the very medicine which he had prescribed for Caesar's right (234, 25 f.).

239, 25. CHAPTER 94. *quae . . . tenuerat*: the third line, as usual, was held back as a reserve; see 237, 16 f., and Introd. § 46, end.

239, 29. *Neque . . . fefellit*: 'but it did not escape Caesar's notice.' This is equiv. to 'there was no doubt in Caesar's mind,' hence the subject clause is introduced by *quin*; cf. *neque abest suspicio quin*, 54, 2, and see note.

240, 2. *pronuntiaverat*: 'had declared would be the case'; see *monuit . . . constare*, 237, 14 f.

240, 11. *si . . . acciderit*: 'if there shall prove to be any serious accident.'

240, 12. *circumeo, confirmo*: the pres. is sometimes, as in English, used loosely for the fut., 'I'm going round to the rest of the gates and reassure the guards of the camp.'

240, 14. *summae*: subst., indir. obj. of *diffidens*, which, unlike *con-*

*fido* (see on *quibus*, 97, 17), takes the dat. regularly of both persons and things.

240, 15. CHAPTER 95. *vallum*: of Pompey's camp.

240, 16. *spatium*: 'respite.'

240, 18. *etsi*: sometimes accompanies the concessive abl. abs.; 'although the heat was intense.' The battle was fought August 9.

240, 21. *cohortibus*: seven in number (236, 9).

240, 22. *barbarisque*, etc.: 'and other barbarian allies.'

240, 24. *plerique*: although grammatically limiting an implied *milites*, antecedent of *qui* . . . *refugerant milites*, its position shows that in thought it belongs closely with the abl. abs. *dimissis* . . . *militaribus*; translate, 'for the soldiers who . . . most of whom, too, had thrown away their arms,' etc.

240, 26. *Neque vero diutius*: 'and in fact not very long.'—*qui* . . . *constiterant*: *i.e.* soldiers of the seven cohorts guarding the camp (l. 21).

240, 29. *ducibus*: 'as leaders,' appositive.—*in* . . . *montes*: the same way by which the cavalry had fled (239, 19 f.), along the line marked C on the plan, p. 236.

241, 2. CHAPTER 96. *argenti*: 'silverware.'

241, 4. *non nullorum*: 'of some others.'—*protecta*: from the mid-summer sun.

241, 6. *designarent*: subj. of characteristic.

241, 7. *qui*, etc.: a causal rel. clause, 'since they,' etc.—*non necessarias*: 'unnecessary'; litotes.

241, 8. *At hi*: emphatic and indignant, 'but these very men used to taunt Caesar's army,' etc. According to Suetonius (*Life of Caesar*, 67), Caesar allowed his soldiers such extravagances as perfumery, and armor decorated with silver and gold. But taunts at such mild indulgences as these came with ill grace from the luxurious nobles of Pompey's army.

241, 11. *insignibus*: including decorations and uniform; see on *colore*, 167, 20. Pompey's cowardly desertion without any effort to collect his army, which was as yet more frightened than hurt, is a strong contrast to Caesar's conduct after his plan of campaign had suffered a much severer check near Dyrrachium; see 224, 25 ff.

241, 14. *suos*: see on *nostri*, 213, 19.

241, 17. *se*: obj., 'his fancies had so badly deceived him.'—*a quo* . . . *ab eo*: the rel. clause precedes its antecedent; 'by that body . . . from which.'

241, 20. CHAPTER 97. *a militibus contendit*: 'entreated his soldiers.'

241, 22. *montem*: the Pompeians had fled to the highest part of Karadja Ahmet (240, 29 f.), and had gathered on one of its hills, which Caesar now began to invest.

241, 25. *iugis eius*: 'along its ridges,' abl. of means, expressing the way by which.

241, 28. *commodioremque itinere*: Caesar doubtless crossed the Enipeus near the point marked *E* on the plan, p. 236, whence he marched rapidly through the plain to *F*, and drew up in line of battle before the Pompeians by their more difficult route through the mountains could reach the river.

241, 29. *occurrere coepit*: 'started to head off.'

242, 1. *quodam monte*: *D* on the plan.

242, 4. *seclussit*: this necessitated recrossing the river, not a difficult matter, however, since in summer the Enipeus, like most rivers of Greece, was only a small stream. It is called *rivus*, 236, 11.

242, 12. CHAPTER 98. *proiecti*: 'throwing themselves.'

242, 17. *commendavit ne qui*: 'he recommended that no one'; *qui* is less common than *quis* as the indef. subst. pron.; cf. 137, 18. Caesar's clemency is in keeping with his course from the beginning of the war, and with his claim of 237, 25 f. He is said to have put to death only those senators and knights who had fallen into his hands earlier in the war and had forfeited all right to further mercy by breaking their parole and rejoining Pompey.

242, 19. *neu quid*, etc.: 'and that they should not lose any of their property.' Caesar's generosity was shown by nothing more clearly than by his burning unread all of Pompey's correspondence, in which much incriminating information would have been found. — *Hac . . . diligentia*: 'having carefully attended to these matters.'

242, 23. CHAPTER 99. *CC milites*: see on *millia*, 72, 14.

242, 26. *supra*: in 237, 28 ff. — *gladio*: etc.: 'having received a sword thrust right in the face.'

242, 28. *eo proelio*: abl. of time when.

242, 29. *excellētissimam, optimeque*: with full superlative force. Crastinus's sacrifice was especially great, since, being an *evocatus*, he might have remained at home in security.

243, 3. *castellis*: see 236, 10.

243, 5. *ex proelio*: 'after the battle.'

243, 14. CHAPTER 102. *Erat* . . . *propositum*: 'had been published.'

243, 15. *Amphipoli*: an important port, near the mouth of the Strymon, in eastern Macedonia.

243, 16. *iuniores*: men from seventeen to forty-six years old, who could be enrolled at any time for military service; distinguished from the *seniores*, who were over forty-six and were called out only in emergencies. — *iurandi*: see end of note on *primam*, 174, 11.

243, 17. *utrum* . . . *an*: introduce a double indir. quest., which serves as subject of *poterat*.

243, 20. *conaretur*: referring to the fut., 'would try.' — *existimari*: 'be determined.'

243, 23. *Mytilenas*: on the island of Lesbos off the coast of Asia Minor. Pompey stopped for his wife Cornelia and his younger son Sextus, who had been sent here for safety at the beginning of the war. Plutarch (*Life of Pompey*, 74 f.) describes the sad meeting. See *Introductio*. § 26.

244, 1. *arcem*: i.e. of Antioch, an important commercial city of Syria, which received its independence from Pompey himself when Syria was made a Roman province, 64 B.C.

244, 2. *eos*: fugitive nobles from Pompey's army.

244, 3. *ne*, etc.: obj. of the idea of ordering implied in *nuntios dimissos*.

244, 4. *magno* . . . *periculo*: 'at the great risk of their lives.'

244, 7. *Rhodi*: the capital of the island of the same name. Caesar studied there as a young man, and the people had favored his cause from the beginning of the war.

244, 9. *ex* . . . *discederent*: coördinate, 'to depart from these places'; cf. *ne* . . . *adirent*, l. 3 f.

244, 13. CHAPTER 103. *pecunia* . . . *sublata*: see 188, 24 ff. — *societatibus*: see on *societates*, 188, 27.

244, 17. *familiis*: 'the bodies of slaves' employed by the great tax collecting companies.

244, 18. *quos ex suis*, etc.: a second rel. clause limiting *hominum*; 'being those of each man's slaves whom he thought suitable for this purpose.'

244, 19. *Pelusium*: at the eastern mouth of the Nile. Pompey was inclined to seek refuge in Parthia. Some of his counselors favored the province of Africa, where Caesar's army under Curio was annihilated

the year before, and whither many of his own soldiers were fleeing from Macedonia; but Pompey's favorite, Theophanes (see on 198, 29), urged him to go to Egypt, partly because it was near, and partly because he could probably count on the gratitude of the young king, whose father had been restored to the throne by his favor in 55 B.C. (see on *Ptolomaeum*, 189, 19).

244, 20. *Ptolomaeus*: when Ptolemy Auletes died in 51 B.C., he left his throne to his ten-year-old son, Ptolemy Dionysus, and his famous daughter, Cleopatra, who was then sixteen. The young king's guardian soon expelled Cleopatra from the country. She raised an army in Syria and made war upon the king, who, at the time of Pompey's arrival, was encamped against her near Pelusium.

244, 23. *spatio*: cf. *intervallo*, 77, 17, and see note.

244, 28. *ut . . . praestarent*: 'to do their duty by (lit., 'to') Pompey.'

244, 29. *hoc . . . numero*: of the king's troops.

244, 30. *Pompei milites*: see on *Ptolomaeum*, 189, 19.

245, 3. CHAPTER 104. *amici regis*: Pothinus, the king's guardian, Theodotus, his tutor, and Achillas, commander of the army.

245, 6. *sollicitato*, etc.: *i.e.* by Pompey's messengers (244, 27 f.). For the position of the abl. abs. before *ne*, see on *vix qua*, 54, 20. — *ne . . . occuparet*: depending on *timore*, 'that by tampering with the king's army Pompey would get possession,' etc.

245, 9. *palam*: 'publicly,' contrasted with *clam*, I. 11.

245, 14. *quadam . . . productus*: 'drawn on by a slight acquaintance with Septimius.'

245, 15. *bello praedonum*: see Introd. § 22. With the abl. cf. *eo proelio*, 242, 28 f. — *ordinem duxerat*: 'had led a century,' *i.e.* had been a centurion. — *naviculam parvulam*: 'a little tub of a boat,' the double diminutive emphasizing the utter lack of respect shown the fallen Pompey by the Egyptians.

245, 16. *paucis suis*: cf. *paucos suos*, 241, 14.

245, 17. *interficitur*: fuller details are given by Plutarch in his *Life of Pompey* (Ch. 77 ff.). Pompey was just stepping ashore when he was stabbed in the back by Septimius, in full view of his wife and son, who had been left behind on their ship. He was killed on the 28th of September, 48 B.C., the day before he would have completed his fifty-eighth year.

245, 19. CHAPTER 105. *Asiam*: the province (see on 188, 21), which Caesar reached by way of Thrace and the Hellespont. When

he was crossing the Hellespont, Gaius Cassius appeared with ten Pompeian ships, but was so astonished at Caesar's boldness in summoning him to an immediate surrender that he yielded without resistance. See on *Cassius*, 190, 8.

245, 21. *Epheso*: abl. of place from which, like *ex fano*; we should say 'from the temple of Diana at Ephesus.' In this chapter observe the different constructions of place in the names of towns and of countries.

245, 23. *testibus*: he had witnesses at hand to make it appear that he meant to pay back the money later.

245, 25. *duobus temporibus*: the other occasion is described in Ch. 33, omitted in this book. Scipio was on the point of helping himself to the money in the temple of Diana when a despatch from Pompey was handed to him stating that Caesar had arrived in Macedonia, and bidding him to march thither at once. Accordingly Caesar claims that he had twice saved the treasure of Diana. This famous temple was one of the "wonders of the world."

246, 1. *Item*: this word makes it almost certain that a passage has been lost describing other supernatural events favorable to Caesar and similar to those which follow. Several are related by Plutarch in his *Life of Caesar* (Ch. 47). The Romans believed that in these ways the gods expressed their favor or displeasure. So Caesar's death is said to have been portended by many prodigies. Shakspeare mentions some of them in *Julius Caesar*, 1, 3 and 2, 2:

"A common slave (you know him well by sight)  
Held up his left hand, which did flame and burn  
Like twenty torches join'd; and yet his hand,  
Not sensible of fire, remained unscorch'd."

"Fierce fiery warriors fight upon the clouds,  
In ranks, and squadrons, and right form of war,  
Which drizzled blood upon the Capitol:  
The noise of battle hurtled in the air."

—*Elide*: loc. abl. — *repetitis*, etc.: translate the abl. abs. immediately after *constabat*, 'it was agreed, by reckoning and counting the days backward, that,' etc.

246, 2. *quo die*: as antecedent sc. *eo die* before *simulacrum*; and for the order of clauses, cf. *a quo . . . ab eo*, 241, 17 f.

246, 5. *convertisse*: in her own temple the statue of Minerva naturally faced the entrance. The statue of Victory, which had been facing the Minerva, now turned round towards the door.

246, 15. CHAPTER 106. *Cypri*: see on *Corcyrae*, 192, 5.

246, 16. *iter habere*: 'was on his way.' — *necessitudines regum*: 'his ties of friendship with the monarchs,' Ptolemy and Cleopatra; see on 244, 19.

246, 18. *quam . . . iusserat*: 243, 13 f.

246, 19. *Achaia*: see on 188, 26. During the siege of Pompey near Dyrrachium Caesar had sent Fufius Calenus (192, 15) into Achaia to win it to his support.

246, 22. *cc: ducenti*. These two legions were greatly depleted. For the size of Caesar's legions at the battle of Pharsalus, see on 237, 7.

246, 24. *fama*: see on *quibus*, 97, 17. — *auxiliis*: abl. of accompaniment; see on *comitatu*, 217, 1.

246, 26. *Pompei morte*: the king's friends (see on 245, 3) thought to please Caesar by bringing to him, as he landed, Pompey's head and ring. But Caesar turned away in sorrow, and afterwards had the murderers put to death. He was undoubtedly hoping to have the opportunity of pardoning Pompey, for he wrote home to his friends that the greatest pleasure which his victory afforded him was the possibility of repeatedly granting pardon to his fellow-citizens who had fought against him (Plutarch, *Life of Caesar*, 48).

246, 29. *fascēs anteferebantur*: as a military commander Caesar had the ax bound up in the rods, symbolizing his absolute power. The Egyptians, who remembered, too, that he had proposed in 65 B.C. making their country a Roman province, resented this show of sovereignty in their capital. — *In hoc*: 'in this act.'

247, 5. CHAPTER 107. *Pompeianis militibus*: the soldiers who had surrendered and received pardon (242, 12 ff.).

247, 6. *etesii*: the prevailing winds during the summer in the eastern Mediterranean.

247, 7. *navigantibus*: cf. *venientibus*, 229, 26, and see note.

247, 8. *regum*: as in 246, 17.

247, 11. *superiore consulatu*: in 59 B.C.

247, 12. *societas*: it was as a favor to Pompey that Caesar had this recognition voted to Ptolemy Auletes, who was said to have paid over \$7,000,000 for it. The oppression which the collection of this money brought upon the people was avenged by the king's expulsion; see on *Ptolomaeum*, 189, 19. — *placere*, etc.: Caesar's desire to settle the succession to the throne before leaving Egypt involved him in the Alexandrine War. See *Introd.* § 13.

# VOCABULARY

In the derivations of compound words the first part is given only when it is not evident from the form of the compound; for example, *ad* is given in the derivation of *accēdō*, but not in that of *adducō*.

The sign + is used in the derivations of compounds only when the two words thus united have grown together to form the compound; as *accēdō* is formed directly from *ad* + *cēdō*. In cases like *acclivis*, on the other hand, the sign + is not admissible; for we have here not the simple union of *ad* and *clivus*, but of *ad* and an adjective form derived from *clivus*. Likewise *accūsō* is not a compound of *ad* and *causa*, but of *ad* and a verb form derived from *causa*.

When a word that is used in explaining derivations is preceded by the abbreviation "cf.," the vocabulary word is not derived from it, but both are descended from the same root or stem; for example, *aditus* is not derived from the verb *adeō*, but both words come from the root *i*.

A hyphen signifies that the word to which it is attached is used only in composition.

Words used in explaining derivations are translated unless they are defined in the vocabulary immediately above or below.

## A

**A. = Aulus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen or given name.**

**ā, ab** [*ā* is used only before consonants, *ab* before vowels and some consonants. Eng. *of* and *off* are akin to *ab*], *prep.* with *abl.*, *from, away from* (cf. *e, ex, out of*); *by; at, on, in; initium capit ā, begins at; ā millibus passuum viii, eight miles away.*

**abdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [cf. *dicō, say*], *disown; dictātūrā sē abdicāre, resign the dictatorship.*

**abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus** [*dō, put*], *put away, hide.*

**abdūcō, abdūcere, abdūxī, abductus** [*dūcō, lead*], *lead or take away, carry off.*

**abeō, abire, abīī, abiturus** [*eō, go*], *go away, go.*

**abiciō, abicere, abiēcī, abiectus** [*iaciō, throw*], *throw away, hurl.*

**abiēs, abietis, f., fir**, the tree or the timber.

**abscidō, abscidere, abscidī, abscisus** [*abs (= ab) + caedō, cut*], *cut off or away.*

**absēns, absentis** [part. of *absum*], *adj., absent, in the absence of.*

**absimilis, absimile** [*similis, like*], *unlike.*

**absistō, absistere, abstitiī, — [sistō, place (one's self)], stand off, hold off.**

**abstineō, abstinere, abstinui, abstentus** [*aba (= ab) + teneō, hold*], *abstain from, refrain from, spare.*

**abstrahō, abstrahere, abstrāxī, abstractus** [*abs (= ab) + trahō, draw, drag*], *draw or drag away.*

**absum, abesse, āfui, āfuturus** [*sum, be*], *be away, be absent, be distant; be wanting or lacking; ā bellō abesse, take no part in war; nōn longius abesse quā, not to be farther away than that; paulum abesse quā, lack little of.*

**abundō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [undō, *rise in waves*], *overflow, be rich in, abound*.

**abūtor**, abūti, abūsus [ūtor, *use*], *use up, waste*.

**ac**, see **atque**.

**Acarnānia**, -ae, *f.*, a country of Greece, on the middle western coast, south of Ambracia.

**accēdō**, accēdere, accessi, accessurus [ad + cēdō, *go*], *approach, come up; be inspired in; be added*; accēdit quod (lit., *there is added the fact that*), accēdit ut (see on 89, 22), *furthermore*.

**accelerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad + celerō (from *celer*, *swift*)], *hasten, hasten*.

**acceptus**, -a, -um [part. of accipiō], *acceptable, popular*.

**accidō**, accidere, accidi, — [ad + cadō, *fall*], *fall to or upon, fall; befall, happen* (generally of misfortunes), *arise*.

**accidō**, accidere, accidi, accisus [ad + caedō, *cut*], *cut into*.

**accipiō**, accipere, accēpi, acceptus [ad + capiō, *take*], *take, accept, receive; incur, suffer; learn, hear; take, interpret; fāmā accipere, hear of*.

**acclivis**, acclive [ad, *clivus*, *slope*], *sloping, ascending*.

**acclivitās**, acclivitātis [acclivis], *f.*, *upward slope, ascent*.

**accommodātus**, -a, -um [part. of accommodō], *adapted, appropriate*.

**accommodō**, -āre, -āvi, ātus [ad + commodō, from *commodus*, *fit*], *put on, adjust*.

**accūrātē** [accūrātus, *carefully made*], *adv., carefully; accūrātius, too carefully*.

**accurrō**, currere, accurrī or accu-

currī, accursurus [ad + currō, *run*], *run to, hasten up*.

**accūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad, *causa*, *reason*], (*bring a reason against*), *blame, accuse*.

**ācerimē**, sup. of ācriter.

**Achāia**, -ae, *f.*, *Achaia*; see on 188, 26.

**Achāicus**, -a, -um, *Achaian*.

**Achillās**, -ae, *m.*, an Egyptian, commander of the king's army, one of Pompey's murderers.

**aciēs**, aciēi (also gen. aciēs), *f.*, *line of battle, army* (in line of battle); see *Introd.* § 46.

**Acilius**, Acilī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Manius Acilius Glabrio*, a lieutenant of Caesar in the Civil War.

**ācriter** [ācer, *sharp*], *adv., sharply, vigorously, fiercely*.

**āctuārius**, -a, -um [āctus, *a driving*, cf. *agō, drive*], (*driven*), *swift-sailing*, propelled by both oars and sails.

**āctus**, part. of *agō*.

**Acutius**, Acuti, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Acutius Rufus*, a follower of Pompey in the Civil War.

**acūtus**, -a, -um [part. of acuō, *sharpen*], *sharpened, sharp*.

**a.d.** = ante diem; see on 55, 5.

**ad**, *prep.* with acc., *to, toward, against, until, up to; near, among, at, on; for, with reference to, according to, for the sake of*; with numerals, when it is sometimes an *adv.*, *about, toward*.

**adaequō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [aequō, *make equal*], *make equal to, make as high as; be equal to, equal; cursum adaequāre, keep up with*.

**adaugēō**, adaugēre, adauxi, adauctus

- [augeō, increase], increase by adding.
- Adbuclillus**, -i, m., a leading citizen of the Allobroges.
- addō**, addere, addidī, additus [dō, put], add.
- addūcō**, addūcere, addūxī, adductus [dūcō, lead], lead or bring to; pull (toward one); prompt, prevail upon, persuade.
- ademptus**, part. of **adimō**.
- adeō**, adire, adiī, aditus [eō, go], go to, approach, come near; visit; attack.
- adeō** [eō, thither], adv., to that point; so, to such a degree, so much.
- adferō**, adferre, attuli, adlātus [ferō, bring], bring to, bring, bring forward, allege; bring about, cause.
- adficiō**, adficere, adfēcī, adfectus [faciō, do], do to, affect; visit with, fill with, afflict with.
- adfigō**, adfigere, adfixi, adfixus [figō, fix], fasten to.
- adfinitās**, adfinitātis [adfinis, bordering], f., relationship by marriage, alliance.
- adflictō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of adfligō], dash to pieces, wreck, damage.
- adfligō**, adfligere, adflixī, adflictus [fligō, strike], strike against, damage; throw down.
- adfore** = **adfutūrum esse**, fut. infin. of **adsum**.
- adgerō**, adgerere, adgessi, adgestus [gerō, carry], bring up, add.
- adgredior**, adgredi, adgressus [gradior, step], approach, go against, attack; begin (cf. **ingredior**).
- adgregō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [gregō, from grex, flock], unite in a flock; sē **adgregāre**, gather round, attach themselves to.
- adhibeō**, adhibere, adhibuī, adhibitus [habeō, have], bring in or with, admit; employ, use; **prīncipibus adhibitis**, bringing their chiefs with them.
- adhortor**, -ārī, -ātus [hortor, urge], urge, encourage.
- adhūc** [ad, to, + hūc, hither; cf. the similar pleonasm in Eng. from whence], adv., as yet, up to this time.
- Adiatunnus**, -ī, m., a chief of the Sotiates.
- adiciō**, adicere, adicēī, adiectus [iaciō, throw], throw to, throw up (of a siege mound against fortifications); set near, add; **adiectā plānitīē**, with a plain adjacent.
- adigō**, adigere, adēgī, adāctus [agō, drive], drive to; drive home (of piles); throw to the mark (of weapons).
- adimō**, adimere, adēmī, ademptus [emō, take], (take to one's self), take away, cut off.
- aditus**, -ūs [cf. adeō, go to], m., access, approach; means of access or of approach; **mercātoribus est aditus**, traders are admitted; **aditum dēfugere**, avoid meeting them.
- adiungō**, adiungere, adiūnxī, adiūnc-tus [iungō, join], join to, annex; **adiūnc-tis Eleutetis**, with the Eleuteti added.
- adiutor**, adiutōris [cf. adiuvo], m., assistant.
- adiuvo**, adiuuāre, adiūvī, adiūtus [iuvo, help], help, aid, support.
- adliō**, adliedere, adliisī, adlisus [laedō, injure], dash against.
- administer**, administri [minister, attendant], m., assistant.
- administrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ministrō, attend], manage, superintend, control, execute, attend to; **administrātum est**, the order was executed.

- admīror**, -āri, -ātus [*mīror, wonder*], *wonder at, be surprised, admire.*
- admisceō**, admiscēre, admiscui, admixtus [*misceō, mix*], *mix with, add.*
- admittō**,mittere, admisi, admissus [*mittō, send*], *let go; equō admissō, with his horse on the gallop, at full speed; with or without in sē, be guilty of, commit.*
- admodum** [*ad modum, to the (full) measure*], *adv., very, exceedingly, greatly.*
- admonitus**, -ūs [*cf. admoneō, advise*], *m., advice, suggestion.*
- admoveō**, admovēre, admōvi, admōtus [*moveō, move*], *bring up.*
- adnō**, adnāre, adnāvi, — [*nō, swim*], *swim to.*
- adolēscō**, adolēscere, adolēvi, adultus [*olēscō, grow*], *grow up (to maturity).*
- adorior**, adoriri, adortus [*orior, rise*], *(rise against), attack unexpectedly, fall upon.*
- adrogāns**, adrogantis [part. of *adrogō*], *claim*, *adj., assuming, arrogant.*
- adrogantia**, -ae [*adrogāns*], *f., arrogance.*
- adsciscō**, adsciscere, adscivi, adscitus [*sciscō, decree*], *take to one's self by decree, adopt.*
- adservō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*servō, save*], *watch over, guard.*
- adsiduus**, -a, -um [*cf. sedeō, sit*], *(sitting by), continuous, constant, permanent.*
- adistō**, adistere, adstiti, — [*sistō, place (one's self)*], *stand by, take a position near; in cōspectū adistere, appear in the presence of.*
- adsuēfaciō**, adsuēfacere, adsuēfeci, adsuēfactus [*cf. adsuēscō, faciō, make*], *accustom, habituate.*
- adsuēscō**, adsuēscere, adsuēvi, adsuētus [*suēscō, get used*], *get used, become accustomed.*
- adsum**, adesse, adfui, adfuturus [*sum, be*], *be near or present or at hand, be here or there.*
- adolēscēns**, adolēscētis [part. of *adolēscō*], *adj., young; as subst., young man.*
- adolēscēntia**, -ae [*adolēscēns*], *f., youth.*
- adolēscētulus**, -ī [dim. of *adolēscēns*], *m., a mere boy.*
- adveniō**, advenire, advēni, adventurus [*veniō, come*], *come to, arrive.*
- adventus**, -ūs [*cf. adveniō*], *m., coming, arrival.*
- adversārius**, -a, -um [*adversus*, part. of *advertō*], *opposed, unfavorable; m. as subst., opponent, enemy.*
- adversus**, -a, -um [part. of *advertō*], *(turned to or against), facing, opposite; unfavorable, adverse; adversō colle, uphill; adversō flumine, up stream; adversā nocte, in the face of night; rēs adversae, misfortune.*
- adversus** [part. of *advertō*, cf. *rūsus*], *prep. with acc., against.*
- advertō**, advertere, adverti, adversus [*vertō, turn*], *turn to; animum advertere (= animadvertere), observe, notice.*
- advocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*vocō, call*], *call, summon.*
- advolō**, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [*volō, fly*], *fly to, rush upon.*
- adyta**, -ōrum, *n., pl., a Greek word for innermost sanctuary, holy of holies; not to be translated in 246, 10.*
- aedificium**, aedifici [*cf. aedificō*], *n., building.*
- aedificō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*aedēs, house, cf. faciō, make*], *build.*

- aedilitās, aedilitātis** [aedilis, *aedile*, a commissioner of public works, etc.], *f.*, *aedileship*.
- aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick.**
- Aeginium, Aeginī, n.**, a city of eastern Epirus, near the Thessalian frontier.
- aegrē [aeger], adv.**, with difficulty, hardly; sup. **aegerrimē**, with the greatest difficulty.
- Aegyptius, -a, -um, Egyptian.**
- Aegyptus, -ī, f.**, Egypt, bequeathed to Rome in 81 B.C., but remaining virtually independent until 47 B.C., when Caesar established Roman supremacy.
- Aemilius, Aemilī, m.**, Lucius Aemilius, a decurion in Caesar's Gallic cavalry.
- aequāliter [aequālis, equal], adv.**, evenly, uniformly.
- aequē [aequus], adv.**, equally.
- aequinoctium, aequinoctī [aequus, equal; nox, night], n.**, equinox.
- aequitās, aequitātis [aequus], f.**, evenness; **animī aequitās**, contentment.
- aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [aequus],** make equal, equalize.
- aequus, -a, -um, even, level; favorable; fair, just; evenly matched; aequō animō, calmly, patiently.**
- aerāria, -ae [f. of aerārius, of copper], f.**, copper mine.
- aes, aeris, n.**, copper; bronze, an alloy of copper and tin; **aes aliēnum, debt (another's money).**
- aestās, aestātis [cf. aestus], f.**, summer.
- aestimātiō, aestimātiōnis [aestimō], f.**, valuation, appraisal.
- aestimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [aes, money],** determine the (money) value of, rate.
- aestuārium, aestuārī [aestus], n.**, marsh (land overflowed by tide-water).
- aestus, -ūs, m.**, heat; boiling, tide; pl., hot weather, heat.
- aetās, aetātis, f.**, age, time of life, of youth or old age.
- aeternus, -a, -um, eternal, everlasting.**
- Aetōlia, -ae, f.**, a country of central Greece.
- Afrānius, Afrānī, m.**, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucius Afranius*, in command, with Petreius, of the Pompeian forces in Spain at the beginning of the Civil War. After their defeat at Ilerda, 49 B.C., they were pardoned by Caesar, but both joined Pompey in Macedonia.
- Āfrica, -ae, f.**, Africa; see on 170, 1.
- Āfricānus, -a, -um, African.**
- Āfricus, -a, -um, African; m.** as subst. (sc. ventus, wind), the southwest wind, blowing to Italy from Africa.
- āfui, perf. of absum.**
- ager, agrī [akin to Eng. acre], m.**, cultivated land, field, territory, country; **agrī cultūra, cultivation of the soil, agriculture.**
- agger, aggeris [ad., cf. gerō, carry], m.**, (that which is carried to), materials for a rampart or for filling a trench, rubbish, earth; rampart; earthwork, embankment; siege mound, see Intro. § 47.
- agmen, agminis [agō, put in motion], n.**, army on the march, marching troops, column; **novissimum agmen, rear** (the part that passes last); **primum agmen, van; in agmine, on the march; see Intro. § 45.**
- agō, agere, ēgi, āctus, drive; do, act, transact; bring up** (siege sheds,

- etc.); *extend* (mines); *agere dē*, *treat for, discuss, talk about*; *agere cum*, *treat with, address*; *quid agitur*, *what is going on?* *grātias agere*, *thank*.
- alacer**, *alacris*, *alacre*, *quick, eager*.
- alacritās**, *alacritātis* [*alacer*], *f.*, *readiness, eagerness, spirit*.
- albus**, -a, -um, *white*.
- alcēs**, *alcis*, *f.*, *elk*.
- Alesia**, -ae, *f.*, principal city of the Mandubii, round which was centred the most decisive struggle of the Gallic War, 52 B.C. The name survives in the modern *Alise-Sainte-Reine*.
- Alexandria**, -ae, *f.*, *Alexandria*, in Egypt; founded by Alexander the Great in 332 B.C., it soon became the most important commercial and literary centre of the world. Its famous library was seriously damaged in the war between Caesar and the king, 47 B.C.
- aliās** [acc. pl. of *alius*, *another*; *sc. vicēs*, *turns*], *adv.*, *at another time*; *aliās . . . aliās*, *at one time . . . at another*.
- aliēnātiō**, *aliēnātiōnis* [*aliēnō*, *transfer to another*], *f.*, *loss of allegiance*.
- aliēnus**, -a, -um [*alius*], *another's*; *unfavorable, disadvantageous*; *unsuitable, out of place*; *aliēnus ā* with *abl.*, *unfavorable to, disloyal to*.
- aliō** [old dat. of *alius*; *cf. eōdem*, *to the same place*], *adv.*, *to another place, elsewhere*.
- aliquamdiū** [acc. of *aliqui* + *diū*, *for a long time*], *adv.*, *for some time, some time*.
- aliquandō** [*ali-* (of *alius*) + *quandō*, *when*], *adv.*, *at some time, at length*.
- aliquantō** [*abl.* of *aliquantus*], *adv.*, *somewhat, considerably*.
- aliquantus**, -a, -um [*ali-* (of *alius*) + *quantus*, *how great*], *considerable*; *aliquantum itineris*, *some distance*.
- aliqui**, -qua, -quod [*ali-* (of *alius*) + *qui*, *any*], *indef. adj. pron.*, *some, some . . . or other* (less indefinite than *any*).
- aliquis**, -qua, -quid [*ali-* (of *alius*) + *quis*, *anybody*], *indef. subst. pron.*, *somebody, something* (less indefinite than *anybody, anything*, although these meanings occur sometimes); *aliquid cōsili*, *some degree of discretion*.
- aliquot** [*ali-* (of *alius*) + *quot*, *how many*], *adj.*, *indecl.*, *some, several*; not implying *many*.
- aliter** [*cf. alius*], *adv.*, *otherwise, differently*; *aliter sē habere ac*, *be different from what*.
- alius**, -a, -ud, *another, other, different, else*; *alius . . . alius, one . . . another*; *alii . . . alii*, *some . . . others*; *legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte*, *some in one place, some in another*; *alius alii*, *one to one, another to another*; *alius atque or ac*, *different from*. *Cf. alter*, also *ceteri* and *reliquus*.
- Allobrox**, *Allobrogis*, *m.*, *one of the Allobroges*, a Gallic people in the northeastern part of the Roman Transalpine Province, subject to Rome since 121 B.C. *Pl. Allobrogēs*, -um, acc. -ēs or -as, *the Allobroges*.
- alō**, *alere*, *alui*, *altus*, *nourish, increase, feed, support, maintain, keep, raise*.
- Alpēs**, *Alpium*, *f.*, pl., *the Alps*.
- alter**, *altera*, *alterum*, *the other, another* (of two), *the second* (of two or more), *the next*; *either one*; *alter . . . alter*, *one . . . the other*,

- pl., one party . . . the other. Cf. *alius*.
- alterar**, -ārī, -ātus [cf. *alter*], *dispute*.
- alteruter**, -tra, -trum [*alter uter*, the other of two; which one?], *indef. adj.*, either (of two).
- altitūdō**, altitudinis [altus], *f.*, height, depth; thickness.
- altum**, -ī [n. of altus], *n.*, the deep, sea, deep water.
- altus**, -a, -um [part. of *alō*, nourish], (grown) high, tall; looked at from the top, deep.
- alūta**, -ae, *f.*, soft leather, prepared with alum (alūmen).
- Amantia**, -ae, *f.*, a town in Epirus southeast of Oricum.
- Amantini**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., the people of Amantia.
- ambactus**, -ī, *m.*, dependent, vassal.
- Ambarri**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe on both sides of the Saône (Arar), closely related to the Haedui.
- Ambiāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe on the western part of the coast of Belgium, whose name survives in *Amiens* (the ancient Samarobriua).
- Ambibarii**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe on the northwestern coast of Gaul.
- Ambiliati**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe south of the Loire (Liger).
- ambitus**, -ūs [cf. *ambiō*, go round], *m.*, going round asking for votes, usually implying bribery; bribery.
- Ambivareti**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe on the western bank of the upper Loire (Liger), dependents of the Haedui.
- Ambivariti**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of northeastern Belgium, on the west bank of the Meuse (Mosa).
- ambō**, -ae, -ō, *both*.
- amicē** [amicus], *adv.*, in a friendly manner, kindly.
- amicitia**, -ae [amicus], *f.*, friendship.
- amicus**, -a, -um [cf. *amō*, love], *friendly, well-disposed*; *m.* as *subst.*, friend.
- āmittō**, āmittere, āmisi, āmissus [mittō, send], *send away, let go, lose*.
- amor**, amōris [cf. *amō*, love], *m.*, love.
- Amphipolis**, -is, *f.*, an important commercial city of eastern Macedonia, formerly a colony of Athens.
- Ampius**, Ampī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Titus Ampius Balbus*, a friend of Pompey and bitter opponent of Caesar.
- amplificō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [amplus, cf. *faciō*, make], *extend, increase*.
- amplitūdō**, amplitudinis [amplus], *f.*, extent, size.
- amplius** [comp. of *amplē*, largely], *adv.*, more, further; *sup.* *amplissimē*, most liberally.
- amplus**, -a, -um, *of large extent, great; distinguished, illustrious; splendid; amplius*, *n.* comp. as *subst.*, more.
- an**, *conj.*, used only in questions, *or*.
- Anartēs**, -ium, *m.*, pl., a tribe in Dacia.
- Ancalitēs**, -um, *m.*, pl., a British tribe.
- anceps**, ancipitis [an- (= *ambi*, round), *caput*, head], *adj.*, (having a head on both sides), double; **anceps proelium**, battle of two fronts (of an army facing in two directions).
- ancora**, -ae, *f.*, anchor; in *ancoris*, ad *ancorās*, ad *ancoram*, at anchor.
- Andēs**, -ium, *m.*, pl., a Celtic people north of the Loire (Liger), whose name survives in the modern *Anjou*.

**Androsthēnēs**, -is, *m.*, a military governor of Thessaly.

**ānfractus**, -ūs [*an-* (= *ambi-*, *round*, cf. *frangō*, *break*), *m.*, winding (of a road).

**angulus**, -ī, *m.*, corner, angle.

**angustō** [*angustus*], *adv.*, narrowly, closely; barely.

**angustiae**, -ārum [*angustus*], *f.*, pl. (*narrow*), narrow pass; straits, difficulties; scarcity; with or without loci, narrow quarters, tight place.

**angustus**, -a, -um [*cf. angor*, a straining], narrow, contracted; scanty; *rēs est in angustō*, the situation is critical.

**anima**, -ae [*cf. animus*], *f.*, breath; soul.

**animadversio**, *animadversio*nis [*cf. animadvertō*], *f.*, taking action (mild for punishment).

**animadvertō**, *animadvertere*, *animadverti*, *animadversus* [*animus ad-vertō*, turn the mind to], turn the mind to, attend to, take action against (mild for punish); notice, observe.

**animal**, *animālis* [*anima*], *n.*, living thing, animal (including man).

**animus**, -ī [*cf. anima*], mind, heart; feelings, character, spirit, courage; *animi causā*, for amusement; *animi magnitūdō*, nobility of purpose.

**annōtinus**, -a, -um [*cf. annus*], of the year before, last year's.

**annus**, -ī, *m.*, year.

**annuus**, -a, -um [*annus*], of a year, yearly, annual.

**Anquillāria**, -ae, *f.*, a seaport in Africa on the eastern side of the Gulf of Carthage.

**ānser**, *ānseris*, *m.*, goose.

**ante**, (1) *adv.* of place or time, before,

previously; (2) *prep.* with acc., of place or time, before, in front of.

**antēā** [*ante ea*, before this], *adv.*, before, previously.

**antecēdō**, *antecēdere*, *antecessi*, *antecessus* [*cēdō*, go], go before or ahead of, get the start, arrive before; take precedence of, excel, surpass; *multum antecēdere*, get a long lead.

**anteferō**, *anteferre*, *antefuli*, *antefulatus* [*ferō*, carry], carry before; place before; *uter alteri anteferrētur*, as to which was the better man.

**antenna**, -ae, *f.*, yard (for sails).

**antepōnō**, *antepōnere*, *anteposui*, *anteponitus* [*pōnō*, put], put before, give precedence.

**antesignānus**, -ī [*ante signum*, before the standard], *m.*, originally a soldier of the first line, fighting in front of the standards; in Caesar's army, a skirmisher, belonging to a body of picked men attached to each legion; see on 226, 25.

**Antiochēnsēs**, -ium, *m.*, pl., the people of Antioch.

**Antiochia**, -ae, *f.*, Antioch, capital of the Greek kingdom of Syria, given its independence by Pompey in 64 B.C.; an early centre of Christianity, the name of Christian being first used there (*Acts* 11, 26).

**Antiochus**, -ī, *m.*, king of Commagene, a supporter of Pompey in the Civil War.

**antiquitus** [*antiquus*], *adv.*, long ago, of old, in ancient times, from ancient times.

**antiquus**, -a, -um [*cf. ante*], former, ancient, old.

**Antistius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Gaius Antistius Reginus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**Antōniānus**, -a, -um, of *Antonius*, *Antony's*.

**Antōnius**, Antōnī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Mark Antony*, a lieutenant of Caesar in the Gallic and the Civil Wars. He was a member of the second triumvirate, and shared with Octavian the rule of the Roman world. His defeat off Actium, in 31 B.C., left Octavian sole ruler. (2) *Gaius Antonius*, see on 189, 9.

**Ap.** = **Appius**, Appī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

**aperiō**, aperire, aperui, apertus, *uncover, open*.

**apertē** [apertus], *adv.*, *openly, manifestly*.

**apertus**, -a, -um [part. of **aperiō**], *exposed, open*.

**Apollō**, Apollinis, *m.*, a Greek deity, early adopted by the Romans. He was the god of light and healing, and the patron of prophecy, music, and poetry.

**Apollōnia**, -ae, *f.*, a large and important Greek city in the province of Macedonia, allied with Rome since 229 B.C.; see also on 190, 3.

**Apollōniātēs**, -ium, *m.*, pl., the people of Apollonia.

**apparātus**, -ūs [apparō, *prepare*], *m.*, *equipments*, including engines of war and materials of every sort.

**appellātiō**, appellātiōnis [appellō, *call*], *f.*, *addressing, accosting*.

**appellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *call, name, address, accost*.

**appellō**, appellere, appuli, appulsus [ad + pellō, *drive*], *bring in shore* (of ships); *nāvēs appelluntur*, *ships come to land*; intr., *land*.

**appetō**, appetere, appetivi or appetiī, appetitus [ad + petō, *seek*], *seek*

*for; strike at; approach, be at hand*.

**applicō**, -āre, -āvi or -uī, -ātus [ad + plicō, *fold*], *attach*; *sē applicāre ad*, *lean against*.

**appōnō**, appōnere, apposui, appositus [ad + pōnō, *put*], *put beside, set near*.

**apportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad + portō, *carry*], *carry to, bring*.

**appropinquō**, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [ad + propinquō, from propinquus, *near*], *approach, come near, draw near*.

**appulsus**, part. of **appellō**.

**Apr.** = **Aprīlis**, Aprīle, *adj.*, of *April*.

**Apsus**, -ī, *m.*, a river of southwestern Macedonia, emptying into the Ionian Sea just north of Apollonia.

**aptus**, -a, -um, *fitted, suitable*.

**apud**, *prep.* with acc., *at, among, in, with, at the house or quarters of, before* (in the presence of); **apud Caesarem in honōre esse**, *be honored by Caesar*.

**Apulia**, -ae, *f.*, a fertile district on the Adriatic coast of south central Italy.

**aqua**, -ae, *f.*, *water*.

**aquātīō**, aquātīōnis [aquor], *f.*, *getting water*.

**aquila**, -ae, *f.*, *eagle*; a silver or bronze eagle on a staff was the standard of the Roman legion; see *Intro.* § 40.

**Aquilēia**, -ae, *f.*, a city of Cisalpine Gaul; see on 57, 27.

**aquilifer**, aquiliferī [aquila, cf. *ferō*, *bear*], *m.*, *eagle-bearer*, the standard-bearer of a legion, corresponding to the color-sergeant of a regiment; see *Intro.* § 40.

**Aquitānia**, -ae, *f.*, the country of the Aquitanians, in southwestern Gaul.

**Aquitānus**, -ī, *m.*, an Aquitanian, a native of southwestern Gaul between the Garonne (Garumna) and the Pyrenees; *pl.*, the Aquitani or Aquitanians.

**aquor**, -āri, -ātus [aqua], *get water*.

**Arar**, Araris, *acc.* Ararim, *m.*, the Saône, a river of eastern Gaul, flowing into the Rhone.

**arbitrator**, arbitri, *m.*, eye-witness; ap-praiser, umpire.

**arbitrium**, arbitri [arbitrator], *n.*, will, decision, judgment; authority.

**arbitror**, -āri, -ātus [arbitrator], (*state one's belief as a witness*), think, suppose, believe; with *pass. force*, be thought, 190, 25.

**arbor**, arboris, *f.*, tree.

**arcessō**, arcessere, arcessivī, arcessitus, *send for, summon, call in*.

**ardeō**, ardere, arsi, arsurus, *be afire, burn*.

**arduus**, -a, -um, steep, high; difficult.

**Aremoricus**, -a, -um, Aremorian, of the states on the northwestern coast of Gaul.

**argentum**, -ī, *n.*, silver; silverware.

**āridus**, -a, -um [cf. āreō, be dry], dry; *n.* as *subst.*, dry land.

**ariēs**, arietis, *m.*, ram; battering ram; buttress, prop.

**Ariobarzānēs**, -is, *m.*, king of Cappadocia.

**Ariovistus**, -ī, *m.*, a German chief, defeated by Caesar in Gaul, 58 B.C.; see p. 249.

**arma**, -ōrum, *n.* (things fitted to the body), arms, armor, equipment.

**armāmenta**, -ōrum [armō, equip], *n.*, *pl.*, tackle, rigging.

**armātūra**, -ae [armō], *f.*, armor, equipment; troops; levis armātūra peditēs, light infantry.

**armō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [arma], *arm,*

*equip*; *perf. part. pl.* as *subst.*, armed men.

**ars**, artis, *f.*, skill; art, science.

**artō** [artus, close], *adv.*, closely.

**articulus**, -ī [dim. of artus, joint], *m.*, joint.

**artificium**, artificī [artifex, artificer], *n.*, trade.

**Arvernus**, -a, -um, Arvernian; *m.* *pl.* as *subst.*, the Arverni, one of the most powerful tribes of Gaul, on the headwaters of the Allier (Elaver) and touching the northern boundary of the Province.

**arx**, arcis, *f.*, stronghold, fortress, citadel.

**ascendō**, ascendere, ascendī, ascēsus [ad + scandō, climb], climb, ascend, scale, mount.

**ascēsus**, -ūs [cf. ascendō], *m.*, ascent, ascending, means of ascent.

**Asia**, -ae, *f.*, the Roman province of Asia, organized in 129 B.C. from the kingdom of Pergamus, which was bequeathed to Rome in 133 B.C. by Attalus III. It comprised the districts of Mysia, Lydia, Caria, and Phrygia.

**Asiaticus**, -a, -um, Asiatic.

**Asparagium**, Asparagi, *n.*, a town on the Genusus, half-way between Dyrrachium and Apollonia.

**aspectus**, -ūs [cf. aspiciō, look at], *m.*, appearance; sight.

**asper**, aspera, asperum, rough, wild. *at, conj.*, but, yet.

**Athamānia**, -ae, *f.*, a district of south-eastern Epirus.

**Athēnae**, -ārum, *f.*, *pl.*, Athens, principal city of the province of Achaia. In Caesar's time it was still famous as a centre of philosophical study. *atque* [ad + que, and to the foregoing], *conj.*, and, and besides, and

- furthermore; as, than; **contrā atque**, *contrary to what*; **alius atque**, *different from, other than*. Before consonants **ac** is often used; this is formed from **atque**, like **nec** from **neque**, by syncope of final *e*.
- Atrebās**, **Atrebātis**, *adj.*, *Atrebatian*; m. pl. as *subst.*, *the Atrebates*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul west of the Nervii.
- Ātrius**, **Ātri**, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Quintus Atrius*, in command of Caesar's camp on the coast of Britain, 54 B.C.
- attenuō**, -āre, *āvi*, -ātus [**ad** + **tenuō** (cf. **tenuis**)], *make thin*, *reduce*, *weaken*.
- Attianus**, -a, -um, *of Attius*.
- attingō**, *attingere*, *attigī*, *attāctus* [**ad** + **tangō**, *touch*], *touch*, *border on*; *reach*, *extend to*.
- Attius**, **Attī**, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name; see **Vārus**.
- attribuō**, *attribuere*, *attribui*, *attribūtus* [**ad** + **tribuō**, *assign*], *assign*, *allot*.
- attulī**, *perf.* of **adferō**.
- Atuatucī**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of Belgic Gaul east of the Nervii.
- auctor**, *auctōris* [cf. **augeō**], *m.*, *promoter*, *adviser*, *source* (of a report).
- auctōritās**, *auctōritātis* [**auctor**], *f.*, *influence*, *reputation*, *prestige*; *example*.
- audācia**, -ae [**audāx**, *bold*], *f.*, *boldness*, *daring*.
- audācter** [**audāx**, *bold*], *adv.*, *boldly*.
- audēō**, *audēre*, *ausus sum*, *semi-dep.*, *dare*, *venture*.
- audīō**, *audīre*, *audīvī*, *auditus*, *hear*, *listen to*, *hear of*.
- audītīō**, *audītīōnis* [**audīō**], *f.*, *hearing*; *report*.
- augeō**, *augēre*, *auxī*, *auctus*, *increase*, *add to*; *exaggerate*.
- Aulercī**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a people of several branches in Celtic Gaul. (1) **Aulercī Eburovīcēs**, in the north, south of the lower Seine (Sequana). (2) **Aulercī Brannovīcēs**, south of the Haedui, to whom they were subject. (3) **Aulercī Cēnomanī**, in the northwest, south of *Aremorica*.
- aura**, -ae, *f.*, *breeze*.
- aureus**, -a, -um [**aurum**, *gold*], *of gold*, *gold*.
- auriga**, -ae [cf. *aurea*, *bridle*, and *agō*, *drive*], *m.*, *charioteer*, *driver*.
- auris**, *auris*, *f.*, *ear*.
- Aurunculēius**, *Aurunculēi*, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name; see **Cotta**.
- Auscī**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of eastern Aquitania.
- auster**, *austri*, *m.*, *south wind*.
- aut**, *conj.*, *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*.
- autem**, *conj.*, *but*; *moreover*.
- autumnus**, -ī, *m.*, *autumn*.
- auxiliāris**, *auxiliāre* [**auxilium**], *auxiliary*; m. pl. as *subst.*, *auxiliaries* (= *auxilia*).
- auxilior**, -ārī, -ātus [**auxilium**], *render aid*, *help*.
- auxilium**, *auxilī* [cf. **augeō**], *n.*, *aid*, *assistance*, *resource*; *auxilī causā*, *as a reinforcement*; pl., *auxiliary troops* (light-armed infantry furnished by allied and subject states), *reinforcements*.
- Avaricēnsis**, -e, *of Avaricum*.
- Avaricum**, -ī, *n.*, principal town of the Bituriges, now *Bourges*.
- āvertō**, *āvertere*, *āvertī*, *āversus* [**vertō**, *turn*], *turn away* or *aside*; *alienate*; with or without *domum*, *appropriate*; *āversus*, *turned away*, *in the rear*; *āversum hostem*, *an*

*enemy turned in flight; āversā circumveniuntur, they are surrounded in the rear.*

**avis**, *avis*, *f.*, *bird*.

**avus**, *-i, m.*, *grandfather*.

## B

**Baculus**, *-i*, see **Sextius**.

**Bagrada**, *-ae, m.*, the principal river of the province Africa, now the Medjerda.

**Balbus**, *-i, m.*, a Roman family name. *Cornelius Balbus*, a follower of Caesar in the Civil War.

**balteus**, *-i, m.*, *belt*, passing over the left shoulder and supporting the sword on the right side.

**barbarus**, *-a, -um*, *foreign, of the natives; uncivilized, barbarous; m. pl. as subst., savages, barbarians, natives*.

**Basilus**, *-i, m.*, a Roman family name; see **Minucius**.

**Batāvi**, *-ōrum, m., pl.*, the *Batavi* or *Batavians*, occupying the islands formed by the mouths of the Rhine.

**Belgae**, *-ārum, m., pl.*, the *Belgae* or *Belgians*, inhabiting the district between Celtic Gaul and the lower Rhine. They were of mixed Celtic and German stock.

**Belgium**, *Belgī, n.*, the country of the *Belgae*, in northeastern Gaul.

**bellicōsus**, *-a, -um* [**bellicus**], *fond of war, warlike*.

**bellicus**, *-a, -um* [**bellum**], *of war, in war; Porta Bellica, the War Gate*, one of the gates of Utica.

**bellō**, *-āre, -āvī, -ātūrus* [**bellum**], *wage war, carry on war*.

**Bellovacī**, *-ōrum, m., pl.*, a powerful tribe of southwestern Belgium. The name survives in *Beauvais*.

**bellum**, *-i* [old *duellum*, from *duo*,

*two*; "it takes two to make a quarrel"], *n.*, *war, campaign, warfare*.

**bene** [cf. *bonus, good*], comp. *melius*, sup. *optimē, adv., well, successfully*. **beneficiārius**, *beneficiārī* [**beneficium**], *m.*, *favorite, a soldier who had received, by the favor of the commander, exemption from hard and disagreeable tasks*.

**beneficium**, *beneficī* [**beneficus, generous**], *n.*, *favor, service, kindness*.

**benevolentia**, *-ae* [**benevolēns** (*bene* + part. of *volō, wish*), *well-wishing*], *f.*, *good-will*.

**Bessī**, *-ōrum, m., pl.*, a tribe in western Thrace.

**Bibracte**, *Bibractis, n.*, chief town of the Haedui, on the hill now called Mont Beuvray.

**Bibroci**, *-ōrum, m., pl.*, a British tribe.

**Bibulus**, *-i, m.*, a Roman family name. *Marcus Calpurnius Bibulus*, admiral of Pompey's fleet in the Civil War; see also on 190, 11.

**bīdūm**, *bīdūi* [**bī**, akin to *duo* (cf. *bellum*), cf. *diēs, day*], *n.*, *two days*.

**biennium**, *biennī* [**bī**, akin to *duo* (cf. *bellum*), *annus, year*], *n.*, a period of *two years*.

**Bigerriōnēs**, *-um, m., pl.*, a tribe of southern Aquitania. The name survives in the modern *Bigorre*.

**bīnī**, *-ae, -a* [**bī**, akin to *duo* (cf. *bellum*)], *distr. num.*, *two each, two at a time, in pairs*; with nouns which are used only in the pl., *two*.

**bipedālis**, *bipedāle* [**bī**, akin to *duo* (cf. *bellum*), *pēs, foot*], *two feet in thickness*.

**bipertitō** [**bī**, akin to *duo* (cf. *bellum*), + part. of *partior, divide*], *adv.*, *in two divisions*.

**birēmīs**, *birēmīs* [**bī**, akin to *duo*

(cf. *bellum*), *rēmus*, *oar*], *f.*, *bireme*, a galley with two banks of oars; cf. *trirēmis*.  
**bis** [akin to *duo*, cf. *bellum*], *num.* *adv.*, *twice*.  
**Bithŷnia**, -ae, *f.*, a district of Asia Minor, on the shore of the Black Sea, bequeathed to Rome in 74 B.C., and organized with western Pontus as a province by Pompey in 65 B.C.  
**Biturigēs**, -um, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe of central Gaul, west of the Haedui.  
**Bođuognātus**, -i, *m.*, a chieftain of the Nervii.  
**Boeōtia**, -ae, *f.*, a district of Achaia (Greece) lying north of Attica.  
**Bōi**, Bōiōrum, dat. and abl. Bōis, acc. Bōiōs, *m.*, pl., a Celtic people, from whose name *Bohemia* is derived. A part of them settled in the Haeduan country between the Allier (Elaver) and the Loire (Liger).  
**bonitās**, bonitātis [bonus], *f.*, *goodness*; *fertility*.  
**bonum**, -i [n. of bonus], *n.*, *good*, *advantage*,  *blessing*; pl., *goods*, *possession*s.  
**bonus**, -a, -um, comp. *melior*, sup. *optimus*, *good*, *kindly*, *useful*.  
**bōs**, bovis, gen. pl., boum, *m.* and *f.*, *ox*, *cow*.  
**bracchium**, bracchi, *n.*, *arm*.  
**Brannovićēs**, -um, *m.*, pl., see *Aulerci*.  
**brevi** [abl. of *brevis*], *adv.*, *in a short time*, *soon*.  
*brevis*, breve, *short*, *brief*.  
**brevitās**, brevitātis [brevis], *f.*, *shortness*.  
**Britanni**, Britannōrum, *m.*, pl., the *Britons*,  *natives of Britain*.  
**Britannia**, -ae, *f.*, *Britain*, first visited by Romans, under Caesar, 55 and 54 B.C.  
**brūma**, -ae [for *brevuma*, old sup. of

*brevis*, sc. *diēs*, *day*], *f.*, *the winter solstice*.

**Brundisiŷnus**, -a, -um, of *Brundisium*.

**Brundisium**, Brundisi, *n.*, a Tarentine colony on the southeastern coast of Italy, which came under Roman control in the third century B.C., and was thenceforth one of the principal naval stations of Italy. It was the southern terminus of the Appian Way, and was then, as it is now, the port of departure for Greece and the East. The name is preserved in the modern *Brindisi*.

**Brūtus**, -i, *m.*, a famous Roman family name. *Decimus Junius Brutus Albinus*, an able lieutenant of Caesar in the Gallic and the Civil Wars; see also on 88, 9.

**būcinātor**, būcinātōris, *m.*, *bugler*, who gave the signals for the change of sentries during the night.

**Būthrōtūm**, -i, *n.*, a town of Epirus opposite northern Corcyra, now *Butrinto*.

**Byllidēnsēs**, -ium, *m.*, pl., the people of Byllis.

**Byllis**, -idis, *f.*, a town southeast of Apollonia.

## C

**C. = Gāius**, Gāi, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

**C = centum**, *hundred*; **CC = ducenti**; **CCC = trecenti**; **CCCC = quadringenti**; **CX = centum decem**.

**cacūmen**, cacūminis, *n.*, *point*, *top*.

**cadāver**, cadāveris [cf. *cadō*], *n.*, *corpse*.

**cadō**, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall*; *be killed*; *fall out*, *happen*.

**Cadūrci**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a small tribe of southwestern Gaul, dependents of the Arverni.

**caedēs**, caedis [cf. **caedō**], *f.*, murder, carnage, massacre.

**caedō**, caedere, cecidi, caesus, *cut, cut down*.

**caelōstis**, caeleste [caelum, *heaven*], heavenly; *m. pl. as subst., the gods*.

**caeruleus**, -a, -um [for caeluleus, from caelum, *sky*], dark blue.

**Caesar**, Caesaris, *m.*, a Roman family name. (1) *Julius Caesar*; see *Introd.* §§ 1 ff. (2) *Lucius Julius Caesar*, a partisan of Pompey during the Civil War; see also on 170, 9.

**caespes**, caespitis, *m.*, sod, turf.

**calamitās**, calamitātis, *f.*, disaster, misfortune, damage.

**Calēnus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Quintus Fufius Calenus*, a political supporter of Caesar, and one of his lieutenants in the last year of the Gallic campaign and throughout the Civil War.

**Caletēs**, -um, or **Caleti**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a coast tribe at the mouth of the Seine (Sequana).

**callidus**, -a, -um [cf. **calleō**, *be experienced*], experienced, shrewd.

**cālō**, cālōnis, *m.*, soldier's servant.

**campester**, campestris, campestre [campus], *of or in the plain*.

**campus**, -ī, *m.*, plain, field.

**Candāvia**, -ae, *f.*, a mountainous district east of Dyrrachium.

**Caninius**, Caninī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Gaius Caninius Rebilus*, a lieutenant of Caesar in the Gallic and the Civil Wars.

**canō**, canere, cecinī, —, *sing*; of an instrument, *sound, play*; **receptui canere**, *sound a retreat*.

**Cantabrī**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., the *Cantabri* or *Cantabrians*, a warlike tribe of northern Spain.

**Cantium**, Cantī, *n.*, *Kent*, in south-eastern Britain.

**Canulēius**, Canulēī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucius Canuleius*, a lieutenant of Caesar in the Civil War.

**capillus**, -ī [cf. **caput**], *m.*, hair (collectively).

**capīō**, capere, cēpī, captus, *take, take possession of, seize, capture, catch; incur, feel; reach a place; captivate, charm; initium capere, begin; cōsiliū capere, form a plan, plan*.

**Cappadocia**, -ae, *f.*, a kingdom in the central eastern part of Asia Minor, which Pompey, when he was organizing the East, in 63 B.C., left nominally independent.

**capra**, -ae, *f.*, she-goat, goat.

**captivus**, -ī [cf. **capīō**], *m.*, captive, prisoner.

**captus**, -ūs [cf. **capīō**], *m.*, capacity; *ut est captus Germānōrum, from a German standpoint*.

**Capua**, -ae, *f.*, the principal city of Campania, famous for its wealth and luxury, now *Santa Maria di Capua*.

**caput**, capitis, *n.*, head; mouth of a river; civil rights; life; pl. in enumerations, *souls* (cf. 'ten head of cattle'); **capitis poena**, *penalty of death*; **capitis damnāre**, *condemn to death*.

**Carcasō**, -ōnis, *f.*, *Carcassonne*, a city of the western part of the Province.

**carīna**, -ae, *f.*, keel, bottom of a ship.

**Carnutēs**, -um, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe of central Gaul. Their name is preserved in the modern *Chartres*.

**carō**, carnis, *f.*, flesh, meat.

**carpō**, carpere, carpsī, carptus, *pluck, pick at, criticise*.

- carrus**, -ī, *m.*, *cart*, with two wheels, used for carrying freight.
- cārus**, -a, -um, *dear*, *beloved*.
- Carvilius**, Carvili, *m.*, a Briton, king of a part of Kent.
- caseus**, caseī, *m.*, *cheese*.
- Cassi**, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, a British tribe.
- Cassiānus**, -a, -um, *of Cassius*.
- cassis**, cassidis, *f.*, *helmet*, of metal. Cf. *galea*.
- Cassius**, Cassi, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, consul 107 B.C., slain in a battle with the Tigurini. (2) *Gaius Cassius Longinus*, an officer of Pompey's fleet in the Civil War; see also on 190, 8.
- Cassivellaunus**, -ī, *m.*, a British chief, appointed commander against Caesar in 54 B.C.
- castellum**, -ī [dim. of *castrum*, a fortified place], *fort*, *redoubt*, *stronghold*.
- Casticus**, -ī, *m.*, a Sequanian nobleman.
- castigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*castus*, *pure*, cf. *agō*, *do*], *correct*, *reprove*, *censure*.
- Castor**, -oris, *m.*, *Tarcondarius Castor*, a tetrarch in Galatia, son-in-law of Deiotarus. He sent a small contingent of cavalry under his son Castor to support Pompey in the Civil War.
- castra**, -ōrum [pl. of *castrum*, a fortified place], *n.*, *camp* (which was always fortified); *castra movēre*, *break camp*; see *Intro.* §§ 43, 44.
- Castra Cornēlia**, *n.*, *pl.*, *Camp Cornelia*, a place on the coast of Africa near Utica; see on 171, 11.
- cāsus**, -ūs [cf. *cadō*, *fall*], *m.*, a *fall*; *chance*, *occurrence*, *fortune* (good or bad); *accident*, *mischance*, *fate*; *good luck*; *cāsū*, *by chance*; *extrēmus cāsus*, *the last emergency*, *direst extremity*.
- Catamantāloedēs**, -is, *m.*, a chief of the Sequani.
- catēna**, -ae, *f.*, *chain*.
- Caturigēs**, -um, *m.*, *pl.*, an Alpine tribe between the hither and the farther province.
- causa**, -ae, *f.*, *cause*, *reason*; *excuse*, *pretext*; *case* (at law), *matter in dispute*; *abl.* after a gen., *for the sake of*; *causam dicere*, *plead a case*, *stand trial*; *in eādem causā*, *in the same position*; *per causam*, *on the pretext*.
- cautēs**, cautis, *f.*, *jagged rock*, *reef*.
- caveō**, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, *be on one's guard*.
- Cavillōnum**, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Haedui on the Saône (Arar). The name is preserved in the modern *Châlon-sur-Saône*.
- cecidī**, perf. of *cadō*.
- cēdō**, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, *go away*, *give way*, *retreat*, *retire*; *yield*.
- celer**, celeris, celere, *swift*, *sudden*, *speedy*.
- celeritās**, celeritātis [*celer*], *f.*, *speed*, *quickness*, *rapidity*.
- celeriter** [*celer*], *adv.*, *quickly*, *speedily*.
- cēlō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. *clam*, *secretly*], *conceal*.
- Celtae**, -ārum, *m.*, *the Celts*, inhabiting Gallia Celtica; see on 51, 3.
- Cēnimagnī**, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, a British tribe.
- Cēnomanī**, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*; see *Aulerci*.
- cēnseō**, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, *estimate*, *hold an opinion*, *propose*, *urge*, *vote*.

**cēnsus**, -ūs [cf. *cēnsō*], *m.*, *census*, numbering.

**centō**, centōnis, *m.*, *patchwork quilt*.  
**centum** or **C**, *hundred*.

**centuria**, -ae [centum], *f.*, *century*, a division of the legion containing nominally a hundred men; see Introd. § 28.

**centuriō**, centuriōnis [centuria], *m.*, *centurion*, commander of a century; see Introd. § 35.

**Ceraunī**, -ōrum (sc. montēs), *m.*, pl., the Ceraunian Mountains, a range along the coast of northwestern Epirus. With the use of the pl. adj. as *subst.*, cf. 'the Alleghanies, the Rockies.'

**cernō**, cernere, crēvī, certus (-crētus in cpds., see *dēcernō*), *separate*; esp. of sight, *distinguish, make out, see*.

**certāmen**, certāminis [certō, strive], *n.*, *strife, struggle, contest*.

**certātiō**, certātiōnis [certō, strive], *f.*, *strife*.

**certē** [certus], *adv.*, *certainly, surely*; at any rate, at least.

**certus**, -a, -um [part. of cernō], *certain, sure, specified, definite, reliable, exact, regular*; certiorē facere, *inform, tell*; certī quid esset, *what it really meant*.

**cervus**, -i, *m.*, *stag*; pl., in military language, *spreading branches* (like stag's horns, planted as an obstacle to an enemy).

**cēterī**, -ae, -a, adj., pl., *the rest, the others*. Cf. reliquus and alius.

**Ceutronēs**, -um, *m.*, pl., an Alpine tribe between the hither and the farther province.

**chara**, -ae, *f.*, *chara*, an unknown vegetable.

**cibāria**, cibāriōrum [cibus], *n.*, *provisions*; molita cibāria, *meal*.

**cibus**, -i, *m.*, *food*.

**Cicerō**, Cicerōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Quintus Tullius Cicero*, brother of the great orator, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul.

**Cilicia**, -ae, *f.*, the southeastern district of Asia Minor, a stronghold of pirates, permanently organized as a province by Pompey, in 64 B.C., and extended to include Isauria and Pamphylia.

**Ciliciēnsis**, -e, *Cilician*.

**Cimbri**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a German people who overran Gaul; see on 161, 24.

**Cingetorix**, Cingetorigis, *m.*, a British king in Kent.

**cingō**, eingere, cinxī, cinctus, *surround, encircle*; man (of works encircling a place under siege).

**cippus**, -i, *m.*, *stake, boundary-stake* (as a soldier's joke, see 157, 14).

**circiter** [circus, circle], *adv.*, *about*.

**circuitus**, -ūs [cf. circumeō], *m.*, *circuit, roundabout route*; in circuitū, *all round*; magnitūdō circuitūs, *the distance round a thing*.

**circulus**, -i [dim. of circus, circle], *m.*, *circle; social group*.

**circum** [acc. of circus, circle], *prep.* with acc., *around, round about*.

**circumclūdō**, circumclūdere, circumclūsī, circumclūsus [claudō, shut], *inclose, surround, encircle*.

**circumdō**, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus [dō, give], *put round; surround, encircle*.

**circumdūcō**, circumducere, circumdūxī, circumductus [dūcō, lead], *lead round*.

**circumeō**, circumfire, circumī, circumitus [eō, go], *go round; go round to, visit one after another; surround*.

- circumfundō**, circumfundere, circumfūdī, circumfusus [fundō, pour], pour round; surround; pass., throng round.
- circummūniō**, circummūnīre, circummūnīvī, circummūnītus [mūniō, fortify], wall round, invest, fortify.
- circumplector**, circumplectī, circumplexus [plectō, intertwine], surround; build an inclosing line of works.
- circumsistō**, circumsistere, circumstetī, — [sistō, place (one's self)], surround, beset.
- circumvallō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vallō, fortify with a rampart], blockade, invest.
- circumvehor**, circumvehī, circumvectus [vehō, carry], (be carried round), ride round, come round.
- circumveniō**, circumvenīre, circumvenī, circumventus [veniō, come], come round, surround; impose upon, deceive (cf. "I'll get round him").
- cis**, prep. with acc., on this side of.
- citātus**, -a, -um [part. of citō, put in quick motion], swift, rapid; citātus fertur, flows rapidly; equō citātō, with his horse at full gallop.
- citerior**, citerius [cf. citrā], comp. adj., nearer, hither; Gallia or prōvincia citerior, hither Gaul, i.e. on the side of the Alps nearer Rome.
- citō** [abl. of citus, quick], adv., quickly; sup. citissimē, very quickly.
- citrā** [cf. cis], prep. with acc., on this side of.
- civīlis**, civīle [civīs], of citizens, civil.
- civīs**, civis, m., citizen.
- civitas**, civitātis [civīs], f., state, nation; the citizens collectively; citizenship.
- clam**, adv., secretly; prep. with abl., unknown to.
- clāmōr**, clāmōris [cf. clāmō, call out], m., shouting, shouts, outcry.
- clārē** [clārus, clear], adv., clearly, distinctly.
- classicum**, -ī, n., signal, trumpet-call.
- classis**, classis, f., fleet.
- Claudius**, Claudī, m., a Roman gentile or clan name. Appius Claudius Pulcher, consul 54 B.C.
- claudō**, claudere, clausī, clausus, shut, close; agmen claudere, bring up the rear.
- clāvus**, -ī [cf. claudō], m., nail, spike.
- Cleopatra**, -ae, f., a famous queen of Egypt. She was driven from her throne by her brother (see on 244, 20), but was restored by Caesar in 47 B.C. She is best known as the charmer of Mark Antony, who for her sake became a traitor to his country; see Shakespeare's *Antony and Cleopatra*.
- cliēns**, clientis [= cluēns, part. of cluēō, hear], m., (hearer), client, dependent, a free man who attached himself to a noble, and in return for services received the nobleman's protection. Used also of states.
- clientēla**, -ae [cliēns], f., clientship; pl. clients, (of states) dependencies; sē in clientēlam dicāre, attach themselves as dependents.
- clivus**, -ī, m., slope, ascent.
- Clōdīus**, Clōdī, m., a Roman gentile or clan name. Aulus Clōdīus, a follower of Caesar in the Civil War; not to be confused with the demagogue, Publius Clodius, who was murdered by Milo, 52 B.C.
- Clupea**, -ae, f., a seaport in Africa southeast of the Promontory of

Mercury. The name survives in the modern *Kelibia*.

**Cn.** = Gnaeus, Gnaei, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

**coacervō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [co- (= com-) + **acervō**, *heap up*], *heap up with the others*.

**coācta**, -ōrum [part. of **cōgō**, *bring together*], *n.*, pl., *felt*, coarse, thick cloth, made of closely pressed wool or hair.

**coactus**, part. of **cōgō**.

**coagmentum**, -i [co- (= com-), cf. **agō**, *drive*], *n.*, *joining*, crevice.

**coartō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [co- (= com-) + **artō**, *make close*], *crowd together*.

**Cocosātes**, -ium, *m.*, pl., a tribe of northwestern Aquitania.

**coēmō**, *coēmere*, *coēmi*, *coēptus* [co- (= com-) + **emō**, *buy*], *buy up*.

**coēō**, *coīre*, *coīi*, *coitūrus* [co- (= com-) + **eō**, *go*], *go or come together*, *unite*.

**coepī**, *coepisse*, *coeptus* (only in the perf. system), *began*; **coepī** is used with an act. infin., *coeptus sum* with a pass. infin.

**coērcēō**, *coērcēre*, *coērcuī*, *coērcitus* [co- (= com-) + **arceō**, *shut up*], *restrain*, *check*.

**cōgitātiō**, *cōgitātiōnis* [cōgitō], *f.*, *deliberating*; *planning*.

**cōgitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [co- (= com-) + **agitō**, *ponder*], *ponder*, *reflect*, *consider*, *think*; *have in mind*, *plan*.

**cōgnātiō**, *cōgnātiōnis* [cōgnātus, *related by birth*], from **con-** + part. of (g)nāscor, *be born*], *f.*, *blood-relationship*; *persons related by birth*, *clan*, *kindred*.

**cōgnōscō**, *cōgnōscere*, *cōgnōvī*, *cōgnitus* [con- + (g)nōscō, *learn*], *learn*, *learn of*, *find out*, *ascertain*, *per-*

*ceive*; *investigate*; *get acquainted with*; in perf. system, *know*, *be acquainted with*.

**cōgō**, *cōgere*, *coēgī*, *coactus* [co- (= com-) + **agō**, *drive*], *bring together*, *gather*, *collect*; *compel*, *force*; *coactus*, *under compulsion*.

**cohors**, *cohortis*, *f.*, *cohort*, *company*, the tenth part of a legion; see *Introd.* § 28.

**cohortātiō**, *cohortātiōnis* [cohortor], *f.*, *encouragement*, *address of encouragement*.

**cohortor**, -ārī, -ātus [co- (= com-) + **hortor**, *urge*], *encourage*, *address words of encouragement*, *urge*; **cohortāti** *inter sē*, *urging each other*.

**colligō**, *colligere*, *collēgī*, *collēctus* [com- + **legō**, *gather*], *gather together*, *collect*; *acquire*; *sē colligere*, *recover one's self*, *rally*.

**collis**, *collis*, *m.*, *hill*.

**colō**, *colere*, *coluī*, *cultus*, *till*, *cultivate*; *worship*.

**colōnia**, -ae [colōnus, *colonist*, cf. **colō** and **incolō**], *f.*, *colony*, *settlement*.

**color**, *colōris*, *m.*, *color*.

**com-**, **con-**, **co-** [same word as the prep. **cum**], used only in composition, *with*, *together*; as intensive, *altogether*, *completely*.

**combūrō**, *combūrere*, *combussī*, *combustus* [cf. **bustum**, *funeral pyre*], *burn up*, *consume*.

**comes**, *comitis* [com-, cf. **itum**, part. of **eō**, *go*], *m.*, *associate*, *companion*, *sharer*.

**comitātus**, -ūs [comitor, *accompany*], *m.*, *escort*.

**comitia**, *comitiōrum* [com-, cf. **itum**, part. of **eō**, *go*], *n.*, pl., *assembly of the Roman citizens*; *election*, held by the assembled citizens.

**Commāgēnus**, -a, -um, of *Comma-gene*, an independent kingdom just north of Syria.

**commēatus**, -ūs [commēō], *m.*, going back and forth, trip; supplies, provisions.

**commemorō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [memorō, call to mind], call to mind, remind; mention, relate.

**commendō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [mandō, give over], commit for protection, intrust, commend, recommend.

**commēō**, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [mēō, go], go and come, go back and forth; with *ad*, visit, resort to.

**commilitō**, commilitōnis, [mīles, soldier], *m.*, fellow-soldier, comrade.

**comminus** [manus, hand], *adv.*, hand to hand, in close combat.

**commissūra**, -ae [cf. committō], *f.*, joint, juncture.

**committō**, committere, commisi, commissus [mittō, send], send together, join; trust, place confidence in; intrust, commit; expose; with *proelium*, begin battle; *proeliō rem committere*, risk a battle; with *ut* or *quārē*, give occasion for, permit.

**Commius**, *Commī*, *m.*, a chief of the Atrebatens, appointed king by Caesar, to whom he afterwards proved unfaithful.

**commodē** [commodus], *adv.*, conveniently, to advantage, readily; *nōn satis commodē*, not very easily.

**commodum**, -ī [n. of commodus], *n.*, advantage, profit, convenience; good things.

**commodus**, -a, -um [modus, measure], (having the same measure with anything taken as a standard), fit, suitable; convenient, advantageous, good.

**commonefaciō**, commonefacere, commonefeci, commonefactus [cf. commoneō, remind, faciō, make], remind.

**commoveō**, commovēre, commōvi, commōtus [moveō, move], move violently, disturb, unsettle, alarm.

**commūnicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. commūnis], (make common), share, communicate; consult; *cum dōtibus commūnicāre*, add to the dowry in a common fund.

**commūniō**, commūnīre, commūnīvi, commūnītus [mūniō, fortify], fortify strongly, build (of fortifications). **commūnis**, commūne [cf. mūnus, duty], common, in common, common to all, general; *commūnī cōnsiliō*, with a common purpose.

**commūtātiō**, commūtātiōnis [commūtō], *f.*, change.

**commūtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [mūtō, change], change entirely, change, exchange.

**comparō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [parō, prepare], prepare, get together, procure.

**compārō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [compār, equal to, from *com-* + *pār*, equal], pair, compare.

**compellō**, compellere, compulsi, compulsus [pellō, drive], drive together, collect; drive, force.

**comperīō**, comperire, comperi, compertus, learn, find out, discover.

**complector**, complecti, complexus [plectō, intertwine], embrace, in-close.

**compleō**, complēre, complēvi, complētus [cf. plēnus, full], fill up, fill; *complēri hominibus*, to be covered or completely occupied with men; *complēre exercitum*, supply the army.

**complūrēs**, compluria or complura

- [plūs, more], *adj.*, pl., *several, many*.
- compōnō**, **compōnere**, **composui**, **compositus** [pōnō, put], *bring together, settle*.
- comportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [portō, carry], *bring together, collect, bring in*.
- compositiō**, **compositiōnis** [cf. **compōnō**], *f.*, *settlement, agreement*.
- comprehendō**, **comprehendere**, **comprehendi**, **comprehēnsus** [prehendō, grasp], *grasp, seize, catch, arrest, capture*.
- comprimō**, **comprimere**, **compressi**, **compressus** [premo, press], *press together, check*.
- con-**, see **com-**.
- cōnātum**, -i [part. of **cōnor**, attempt, as pass.], *n.*, (thing attempted), *attempt, undertaking*.
- cōnātus**, -ūs [cōnor, attempt], *m.*, *attempt*.
- concedō**, **concedere**, **concessi**, **concessus** [cēdō, give way], *give way, yield; allow, grant, give up, assign; make concession, give consent*.
- concelebrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [celebrō, repeat], *proclaim, publish*.
- concidō**, **concidere**, **concidī**, — [cadō, fall], *fall in a heap, tumble down*.
- concidō**, **concidere**, **concidī**, **concisus** [caedō, cut], *cut to pieces, destroy; cut up*.
- conciliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [concilium], *bring together, reconcile, win over, gain, secure*.
- concilium**, **concili** [cf. **calō**, call], *n.*, *meeting, assembly, council*.
- concinō**, **concinere**, **concinui**, — [canō, sound], *sound or be sounded together*.
- concupiō**, **concupere**, **concupi**, **conceptus** [capiō, take], *take up, take*.
- concitātiō**, **concitātiōnis** [concitō], *f.*, *outbreak, riot*.
- concitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of **conciō**, call together], *call out, stir up*.
- conclāmātiō**, **conclāmātiōnis** [conclāmō], *f.*, *loud shout (of men together)*.
- conclāmō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [clāmō, call out], *call out together, shout; give the signal for packing up; ad arma conclāmāre, call to arms*.
- conclūdō**, **conclūdere**, **conclūsi**, **conclūsus** [claudō, shut], *shut in, in-close*.
- concurrō**, **concurrere**, **concurrī** or **concucurrī**, **concurrūsus** [currō, run], *run together, run (in a crowd); assemble, flock, resort (in great numbers); charge (of two armies coming together); concurrunt equitēs inter sē, the cavalry rush together (in battle)*.
- concursum**, -ūs [cf. **concurrō**], *m.*, *running together, charge, assault*.
- condiciō**, **condiciōnis** [cf. **condicō**, agree], *f.*, *agreement, terms, condition; state*.
- condōnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dōnō, give], *give up; overlook, pardon*.
- Condrūsī**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of eastern Belgium on the Meuse (Mosa), clients of the Treveri.
- conductō**, **conductere**, **conduxi**, **conductus** [dūcō, lead], *bring together, assemble*.
- cōnfectus**, part. of **cōnficiō**.
- cōnferō**, **cōnferre**, **contuli**, **conlātus** [ferō, bring], *bring together, gather, collect; bestow, confer; transfer; compare; perf. part. with dat., near to; sē (often with suaque, with his possessions) cōnferre, betake himself, remove; culpam cōnferre, throw the blame on*.

- cōnfertus**, -a, -um [part. of **cōnferciō**, *press together*], crowded, dense, in close array.
- cōnfestim**, adv., at once, immediately.
- cōnficiō**, **cōnficere**, **cōnfēcī**, **cōnfectus** [**faciō**, *make*], accomplish, carry out, complete, finish; make out, write; dress (of leather); get together, raise (of troops); wear out, use up.
- cōnfidō**, **cōnfidere**, **cōnfsis** sum [**fidō**, *trust*], semi-dep., trust (fully), be confident, place confidence in, rely on.
- cōnfigō**, **cōnfigere**, **cōnfixī**, **cōnfixus** [**figō**, *fix*], fasten together.
- cōnfirmātiō**, **cōnfirmātiōnis** [**cōnfirmō**], f., confirmation, affirmation.
- cōnfirmātus**, -a, -um [part. of **cōnfirmō**], encouraged, confident.
- cōnfirmō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**firmō**, *strengthen*], strengthen, establish, fix; reassure, encourage; corroborate; assert, declare; **sē cōnfirmāre**, resolve.
- cōnffictor**, -ārī, -ātus [freq. of **cōnffigō**], fight, be afflicted.
- cōnffigō**, **cōnffigere**, **cōnffixī**, **cōnffictus** [**ffigō**, *strike*], strike together, fight, engage in conflict.
- cōnfluēns**, **cōnfluentis** [part. of **cōnfluō**], m., junction of two rivers, confluence.
- cōnfluō**, **cōnfluere**, **cōnflūxī**, — [**fluō**, *flow*], flow together, flock.
- cōn fugiō**, **cōn fugere**, **cōn fugi**, **cōn fugitūrus** [**fugiō**, *flee*], flee for refuge.
- cōnfundō**, **cōnfundere**, **cōnfūdī**, **cōnfūsus** [**fundō**, *pour*], pour together, bring together (in confusion), unite.
- cōngerō**, **cōngerere**, **cōngessī**, **cōngestus** [**gerō**, *carry*], collect.
- cōngredior**, **cōngredi**, **cōngressus** [**gradior**, *step*], come together, meet, engage (in battle).
- cōngressus**, -ūs [cf. **cōngredior**], m., meeting; encounter.
- cōniciō**, **cōnicere**, **cōniēcī**, **cōnietus** [**con-** + **iaciō**, *throw*], throw together, hurl, cast; drive together, gather; in **fugam cōnicere**, put to flight.
- cōnietō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of **cōniciō**], infer, conjecture.
- cōnietūra**, -ae [**iactūra**, *a throwing*], f., (a throwing together, cf. "I infer by putting this and that together"), conjecture.
- cōniūctim** [cf. **cōniūctus**, part. of **cōniungō**], adv., jointly, together.
- cōniungō**, **cōniungere**, **cōniūxī**, **cōniūctus** [**iungō**, *join*], join together, join, unite; **sē cōniungere**, unite; perf. part. with a dat., close to, united to, reaching to.
- cōniūrātiō**, **cōniūrātiōnis** [**cōniūrō**], f., swearing together, conspiracy.
- cōniūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**iūrō**, *swear*], take oath together, form a conspiracy; inter **sē cōniūrāre**, give oath to each other.
- cōnlātus**, part. of **cōnferō**.
- cōnlaudō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**laudō**, *praise*], praise highly.
- cōnligō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ligō**, *bind*], fasten together.
- cōnlocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**locō**, *place*], place, set, station; arrange, order; store; with or without **nūptum**, give in marriage.
- cōnloquium**, **cōnloqui** [cf. **cōnloquor**], n., interview, conference, conversation.
- cōnloquor**, **cōnloquī**, **cōnlocūtus** [**loquor**, *speak*], hold an interview, converse.
- cōnor**, -ārī, -ātus, try, attempt, en-

- deavor*; *idem cōnārī*, *make the same attempt*.
- conquiescō**, *conquiescere*, *conquiescē*, *conquiescētūrus* [*quiescō*, *rest*], *rest, take a nap*.
- conquirō**, *conquirere*, *conquisivī*, *conquisitus* [*quaerō*, *look for*], *search for, hunt up, seek*.
- cōnsanguineus**, -a, -um [*sanguis*, *blood*], *of the same blood*; as *subst.*, *kinsman, relative*.
- cōnscendō**, *cōnscendere*, *cōnscendī*, *cōnscēnsus* [*scandō*, *climb*], *climb upon*; with or without *nāvēs*, *go on board, embark*.
- cōnscientia**, -ae [*cōnsciēns*, *part. of cōnsciō*, *be conscious*], *f.*, *consciousness*; *conscience*.
- cōnsciscō**, *cōnsciscere*, *cōnscivī*, *cōnscitus* [*sciscō*, *decree*], *decree*; *sibi mortem cōnsciscere*, *make way with himself*.
- cōnscius**, -a, -um [*cf. sciō*, *know*], *conscious (with sibi, to himself)*, *aware*.
- cōnscribō**, *cōnscribere*, *cōnscripsī*, *cōnscriptus* [*scribō*, *write*], *(write together in a list)*, *enroll, enlist, levy*.
- cōnsecrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*sacrō*, *set aside as sacred*], *dedicate, consecrate*.
- cōnsector**, -ārī, -ātus [*freq. of cōsequor*], *follow up, overtake*.
- cōnsēnsiō**, *cōnsēnsiōnis* [*cf. cōnsentiō*, *agree*], *f.*, *agreement, unanimity*.
- cōnsēnsus**, -ūs [*cf. cōnsentiō*, *agree*], *m.*, *agreement, consent*.
- cōnsentāneus**, -a, -um [*cf. cōnsentiō*, *agree*], *agreeing, suited*.
- cōnsequor**, *cōnsequi*, *cōnsecūtus* [*sequor*, *follow*], *follow up (along with)*, *overtake*; *follow, ensue*; *obtain, gain, succeed in*.
- cōnservō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*servō*, *save*], *save, preserve, keep, spare*; *observe*.
- cōnsiderātō** [*cōnsiderātus, deliberate*], *adv.*, *deliberately*.
- Cōnsidius**, *Cōnsidī*, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Publius Considius*, a veteran officer of Caesar in Gaul. (2) *Gaius Considius Longus*, *propraetor* of Africa in 50 B.C., a follower of Pompey in the Civil War.
- cōnsidō**, *cōnsidere*, *cōnsēdī*, *cōnsessūrus* [*sīdō*, *sit down*], *sit down*; *settle down, halt, encamp*; *hold sessions*.
- cōnsilium**, *cōnsili* [*cf. cōnsulō*], *n.*, *consultation, deliberation*; *plan, purpose*; *advice, prudence, discretion*; *council, of war, etc. (cf. concilium)*; *commūni cōnsiliō*, *with a common purpose, by common consent*.
- cōnsimilis**, *cōnsimile* [*similis, like*], *just like, very similar*.
- cōnsistō**, *cōnsistere*, *cōnsitī*, — [*sistō*, *place (one's self)*], *make a stand, take a position*; *settle*; *stop, halt, (of ships) anchor*; *stay*; *depend on, consist of*.
- cōnsobrīnus**, -ī [*cf. soror, sister*], *m.*, *cousin (son of a mother's sister)*.
- cōnsōlor**, -ārī, -ātus [*sōlor, comfort*], *comfort, console*.
- cōnspectus**, -ūs [*cf. cōnspicīō*], *m.*, *sight*; *presence*.
- cōnspicīō**, *cōnspicere*, *cōnspēxī*, *cōnspectus* [*speciō, look*], *catch sight of, descry, see*.
- cōnspicor**, -ārī, -ātus [*cf. cōnspicīō*], *catch sight of, see*.
- cōnspirō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*spirō, breathe*], *league together, conspire*.
- cōnstanter** [*cōnstāns, firm*], *adv.*, *firmly, resolutely*.
- cōnstantia**, -ae [*cōnstāns, firm*], *f.*, *firmness, constancy*.
- cōnsternō**, *cōnsternere*, *cōnstrāvi*, *cōn-*

- strātus** [sternō, *spread*], *spread over, cover*; **cōnstrātus**, of ships, *decked*. Ancient ships of war had only one deck, sometimes only quarter-decks at bow and stern; transports and merchantmen might have two or three decks.
- cōnstiti**, perf. of **cōnsistō**.
- cōnstituō**, cōstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus [statuō, *set up*], *set up, establish, station, settle, draw up, moor ships; determine on, appoint, fix; determine, decide*.
- cōnstō**, cōnstāre, cōnstiti, cōnstātūrus [stō, *stand*], *stand firm; remain (unchanged); with in and the abl., depend on; usually with ex, consist of; often impers., be agreed, be evident, be clear*.
- cōnstrātus**, part. of **cōnsternō**.
- cōnsuēscō**, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus [suēscō, *get used*], *become accustomed; perf. tenses, be accustomed*.
- cōnsuētūdō**, cōnsuētūdinis [for cōnsuētītūdō, from cōnsuētus, part. of cōnsuēscō], *f., custom, habit, way, way of living; intimacy; cōnsuētūdine suā, in accordance with his (their) custom; est Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, it is a Gallic custom*.
- cōnsul**, cōnsulis, *m., consul*, one of the two chief magistrates at Rome, elected annually.
- cōnsulāris**, cōnsulāris [cōnsul], *m., man of consular rank, ex-consul*.
- cōnsulātus**, -ūs [cf. cōnsul], *m., consulship*.
- cōnsulō**, cōnsulere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus, *consult, take counsel; with dat. of interest, look out for, take thought for*.
- cōnsultō**, -āre, āvī, -ātus [freq. of cōnsulō], *consult, deliberate*.
- cōnsultō** [impers. abl. abs. of part. of cōnsulō], *adv., designedly, on purpose*.
- cōnsultum**, -ī [part. of cōnsulō], *n., decree*.
- cōnsūmō**, cōnsumere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūptus [sūmō, *take*], *use up, destroy, consume, spend*.
- cōnsurgō**, cōnsurgere, cōnsurrēxī, cōnsurrēctus [surgō, *rise*], *rise together, rise*.
- contāgiō**, contāgiōnis [cf. tangō, *touch*], *f., contact*.
- contegō**, contegere, contēxī, contēctus [tegō, *cover*], *cover over*.
- contemptiō**, contemptiōnis [cf. contemnō, *disregard*], *f., disdain, contempt; hostibus in contemptiōnem venīre, incur the enemy's disdain*.
- contendō**, contendere, contendī, contentus [tendō, *stretch*], *strive for, strive; struggle, contend; entreat; hasten; vī contendere, use force; dē locō contendere, strive for precedence; ab utrisque contenditur, both sides fight*.
- contentiō**, contentiōnis [cf. contendō], *f., struggle, contest, dispute*.
- contentus**, -a, -um [part. of contineō], *contented, satisfied*.
- contexō**, contexere, contexuī, contextus [texō, *weave*], *weave together, join together; contexta vīminibus membra, limbs formed of interwoven twigs*.
- continēns**, continētis [part. of contineō], *adj., continuous, uninterrupted, successive; f. as subst. (sc. terra), continent, mainland*.
- continenter** [continēns], *adv., continuously, incessantly, continually*.
- continentia**, -ae [continēns, part. of contineō], *f., self-restraint; self-control*.

**contineō**, *continēre*, *continui*, *contentus* [*teneō*, *hold*], *hold together, keep; keep back or within bounds, restrain, hold; bound, inclose, shut in; sē continēre, keep himself, remain.*

**contingō**, *contingere*, *contigi*, *contāctus* [*tangō*, *touch*], *touch, reach, adjoin.*

**continuātiō**, *continuātiōnis* [*continuo*], *f., continuance.*

**continuo**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*continuus*], *make continuous, continue.*

**continuo** [*abl. of continuus*], *adv., immediately, straightway.*

**continuus**, -a, -um [*cf. contineō*], *continuous, in succession.*

**cōntiō**, *cōntiōnis* [*co- (= com-) + ventiō, coming*], *f., meeting, assembly; address (to an assembly).*

**cōntiōnor**, -ārī, -ātus [*cōntiō*], *make an address.*

**contrā**, (1) *adv., opposite, in opposition; contrā atque, contrary to what; (2) prep. with acc., opposite, facing; against, contrary to.*

**contrahō**, *contrahere*, *contrāxi*, *contractus* [*trahō, draw*], *draw together, bring together.*

**contrārius**, -a, -um [*contrā*], *opposite, over against.*

**contrōversia**, -ae [*contrōversus* (*contrā + part. of vertō, turn*)], *disputed, f., dispute, quarrel.*

**contubernium**, *contuberni* [*con, cf. taberna, hut*], *n., tent, commonly occupied by ten soldiers together.*

**contumēlia**, -ae, *f., affront, insult; violence; cum contumēliā, insultingly; ad gravissimās verbōrum contumēliās, to the most offensive and insulting remarks.*

**contundō**, *contundere*, *contudi*, *contūsus* [*tundō, pound*], *bruise, grind.*

**convalescō**, *convalescere*, *convalui*, —

[*valēscō, grow strong; cf. valeō, recover.*

**convallis**, *convallis* [*vallēs, valley*], *f., valley, ravine.*

**convehō**, *convehere*, *convēxi*, *convectus* [*vehō, carry*], *carry together, collect.*

**conveniō**, *convenire*, *convēni*, *conventus* [*veniō, come*], *come together, assemble; come (of several); meet; agree with; be agreed upon; be fitting, be called for.*

**conventus**, -ūs [*cf. conveniō*], *m., gathering, assembly; esp. a gathering of persons in a province to attend a court of justice presided over by the governor, court; also an association of Roman citizens living in a province or provincial town, association, corporation.*

**convertō**, *convertere*, *converti*, *conversus* [*vertō, turn*], *turn about, turn; direct; sē convertere, turn; itinere conversō, turned back; convertere signa, change front, face about.*

**convocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*vocō, call*], *call together, assemble.*

**coōrior**, *coōriri*, *coōrtus* [*co- (= com-) + orior, rise*], *rise, break out (of war).*

**cōpia**, -ae [*co- (= com-), cf. ops, aid*], *f., abundance, supply, number; pl., resources, supplies, stores; troops, forces, force.*

**cōpiōsus**, -a, -um [*cōpia*], *abundantly supplied, wealthy.*

**Cōpōnius**, *Cōpōni*, *m., a Roman gentile or clan name. Gaius Coponius, commander of a division of Pompey's fleet in the Civil War.*

**cōpula**, -ae, *f., grappling hook.*

**cor**, *cordis*, *n., heart; cordi esse, be dear.*

**cōram** [co-(= com-), cf. *ōs*, *face*], *adv.*, *face to face*; **cōram perspicit**, *he sees with his own eyes*.

**Corcȳra**, -ae, *f.*, an island, with capital of the same name, off Epirus. It had long been an important naval power. The modern name is *Corfu*.

**Corfiniēnsis**, -e, *of Corfinium*.

**Corfinium**, **Corfinī**, *n.*, a strongly situated town in the Apennines, east of Rome; see on 174, 4.

**Coriosolitēs**, -um, acc. -as, *m.*, pl., a coast tribe of northwestern Gaul.

**corium**, **cori** [cf. *cortex*], *n.*, *skin*, *hide*.

**Cornēlius**, **Cornēli**, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name; see **Balbus**.

**cornū**, -ūs, *n.*, *horn*; *wing* (of an army).

**corōna**, -ae, *f.*, *wreath*, *crown*; *encircling line*; **sub corōnā vēdere**, *sell into slavery*; see on 92, 5.

**corpus**, **corporis**, *n.*, *body*.

**corrogō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com- + *rogō*, *ask*], (*get together by asking*), *collect*.

**corrumpō**, **corrumpere**, **corrūpī**, **corruptus** [com- + *rumpō*, *break*], *ruin*, *weaken*.

**cortex**, **corticis** [cf. *corium*], *m.*, *bark*.

**cotidiānus**, -a, -um [cotīdiē], *daily*, *ordinary*.

**cotīdiē** [quot, *how many*, *diēs*, *day*], *adv.*, *daily*, *every day*, implying recurrence merely; cf. *in diēs*, *s.v. diēs*.

**Cotta**, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name. **Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta**, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul.

**Cotys**, **Cotyis**, *m.*, king of the Odrysae, a Thracian tribe.

**crassitūdō**, **crassitūdinis** [**crassus**, *thick*], *f.*, *thickness*.

**Crassus**, -i, *m.*, a Roman family name.

(1) **Marcus Licinius Crassus**, consul with Pompey, 70 and 55 B.C., member of the First Triumvirate with Caesar and Pompey. (2) **Publius Licinius Crassus**, son of (1), a skillful lieutenant of Caesar, 58-56 B.C. (3) **Otacilius Crassus**, one of Pompey's officers.

**Crāstinus**, -i, *m.*, a reënlisted veteran in Caesar's army.

**crātis**, **crātis**, *f.*, *wickerwork*, *hurdle*.

**crēber**, **crēbra**, **crēbrum**, *thick*, *thickly growing*, *close*; *numerous*, *frequent*, *repeated*.

**crēbrō** [abl. of **crēber**], *adv.*, *frequently*, *repeatedly*.

**crēditor**, **crēditōris** [**crēdō**], *m.*, *creditor*.

**crēdō**, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, **crēditus**, *believe*, *trust*, *suppose*; *loan*.

**cremō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *burn*.

**creō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *create*, *make*, *elect*.

**crēsco**, **crēscere**, **crēvi**, **crētus** [cf. **creō**], *grow*, *increase*, *gain power or influence*.

**Crēta**, -ae, *f.*, *Crete*, organized by Pompey as a Roman province in 67 B.C.

**Critognātus**, -i, *m.*, an Arvernian chief.

**cruciātus**, -ūs [**cruciō**, *torture*], *m.*, *torture*.

**crūdēlitās**, **crūdēlitātis** [**crūdēlis**, *cruel*], *f.*, *cruelly*.

**crūdēliter** [**crūdēlis**, *cruel*], *adv.*, *cruelly*.

**crūs**, **crūris**, *n.*, *leg*.

**cubile**, **cubilis** [cf. **cubō**, *lie*; see **prōcumbō**], *n.*, *bed*, *resting-place*.

**culmen**, **culminis**, *n.*, *height*, *top*, *summit*.

**culpa**, -ae, *f.*, *fault*, *blame*, *error*.

**cultūra**, -ae [cf. *colō*, *till*], *f.*, *tilling, cultivation*.  
**cultus**, -ūs [cf. *colō*, *cultivate*], *m.*, *cultivation, care*, especially of one's self; *way of living, civilization, degree of civilization*.  
**cum**, *conj.*, *when, whenever, while, since, although*; **cum . . . tum**, *not only . . . but furthermore, but also*; **cum primum**, *as soon as*.  
**cum**, *prep.* with *abl.*, *with*. With *pers.* and *rel. pronouns* **cum** is *enclitic*.  
**cumulus**, -ī, *m.*, *heap, pile*.  
**cunctatiō**, cunctatiōnis [cūctor], *f.*, *delay, hesitation*.  
**cūctor**, -ārī, -ātus, *delay, hesitate*.  
**cūctus**, -a, -um [co- (= com-) + iūctus, part of iungō, *join together*], *all together, the whole*; **cūcta administrāre**, *have general management*.  
**cuniculus**, -ī, *m.*, *rabbit; burrow; tunnel, mine* (in military sense, the only use in Caesar); see *Introd.* § 47.  
**cupidē** [cupidus], *adv.*, *eagerly, enthusiastically*.  
**cupiditās**, cupiditātis [cupidus], *f.*, *desire, eagerness*.  
**cupidus**, -a, -um [cf. *cupiō*], *eager for, desirous, fond*.  
**cupiō**, cupere, cupivī, cupītus, *desire earnestly, be eager for* (with *acc.*); *wish well to* (with *dat.*).  
**cūr**, *rel. and interrog. adv.*, *why*.  
**Curicta**, -ae, *f.*, an island in the upper Adriatic near the coast of Illyricum, where Caesar's lieutenant, Gaius Antonius, with fifteen cohorts, surrendered in 49 B.C. Now *Veglia*.  
**Curicum**, -ī, *n.*, a town on the island of Curicta.  
**Cūriō**, Cūriōnis, *m.*, a Roman family

name. *Gaius Scribonius Curio*, a lieutenant of Caesar in the Civil War. He lost his life in the ill-fated expedition to Africa, 49 B.C.; see also on 170, 1.  
**cūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cūra, *care*], *care for, attend to*; with *acc.* *gerundive*, *have a thing done*.  
**currus**, -ūs [cf. *currō*, *run*], *m.*, *chariot*.  
**cursus**, -ūs [cf. *currō*, *run*], *m.*, *running; speed; course*; **eōdem cursū**, *without stopping*; **cursū incitātō**, *quicken their speed*.  
**custōdia**, -ae [custōs], *f.*, *a watching, protection; guard, sentinel; prison*.  
**custōs**, custōdis, *m.*, *guard, watchman, spy*.  
**Cyclades**, -um [derived from the Greek word for *circle*; cf. *cycle, bicycle*], *f.*, *pl.*, the islands in the Aegean Sea which encircle Delos.  
**Cyprus**, -ī, *f.*, an island in the north-eastern corner of the Mediterranean, taken by Rome from Egypt, in 58 B.C., and governed as part of the province of Cilicia.  
**Cyrenae**, -ārum, *f.*, *pl.*, *Cyrene*, an ancient Greek city in northern Africa west of Alexandria, a seat of learning and culture, capital of the Roman province of Cyrenaica organized in 74 B.C.

**D**

**D.** = **Decimus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.  
**D** = **quingenti**, *five hundred*; **DC** = **sescenti**; **DCC** = **septingenti**; **DCCC** = **octingenti**; **DCCCC** = **nōngenti**.  
**Dāci**, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, the *Dacians*, a barbarous people occupying an ex-

- tensive territory north of the lower Danube, comprising modern Rumania and eastern Hungary.
- Damasippus**, -i, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Licinius Damasippus*, a Roman senator.
- damnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*damnum*, loss], (*inflict loss by fine*), *convict, condemn.*
- Dānuvius**, Dānuvī, *m.*, *the Danube.*
- Dardanī**, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, a tribe in southwestern Moesia, just north of Macedonia.
- dē**, *prep.* with *abl.*, *down from, from; out of, of; about, in regard to, concerning; for, on account of; of time, just after the beginning of, during.*
- dēbeō**, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitus [*dē + habēō*, have from a person], *owe; with infin., be bound, ought.*
- dēbitor**, dēbitōris [*dēbeō*], *m.*, *debtor.*
- dēcēdō**, dēcēdere, dēcēssi, dēcēssurus, [*cēdō*, go], *go away, move away; pass away, die.*
- decem** or **X**, *ten.*
- dēcernō**, dēcernere, dēcrēvi, dēcrētus [*cernō*, separate, distinguish], (*separate one opinion from others*), *decide, determine, make up one's mind, decree.*
- dēcertō**, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [*certō*, fight], *fight decisively, fight; sometimes with pugnā or proeliō, fight a decisive engagement.*
- dēcēssus**, -ūs [*cf. dēcēdō*], *m.*, *withdrawal; ebbing of the tide.*
- decimus**, -a, -um [*decem*], *tenth.*
- dēcipiō**, dēcipere, dēcēpi, dēceptus [*capiō*, take], *catch, deceive.*
- dēclivis**, dēclive [*clivus*, slope], *sloping down, descending; n. as subst., slope.*
- dēclivitās**, dēclivitātis [*dēclivis*], *f.*, *downward slope; ad dēclivitātem, downward.*
- dēcrētum**, -i [*part. of dēcernō*], *n.*, *decision, decree.*
- decumānus**, -a, -um [*decimus*], *of the tenth; decumāna porta, the rear gate of the Roman camp (see Introd. § 44), near which the tenth cohort of each legion was originally stationed.*
- decuriō**, decuriōnis [*cf. decem*], *m.*, *decurion*, an under officer of cavalry, in charge of about ten men.
- dēcurreō**, dēcurrere, dēcurre, dēcursurus [*currō*, run], *run down, rush down.*
- dēdecus**, dēdecoris [*decus*, grace], *n.*, *disgrace, dishonor.*
- dēditicius**, -a, -um [*dēditus*, *part. of dēdō*], *surrendered; m. pl. as subst., prisoners of war.*
- dēditio**, dēditionis [*dēdō*], *f.*, *surrender; eōs in dēditionem accipere or recipere, accept their surrender; in dēditionem venire, surrender.*
- dēdō**, dēdere, dēdidi, dēditus [*dē + dō*, put], *give up, surrender; devote.*
- dēdūcō**, dēdūcere, dēdūxi, dēductus [*dūcō*, lead], *lead down or away, withdraw, bring; bring home a bride, marry; of ships, launch.*
- dēfatigatiō**, dēfatigatiōnis [*dēfatigō*], *f.*, *exhaustion.*
- dēfatigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*fatigō*, tire], *tire out, exhaust.*
- dēfectiō**, dēfectiōnis [*cf. dēficiō*], *f.*, *a falling away, defection, revolt.*
- dēfendō**, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfensus, *ward off; defend, protect.*
- dēfensiō**, dēfensiōnis [*cf. dēfendō*], *f.*, *defense.*
- dēfēnsor**, dēfēnsōris [*cf. dēfendō*], *m.*,

- defender, protector; sometimes used of things, as of piles protecting a bridge.
- dēferō, dēferre, dētuli, dēlātus [ferō, bear], carry down, bring down or away, bring; report, lay before; dēlātus aestū, drifting.
- dēfessus, part. of dēfetiscor.
- dēfetiscor, dēfetisci, dēfessus [fatiscor, grow weak], become exhausted; perf. part., exhausted, worn out.
- dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī, dēfectus [faciō, do], fail, be lacking, be lost; abandon, fall away, desert, revolt; animō dēficere, lose courage.
- dēfigō, dēfigere, dēfixi, dēfixus [figō, fix], fix, fasten, set firmly, drive down.
- dēfiniō, dēfinire, dēfinivī, dēfinitus [finiō, bound], set bounds to, fix, appoint.
- dēfōrmis, dēfōrme [fōrma, shape], misshapen, deformed, ugly.
- dēfugiō, dēfugere, dēfūgi, dēfugitūrus [fugiō, flee], flee from, avoid.
- dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiectus [iaciō, throw], throw down, overthrow, dismount; drive down, carry down, dislodge; disappoint.
- dēiectus, -ūs [cf. dēiciō], m., descent, slope.
- dēinceps [cf. deinde and capiō, take; see princeps], adv., (taking next rank), in succession, without interruption.
- deinde [dē inde, from thence], adv., then, next, afterwards.
- Dēiotarus, -ī, m., a tetrarch of the Gauls in Galatia, an ally of Rome against Mithridates, rewarded with nominal independence and an addition of territory.
- dēlātus, part. of dēferō.
- dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, please; maximō dēlectārī with abl., take the greatest pleasure in.
- dēlectus, part. of dēligō.
- dēlēō, dēlere, dēlēvi, dēlētus, wipe out, destroy.
- dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [liberō, probably from libra, scales], weigh well, consider, deliberate.
- dēlibrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. liber, bark], strip a tree of bark.
- dēligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ligō, bind], bind down, make fast, tie.
- dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgi, dēlectus [legō, choose], choose, pick out, select; perf. part., picked, select.
- dēlitescō, dēlitescere, dēlitui, — [latescō, inch. of lateō, lie hidden], go into hiding, hide away.
- dēmentia, -ae [dēmēns, bereft of mind], f., madness, folly.
- dēmetō, dēmetere, dēmēsuī, dēmesus [metō, reap], reap, cut down.
- dēmigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [migrō, move], move away, depart, emigrate.
- dēminuō, dēminuere, dēminuī, dēminūtus [minuō, lessen, cf. minus], lessen, diminish, impair.
- dēminutiō, dēminutiōnis [dēminuō], f., lessening; capitis dēminutiō, loss of civil rights, such as voting and holding office, and, in its severest form, personal freedom.
- dēmīssus, -a, -um [part. of dēmīttō], low.
- dēmīttō, dēmītere, dēmīsī, dēmīssus [mittō, send], send or drive down, let down; sē dēmītere, descend.
- dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [mōnstrō, show], point out, show, mention, describe.
- dēmōror, -ārī, -ātus [moror, delay], delay, retard.
- dēmōveō, dēmōvēre, dēmōvi, dē-

- mōtus** [moveō, move], move away, drive away.
- dēmum**, adv., at length, at last.
- dēni**, -ae, -a [cf. decem, ten], distr. num., ten each, ten at a time; ten (acting as a group).
- dēniq̄ue**, adv., at last, finally.
- dēnsus**, -a, -um, thick, dense, close together.
- dēnūtiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nūtiō, report], announce, order.
- dēpellō**, dēpellere, dēpuli, dēpulsus [pellō, drive], drive off, dislodge; ward off; ab cōsiliis dēpulsus, forced to give up his plans.
- dēperdō**, dēperdere, dēperidi, dēperditus [perdō, ruin, lose], lose.
- dēpereō**, dēperire, dēperii, dēperitūrus [pereō, perish], be lost or destroyed.
- dēpōnō**, dēpōnere, dēposui, dēpositus [pōnō, put], put or lay down or aside, leave, deposit; give up.
- dēpopulor**, -āri, -ātus [populor, devastate], devastate, ravage, plunder; perf. part. as pass., plundered.
- dēportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [portō, carry], carry away, remove.
- dēposcō**, dēposcere, dēposcī, — [poscō, demand], demand.
- dēprecātor**, dēprecātoris [dēprecor], m., mediator, intercessor.
- dēprecor**, -āri, -ātus [precor, pray], pray to escape from, beg off, sue for mercy.
- dēprehendō**, dēprehendere, dēprehendi, dēprehēnsus [prehendō, seize], seize, catch, surprise.
- dēprimō**, dēprimere, dēpressi, dēpressus [primō, press], weigh down, sink.
- dērēctē** [dērēctus], adv., straight, directly.
- dērēctus**, -a, -um [part. of dērigō], straight, direct; perpendicular.
- dērigō**, dērigere, dērēxi, dērēctus [regō, keep straight], lay straight, direct, aim.
- dērīvō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. rīvus, brook], draw off, divert.
- dērogō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [rogō, ask], take away, withhold.
- dēscendō**, dēscendere, dēscendi, dēscēnsus [scandō, climb], climb down, descend, come down; have recourse to, resort to.
- dēsciscō**, dēsciscere, dēscivi, dēscītus [sciscō, approve], (withdraw approval), desert, be unfaithful; ā nobis dēsciscere, be unfaithful to us.
- dēsecō**, dēsecāre, dēsecui, dēsectus [secō, cut], cut down.
- dēserō**, dēserere, dēserui, dēsertus [serō, unite], (disunite); abandon, desert.
- dēsertor**, dēsertōris [dēserō], m., deserter.
- dēsiderō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wish for, desire, wait for, miss, lose; pass., be missing or lost.
- dēsidia**, -ae [dēses, idle, cf. dēsideo, sit idle], f., idleness.
- dēsignō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [signō, mark], mark out, point out, mean, indicate.
- dēsiliō**, dēsiliire, dēsilui, — [saliō, leap], leap or jump down, dismount.
- dēsino**, dēsinare, dēsii, dēsitus [sinō, give leave], leave off, cease.
- dēsistō**, dēsistere, dēstiti, dēstitūrus, [sistō, place (one's self)], stand off, cease, desist.
- dēspectus**, -ūs [cf. dēspiciō, look down], m., view down (from a height).
- dēsperātiō**, dēsperātiōnis [dēsperō], f., despairing, despair.
- dēsperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [spērō, hope], give up hope, despair of.

**dēspiciō**, dēspicere, dēspēxī, dēspectus [speciō, look], look down on, despise, scorn, express contempt for.

**dēstinō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, fasten, secure; appoint, detail.

**dēstituō**, dēstituere, dēstitui, dēstitūtus [statuō, set up], (set away from one's self), abandon, desert.

**dēstringō**, dēstringere, dēstrinxī, dēstrictus [stringō, strip], strip off; draw (of a sword, stripping off its scabbard).

**dēsūm**, dēesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus [sum, be], (be from), be lacking, fail; omnia dēerant, there was a lack of everything.

**dētendō**, dētendere, dētendī, dētēnsus [tendō, stretch], unstretch, strike (of tents).

**dēterreō**, dēterrere, dēterruī, dēterrītus [terreō, frighten], frighten off, hinder, prevent.

**dētineō**, dētinerē, dētinuī, dētētus [teneō, hold], hold off, detain, delay.

**dētrahō**, dētrahere, dētrāxī, dētractus [trahō, draw], draw away, seize; take away, detach, take off.

**dētrimentum**, -ī [cf. dēterō, rub away], n., (wear and tear), loss; defeat, reverse.

**dēturbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [turbō, to disorder], drive off or away (in confusion).

**deus**, -ī, nom. pl. dii, m., god.

**dēveniō**, dēvenire, dēveni, dēventūrus [veniō, come], come down, come.

**dēvēxus**, -a, -um [old part. of dēvehō, carry down], sloping; n. pl. as subst., hillsides.

**dēvincō**, dēvincere, dēvici, dēvictus [vincō, conquer], conquer completely, subdue.

**dēvoveō**, dēvovēre, dēvōvī, dēvōtus

[voveō, vow], pledge, devote; dēvōtus, as subst., devoted follower.

**dexter**, dextra, dextrum, right.

**dextra**, -ae [dexter, sc. manus, hand], f., right hand.

**Diablintēs**, -um, m., pl., a Celtic tribe in central Aremorica. The name survives in *Jablins*.

**Diāna**, -ae, f., the great goddess of the Ephesians (*Acts* 19, 27 f. and 34 f.). Her temple, of vast size and magnificence, was one of the seven wonders of the world. Her statue was of wood, and its great antiquity was attested by its rude workmanship, but it was gorgeously appareled and kept in a shrine of costly splendor. This goddess had nothing in common with the Roman Diana, who was a patroness of hunting.

**dicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. dicō], dedicate, devote, attach.

**dicō**, dicere, dixi, dictus, say, tell, speak; call, name, appoint, mention; take oath.

**dictātor**, dictātōris [dictō, dictate], m., dictator, a Roman magistrate; see on 187, 1.

**dictātūra**, -ae [dictō, dictate], f., dictatorship.

**dictiō**, dictiōnis [cf. dictus, part. of dicō], f., speaking, pleading.

**didūcō**, didūcere, didūxī, diductus [dis- + dūcō, lead], lead apart, divide.

**diēs**, diēi [cf. diū, for a long time], m., day; f., time, an appointed day; diem ex diē, day after day; multō diē, late in the day; his paucis diēbus, within a few days; in diēs, from day to day, implying progression, cf. cotidie; ad diem, on the appointed day.

**differō**, *differre*, *distulī*, *dīlātus* [*dis- + ferō*, carry], *carry apart, scatter; put off, postpone; differ.*  
**difficilis**, *difficile* [*dis- + facilis*, easy], *difficult, hard.*  
**difficultās**, *difficultātis* [*difficilis*], *f.*, *difficulty, embarrassment.*  
**diffidō**, *diffidere*, *diffisus sum* [*dis- + fidō*, trust], *semi-dep., distrust, despair of.*  
**diffuō**, *diffuere*, *diffūxī*, — [*dis- + fluō*, flow], *flow apart, divide.*  
**diffundō**, *diffundere*, *diffūdī*, *diffūsus* [*dis- + fundō*, scatter], *spread out.*  
**digitus**, -ī, *m.*, *finger; as a measure, finger, finger's breadth; digitus pollex, thumb.*  
**dignitās**, *dignitātis* [*dignus*, worthy], *f.*, *worth, merit, prestige, high position.*  
**dīi**, see *deus*.  
**dīiudicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*dis- + iudicō*, judge], *decide.*  
**dilēctus**, -ūs [*dis-*, cf. *legō*, choose], *m.*, *choosing, levy, enrollment.*  
**diligēns**, *diligentis* [part. of *diligō*], *adj.*, *careful, watchful.*  
**diligenter** [*diligēns*], *adv.*, *carefully, scrupulously, faithfully.*  
**diligentia**, -ae [*diligēns*], *f.*, *care, pains, diligence.*  
**diligō**, *diligere*, *dilēxī*, *dilēctus* [*dis- + legō*, choose], *(choose apart), love, esteem.*  
**dīmētiōr**, *dīmētirī*, *dīmēnsus* [*dis- + mētiōr*, measure], *measure out; mark out; proportion.*  
**dīmīcatīō**, *dīmīcatīōnis* [*dīmīcō*], *f.*, *fight, struggle.*  
**dīmīcō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [*dis- + micō*, shake], *(brandish weapons), fight; impers. pass., the battle is carried on.*  
**dīmidium**, *dīmidī* [*n.* of adj. *dīmidius*

[*dis- + medius*, apart in the middle], *half*], *n.*, *a half.*  
**dīmīttō**, *dīmittere*, *dīmīsī*, *dīmīssus* [*dis- + mittō*, send], *send away, dismiss, let go, discharge; lose; send out (in different directions), send to their posts; give up, abandon, throw away.*  
**diripiō**, *diripere*, *diripui*, *direptus* [*dis- + rapiō*, seize], *tear apart, plunder, pillage.*  
**dis-**, *di-*, *dif-*, *dir-*, used only in composition, *apart, in different directions; un-, not.*  
**dīs**, contr. from *dīis*, see *deus*.  
**Dīs**, *Ditis*, *m.*, *Dis*, more commonly called *Pluto*, the Roman god of the lower world and king of the dead.  
**discēdō**, *discēdere*, *discessī*, *discessurus* [*cēdō*, go], *disperse, scatter; go away, depart, withdraw; ab armis discēdere, lay down their arms; victōrēs discēdere, come off conquerors.*  
**disceptō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*captō*, freq. of *capiō*, take], *(take apart for examination), settle.*  
**discernō**, *discernere*, *discrēvi*, *discrētus* [*cernō*, separate], *distinguish, know apart.*  
**discessus**, -ūs [cf. *discēdō*], *m.*, *departure.*  
**disciplina**, -ae [*discipulus*, learner], *f.*, *instruction, discipline, system; in disciplinā, under instruction.*  
**disclūdō**, *disclūdere*, *disclūsi*, *disclūsus* [*claudō*, shut], *keep apart.*  
**discō**, *discere*, *didici*, —, *learn.*  
**discribō**, *describere*, *discripsi*, *discriptus* [*dis- + scribō*, write], *apportion, assign.*  
**discurrō**, *discurrere*, *discurri* or *discurri*, *discursurus* [*currō*, run], *run to and fro.*

- disiciō**, disicere, disicēi, disiectus [iaciō, throw], *hurl asunder, break up, disperse, scatter.*
- disipār**, disparis [pār, equal], *adj., unequal, ill-matched.*
- dispergō**, dispergere, dispersi, dispersus [dis- + spargō, scatter], *scatter.*
- dispertiō**, dispertire, dispertivi or dispertii, dispertitus [partiō, part], *distribute.*
- dispōnō**, dispōnere, disposui, dispositus [pōnō, place], *place here and there; station in several places; set in order, arrange.*
- disputō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [putō, think], *discuss, argue; multa disputāre, have many discussions.*
- dissēnsiō**, dissēnsiōnis [cf. dissentiō, disagree], *f., disagreement, dissension.*
- disserō**, disserere, —, — [serō, sow], *plant here and there.*
- dissimulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [simulō, pretend a thing is what it really is not], *pretend a thing is not what it really is, conceal.*
- dissipō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *disperse.*
- distendō**, distendere, distendi, distentus [tendō, stretch], *stretch apart, separate.*
- distineō**, distinēre, distinui, distentus [teneō, hold], *hold apart, separate, keep back, detain, divert.*
- distō**, distāre, —, — [dis- + stō, stand], *stand apart, be separated; be distant; quantum iūctūra distābat, just filling the space between.*
- distrāhō**, distrahere, distrāxi, distractus [trahō, draw], *draw apart, break.*
- distribuō**, distribuere, distribuī, distribūtus [tribuō, assign], *assign (in parts), distribute, divide.*
- ditissimus**, -a, -um [sup. of dives, rich], *richest.*
- diū** [cf. diēs, day], *adv., long, for a long time; comp. diūtius, longer, too long, very long; sup. diūtissimē, longest; quam diū, as long as; quam diūtissimē, as long as possible.*
- diurnus**, -a, -um [cf. diēs, day], *by day.*
- diūturnitās**, diūturnitātis [diūturnus], *f., length (of time), long continuance.*
- diūturnus**, -a, -um [diū], *long (of time), long continued.*
- diversus**, -a, -um [part. of divertō, separate], *separate, apart, different; facing in the opposite direction, opposite.*
- Diviciācus**, -i, *m., a Haeduan nobleman, leader of the pro-Roman faction among the Haedui; loyal to Caesar, by whom he was highly favored.*
- Divicō**, Divicōnis, *m., a chief of the Helvetii.*
- dividō**, dividere, divisi, divīsus, *divide, part, separate.*
- divinus**, -a, -um [divus, god], *of a god, divine; rēs divīnae, religious matters, worship.*
- dō**, dare, dedi, datus, *give; appoint; sē ventō dare, run before the wind; in fugam dare, put to flight.*
- doceō**, docēre, docui, doctus, *teach, show, tell of.*
- documentum**, -i [cf. doceō], *n., example, warning, proof.*
- doleō**, dolēre, dolui, dolitūrus, *suffer, be grieved.*
- dolor**, dolōris [cf. doleō], *m., pain; grief; vexation, indignation.*
- dolus**, -i, *m., trickery, cunning.*
- domesticus**, -a, -um [domus], *of the home, native, civil (of war); his (their) own.*

**dominus**, -i [cf. *domō*, *tame*], *m.*, *master*.

**Domitius**, Domiti, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul in 54 B.C., an officer of Pompey in the Civil War, one of Caesar's bitterest opponents. He was killed at Pharsalus, 48 B.C. (2) *Gnaeus Domitius*, a cavalry commander in Curio's army. (3) *Gnaeus Domitius Calvinus*, one of Caesar's most trusted officers in the Civil War.

**Domnīlāus**, -i, *m.*, a tetrarch of Galatia, who led a contingent of cavalry to Pompey's support in the Civil War.

**domus**, -ūs, *f.*, *house, home*; *domi*, loc., *at home*; *domō*, abl., *from home*; *domum*, end of motion, *home*.

**dōnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dōnum], *reward, present (with)*.

**dōnum**, -i [cf. *dō*], *n.*, *gift*.

**dorsum**, -i, *n.*, *back*; of a mountain ridge, *top*.

**dōs**, dōtis [cf. *dō*], *f.*, *dowry*.

**druidēs**, druidum, *m.*, pl., *the druids*, priests of the native religion in Gaul and Britain. They were also the supreme judges in all disputes, and failure to abide by their decisions was punished by a sort of excommunication. Admittance to their order was granted only after a long period of study. Their teachings were transmitted orally and in verse form.

**dubitātiō**, dubitātiōnis [dubitō], *f.*, *doubt, hesitation*.

**dubitō**, -āre, āvi, -ātus [cf. *dubius*], *doubt; hesitate* (so regularly with complementary infin.).

**dubius**, -a, -um, *doubtful, of doubtful*

*meaning; nōn est dubium quīn, there is no doubt that.*

**ducenti**, -ae, -a, or CC [duo + centum, *hundred*], *two hundred*.

**dūcō**, dūcere, dūxi, ductus [cf. *dux*], *lead, conduct; bring; draw; dig a trench; drag out, prolong, put off; calculate, consider, regard, think; in mātīmōnium dūcere, marry (of the man), cf. nūbō.*

**dum**, conj., *while, so long as; until*.

**Dumnorix**, Dumnorigis, *m.*, a Haeduan nobleman, brother of Diviciacus; a leader of the anti-Roman faction among the Gauls, he constantly endeavored to thwart Caesar's plans, until he was put to death in 54 B.C., just before Caesar sailed the second time to Britain.

**dumtaxat**, adv., *only*.

**duo**, -ae, -o, or II, *two*.

**duodecim**, or XII [duo + decem, *ten*], *twelve*.

**duodecimus**, -a, -um [duodecim], *twelfth*.

**duodēni**, -ac, -a [cf. duodecim], *distr. num., twelve each, twelve at a time; twelve (acting as a group)*.

**duodēviginti**, or XVIII [duo dē viginti, *two from twenty*], *eighteen*.

**duplex**, duplicis [duo, cf. plicō, *fold*], *adj., twofold, double*.

**duplicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [duplex], *double, increase*.

**dūrē** [dūrus], *adv., hardly, harshly*.

**dūritia**, -ae [dūrus], *f., hardness, hardship*.

**dūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dūrus], *harden, toughen*.

**dūrus**, -a, -um, *hard*.

**Dūrus**, i, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a tribune in Caesar's army.

**dux, ducis** [cf. *dūcō*], *m.*, leader, guide, officer.

**dynastēs, -ae** [Greek = mighty man], *m.*, *dynast*.

**Dyrrachinus, -a, -um**, of or near Dyrrachium; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, the people of Dyrrachium.

**Dyrrachium, Dyrrachī, n.**, famous in Greek history as Epidamnus. When in 229 B.C. it was allied with Rome, the name was changed to avoid the suggestion of *damnum*, loss. Pompey made his headquarters there in 49-48 B.C. See also on 190, 3. The name survives in the modern *Durazzo*.

## E

**ē, ex** [ē is used only before consonants, *ex* before either vowels or consonants], *prep.* with *abl.*, out of, out from (cf. *ā, ab*, away from), from, of; *in, on*; according to; of time, from, after; *unā ex parte*, on one side; *ē rē*, expedient.

**Eburōnēs, -um, m., pl.**, a tribe of eastern Belgium, clients of the Treveri.

**Eburovicēs, -um, m., pl.**, see Aulerci. **ēdictum, -ī** [part. of *ēdicō*, proclaim], *n.*, proclamation.

**ēdiscō, ēdiscere, ēdidici, —** [*discō*, learn], learn by heart.

**ēditus, -a, -um** [part. of *ēdō*], high, elevated.

**ēdō, ēdere, ēdidi, ēditus** [*dō, put*], (put out), publish; *ēdere in vulgus*, spread abroad.

**ēdoceō, ēdocere, ēdocui, ēdoctus** [*doceō, teach*], teach thoroughly, show clearly, instruct.

**ēdūcō, ēducere, ēdūxi, ēductus** [*dūcō, lead*], lead out or forth; draw a sword.

**effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*ex, fēmina, woman*], make womanish, weaken, enfeeble.

**efferrō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus** [*ex + ferō, carry*], carry out, take away; spread abroad, publish; lift up, raise; extol; elate, carry away, puff up.

**efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus** [*ex + faciō, make*], make out, make, produce, accomplish, bring about, complete.

**effugiō, effugere, effūgī, effugitūrus** [*ex + fugiō, flee*], escape.

**effundō, effundere, effūdī, effusus** [*ex + fundō, pour*], pour out; *sē in agrōs effundere*, pour forth, or spread, over the fields.

**egēns, egentis** [part. of *egeō*], *adj.*, needy, poor.

**egeō, egēre, egui, —**, lack, be without.

**egestās, egestātis** [cf. *egeō*], *f.*, privation, penury.

**ēgī, perf. of agō.**

**ego, mei, pers. pron., I; pl. nōs, we.**

**ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus** [*gradior, step*], go out, march out; with or without *nāvi* (*nāvibus*), land, disembark.

**ēgregiō** [*ēgregius*], *adv.*, uncommonly well, admirably.

**ēgregius, -a, -um** [*grex, herd*], uncommon, distinguished, remarkable.

**ēgressus, -ūs** [cf. *ēgredior*], *m.*, way out, landing.

**Egus, -ī, m.**, an Allobrogan, paymaster in Caesar's Gallic cavalry.

**ēiciō, ēicere, ēicī, ēiectus** [*iaciō, throw*], cast or drive out, cast up, run on shore; *sē ēicere*, rush out.

**ēlātē** [*ēlātus*, part. of *efferrō, elate*], *adv.*, with elation.

**ēlātus**, part. of *efferrō*.

**Elaver**, **Elaveris**, *n.*, the *Allier*, a tributary of the *Loire* (*Liger*).

**ēlēctus**, part. of **ēligō**.

**elephantus**, -ī, *m.*, *elephant*.

**Eleuteti**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a small tribe of southwestern Gaul, dependents of the *Arverni*.

**ēliciō**, **ēlicere**, **ēlicui**, — [**laciō**, *entice*], *entice* or *lure out*.

**ēlīdō**, **ēlīdere**, **ēlīsī**, **ēlīsus** [**laedō**, *injure*], *break to pieces*.

**ēligō**, **ēligere**, **ēlēgī**, **ēlēctus** [**legō**, *choose*], *pick out*, *select*.

**Ēlis**, **Ēlidis**, *f.*, capital of the country *Elis* in western *Peloponnesus*, near *Olympia*.

**ēloquor**, **ēloquī**, **ēlocutus** [**loquor**, *speak*], *speak out*, *call out*.

**Elusātēs**, -ium, *m.*, pl., a tribe of east central *Aquitania*.

**ēmineō**, **ēminere**, **ēminui**, —, *stand out*, *project*.

**ēmittō**, **ēmittere**, **ēmisī**, **ēmissus** [**mittō**, *send*], *send out* or *forth*; *hurl*; *let go*, *drop*.

**emō**, **emere**, **ēmī**, **emptus**, *buy* (orig. *take*; cf. Eng. *sell*, orig. *give*).

**ēnāscor**, **ēnāscī**, **ēnātus** [**nāscor**, *be born*], *grow out*.

**enim**, *conj.*, postpositive, *for*; **neque enim**, *for . . . not, and in fact . . . not*.

**ēnītor**, **ēnītī**, **ēnīsus** or **ēnīxus** [**nītor**, *struggle*], *struggle out*, *climb up*.

**ēnūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nūntiō**, *announce*], *speak out*, *reveal*, *report*.

**eō**, *ire*, *ii*, *itūrus*, *go*, *pass*, *march*, *advance*; **quō simul atque intrō est itum**, *as soon as they had gone in here*.

**eō** [old dat. of *is*, *that*; cf. **eōdem**], *adv.*, *thither*,<sup>1</sup> *there*, *to that place*.

**eō** [abl. of *is*, *that*], *adv.*, *on that account*, *therefore*; with comparatives, *the*, *all the*, *so much*; **eō magis**, *all the more*.

**eōdem** [old dat. of *īdem*, *the same*; cf. **eō**, *thither*], *adv.*, *to the same place*,<sup>1</sup> *to the same issue*.

**Ephesius**, -a, -um, *of or at Ephesus*, *Ephesian*.

**Ephesus**, -ī, *f.*, an old Greek city, large and wealthy, on the west coast of *Asia Minor*, famous for its worship of *Diana*. A Christian church was established there by *St. Paul*, who afterwards wrote to it one of his best epistles. This was one of the seven great churches of *Asia*, mentioned in *Revelation* I, II, and 2, I.

**ephippiātus**, -a, -um [**ephippium**], *supplied with a horse-cloth*.

**ephippium**, **ephippī**, *n.*, *horse-cloth*. The saddle, *sella equestris*, does not appear to have been used before the fourth century A.D.

**Ēpīrus** or **Ēpīros**, -ī, *f.*, the northwestern district of *Greece*, included in the province of *Macedonia* in 148 B.C.

**Eporēdorix**, -igis, *m.*, a *Haedian* noble, one of the *Gallic* commanders in the uprising of 52 B.C.

**epulum**, -ī, *n.*, pl. **epulae**, *f.*, *banquet*, *feast*.

**eques**, **equitis** [**equus**], *m.*, *horseman*, *cavalryman*; *knight* (member of the equestrian order, the moneyed class at *Rome*; applied also to the wealthy classes in *Gaul*); pl. collectively, *cavalry*.

**equester**, **equestris**, **equestre** [**eques**], *of cavalry*, *cavalry*-.

<sup>1</sup> For the dat. in this use, see H. 428, 1 (385, 4, 1); L. M. 540; A. 428, 4 (225, 6, 3); G. 358; B. 193, 1.

**equidem**, *adv.*, for my part.

**equitātus**, -ūs [equitō, ride], *m.*, cavalry.

**equus**, equi, *m.*, horse; **equō**, on horse-back.

**Eratosthenēs**, -is, *m.*, a famous Greek geographer, historian, grammarian, and astronomer. He died about 200 B.C. at Alexandria, where he was librarian of the most celebrated library of antiquity.

**ergō**, *adv.*, therefore, then.

**ēricius**, ērici [ēr, hedgehog], *m.*, beam bristling with spikes, used to blockade an entrance or approach.

**ērigō**, ērigere, ērēxi, ērēctus [regō, keep straight], set up straight, lift up; **sē ērigere**, stand up; perf. part. as *adj.*, high and straight, high.

**ēripīō**, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptus [rapiō, seize], wrest away, tear away, rescue; **sē ēripere**, escape from.

**error**, erroris [cf. errō, wander], *m.*, mistake.

**ērumpō**, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus [rumpō, burst], burst forth, break out, make a sally; transitive, pour out, vent.

**ēruptiō**, ēruptiōnis [cf. ērumpō], *f.*, sally, sortie.

**essedārius**, essedāri [essedum], *m.*, fighter from a war chariot.

**essedum**, -i, *n.*, two-wheeled war chariot, of the Britons.

**Esuvii**, -ōrum, *m., pl.*, a Celtic tribe in northwestern Gaul.

**et**, *conj.*, and, even, too; **et . . . et**, both . . . and, not only . . . but also.

**etēsiae**, -ārum, *f., pl.*, the etesian winds, blowing regularly from the north, during the summer, in the eastern Mediterranean.

**etiam** [et iam, and now], *conj.*, also, even, too.

**etsi** [et si, even if], *conj.*, even if, although.

**ēvādō**, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūrus [vādō, go], escape.

**ēvellō**, ēvellere, ēvelli, ēvulsus [vellō, pluck], pull out.

**ēveniō**, ēvenire, ēveni, ēventūrus [veniō, come], turn out, result.

**ēventus**, -ūs [cf. ēveniō], *m.*, outcome, issue, end.

**ēvocātus**, -ī [part. of ēvocō], *m.*, enlisted veteran, a soldier who had served his full time and received an honorable discharge, but had reentered service upon the invitation (hence the name) of a commander. He was exempt from menial duties, and received high wages and generous rewards.

**ēvocō**, -āre, āvi, ātus [vocō, call], call out, invite, summon.

**ēvolō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [volō, fly], fly out, rush forth.

**ex**, see ē.

**exagitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [agitō, freq. of agō, drive], pursue constantly, harass.

**exāminō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [exāmen, tongue of a balance], weigh; **ad certum pondus exāminātis**, of a definite weight (lit., weighed up to a definite weight).

**exanimō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [exanimus, out of breath, lifeless], put out of breath; kill; perf. part., breathless, exhausted; killed.

**exārēscō**, exārēscere, exārui, — [cf. āridus, dry], dry up.

**exaudiō**, exaudire, exaudivi, exauditus [audiō, hear], hear clearly.

**excēdō**, excēdere, excessi, excessūrus [cēdō, go], go out, withdraw, retire.

- excellēns**, excellentis [part. of **excellō**], *adj.*, eminent, superior, remarkable.
- excellō**, excellere, excellui, excelsus, *be eminent, excel.*
- excelsus**, -a, -um [part. of **excellō**], *high, elevated.*
- exceptō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of **excipio**], *catch up.*
- excidō**, excidere, excidi, excisus [caedō, cut], *cut out, cut away.*
- excipio**, excipere, excēpi, exceptus [capiō, take], *receive, take, catch; withstand, support; follow, succeed; vada excipere (of ships), stand the shallows.*
- excitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [excitus, part. of **exciteō**, call out], *call out, rouse, excite, spur on; raise, erect.*
- excludō**, excludere, exclūsi, exclūsus [claudō, shut], *shut out, cut off, prevent.*
- excruciō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cruciō, torture], *torture, torment.*
- excubiae**, -arum [cf. **excubō**], *f.*, pl., *standing guard; in excubiis, on guard.*
- excubitor**, excubitōris [cf. **excubō**], *m.*, *sentinel.*
- excubō**, excubāre, excubui, excubiturus [cubō, lie], *lie out, bivouac, stand guard, keep watch.*
- exculcō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [calcō, tread, from calx, heel], *tread down, stamp down.*
- excūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex, causa, reason; cf. accūsō], *(bring a reason for setting free), excuse, make excuses for (with acc.).*
- exemplum**, -i [ex, cf. emō, take], *n.*, *(sample), example, precedent.*
- exeō**, exire, exiī, exiturus [eō, go], *go out, emigrate; march off.*
- exerceō**, exercēre, exercui, exercitus [arceō, hold off], *keep at work; exercise, train, discipline.*
- exercitatio**, exercitatio[nis] [exercitō, freq. of **exerceō**], *f.*, *practice, training, exercise.*
- exercitatus**, -a, -um [part. of **exercitō**, freq. of **exerceō**], *practiced, trained.*
- exercitus**, -ūs [exerceō, train], *m.*, *(a training, a trained body), army.*
- exigō**, exigere, exēgi, exactus [agō, drive], *exact, collect, demand; (of time) pass, spend; pass., be past, be over.*
- exiguē** [exiguus], *adv.*, *scantily, barely.*
- exiguitās**, exiguitatis [exiguus], *f.*, *scantiness, smallness, lack, small number.*
- exiguus**, -a, -um, *scanty, small, short.*
- existimatio**, existimatio[nis] [existimō], *f.*, *judgment, estimate, opinion; reputation, credit.*
- existimō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [aestimō, estimate the value of], *estimate, think, believe; determine.*
- exitus**, -ūs [cf. **exeō**], *m.*, *a going out, departure, escape; end, conclusion; result, issue, outcome.*
- expediō**, expedire, expeditvi, expeditus [ex, pēs, foot], *(free the foot from), disentangle, free, arrange.*
- expeditio**, expeditio[nis] [expediō], *f.*, *expedition (in light marching order).*
- expeditus**, -a, -um [part. of **expediō**], *unobstructed, unencumbered, free, without baggage, light-armed; ready, easy.*
- expellō**, expellere, expulī, expulsus [pellō, drive away], *drive out, expel.*
- experior**, experiri, expertus, *try, test, learn by experience; attempt; rei eventum experiri, wait and see how things will turn out.*

**expleō**, **explēre**, **explēvi**, **explētus** [**pleō**, *fill*], *fill up*.

**explicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, and -uī, -itus [**plicō**, *fold*], *unfold, spread out, deploy, arrange*.

**explōrātor**, **explōrātōris** [**explōrō**], *m., a scout*.

**explōrātus**, -a, -um [part. of **explōrō**], *certain, undoubted*.

**explōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *search out, examine, investigate, reconnoitre*.

**expōnō**, **expōnere**, **expōnui**, **expōnitus** [**pōnō**, *place*], *set out, array; disembark, land; set forth (in words), state; his rēbus expositis, having made these statements*.

**exportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**portō**, *carry*], *carry away*.

**exposcō**, **exposcere**, **exposcui**, — [**poscō**, *demand*], *demand, ask eagerly*.

**expugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**pugnō** *fight*], *(take away by fighting), take by storm, capture (by assault), reduce*.

**exquirō**, **exquirere**, **exquisivi**, **exquisitus** [**quaerō**, *look for*], *ask for, seek out*.

**exsequor**, **exsequi**, **exsecutus** [**sequor**, *follow*], *follow out or up, enforce*.

**exserō**, **exserere**, **exserui**, **exsertus** [**serō**, *weave*], *thrust out, uncover*.

**existō**, **existere**, **existi**, — [**sistō**, *place (one's self)*], *arise, ensue; of horns, grow out*.

**expectātiō**, **expectātiōnis** [**expectō**], *f., expectation*.

**expectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**spectō**, *look at*], *look out for, expect, wait for, wait, wait to see*.

**exspoliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**spoliō**, *strip*], *strip off; deprive*.

**existi**, perf. of **existō**.

**exstō**, **exstāre**, —, **exstāturus** [**stō**, *stand*], *stand out from; be above*.

**exstruō**, **exstruere**, **exstruxi**, **exstructus** [**struō**, *arrange*], *heap up; construct*.

**extendō**, **extendere**, **extendi**, **extentus** or **extēsus** [**tendō**, *stretch*], *stretch out; sē extendere, exert himself*.

**exter** or **exterus**, **extera**, **exterior** [**ex**, *out of*], *foreign, outer*. Comp. **exterior**, *outer; exterior hostis, an enemy from without*. Sup. **extrēmum**, *outermost, extreme, farthest, last, end of; worst; ad extrēmum, at last; ab extrēmā parte, at the end; ad extrēmam orationem, towards the end of the speech*.

**exterreō**, **exterre**, **exterui**, **exteritus** [**terreō**, *frighten*], *frighten greatly, terrify*.

**extimēscō**, **extimēscere**, **extimui**, — [**timēscō**, *inch. of timeō, fear*], *fear greatly, dread*.

**extrā** [cf. **ex**, *out of*], (1) *adv., without; (2) prep. with acc., outside, out of, without; contrary to*.

**extrahō**, **extrahere**, **extraxi**, **extractus** [**trahō**, *draw*], *draw out, waste*.

**extrēmum**, see **exter**.

**extrūdō**, **extrudere**, **extrusi**, **extrusus** [**trūdō**, *thrust*], *thrust out, shut out*.

**exuō**, **exuere**, **exui**, **exutus**, *strip, deprive, despoil*.

**exūrō**, **exūrere**, **exussi**, **exustus** [**ūrō**, *burn*], *burn up*.

## F

**faber**, **fabri**, *m., mechanic, carpenter*.

**Fabius**, **Fabi**, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) **Lucius Fabius**, a centurion in Caesar's army in Gaul. (2) **Gaius Fabius**, one of Caesar's lieutenants. (3) **Fabius**, a Paelig-

nian centurion in Curio's army in Africa.

**facile** [n. of **facilis**], *adv.*, easily.

**facilis**, **facile** [cf. **facio**], *easy*.

**facinus**, **facinoris** [cf. **faciō**], *n.*, deed; esp. *misdeed, crime*.

**faciō**, **facere**, **fēci**, **factus**, *make, do, accomplish*; **proelium facere**, *fight a battle*; **praedam facere**, *get booty*.

For *pass.*, see **fiō**.

**factiō**, **factiōnis** [cf. **faciō**], *f.*, party, faction.

**factum**, -i [part. of **faciō**], *n.*, thing done, deed, act.

**facultās**, **facultātis** [cf. **facilis**], *f.*, ability, power; opportunity, means, chance; supply, store, goods.

**fāgus**, -i, *f.*, beech, the tree or the timber.

**fallō**, **fallere**, **fefelli**, **falsus**, *deceive, disappoint, escape the notice of*.

**falsus**, -a, -um [part. of **fallō**], *false, unfounded*.

**falx**, **falcis**, *f.*, a curved blade or hook; **mūrālis falx**, *wall-hook*, for pulling down city walls.

**fāma**, -ac, *f.*, report, good report.

**famēs**, **famis**, *f.*, hunger, starvation.

**familia**, -ae [cf. **famulus, servans**], *f.*, body of slaves in a household; household; **pater familiae**, *head of a family*.

**familiāris**, **familiāre** [**familia**], *of a household*; **rēs familiāris**, *private property, estate*; *m. as subst.*, friend, intimate.

**fānum**, -i, *n.*, temple.

**fās**, *n.*, indecl., *right* (in the sight of Heaven). Cf. **iūs**, which is *right* according to human law.

**fascis**, **fascis**, *m.*, bundle; pl., the rods, the fasces, a bundle of rods carried by a lictor before the highest Roman magistrates as a symbol of authority.

The number of lictors depended on the office of the magistrate; consuls had twelve. **Prōicere fascēs**, *to throw away the fasces*, i.e. to give up an office. Provincial governors, and other magistrates in time of war, had an ax bound up with the rods, symbolizing the power of life and death.

**fastigātē** [**fastigātus**, *sloping*], *adv.*, sloping, slanting.

**fastigium**, **fastigī**, *n.*, top; slope, descent; **altitudinis fastigium**, *height*.

**faucēs**, **faucium**, *f.*, pl., throat; narrow way, entrance.

**favēō**, **favēre**, **fāvī**, **fautūrus**, *favor, be favorable to*.

**fefelli**, *perf.* of **fallō**.

**fēlicitās**, **fēlicitātis** [**fēlix**, *lucky*], *f.*, luck, good fortune.

**fēliciter** [**fēlix**, *lucky*], *adv.*, luckily, happily, successfully.

**fēmina**, -ae, *f.*, woman, female.

**femur**, **femoris** and **feminis**, *n.*, thigh.

**fera**, -ae [**ferus**], *f.*, wild beast.

**ferē**, *adv.*, almost, about, for the most part, generally, usually; **hoc ferē differunt**, *they differ chiefly in this*.

**fēriae**, -ārum, *f.*, pl., holidays; **fēriae Latinae**, *the Latin festival*; see on 188, 6.

**ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, *bear, carry, bring*; *carry off, win*; *bear, endure, suffer*; *report, say*; with refl. or in *pass.*, *hurry, rush*; **graviter ferre**, *be annoyed or indignant at*; **condiciónem ferre**, *propose terms*; **ventus fert**, *the wind blows*; **cōnsuetūdō fert**, *it is usual*; **fert illōrum opiniō**, *they suppose*; **ut nātūra montis ferēbat**, *according to the form of the mountain*.

**ferreus**, -a, -um [ferrum], of iron, iron.

**ferrum**, -i, n., iron.

**fertilis**, fertile [ferō], bearing, productive, fertile.

**ferus**, -a, -um, wild, fierce.

**festūca**, -ae, f., rammer, pile-driver.

**fibula**, -ae [cf. figō, fix], f., fastener, clasp.

**fictus**, part. of fingō.

**fidēlis**, fidēle [fidēs], faithful, true.

**fidēs**, fidei, f., good faith, fidelity, loyalty; pledge, promise; confidence, trust; credit; fidem facere, give a promise; fidem sequi, seek the protection; in fidem recipere, receive under protection.

**fidūcia**, -ae [cf. fidēs], f., confidence.

**figūra**, -ae [cf. fingō], f., shape, form.

**filia**, -ae, f., daughter.

**filius**, fili, m., son.

**fingō**, fingere, finxi, fictus, mold, shape; invent; ficta respondēre, mold their answers.

**finiō**, finire, finivī, finitus [finis], bound, limit, measure, end, finish.

**finis**, finis [cf. findō, cui], m., boundary, limit, end; pl., borders, country, territory; finem facere, stop.

**finitimus**, -a, -um [finis], bordering on, neighboring; m. pl. as subst., neighbors; finitimum bellum, a war with neighbors.

**fiō**, fieri, factus, used as pass. of faciō, be made, be done, be given; become; be brought to pass, come about, result, happen, be.

**firmiter** [firmus], adv., firmly, steadily.

**firmitūdō**, firmitūdinis [firmus], f., strength, firmness.

**firmō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [firmus], strengthen, encourage.

**firmus**, -a, -um, strong, firm, stable.

**Flaccus**, -i, m., a Roman family name. See Valerius.

**flāgitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, ask earnestly, demand, dun.

**flamma**, -ae, f., flame, blazing fire.

**flectō**, flectere, flexi, flexus, bend, turn.

**Fleginās**, -ātis, m., a Roman family name. Gaius Fleginas, a Roman knight from Placentia, in Caesar's army in the Civil War.

**flēō**, flere, flēvi, flētus, weep, shed tears.

**flō**, flāre, flāvi, flātus, blow.

**flōrēns**, flōrentis [part. of flōrēō, bloom], adj., prosperous, flourishing.

**flōs**, flōris, m., flower.

**fluctus**, -ūs [cf. fluō], m., wave, billow.

**flūmen**, flūminis [cf. fluō], n., river, current.

**fluō**, fluere, flūxi, fluxurus, flow.

**fodiō**, fodere, fodi, fossus, dig.

**folium**, foli [cf. flōs], n., leaf.

**fōns**, fontis, m., spring, fountain.

**forāmen**, forāminis, n., opening, hole.

**fore** = futūrum esse, fut. infin. of sum.

**foris**, adv., out of doors; outside.

**fōrma**, -ae, f., shape, form.

**fors**, fortis [cf. ferō], f., chance.

**fortasse** [cf. forte], adv., perhaps.

**forte** [abl. of fors], adv., by chance, perchance.

**fortis**, forte, brave, strong.

**fortiter** [fortis], adv., bravely, gallantly.

**fortitūdō**, fortitūdinis [fortis], f., bravery.

**fortūna**, -ae [fors], f., fortune, chance, fate; good fortune; pl., fortunes, property.

**fossa**, -ae [part. of fodiō], f., ditch, trench.

**fovea**, -ae, f., pitfall.

**frangō**, frangere, frēgi, fractus, break, wreck.

**frāter**, frātris, *m.*, *brother*.

**frāternus**, -a, -um [frāter], *of or for a brother, brotherly*.

**fraudō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [fraus, *cheating*], *cheat, steal*.

**fremitus**, -ūs [fremō, *roar*], *m.*, *up-roar, din*.

**frequēns**, frequentis, *adj.*, *in great numbers; quam frequentissimī, in as great numbers as possible*.

**frequentia**, -ae [frequēns], *f.*, *crowd, throng*.

**frētus**, -a, -um, *relying on*.

**frigidus**, -a, -um [cf. frigus], *cold*.

**frigus**, frigoris, *n.*, *cold*; *pl.*, *cold weather, as consisting of cold spells*.

**frōns**, frondis, *f.*, *foliage*.

**frōns**, frontis, *f.*, *forehead; front*.

**fructus**, fructūs [cf. fruor], *m.*, (*enjoyment*), *fruit; income, profit; reward*.

**frūgēs**, frūgum [cf. fructus], *f.*, *pl.*, *fruits (of the soil rather than of trees), crops*.

**frūmentārius**, -a, -um [frūmentum], *of grain, productive of grain, grain-producing; rēs frūmentāria, grain supplies; nāvis frūmentāria, grain transport*.

**frūmentātiō**, frūmentātiōnis [frūmentor], *f.*, *foraging*.

**frūmentor**, -ārī, -ātus [frūmentum], *get grain or supplies, forage*.

**frūmentum**, -ī [cf. fruor], *n.*, *grain; pl.*, *crops, standing grain*.

**fruor**, fruī, fructus, *enjoy*.

**frūstrā**, *adv.*, *in vain, without effect, without reason*.

**Fūsius**, Fūsi, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See Calēnus.

**fuga**, -ae, *f.*, *flight*.

**fugiō**, fugere, fūgi, fugitūrus [cf. fuga], *flee, run away; fugientēs, as subst., fugitives*.

**fugitivus**, -a, -um [cf. fugiō], *fleeing; m. as subst., runaway slave, fugitive*.

**Fulvius**, Fulvi, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Fulvius Postumus*, one of Caesar's soldiers in the Civil War.

**fūmus**, -ī, *m.*, *smoke*.

**funda**, -ae [cf. fundō], *f.*, *sling*.

**funditor**, funditōris [cf. funda], *m.*, *slinger*.

**fundō**, fundere, fūdi, fūsus, *scatter, roul*.

**fūnebris**, fūnebre [cf. fūnus], *of a funeral; n. pl. as subst., funeral service*.

**fūnis**, fūnis, *m.*, *rope*.

**fūnus**, fūneris, *n.*, *funeral*.

**fūrtum**, -ī [cf. fūr, thief], *n.*, *theft*.

**futūrus**, with or without *esse*, *fut. infin. of sum*.

## G

**Gabalī**, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, a small tribe of southern Gaul, bordering on the province, dependents of the Arverni.

**Gabīnius**, Gabīnī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Aulus Gabinius*, consul 58 B.C. In 67 B.C. he proposed the Gabinian law, which gave Pompey command against the pirates. As consul he acquiesced in Cicero's banishment. In 55 B.C. he was sent by Pompey to restore Ptolemy Auletes to his throne.

**gaesum**, -ī, *n.*, *javelin*, of the Alpine Gauls.

**Galba**, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul; see also on 81, 2.

**galea**, -ae, *f.*, *helmet*, usually of leather strengthened by metal.

**Gallia**, -ae, *f.*, *Gaul*. (1) Commonly applies to *Gallia trānsalpīna* or

- ulterior**, comprising France, Belgium, the parts of Germany and of Holland west of the Rhine, and Switzerland. (2) Restricted to *Gallia Celtica* in 51, 19. (3) Restricted to the Roman province, *provincia ulterior* or simply *provincia*. (4) *Gallia cisalpina* or *citerior*, northern Italy between the Rubicon and the Alps.
- Gallicus**, -a, -um [*Gallus*], *Gallic*.
- gallina**, -ae [*gallus, cock*], *f., hen*.
- Gallogræcia**, -ae, *f.*, a name of Galatia; see on *Gallos*, 189, 14.
- Gallus**, -a, -um, *Gallic*; *m.* as *subst.*, a *Gaul*, the *Gauls*; also a Roman family name, see *Trebius* and *Tuticanus*.
- Garumna**, -ae, *f.*, the *Garonne*, a river of southwestern Gaul.
- Garumnī**, -ōrum, *m., pl.*, a tribe of southeastern Aquitania, on the upper Garonne (*Garumna*).
- Gatēs**, -ium, *m., pl.*, a tribe of northeastern Aquitania.
- gaudeō**, *gaudēre*, *gāvisus sum*, *semi-dep.*, *be pleased or delighted*.
- gāvisus**, part. of *gaudeō*.
- gemellus**, -a, -um, *twin*.
- Genava**, -ae, *f.*, *Geneva*, a town of the *Allobroges*.
- gēns**, *gentis* [*cf. genus*], *f.*, *clan, family; race, nation*.
- genus**, *generis* [*cf. gēns*], *n.*, *family, race, kind, sort; class, species; character, nature, method*.
- Genusus**, -ī, *m.*, a river in the western part of the province of Macedonia, emptying into the sea between *Dyrachium* and *Apollonia*.
- Gergovia**, -ae, *f.*, the principal city of the *Arverni*, where *Caesar's* army met its only repulse in Gaul when under his personal command.
- Germānia**, -ae, *f.*, *Germany*, including Denmark, most of Holland and of Germany, the northwest corner of Austria, and part of Russian Poland; bounded by the sea, the Rhine, the Danube, and the Vistula.
- Germānicus**, -a, -um [*Germānus*], *German, of or with the Germans*.
- Germānus**, -a, -um, *German*; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, the *Germans*.
- gerō**, *gerere*, *gessī*, *gestus*, *carry, bear; manage, do; pass., be done, go on; negōti bene gerendī, of successfully accomplishing their enterprise; bellum gerere, fight, carry on a campaign, wage war; rem gerere, fight; rēs gerēbatur, the action was taking place; rēs gesta, exploit*.
- gladius**, *gladi*, *m., sword*; see *Introd.* § 39.
- glāns**, *glandis*, *f.*, *acorn; bullet*.
- glōria**, -ae, *f.*, *glory, renown; vain-glory, pride*.
- glōrior**, -ārī, -ātus [*glōria*], *glory in, boast of*.
- Gomphēnsis**, -e, of *Gomphi*; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, the *people of Gomphi*.
- Gomphī**, -ōrum, *m., pl.*, a town of western Thessaly, near the borders of Epirus.
- Graecus**, -a, -um, *Greek*; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, the *Greeks*.
- Grāiocelī**, -ōrum, *m., pl.*, an Alpine tribe between the hither and the farther province of Gaul.
- grandis**, *grande*, *large, great*.
- Grānius**, *Grānī*, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Aulus Granius*, a Roman knight from *Puteoli*, in *Caesar's* army in the Civil War.
- grātia**, -ae [*grātus*], *f.*, *favor, influence, popularity; friendship; gratitude; grātiā referre, repay a*

*favor, make requital; grātiā habēre, be grateful; grātiās agere, thank.*  
**grātulātiō**, grātulātiōnis [grātulor, congratulate], *f.*, congratulation; *ſūt grātulātiō inter eōs, they congratulate each other.*  
**grātus**, -a, -um, *pleasing, acceptable.*  
**gravis**, grave, heavy, oppressive; *offensive; severe, serious, harsh; gravior aetās, more advanced age; gravis autumnus, the trying autumn.*  
**gravitās**, gravitātis [gravis], *f.*, weight; *importance.*  
**graviter** [gravis], *adv.*, heavily; *severely, bitterly; graviter ferre, be annoyed or indignant at.*  
**gubernātor**, gubernātoris [gubernō, steer], *m.*, helmsman, pilot.  
**gustō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *taste.*

## H

**habēō**, habēre, habuī, habitus, *have, possess, hold; make a speech; regard, consider; sē habēre, be; cōnsilium habēre, hold a consultation; ratiōnem habēre, keep an account, have regard for; have a way, propose; cōntiōnem habēre, make an address; comitia habēre, hold the elections; iter habēre, be on his way.*  
**Hadrūmētum**, *I, n.*, one of the oldest Phoenician settlements in Africa, on the coast south of Carthage.  
**Haeduus**, Haeduī, *m.*, a Haeduan; *pl.*, the Haedui or Haeduan, a powerful tribe of east central Gaul, allied to Rome since about 123 B.C.  
**hāmus**, -ī, *m.*, hook.  
**harpagō**, harpagōnis, *m.*, hook, grappling hook, with a long pole, used for tearing down walls.

**harundō**, harundinis, *f.*, reed.  
**hedera**, -ae, *f.*, ivy.  
**Helvētius**, -a, -um, *Helvetian, of the Helvetii; m. pl. as subst., the Helvetii or Helvetians, a Celtic nation whose territory nearly coincided with modern Switzerland.*  
**Hēraclia**, -ae, *f.*, an important city of central Macedonia, on the Via Egnatia.  
**herba**, -ae, *f.*, grass.  
**Hercynius**, -a, -um, *Hercynian, used only with silva. The Hercynian forest covered southern Germany; see on 143, 18.*  
**hērēditās**, hērēditātis [hērēs, heir], *f.*, inheritance.  
**Hibernia**, -ae, *f.*, Ireland.  
**hibernus**, -a, -um [hiems], *of winter; n. pl. as subst. (sc. castra), winter quarters, winter camp.*  
**hic**, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.*, referring to what is near in place, time, or thought (cf. ille), *this, this man; he, she, etc.; the following, as follows; hōc, n. abl., on this account; hic . . . ille, the latter (i.e. the nearer in the narrative) . . . the former, rarely the former (when this is nearer in place, time, or thought, though farther away in the narrative) . . . the latter.*  
**hic** [loc. of hic, this], *adv.*, *here, in this place (of what is near either in fact or in the narrative; cf. illic).*  
**hiemō**, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [hiems], *pass the winter, winter.*  
**hiems**, hiemis, *f.*, winter; *stormy weather.*  
**hinc** [old case form of hic, this], *adv.*, *hence, from here.*  
**hippotoxota**, -ae [Greek = horse-bowman], *m.*, mounted archer.  
**Hirrus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name.

*Gaius Lucilius Hirrus*, a follower of Pompey in the Civil War.

**Hispānia**, -ae, *f.*, *Spain*, including Portugal; organized as two provinces, Hither and Farther Spain, whence the pl. *Hispaniae*, the *Spains* (cf. "the Carolinas," of North and South Carolina).

**Hispanus**, -a, -um, *Spanish*.

**hodiē** [cf. *hic*, *this*; abl. of *diēs*, *day*], *adv.*, *to-day*.

**homō**, *hominis*, *m.*, *human being*, *man*, *fellow*; pl., *men*, *people*, *man-kind*, *population*.

**honestus**, -a, -um [*honor*], *honorable*.

**honor** or **honōs**, *honōris*, *m.*, *honor*, *distinction*.

**hōra**, -ae, *f.*, *hour*. The Romans divided the time between sunrise and sunset into twelve hours, varying in length from about forty-five minutes in December to about seventy-five minutes in June. *Hōra septima*, *between twelve and one o'clock*.

**hordeum**, -ī, *n.*, *barley*.

**horreum**, -ī, *n.*, *storehouse*, *granary*.

**horribilis**, *horribile* [cf. *horreō*, *shudder at*], *to be shuddered at*, *frightful*.

**hortātus**, -ūs [*hortor*], *m.*, *urging*.

**hortor**, -ārī, -ātus, *urge*, *exhort*, *encourage*, *instigate*.

**hospes**, *hospitis*, *m.*, *guest*; *friend*; *stranger*.

**hospitium**, *hospiti* [*hospes*], *n.*, *relation of guest and host*, *guest-friendship*, *friendship*; *lodging*, *inn*.

**hostis**, *hostis*, *m.* (*stranger*), *enemy*, *the enemy* (both sing. and pl.); used of a public enemy, while an *inimicus* is a personal enemy.

**hūc** [old case form of *hic*, *this*], *adv.*, *hither*, *here* (= *hither*), *to this place*; *to this*; *hūc accēdēbant*, *to these were added*.

**hūmānitās**, *hūmānitātis* [*hūmānus*], *f.*, *refinement*, *culture*.

**hūmānus**, -a, -um [cf. *homō*], *civilized*, *refined*.

**humilis**, *humile* [*humus*, *ground*], *low*; *lowly*, *humble*, *obscure*; **multō humiliōrēs redigere**, *reduce to much greater obscurity*.

**humilitās**, *humilitātis* [*humilis*], *f.*, *lowness*.

## I

**iaceō**, *iacēre*, *iacuī*, *iactūrus*, *lie*, *lie dead*; *iacentēs*, *the fallen*.

**iaciō**, *iacere*, *iēcī*, *iactus*, *throw*, *cast*.

**iactō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of *iaciō*], *throw*, *toss back and forth*; *discuss*, *throw out*, *utter*; *boast of*.

**iactūra**, -ae [cf. *iaciō*], *f.*, *throwing away*; *loss*, *sacrifice*, *cost*.

**iam**, *adv.*, *now*, *already*, *at length*; *even*, *in fact*; with a fut. idea, *soon*;

**nōn iam** or **iam nōn**, *no longer*. Cf. *nunc*.

**Iān.** = **Iānuārius**, -a, -um, *of January*.

**ibi**, *adv.*, *there*, *in that place*.

**ibidem** [*ibi*], *adv.*, *just there*, *in that very place*.

**ictus**, -ūs, *m.*, *blow*, *stroke*.

**idem**, *eadem*, *idem*, *dem.* *pron.*, *the same*, *the same thing*; *likewise*, *also*.

**identidem** [*idem*], *adv.*, *repeatedly*, *again and again*.

**ideō**, *adv.*, *therefore*.

**idōneus**, -a, -um, *suitable*, *fit*, *favorable*, *capable*.

**Idūs**, *Iduum*, *f.*, pl., *the Ides*, the 15th of March, May, July, October, the 13th of other months.

**ignis**, *ignis*, *m.*, *fire*.

**ignōminia**, -ae [*in-* neg., (*g*)*nōmen*, *name*], *f.*, *disgrace*.

**ignōrantia**, -ae [*ignōrāns*, *part. of ignōrō*], *f.*, *ignorance*.

**ignōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. **ignōscō**], *not know, be ignorant of; pass., be unknown.*

**ignōscō**, **ignōscere**, **ignōvī**, **ignōtūrus** [in- neg. + (g)nōscō, *learn*], (*not to learn of wrong-doing, wink at*), *pardon, overlook.*

**ignōtus**, -a, -um [in- neg. + (g)nōtus, *known*], *unknown, unfamiliar.*

**ille**, **illa**, **illud**, *dem. pron.*, referring to what is remote in place, time, or thought (cf. **hic**, *this*), *that, that man; he, she, etc.; the following.*

**illic** [loc. of **ille** + **cō**], *adv.*, *there, in that place* (of what is remote; cf. **hic**, *here*).

**illō** [old dat. of **ille**, cf. **eō**, *thither*], *adv.*, *to that place, to that end.*

**Illyricum**, -ī, a Roman province from 167 B.C., on the east shore of the Adriatic. It was a part of Caesar's province; see *Intro.* § 8.

**imbēcillitās**, **imbēcillitās** [**imbēcillus**, *weak*], *f., weakness.*

**imber**, **imbris**, *m.*, *rain.*

**immānis**, **immāne**, *immense, huge.*

**imminuō**, **imminuere**, **imminuī**, **imminūtus** [in + **minuō**, *lessen*], *lessen, impair.*

**immittō**, **immittere**, **immissi**, **immissus** [in + **mittō**, *send*], *send into or against; let down into or between; throw, throw against.*

**immolō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in, **mola**, *meal*], (*sprinkle meal on a sacrificial victim*), *sacrifice.*

**immortālis**, **immortāle** [in- neg. + **mortālis**, *mortal*], *immortal.*

**immūnis**, **immūne** [in- neg., cf. **mūnus**, *duty, service*], *free from obligations, free from tribute.*

**impedimentum**, -ī [**impediō**], *n.*, *hindrance; pl., baggage* (of a legion,

see *Intro.* § 42), *baggage train; rarely, baggage animals.*

**impediō**, **impedire**, **impedivī**, **impeditus** [in, **pēs**, *fool*], *entangle, hamper, obstruct; block, hinder, prevent; perf. part., obstructed, hampered, embarrassed, burdened with baggage* (cf. **impedimentum**); **impeditiōribus locis**, *over ground unusually obstructed.*

**impellō**, **impellere**, **impulī**, **impulsus** [in + **pellō**, *drive*], *drive on, incite, induce.*

**impendeō**, **impendēre**, —, —, [in + **pendeō**, *hang*], *hang over, overhang.*

**impēnsus**, -a, -um [part. of **impendō**, *expend*], *expensive, high.*

**imperātor**, **imperātōris** [**imperō**], *m.*, *commander-in-chief, general.*

**imperātōrius**, -a, -um [**imperātor**], *of a general, general's.*

**imperātum**, -ī [part. of **imperō**], *n.*, *command, order.*

**imperitus**, -a, -um [in- neg. + **peritus**, *experienced*], *inexperienced, unacquainted.*

**imperium**, **imperī** [cf. **imperō**], *n.*, *command, absolute control, supremacy, sovereignty, government.*

**imperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in, cf. **pariō**, *get*], *make requisition, require, see on 55, II; command, order, enjoin.*

**impetrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in + **patrō**, *effect*], *obtain* (by request or influence), *obtain one's request.*

**impetus**, -ūs [in, cf. **petō**, *aim at*], *m.*, *onset, attack, assault; violence.*

**impius**, -a, -um [in- neg. + **pious**, *dutiful*], *impious* (undutiful towards heaven).

**implicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, and -uī, -itus [in + **plicō**, *fold*], *intertwine; gra-*

**viōre morbo implicitus**, attacked by a severe sickness.  
**implōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in + plōrō, bewail], entreat (with tears), appeal to.  
**impōnō**, impōnere, imposuī, impositus [in + pōnō, place], place or put in or on; impose; put on board, embark.  
**importō**, -āre, -āvi, ātus [in + portō, carry], bring in, import.  
**imprimis** [in primis, among the first], adv., especially, particularly.  
**improbō**, -āre, -āvi, ātus [improbus], (think base, see probō), disapprove, reject.  
**improbus**, -a, -um [in- neg. + probus, good], base, shameless.  
**imprōvisus**, -a, -um [in- neg. + part. of prōvideō, foresee], unforeseen; n. abl., alone or with de, ex, unexpectedly.  
**imprūdēns**, imprūdētis [in- neg. + prūdēns (contr. from prōvidēns), foreseeing], adj., not expecting, off one's guard.  
**imprudentia**, -ae [imprūdēns], f., lack of foresight, lack of discretion, ignorance.  
**impūbēs**, impūberis [in- neg. + pūbēs, mature], adj., immature; unmarried, chaste; as subst., boy.  
**impugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in + pug- nō, fight], fight against, attack.  
**impulsus**, part. of impellō.  
**impūne** [n. of impūnis (in- neg., cf. poena, punishment) unpunished], adv., with impunity.  
**impūnitās**, impūnitātis [impūnis (in- neg., cf. poena, punishment), unpunished], f., impunity, freedom from punishment.  
**īmus**, see inferior.  
**in**, prep. (1) with acc., into, to,

among, towards, upon, against; according to, in; for, till; (2) with abl., in, among, on, over; in the case of; during, in the course of.  
**in-** neg., used only in composition, not, un-.  
**inānis**, ināne, empty.  
**incautē** [incautus, incautious], adv., incautiously, recklessly.  
**incēdō**, incēdere, incessī, incessūrus [cēdō, go], enter, fill; break out.  
**incendium**, incendi [cf. incendō], n., fire.  
**incendō**, incendere, incendi, incēnsus [cf. candeō, shine], set fire to, kindle, burn.  
**incertus**, -a, -um [in- neg. + certus, certain], uncertain, untrustworthy; incertis ordinibus, since the ranks were not formed.  
**incidō**, incidere, incidī, incāsūrus [cadō, fall], fall into or upon, occur; of war, fear, etc., break out.  
**incidō**, incidere, incidī, incīsus [caedō, cut], cut into.  
**incipiō**, incipere, incēpī, inceptus [capīō, take], take in hand, begin.  
**incitātiō**, incitātiōnis [incitō], f., excitement, enthusiasm.  
**incitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [citō, put in quick motion], excite, rouse, urge, drive on, spur on, instigate; sē incitāre, rush on, come in (of the tide); perf. part., stirred up, angered; on the gallop; cursū incitātō, quickening their speed.  
**inclūdō**, inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsus [claudō, shut], shut in, inclose.  
**incōgnitus**, -a, -um [in- neg. + part. of cōgnōscō, learn], unknown.  
**incolō**, incolere, incolui, — [colō, dwell], inhabit, dwell in, live.  
**incolumis**, incolume, unharmed, all safe and sound.

- incolumitās, incolumitātis** [incolu-  
mis], *f.*, safety.
- incommodum, -i** [incommodus], *n.*,  
disadvantage, misfortune, trouble,  
loss, disaster, harm; *quid incom-*  
*modi, what disadvantage, any*  
*harm.*
- incommodus, -a, -um** [in- neg. +  
commodus, convenient], *inconven-*  
*ient, unfavorable.*
- incrēbrēsco, incrēbrēscere, incrēbrui,**  
— [cf. *crēber, thick*], *increase,*  
*freshen.*
- incrēdibilis, incrēdibile** [in- neg. +  
crēdibilis, believable], *past belief,*  
*incredible, extraordinary.*
- incredipitō, -āre, —, —** [freq. of in-  
crepō, *chide*], *keep chiding or nag-*  
*ging, reproach.*
- incumbō, incumbere, incubui, incubi-**  
*turus* [cf. *cubō, lie*], *lean or press*  
*upon; in bellum incumbere, give*  
*one's self to war.*
- incursiō, incursiōnis** [cf. *incurrō, run*  
*upon*], *f.*, invasion, attack.
- incursus, -ūs** [cf. *incurrō, run upon*],  
*m.*, assault, onset.
- incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus** [in, *causa,*  
*reason*], (*bring a reason against,*  
*blame, complain of.*
- inde** [cf. *is, that, + dē, from*], *adv.*,  
*from that place, from there, thence;*  
*after that, then.*
- indiciū, indicī** [index, *discloser*], *n.*,  
*disclosure.*
- indīcō, indicere, indīxi, indictus** [dicō,  
*say*], *proclaim, appoint, convoke.*
- indigēō, indigēre, indigui, —, lack, be**  
*without.*
- indiligēns, indiligentis** [in- neg. +  
diligēns, *careful*], *adj.*, *careless,*  
*negligent.*
- indiligentia, -ae** [indiligēns], *f.*,  
*carelessness.*
- indūcō, inducere, indūxi, inductus**  
[ducō, *lead*], *lead in, lead on; in-*  
*fluence, impel.*
- induō, induere, indui, indūtus, put**  
*on; sē induere, impale themselves.*
- industria, -ae, f., diligence.**
- industriē** [industrius, *diligent*], *adv.*,  
*diligently.*
- indūtia, -ārum, f., pl., truce.**
- inēō, inire, inii, initus** [eō, *go*], *go into,*  
*enter upon, begin, form (plans);*  
*tertiā initā vigiliā, early in the*  
*third watch; initā hieme, in early*  
*winter; ratiōnem inire, make a*  
*calculation; numerus inibatur, the*  
*number was counted.*
- inermis, inerme** [in- neg., *arma,*  
*arms*], *unarmed.*
- iners, inertis** [in- neg., *ars, skill*],  
*adj.*, *unskillful, weak, unmanly.*
- infāmia, -ae** [infāmis, *disreputable,*  
from in- neg., *fāma, good report*],  
*f.*, *disrepute, disgrace; infāmiam*  
*habēre, bring disgrace.*
- infāns, infantis** [in- neg. + *pres.*  
*part. of for, speak*], *m. and f., in-*  
*fant, child.*
- infectus, -a, -um** [in- neg. + *part. of*  
*faciō, do*], *not done; rē infectā,*  
*without accomplishing his (their)*  
*purpose.*
- inferior, inferius** [cf. *infra*], *comp.*  
*adj.*, *lower, weaker, smaller; ab in-*  
*feriōre parte, down-stream. Sup.*  
*infimus or imus, lowest, bottom of,*  
*foot of; ab imō, ab infimō, from or*  
*at the foot.*
- inferō, inferre, intuli, inlātus** [ferō,  
*carry*], *carry or bring in or upon;*  
*import; inspire in; inficti on;*  
*put upon; bellum inferre with dat.,*  
*make war upon; signa inferre,*  
*advance, charge; conversa signa*  
*inferre, face about and charge.*

**infestus**, -a, -um, *unsafe; hostile, threatening; infestis signis, in battle array.*

**inficiō**, inficere, infēcī, infectus [faciō, do], *stain.*

**infidelitās**, infidelitātis [infidelis, *unfaithful*], *f., unfaithfulness, disloyalty.*

**infigō**, infigere, infixī, infixus [figō, *fix*], *fix in, fasten in.*

**infirmus**, see *inferior*.

**infinītus**, -a, -um [in- neg. + part. of finiō, *bound*], *boundless, unlimited, countless.*

**infirmitās**, infirmitātis [infirmus], *f., weakness; inconstancy.*

**infirmus**, -a, -um [in- neg. + firmus, *strong*], *weak, feeble; infirmiorēs animō, weakened in spirit.*

**inflātus** [inflātus, *puffed up*], *comp. adv., with more exaggeration; with considerable exaggeration.*

**inflectō**, inflectere, inflexī, inflexus [flectō, *bend*], *bend, bend over.*

**inflūō**, influere, inflūxī, — [fluō, *flow*], *flow into, flow.*

**infodiō**, infodere, infōdī, infossus [fodiō, *dig*], *dig in, bury.*

**infra** [cf. *inferior*], *adv., and prep. with acc., below, farther down.*

**infrequēns**, infrequentis [in- neg. + frequēns, *in great numbers*], *adj., in small numbers.*

**infringō**, infringere, infrēgī, infractus [frangō, *break*], *break, weaken.*

**ingēns**, ingentis, *adj., vast, huge, large.*

**ingrātus**, -a, -um [in- neg. + grātus, *grateful*], *ungrateful.*

**ingredior**, ingredi, ingressus [gradior, *sleep*], *enter, go into; enter upon, begin.*

**iniciō**, inicere, iniēcī, iniectus [iaciō, *throw*], *throw into or on, lay on; inspire.*

**inimicitia**, -ae [inimicus], *f., usually pl., enmity, hostility.*

**inimicus**, -a, -um [in- neg. + amicus, *friendly*], *unfriendly, hostile; m. as subst., enemy; used of a personal enemy, while hostis is a public enemy.*

**iniquitās**, iniquitātis [iniquus], *f., unevenness, diversity, inequality, unfavorableness.*

**iniquus**, -a, -um [in- neg. + aequus, *even*], *uneven, unfavorable, disadvantageous.*

**initium**, initī [cf. ineō, *go into*], *n., beginning, edge (of forests); pl., elements.*

**initus**, part. of ineō.

**iniungō**, iniungere, iniūnxī, iniunctus [iungō, *join*], *fasten upon.*

**iniūria**, -ae [in- neg., iūs, *right*], *f., wrong, injustice, outrage.*

**inissū**, abl. only [in- neg. + iussū, *by the orders*], *m., without the command or orders.*

**inlātus**, part. of inferō.

**inligō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ligō, *bind*], *bind on, bind.*

**inlūstris**, inlūstre [in, lūx, *light*], *distinguished, famous.*

**innāscor**, innāsci, innātus [nāscor, *be born*], *be born in; perf. part., in-born.*

**innitor**, innitī, innīsus and innīxus [nitor, *rely on*], *lean on, support one's self with.*

**innocēns**, innocentis [in- neg. + part. of noceō, *harm*], *adj., harmless, guiltless, innocent.*

**inopia**, -ae [inops, *needy*], *f., need, lack, want.*

**inopināns**, inopinantis [in- neg. + part. of opinor, *suppose*], *adj., unsuspecting, off one's guard, taken by surprise.*

- inquit**, defective *vb.*, he says; always after one or more words of a direct quotation, cf. "says he."
- inrumpō**, inrumpere, inrūpī, inrūptus [rumpō, burst], burst in, rush in or upon.
- inruptiō**, inruptiōnis [cf. inrumpō], *f.*, invasion, attack.
- insciēns**, inscientis [in- neg. + part. of sciō, know], unaware, without the knowledge of.
- inscientia**, -ae [insciēns], *f.*, ignorance, lack of acquaintance with, inexperience.
- inscius**, -a, -um [in- neg., cf. sciō, know], ignorant, taken unawares.
- insequor**, insequi, insecutus [sequor, follow], follow on or up, pursue.
- inserō**, inserere, inserui, insertus [serō, to string], insert.
- insidiae**, -arum [cf. insideō, sit in], *f.*, pl., ambush, ambuscade, trap, stratagem.
- insigne**, insignis [insignis], *n.*, mark, sign; ornament, decoration (for valor); distinguishing garb.
- insignis**, insigne [signum, mark], marked, notable.
- insinuō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [sinuō, wind], wind in; sē insinuāre, work their way in.
- insistō**, insistere, institi, — [sistō, place (one's self)], step on, stand on, stand; pursue, adopt.
- insolēns**, insolentis [in- neg. + part. of soleō, be accustomed], adj., unused to.
- insolenter** [insolēns, insolent], *adv.*, insolently, arrogantly.
- insolitus**, -a, -um [in- neg. + solitus, accustomed], unaccustomed, unused.
- instabilis**, instabile [in- neg. + stabilis, standing firm], unsteady.
- instar**, *n.*, indecl., likeness; with gen., like, as large as.
- instigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, goad on, urge.
- instituō**, instituere, institui, institutus [statuō, set up], set in order, draw up, form, make ready, furnish, adopt; build; set about, undertake, begin, institute, ordain; teach, train.
- institutum**, -i [part. of instituō], *n.*, usage, custom, institution, plan.
- instō**, instāre, institi, instāturus [stō, stand], be at hand; press on; insist.
- instruō**, instruere, instruxi, instructus [struō, arrange], draw up an army in battle array, form; build; provide, equip.
- insuēfactus**, -a, -um [cf. insuēscō, custom, part of faciō, make], accustomed, well-trained.
- insuētus**, -a, -um [cf. insuēscō, custom, part of faciō, make], accustomed; cf. consuēscō], unaccustomed, unused.
- insula**, -ae, *f.*, island.
- insuper** [super, above], *adv.*, on top, from above.
- integer**, integra, integrum [in- neg., cf. tangō, touch], untouched, unimpaired, intact, fresh, unwearied, unwounded.
- integō**, integere, intēxi, intectus [tegō, cover], cover over.
- intellegō**, intellegere, intellēxi, intellectus [inter + legō, select], (select or distinguish between), see plainly, understand, comprehend, know.
- intentus**, -a, -um [part. of intendō, stretch], intent, eager; with in or ad and acc., intent on, absorbed in.
- inter** [in], *prep.* with acc., between, among; in reciprocal idea with pers. pron., from, to, or with each other.
- intercēdō**, intercēdere, intercessi, in-

- tercessūrus [cēdō, go], *go between, be between, intervene*; *huic bella intercesserant, he had been engaged in wars*; *huic similtās cum Cūriōne intercēdebat, there was enmity between him and Curio*.
- intercipiō**, *intercipere, intercēpi, interceptus* [capiō, take], *cut off, intercept*.
- interclūdō**, *interclūdere, interclūsī, interclūsus* [claudō, shut], *shut off, cut off, close up, blockade*.
- interdicō**, *interdicere, interdixī, interdictus* [dicō, speak], (*interfere by speaking*), *forbid, prohibit, exclude*; *interdicere nē, forbid to, order not to*.
- interdiū** [inter, cf. diēs, day], *adv., by day*.
- interdum** [inter dum, *betweenwhiles*], *adv., for a time; sometimes*.
- interea** [inter ea, *between those things*], *in the meantime, meanwhile; presently*.
- intereō**, *interīre, interiī, interitūrus* [eō, go], *perish, die, be destroyed*.
- interficiō**, *interficere, interfēcī, interfectus* [faciō, do], *put out of the way, kill, slay*.
- intericiō**, *intericere, interiēcī, interiectus* [iaciō, throw], *throw between, put between, intersperse; pass., intervene*; *brevi spatiō interiectō, after a brief interval*; *portibus interiectis, harbors scattered (along the coast)*.
- interim** [cf. inter], *adv., in the meantime, meanwhile*.
- interior, interior** [cf. intrā], *comp. adj., inner, interior, inner part of*; *interiōrēs, the inland peoples; the besieged*.
- intermittō**, *intermittere, intermisī, intermissus* [mittō, send], *interrupt, cease, discontinue; let pass (of time); leave vacant*; *intermissō spatiō, at a distance*; *trīduō intermissō, after an interval of three days*; *ventō intermissō, the wind died out*; *intermissus collibus, free from hills*.
- interneciō**, *interneciōnis* [cf. necō, kill], *f., annihilation, utter destruction*.
- interpellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. pellō, strike], *interrupt, prevent*.
- interpōnō**, *interpōnere, interposuī, interpositus* [pōnō, put], *put between, interpose, allow to elapse; arouse suspicion*; *nūllā interpositā morā, without delay*.
- interpres**, *interpretis, m., interpreter*.
- interpretor**, -ārī, -ātus [interpres], *interpret, explain*.
- interrogō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [rogō, ask], *ask, question*.
- interrumpō**, *interrumpere, interrūpī, interruptus* [rumpō, burst], *burst into, interrupt*.
- intersum**, *interesse, interfui, interfutūrus* [sum, be], *be between; take part in (a battle, worship, etc.); be for the interest of*.
- intervallum**, -ī [vāllus, stake], (*space between two stakes*), *space, interval, distance apart, distance*.
- interventus**, -ūs [cf. interveniō, come between], *m., coming on, intervention*.
- intoleranter** [intolerāns, *impatient, from in- neg. + part. of tolerō, endure*], *adv., impatiently*; *intolerantius insequi, be in hot pursuit*.
- intrā** [cf. in], *prep. with acc., within, inside of*; *intrā annum vicēsimum, before the twentieth year*.
- intritus**, -a, -um [in- neg. + tritus,

- rubbed away], not worn, not exhausted.
- intrō** [cf. **in**], *adv.*, to the inside, in.
- intrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **intrō**, *adv.*], go into, enter, step in.
- intrōdūcō**, intrōdūcere, intrōdūxī, intrōductus [intrō, *adv.*, + dūcō, lead], lead in.
- introitus**, -ūs [cf. **introeō**, enter], *m.*, entrance.
- intrōrsus** [contr. from intrōvorsus, turned in; cf. **rūrsus**], *adv.*, inside, into the interior.
- intus** [cf. **in**], *adv.*, within.
- inūsītātus**, -a, -um [in-neg. + ūsītātus, usual], unusual, strange.
- inūtilis**, inūtile [in-neg. + ūtilis, useful], useless.
- invehō**, invehere, invēxī, invectus [vehō, carry], carry in; pass., ride in.
- inveniō**, invenire, invēnī, inventus [veniō, come], come upon, find (by chance, cf. **reperiō**); discover, learn.
- inventor**, inventōris [cf. **inveniō**], *m.*, discoverer, inventor.
- invidia**, -ae [invidus, envious], *f.*, envy, jealousy.
- inviolātus**, -a, -um [in-neg. + part. of violō, violate], inviolate; inviolable.
- invitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, invite.
- invītus**, a, -um, unwilling; sē invitō, against his will.
- Iovem**, acc. of Iuppiter.
- ipse**, -a, -um, intensive pers. pron., himself, he himself, he (emphatic), his own; herself, etc.; very, the very one.
- irācundia**, -ae [irācundus, irritable], *f.*, hasty temper, irritability, wrath.
- irātus**, -a, -um [part. of irāscor, be angry], angered, in anger.
- is**, ea, id, dem. pron., not emphasizing nearness like **hic**, nor remoteness like **ille**, that, this, the; he, she, it; followed by a result clause, such.
- ita** [cf. **is**], *adv.*, so, thus, in this way, as follows; nōn ita, not so very.
- Italia**, -ae, *f.*, Italy; see on 57, 26.
- Italicus**, -a, -um, Italian, from Italy.
- itaque** [ita + que, and], conj., and so, accordingly, consequently.
- item** [cf. **ita**], *adv.*, likewise, also, in like manner.
- iter**, itineris [cf. **itum**, part. of eō, go], *n.*, a going, marching; journey, march; course, road, route; magnis itineribus, by forced marches (see **Introd.** § 45); iter facere, to march; iter dare, grant a passage; in itinere, in itinere, on the march; ex itinere, right from the march.
- iterum**, *adv.*, again, a second time.
- Itius**, -a, -um, only with portus, the port from which Caesar sailed to Britain, either Wissant or, less probably, Boulogne. See on 112, 17.
- itum**, part. of eō, go.
- Iuba**, -ae, *m.*, king of Numidia, a supporter of the Pompeian party in the Civil War. See also on 172, 16.
- iubeō**, iubere, iussī, iussus, order, command.
- iūdex**, iūdicis [iūs, cf. **dicō**, speak], *m.*, (one who declares justice), juror.
- iūdicium**, iūdicī [iūdex], *n.*, judicial investigation, trial, court; judgment, decision, opinion.
- iūdicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [iūdex], judge, decide, give a verdict, vote; be of the opinion, think.
- iugum**, -ī [cf. **iungō**], *n.*, yoke; (of mountains) ridge.
- Iūlius**, Iūli, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See **Caesar**.
- iumentum**, -ī [for iugmentum, cf. **iugum** and **iungō**], *n.*, yoke-animal, beast of burden, pack-horse, horse.

**iunctūra**, -ae [iungō], *f.*, joining; quantum iunctūra distābat, just filling the space between.

**iungō**, iungere, iūxi, iunctus, join, unite.

**iūnior**, iūniōris [contr. comp. of iuvenis, young], *m.*, young man; see on 243, 16.

**Iuppiter**, Iovis, *m.*, Jupiter, god of the sky, the chief deity of the Romans, worshiped as the king of gods and men.

**Iūra**, ae, *m.*, the Jura, a mountain range separating the Helvetii from the Sequani.

**iūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [iūs], take oath, swear.

**iūs**, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, rights; iūs dicere, administer justice; iūre, according to justice, rightly.

**iūs iurandum**, iūris iurandī [iūs + gerundive of iūrō], *n.*, oath.

**iussū**, abl. only [cf. iubeō], *m.*, under the command, by the orders.

**iūstitia**, -ae [iūstus], *f.*, justice, uprightness.

**iūstus**, -a, -um [iūs], rightful, just; (of a reason) forcible; regular.

**iuventūs**, iuventūtis [iuvenis, young], *f.*, youth; young men.

**iuvō**, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtus, help, aid.

**iūxtā**, adv., near, near by.

## K

**Kal.** = **Kalendae**, -ārum, *f.*, Calends, the first day of the month, the name of the month being a limiting adj.; see on 55, 5.

## L

**L.** = **Lūcius**, Lūci, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

**L** = **quinquāgintā**, fifty; **LX** = **sexāgintā**; **LXX** = **septuāgintā**; **LXXX** = **octōgintā**.

**Labeātēs**, -ium, *m.*, pl., an Illyrian people just north of Lissus.

**Laberius**, Laberī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See **Dūrus**.

**Labiēnus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Titus Labienus*, Caesar's ablest lieutenant in the Gallic War. See also on 195, 20.

**labor**, labōris, *m.*, toil, effort, exertion, hardship.

**labōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [labor], toil, make effort; be in distress, be in danger.

**labrum**, -ī [cf. lambō, lick], *n.*, lip; brim, rim, edge.

**lac**, lactis, *n.*, milk.

**Lacedaemon**, -onis, *f.*, Sparta, capital of Laconia in Peloponnesus, once the most powerful city of Greece, but in Caesar's time of greatly diminished importance.

**laccasō**, laccessere, laccessivī, laccessitus, harass, annoy, assail, attack.

**lacrima**, -ae, *f.*, tear.

**lacus**, -ūs, *m.*, lake.

**laedō**, laedere, laesi, laesus, injure; break (a promise).

**Laelius**, Laeli, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Decimus Laelius*, a naval officer of Pompey in the Civil War.

**laetitia**, -ae [laetus], *f.*, rejoicing, gladness.

**laetus**, -a, -um, glad, joyful.

**languidus**, -a, -um, weak, listless.

**lapis**, lapidis, *m.*, stone.

**largior**, largiri, largitus [largus, abundant], give freely, supply with; bribe.

**largiter** [largus, abundant], adv., abundantly; largiter posse, have abundant influence.

**largitiō**, largitiōnis [largior], *f.*, lavish giving, corruption.

**Lārīsa**, -ae, *f.*, *Larissa*, a city of central Thessaly.

**Lārīsaēi**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., the people of Larissa.

**lassitūdō**, lassitūdinis [*lassus*, *weary*], *f.*, *weariness, exhaustion*.

**lātē** [lātus], *adv.*, *widely, extensively*; **longē lātēque**, *far and wide*.

**latēō**, latēre, latuī, —, *lie hidden, lurk*; *pass unnoticed*.

**Latinus**, -a, -um, of *Latium* (the district of Italy in which Rome was situated), *Latin*.

**lātītūdō**, lātītūdinis [lātus], *f.*, *width, breadth, extent*.

**Latobrigi**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a German tribe, north of the Helvetii and the Tulingi.

**latrō**, latrōnis, *m.*, *bandit, robber*.

**latrōcinium**, latrōcinī [cf. *latrōcinor*, *rob*], *n.*, *robbery, free-booting*.

**latus**, lateris, *n.*, *side, flank*; **ab latere**, *on the flank*.

**lātus**, -a, -um, *broad, wide, extensive*.

**lātus**, part. of *ferō*.

**laudō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [laus], *praise*.

**laurea**, -ae, *f.*, *laurel wreath*.

**laus**, laudis, *f.*, *praise, title to praise, glory; achievement*.

**lavō**, lavāre, lāvī, lautus, *wash*; *pass. used reflexively, bathe*.

**laxō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [laxus, *wide open*], *open out, spread out*.

**lēgātīō**, lēgātīōnis [lēgō, *send on a mission*], *f.*, *embassy*.

**lēgātus**, -ī [part. of *lēgō*, *send on a mission*], *m.*, *envoy, ambassador*; in the army, *lieutenant*; see *Introd.* § 32.

**legiō**, legiōnis [cf. *legō*, *collect*], *f.*, *levy, legion*; see *Introd.* § 27.

**legiōnārius**, -a, -um [legiō], *of a*

*legion, legionary*; *m. pl. as subst., legionary soldiers*.

**legō**, legere, lēgī, lēctus, *gather, choose*.

**legūmen**, legūminis [cf. *legō*, *collect*], *n.*, *legume* (the fruit of podded plants, including beans, peas, and lentils).

**Lemannus**, -ī, *m.*, *Lake Geneva*; in Caesar always with *lacus*.

**Lemovicēs**, -um, *m.*, pl., a tribe of southwestern Gaul, west of the Arverni. The name survives in *Limoges*.

**lēnis**, lēne, *smooth, gentle*.

**lēnitās**, lēnitātis [lēnis], *f.*, *smoothness, gentleness, leniency*.

**lēniter** [lēnis], *adv.*, *gently*; **lēnius**, *less vigorously*.

**lentē** [lentus, *slow*], *adv.*, *slowly*.

**Lentulus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. (1) *Lucius Cornelius Lentulus Crus*, consul in 49 B.C., bitter opponent of Caesar. (2) See *Mārcellinus*. (3) *Publius Cornelius Lentulus Spinther*, consul in 57 B.C. and active in procuring Cicero's recall from exile. In the Civil War he followed Pompey.

**lēnunculus**, -ī, *m.*, *small sailing vessel*.

**Lepontiī**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., an Alpine tribe, near the frontier of Cisalpine Gaul.

**Leptitānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., the people of Leptis Minor, a town on the coast of the province of Africa.

**lepus**, leporis, *m.*, *hare*.

**levis**, leve, *light, trifling, unimportant*.

**leviter** [levis], *adv.*, *lightly*.

**levō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [levis], *lighten, relieve*.

**lēx**, lēgis, *f.*, *law, statute; bill*.

- Lexovii**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe just west of the mouth of the Seine (Sequana). Their name is preserved in the modern *Lisieux*.
- libenter** [libēns, *willing*], *adv.*, willingly, gladly.
- liber**, libera, liberum, *free, independent*.
- liberālitās**, liberālitātis [liberālis, *befitting a freeman*], *f.*, generosity, liberality.
- liberāliter** [liberālis, *befitting a freeman*], *adv.*, generously, liberally, courteously.
- liberē** [liber], *adv.*, freely, openly.
- liberī**, -ōrum [pl. of liber], *m.*, pl., children (the free-born, never including slaves).
- liberō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [liber], *free, deliver, rescue*.
- libertās**, libertātis [liber], *f.*, freedom, liberty.
- libet**, libere, libuit, *impers.*, it is pleasing, it pleases.
- Libō**, Libōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Lucius Scribonius Libo*, an intimate friend of Pompey and a commander in his fleet. With Octavius he conquered Illyricum in 49 B.C.
- libra**, -ae, *f.*, balance, level; *ad libram*, of equal height (lit., according to the level).
- librilis**, librile [libra, *pound*], of a pound; *fundae libriles*, slings throwing stones weighing a pound.
- Liburnicus**, -a, -um, *Liburnian*. The people of Liburnia, the coast district of northern Illyricum, were famous for their seamanship and their swift galleys.
- licentia**, -ae [licēns, part. of licet], *f.*, freedom; presumption, lawlessness.
- liceor**, licērī, licitus, *bid* (at auction).
- licet**, licere, licuit, *impers.*, be permitted, be allowed; cōspicārī licet, we can see.
- Licinius**, Licinī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See *Damasippus*.
- Liger**, Ligeris, *m.*, the Loire.
- lignor**, -āri, -ātus [lignum], *gather wood*.
- lignum**, -i, *n.*, wood, timber; pl., firewood.
- lilium**, lili, *n.*, lily. The name was jokingly given to one of Caesar's defensive devices at Alesia; see 158, 5.
- līmen**, liminis, *n.*, threshold, entrance.
- Lingonēs**, -um, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe of east central Gaul.
- lingua**, -ae, *f.*, tongue; language.
- lingula**, -ae [dim. of lingua], *f.*, tongue of land.
- linter**, lintris, *f.*, boat.
- linum**, -i, *n.*, flax.
- Liscus**, -i, *m.*, chief magistrate of the Haedui in 58 B.C.
- Lissus**, -i, *m.*, a town of southwestern Illyricum, near the coast.
- littera**, -ae, *f.*, letter of the alphabet. Pl., letters; collectively, letter (epistle), despatch, writing; sometimes letters, despatches.
- lītus**, litoris, *n.*, shore, beach, coast.
- locuplēs**, locuplētis [locus, cf. plēnus, *full*], *adj.*, rich in lands, wealthy.
- locus**, -i, *m.*, pl. loca, *n.*, place, site, position, ground; degree, footing; rank; opportunity; servōrum locō, as slaves; locō cedere, give ground.
- locūtus**, part. of loquor.
- longē** [longus], *adv.*, far, by far; away, distant. Comp. longius, farther, too far, very far, to some distance; longer (of time).

**longinquus**, -a, -um [longus], *far removed, distant*.

**longitūdō**, longitūdinis [longus], *f., length*.

**longurius**, longuri [longus], *m., long pole*.

**longus**, -a, -um, *long*.

**Longus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. See **Cōnsidius**.

**loquor**, loqui, locūtus, *speaking, talk, tell*.

**lōrica**, -ae [lōrum, strap], *f., coat of mail* (originally of leather); *breast-work*.

**Luccēius**, Luccēi, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucius Luccēius*, a confidant of Pompey; see on 198, 29.

**Lūcilius**, Lūcili, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See **Hirrus**.

**Lucrētius**, Lucrēti, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucretius Ves-pillo*, one of Pompey's naval officers.

**lūctus**, -ūs [cf. lūgeō, mourn], *m., mourning, grief*.

**Lugotorix**, -igis, *m.*, a British chief.

**lūna**, -ae [cf. lūx], *f., moon*; personified, *Luna, the Moon*.

**lūx**, lūcis, *f., light*; *prīmā lūce, ortā lūce*, at daybreak.

**lūxuria**, -ae [lūxus, excess], *f., extravagance, riotous living*.

## M

**M.** = **Mārcus**, -ī, *m.*, **M'** = **Mānius**, Māni, *m.*, Roman praenomina or given names.

**M** = *mille, thousand*; **MC** = *mille centum, eleven hundred*; **MCC** = *mille ducenti, twelve hundred*.

**Macedonēs**, -um, *m., pl., Macedonians*.

**Macedonia**, -ae, *f.*, organized as a province in 148 B.C., including

Epirus, Thessaly, and southern Illyricum, with Dyrrachium and Apollonia.

**māceria**, -ae, *f., wall*.

**māchinātiō**, māchinātiōnis [māchinor, contrive], *f., contrivance, machine* (in general).

**maciēs**, —, abl. **maciē**, *f., leanness, loss of fodder*.

**maestus**, -a, -um [cf. maereō, be sad], *sad, dejected*.

**magis** [cf. magnus], *comp. adv., more, rather*. Sup. **maximē**, *most, very, exceedingly, especially*; **quam maximē**, *as much as possible*; **quam maximē potest**, *as much as he can*. **magister**, magistrī [cf. magis], *m., master, captain* (of a ship).

**magistrātus**, -ūs [cf. magister], *m., magistrate; magistracy*.

**magnificus**, -a, -um [magnus, cf. faciō, make], *grand, magnificent*.

**magnitūdō**, magnitūdinis [magnus], *f., greatness, size, extent*.

**magnopere** [abl. magnō opere, with great labor], *adv., very much, greatly, earnestly*.

**magnus**, -a, -um, *comp. maior, sup. maximus, great, large, mighty, important*; **vōx magna**, *loud voice*.

*Comp. also, older; pl. as subst., ancestors, fathers, (with nātū) elders.*

**maiestās**, maiestātis [maior], *f., greatness, majesty*.

**maior**, see **magnus**.

**malacia**, -ae, *f., calm* (at sea).

**malefīcium**, malefīci [maleficus, wrongdoing], *n., wrong, harm, damage*.

**mālō**, mālle, mālūi, — [mags (syncopated form of magis) + volō, wish], *wish rather, prefer rather*.

**malum**, -ī [malus, bad], *n., disaster, misfortune*.

**mālus**, -ī, *m.*, *mast*.

**mancipium**, *mancipi* [cf. **manus**, *capiō*, *take*], *n.*, (*taking by hand*), in formal acceptance of ownership, *slave*, obtained by legal transfer.

**mandātum**, -ī [part. of **mandō**], *n.*, *commission, instruction, order, errand*.

**mandō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. **manus**, *dō*, *give*], *give over* into one's hands, *intrust, commit*; *commission, direct, order*; *fugae sē mandāre, take to flight*.

**Mandubii**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of east central Gaul, before whose chief city, Alesia, the most decisive struggle of the Gallic War was fought.

**Mandubracius**, *Mandubraci*, *m.*, a chief of the Trinovantes in Britain, friendly to Caesar.

**mane**, *adv.*, *in the morning*.

**maneō**, *manēre*, *mānsi*, *mānsurus*, *stay, remain*.

**manipulāris**, *manipulāris* [**manipulus**], *m.*, *comrade* (of the same *maniple*).

**manipulus**, -ī [**manus**, cf. *pleō*, *fill*], *m.*, (*handful*); *maniple, company*, in the Roman legion. Its standard was originally a *handful* of hay about a pole. See *Introd.* § 28.

**Mānlius**, *Mānli*, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucius Manlius*, governor of the Province in 78 B.C., defeated by the Aquitanians.

**mānsuēfaciō**, *mānsuēfacere*, *mānsuēfēcī*, *mānsuēfactus* [cf. *mānsuēscō*, *grow tame*, *faciō*, *make*], *tame*; *pass. mānsuēfiō*, *be tamed*.

**mānsuētūdō**, *mānsuētūdinis* [for *mānsuētītūdō*, from *mānsuētus*, *tamed*], *f.*, *gentleness, clemency*.

**manus**, -ūs, *f.*, *hand*; *troop, force*,

*band* (of soldiers); *manū munitus*, *artificially fortified*.

**Mārcellinus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Publius Cornelius Lentulus Marcellinus*, a quaestor in Caesar's army in 48 B.C.

**Mārcellus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Gaius Claudius Marcellus*, consul 49 B.C., a bitter opponent of Caesar, commander of a division of Pompey's fleet in the Civil War.

**Mārcius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Marcus Rufus*, an officer of Curio in Africa.

**mare**, *maris*, *n.*, *sea, sea-water*; *mare Ōceanus*, *the Ocean*.

**maritimus**, -a, -um [**mare**], *of or on the sea, sea-, on the coast*; *naval*; *rēs maritimae*, *manœuvres by sea*.

**Marrūcīnī**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of central Italy on the Adriatic, neighbors of the Paelignians.

**Mārs**, *Mārtis*, *m.*, *Mars*, a Roman god of flocks and herds, who became identified with Ares, the Greek god of war.

**Mārsus**, -a, -um, *Marsian*, *of the Marsians*; *m. pl. as subst., the Marsians*, a people inhabiting the mountains of central Italy, famous as soldiers.

**mās**, *maris*, *m.*, *male*.

**matara**, -ae, *f.*, a Gallic *javelin*.

**māter**, *mātris*, *f.*, *mother*; *mātrēs familiae*, *matrons*.

**māteria**, -ae [**māter**], *f.*, *timber, wood*. **māterior**, -ārī, — [**māteria**], *get timber*.

**Mātscō**, -ōnis, *f.*, a town of the Haedui on the Saône (Arar). The name survives in the modern *Mâcon*.

**mātrimōnium**, *mātrimōnī* [**māter**], *n.*, (*motherhood*), *marriage*; in *mātrimōnium dūcere*, *marry*, of the husband only; cf. *nūbō*.

**Matrona**, -ae, *f.*, the Marne, flows into the Seine (Sequana) near Paris (Lutetia).

**mātūrē** [mātūrus], *adv.*, early.

**mātūrēscō**, mātūrēscere, mātūrui, — [cf. mātūrus], *ripen*.

**mātūritās**, mātūritātis [mātūrus], *f.*, ripeness.

**mātūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [mātūrus], *early*, hasten.

**mātūrus**, -a, -um, *ripe*; early.

**maximē**, see magis.

**maximus**, see magnus.

**mediocris**, mediocre [medius], *middle*, ordinary, unimportant, common; small; of distance, short, no great.

**Mediomatrici**, -ōrum or -um, *m.*, pl., a tribe of northeastern Celtic Gaul.

**mediterrāneus**, -a, -um [medius, terra, land], *inland*.

**medius**, -a, -um, *the middle of*, mid; a or in colle mediō, half-way up the hill; per mediōs, through the midst of them.

**melior**, see bonus.

**membrum**, -i, *n.*, limb, of the body.

**memini**, meminisse, perf. with pres. force, remember.

**memoria**, -ae [memor, mindful], *f.*, memory, recollection; **memoriā tenēre**, remember; **memoriā prōditum est**, there is a tradition; **memoriae prōdendum**, worthy to be recorded; **suprā hanc memoriā**, before our time.

**Menapii**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a people in northeastern Belgium, having possessions also across the Rhine.

**mēns**, mentis, *f.*, mind, intellect, purpose.

**mēnsia**, mēnsis, gen. pl. until post-classical period, mēnsium [cf. mētiōr, measure], *m.*, month.

**mēnsūra**, -ae [cf. mētiōr], *f.*, measurement, measure.

**mentiō**, mentiōnis [cf. mēns], *f.*, calling to mind, mention.

**mercātor**, mercātoris [mercōr, trade], *m.*, trader, merchant.

**mercātūra**, -ae [mercōr, trade], *f.*, trade, traffic; pl., trading transactions.

**mercēnnārius**, -a, -um [mercēs, pay], serving for pay, mercenary.

**Mercurius**, Mercuri [cf. mercōr, trade], *m.*, Mercury, the Roman god of trade. In time he became identified with the Greek Hermes and was considered the messenger of the gods, the conductor of souls to the lower world, the protector of streets and roads, the inventor of the lyre, of the alphabet, and of the power of speech, and the patron of eloquence.

**mereor**, merēri, meritus, *deserve*; **merēri dē**, serve (deserve from), serve the interests of; **bene meritus**, well-deserving.

**meridiānus**, -a, -um [meridiēs], of midday; **meridiānō tempore**, at noon.

**meridiēs**, meridiēi [for medidiēs, from medius + diēs, day], *m.*, midday; south.

**meritum**, -i [part. of mereor], *n.*, deserts, service.

**Messāla**, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name. Marcus Valerius Messala, consul 61 B.C.

**mētiōr**, mētiri, mēnsus [cf. mētor], measure, measure out, distribute.

**metō**, metere, messui, messus, *reap*.

**mētor**, -āri, -ātus [cf. mētiōr], measure, lay out.

**Mētopolis**, -is, *f.*, a city of western Thessaly.

**Mētopolitae**, -ārum or -um, *m.*, pl., the people of Metropolis.

**metus**, -ūs, *m.*, *fear*.

**meus**, -a, -um [cf. *mē*, acc. of *ego*, *I*], *poss. pron.*, *my, mine*.

**mīles**, *militis*, *m.*, *soldier, foot-soldier*.

**militāris**, *militāre* [*mīles*], *military*; *rēs militāris*, *military science, warfare*.

**militia**, -ae [*mīles*], *f.*, *military service*.

**mille** or **M**, *indecl. adj.* in sing., *thousand*; pl. as *subst.*, *millia*, *millium*, *n.*, usually with *partit. gen.*; *mille passūs*, *thousand paces, mile*; pl. *millia passuum*, or *millia* alone, *miles*.

**minae**, -ārum, *f.*, pl., *threats*.

**Minerva**, -ae, *f.*, the Roman goddess of wisdom, who presided over the arts and sciences and all the handiwork of women. She was patroness of schools, and schoolboys took part in the celebration of her festival, which lasted five days in March. She was identified with the Greek goddess Athena.

**minimē**, see *minus*.

**minimus**, see *parvus*.

**minor**, see *parvus*.

**Minucius**, *Minuci*, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers in Gaul. (2) *Minucius Rufus*, one of Pompey's naval officers.

**minuō**, *minuere*, *minuī*, *minūtus* [*minus*], *lessen, diminish*; *ebb* (of the tide); *settle disputes*.

**minus** [*n. acc. of minor*], *comp. adv.*, *less, less easily, not well, not very*; sup. *minimē*, *least, very little*; *not at all, by no means*.

**miser**, *misera*, *miserum*, *wretched, un-*

*fortunate, sad*; *m. pl. as subst.*, *unfortunates*.

**miser cordia**, -ae [*misericos, merciful*], *f.*, *mercy, compassion, pity*.

**miseror**, -āri, -ātus [*miser*], *lament, deplore*.

**mittō**, *mittere*, *misi*, *missus*, *send*; *hurl, throw weapons*.

**mōbilis**, *mōbile* [cf. *moveō*], *easily moved, hasty*.

**mōbilitās**, *mōbilitātis* [*mōbilis*], *f.*, *ease of movement, agility*.

**mōbiliter** [*mōbilis*], *adv.*, *easily*.

**moderor**, -āri, -ātus [cf. *modus*], (*set a measure*), *bring under control*.

**modestia**, -ae [*modestus, keeping due measure*; cf. *modus*], *f.*, *moderation, discretion*.

**modo** [*abl. of modus*], *adv.*, *only, merely, even*; *just now*; *nōn modo*, *not only*.

**modus**, -i, *m.*, *measure, amount*; *way, manner, style*; *sublicae modō*, *like a pile*; *eius modī*, *of this sort or nature, of such violence* (of storms); *ad hunc modum*, *in this fashion*; *quem ad modum*, *in what way, how*; *nūllō modō*, *in no way*.

**moenia**, *moenium*, *n.*, pl., *walls of a city, fortifications*.

**mōlēs**, *mōlis*, *f.*, *mass*; *dike, dam, breakwater*.

**molliō**, *mollire*, *mollivī*, *mollitus* [*mollis*], *soften*; *make easier*.

**mollis**, *molle*, *soft, weak, infirm*; *gently sloping*.

**mollitia**, -ae [*mollis*], *f.*, *weakness*.

**molō**, *molere*, *molui*, *molitus*, *grind*; *molita cibāria*, *meal*.

**mōmentum**, -i [cf. *moveō*], *n.*, *influence, weight*; *mōmentum habēre*, *be of importance*.

**Mona**, -ae, *f.*, *the Isle of Man*.

**moneō**, *monēre*, *monuī*, *monitus*, *warn*, *advise*, *urge*; **monēre** *aliquid*, *give some advice*.

**mōns**, *montis*, *m.*, *mountain*.

**montuōsus**, -a, -um [*mōns*], *mountainous*.

**mora**, -ae, *f.*, *delay*.

**morbus**, -ī [*cf. morior*], *m.*, *sickness*, *disease*.

**Morinī**, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, *a powerful tribe on the coast of Belgium*.

**morior**, *morī*, *mortuus* [*cf. mors*], *die*; *perf. part.*, *dead*.

**moror**, -ārī, -ātus [*mora*], *delay*, *wait*, *stay*; *hinder*.

**mors**, *mortis*, *f.*, *death*.

**mortuus**, *part. of morior*.

**mōs**, *mōris*, *m.*, *habit*, *usage*, *way*, *custom*; *pl.*, *customs*, *regular practice*, *character* (as molded by habits); **mōribus suis**, *in conformity to their regular practice*.

**Mosa**, -ae, *f.*, *the Meuse*, *a river of eastern Belgium*.

**mōtus**, -ūs [*cf. moveō*], *m.*, *movement*; *uprising*, *outbreak*.

**moveō**, *movēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtus*, *move*, *remove*; *influence*; *sē movēre*, *stir*; **castra movēre**, *break camp*, *sometimes move camp*; **locō movēre**, *degrade*, *drive from a position*.

**mulier**, *mulieris*, *f.*, *woman*.

**mūliō**, *mūliōnis* [*mūlus*], *m.*, *mule-driver*, *muleteer*.

**multitūdō**, *multitūdinis* [*multus*], *f.*, *great number*, *crowd*, *multitude*; *the public*, *the common people*.

**multō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*multa*, *fine*], *punish*; **pecūniā multāre**, *sentence to pay a fine*.

**multō** [*abl. of multus*], *adv.*, *much*, *far*.

**multum** [*n. acc. of multus*], *adv.*, *comp. plūs*, *sup. plūrimum*, *much*,

*greatly*, *a great deal*; **plūrimum**, *most*, *very*, *very great*, *very much*.

**multus**, -a, -um, *comp. plūs*, *sup. plūrimus*, *much*; *pl.*, *many*; **multō diē**, *late in the day*; **plūrēs**, *more*, *many*, *several*; **plūrimī**, *most*, *the greatest number*.

**mūlus**, -ī, *m.*, *mule*.

**mundus**, -ī, *m.*, *universe*, *world*.

**municipium**, *municipī* [**mūniceps** (*mūnia*, *official duties*, *cf. capiō*, *take*), *a man who takes part in official duties*], *n.*, *free town*, *the name of many communities in Italy which had been conquered by Rome*, *but were allowed local self-government and given more or less complete rights of Roman citizenship*.

**mūnimentum**, -ī [**mūniō**], *n.*, *fortification*, *defense*.

**mūniō**, *mūnīre*, *mūnīvī*, *mūnitus* [*cf. moenia*], *fortify*, *defend*; *construct* (of a camp).

**mūnitiō**, *mūnitiōnis* [**mūniō**], *f.*, *a fortifying*, *defending*; *fortification*, *defense*, *lines*.

**mūnitus**, -a, -um [*part. of mūniō*], *fortified*; **mūnitissimus**, *most strongly fortified*.

**mūnus**, *mūneris*, *n.*, *duty*, *service*; **mūnus militiae**, *military service*.

**mūrālis**, *mūrāle* [**mūrus**], *of a wall*, *wall*; **mūrālis falx**, *wall-hook*.

**Murcus**, -ī, *m.*, *a Roman family name*. *Lucius Staius Murcus*, *a lieutenant of Caesar in the Civil War*.

**mūrus**, -ī, *m.*, *wall*; *rampart*.

**mūsculus**, -ī [*dim. of mūs*, *mouse*], *m.*, *shed*. See *Introd. § 47*.

**mūtātiō**, *mūtātiōnis* [**mūtō**], *f.*, *changing*, *change*.

**mutilus**, -a, -um, *mutilated*.

**mūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *change*.

**mūtuor**, -ārī, -ātus [mūtuus, *borrowed*], *borrow*.

**Mytilēnae**, -ārum, *f.*, pl., an important Greek city on the island of Lesbos.

## N

**nactus**, part. of **nāscor**.

**nam**, *conj.*, *for*.

**Nammēius**, Nammēī, *m.*, a Helvetian nobleman.

**Namnetēs**, -um, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe north of the mouth of the Loire (Liger). Their name is preserved in the modern *Nantes*.

**namque** [nam + que, *and*], *conj.*, *for you see, for*; see on 89, 1.

**nāscor**, nāscī, nactus, *get, obtain, meet with, find, light upon, reach*.

**Nantuātēs**, -ium, *m.*, pl., an Alpine tribe south of Lake Geneva (Lacus Lemannus).

**Narbō**, -ōnis, *m.*, *Narbonne*, an important city in the western part of the Province. It was made a Roman colony in 118 B.C.

**nāscor**, nāscī, nātus [old form gnāscor], *be born, spring up, rise, originate*; of animals, *be raised, be found*; of metals, *be found*.

**nātālis**, nātāle [cf. nātū], *of birth*; diēs nātālis, *birthday*.

**nātiō**, nātiōnis [cf. nāscor], *f.*, (*birth*), *race, people, nation, tribe*.

**nātū**, abl. only [cf. nāscor], *m.*, *in age*; maiōres nātū, *elders*.

**nātūra**, -ae [cf. nāscor], *f.*, *nature, character*; dē rērum nātūrā, *on nature or natural science*.

**nātūrālis**, nātūrāle [nātūra], *natural*.  
**nātūrāliter** [nātūrālis], *adv.*, *naturally*.

**nātus**, part. of **nāscor**.

**naufragium**, naufragī [nāvis, cf. frangō, *break*], *n.*, *shipwreck*.

**nausea**, -ae [cf. nāvis], *f.*, *seasickness*.

**nauta**, -ae [cf. nāvis], *m.*, *sailor*.

**nauticus**, -a, -um [nauta], *naval, nautical*.

**nāvālis**, nāvāle [nāvis], *naval*; nāvālis pugna, *sea-fight*.

**nāvicula**, -ae [dim. of nāvis], *f.*, *little boat*.

**nāvigātiō**, nāvigātiōnis [nāvigō], *f.*, *sailing, navigation, voyage*.

**nāvigium**, nāvigī [cf. nāvigō], *n.*, *vessel, boat*.

**nāvigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nāvis, cf. agō, *drive*], *sail*.

**nāvis**, nāvis, *f.*, *ship, boat*; nāvis longa, *ship of war*; see *Introductio* § 48.

**nāvō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nāvus, *busy*], *do diligently*; operam nāvāre, *do one's best*.

**nē**, (1) *conj.*, *that . . . not, not to*; with verbs of fearing, *that*; with words of hindering, *from* (with verbal in -ing); ut nē, *that not*, see on 214, 15; (2) *adv.*, *not*; nē . . . quidem, *inclosing the emphasized words, not even, not . . . either*.

**-ne**, enclitic, (1) *conj.*, *used in an indir. quest., whether*; (2) *adv.*, *used in a dir. quest. and translated only by the interrogative form of sentence*.

**nec**, see **neque**.

**necessāriō** [abl. of necessārius], *adv.*, *necessarily*.

**necessārius**, -a, -um [necesse], *necessary*; *urgent, critical*; as *subst.* (*one bound*), *friend, relative*.

**necesse**, *adj.*, indecl., *necessary, inevitable*.

**necessitās**, necessitātis [necesse], *f.*, *necessity, urgency, need*.

**necessitūdō**, necessitudinis [necesse], *f.*, bond of friendship.

**necō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nex, violent death], *put to death, murder.*

**nefārius**, -a -um [nefās, impious deed; cf. fās], *impious, atrocious.*

**neglēgō**, neglegere, neglēxi, neglēctus [nec, not, + legō, collect], *disregard, neglect.*

**negō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *say . . . not.*

**negōtiātor**, negōtiātōris [negōtior], *m., business man, merchant.*

**negōtior**, -āri, -ātus [negōtium], *do business.*

**negōtium**, negōti [nec, not, + ōtium, leisure], *n., business, enterprise, undertaking, work, trouble, difficulty.*

**Nemetēs**, -um, *m., pl.*, a German tribe with settlements on both banks of the Rhine, south of the Treveri and the Ubii.

**nēmō**, dat. **nēmīni**, acc. **nēmīnem** [nē, not, + homō, man], *m., nobody, no one.* For the other forms **nūllus** was used.

**nēquāquam** [nē, not, + quāquam, in any way], *adv., in no way, not at all, by no means.*

**neque** or **nec** [ne = nē, not, + que, and], *conj., and . . . not, but . . . not, nor; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor, not . . . and not either, not only not . . . but also not.*

**nēquīquam** [nē, not, + quīquam, anyhow, old abl. of quisquam], *adv., in vain, to no purpose, without reason.*

**Nervicus**, -a, -um, *Nervian, with the Nervii.*

**Nervii**, -ōrum, *m., pl.*, the Nervii, a brave tribe of central Belgic Gaul.

**nervus**, -ī, *m., sinew; pl. also, power.*  
**neu**, see **nēve**.

**nēve** or **neu** [nē, not, + ve, or], *conj., and that not, nor, and not.*

**nex**, necis, *f.*, violent death.

**nihilum**, -ī, or indecl. **nihil** [ne = nē, not, + hīlum, a whit], *n., nothing; = emphatic nōn, not at all; nihil reliquī, nothing left; nihil vīni, no wine at all; nihilō minus and nihilō sētius, none the less; nōn nihil, somewhat.*

**nimius**, -a, -um, *too much, excessive.*

**nisi** [ne = nē, not, + sī, if], *conj., if not, unless, except.*

**Nitiobrogēs**, -um, *m., pl.*, a tribe of southwestern Gaul, on the Garonne (Garumna).

**nītor**, nīti, nīsus and nīxus, *rely on; struggle, make an effort.*

**nōbilis**, nōbile [cf. nōscō], *well-known, famous; noble, high-born; pl. as subst., nobles.*

**nōbilitās**, nōbilitātis [nōbilis], *f., nobility; usually collective, the nobility.*

**noceō**, nocēre, nocui, nocitūrus, *harm, injure, damage.*

**noctū** [cf. nox], *adv., by night, in the night.*

**nocturnus**, -a, -um [nox], *of the night, by night, night-; nocturnis temporibus, in the night-time.*

**nōdus**, -ī, *m., knot; knotlike protuberance of a joint.*

**nōlō**, nōlle, nōluī, — [ne = nē, not, + volō, wish], *not wish, be unwilling.*

**nōmen**, nōminis [cf. nōscō], *n., name (that by which one is known); re-noun; suō nōmine, on his (their) own account; dōtis nōmine, as a dowry.*

**nōminātim** [cf. nōminō], *adv., by name.*

**nōminō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nōmen], *name, mention.*

**nōn**, *adv.*, *not*.

**Nōnae**, -ārum, *f.*, pl., the Nones, the seventh of March, May, July, and October, the fifth of the other months.

**nōnāgintā** or **XC** [**novem**], *ninety*.

**nōndum** [**nōn** + **dum**, *while*], *adv.*, *not yet*.

**nōngenti**, -ae, -a, or **DCCCC** [**novem** + **centum**, *hundred*], *nine hundred*.

**nōnne** [**nōn** + **-ne**], *interrog. adv.*, expecting an affirmative answer, *not?*

**nōn nullus**, see **nullus**.

**nōn numquam**, see **numquam**.

**nōnus**, -a, -um [**for novenus**, from **novem**], *ninth*.

**Nōrēia**, -ae, *f.*, a town of Noricum, now Neumarkt, in west Austria.

**Nōricus**, -a, -um, *Norican*, of Noricum, a district east of the Helvetii, in modern Austria.

**nōscō**, **nōscere**, **nōvi**, **nōtus** [old form **gnōscō**], *learn, get acquainted with*; in perf. system, *know, be acquainted with*.

**noster**, **nostra**, **nostrum**, *poss. pron.*, *our, ours*; *m.*, pl., *our men, our troops*.

**nōtitia**, -ae [**nōtus**], *f.*, *knowledge, familiarity, acquaintance*.

**notō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**nota**, *mark*], *mark, brand*.

**nōtus**, -a, -um [part. of (**g**)**nōscō**], *known, familiar, well-known*.

**novem** or **VIII**, *nine*.

**novitās**, **novitātis** [**novus**], *f.*, *newness, strangeness, strange kind*.

**novus**, -a, -um, *new, recent*; *strange*; *sup.*, *last, rear*; **rēs nova**, *news*; **rēs novae**, *revolution*; **novissimum agmen**, *rear* (of marching troops), i.e. the last part to pass by.

**nox**, **noctis**, *f.*, *night*; **ad multam noc-**

**tem**, *till late at night*; **dē mediā nocte**, *just after midnight*.

**noxia**, -ae [cf. **noceō**, *harm*], *f.*, *wrongdoing, offense, trespass*.

**nūbō**, **nūbere**, **nūpsi**, **nūpta** [cf. **nūbēs**, *cloud*], *veil one's self* (of a bride), *marry* (of the woman); cf. **ducō**.

**nūdō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**nūdus**], *lay bare, strip, expose, leave unprotected*.

**nūdus**, -a, -um, *naked, bare, unprotected*.

**nullus**, -a, -um [**nē**, *not*, + **ullus**, *any*], *not any, no, none*; **nōn nullus**, *some, several*; *m.* as *subst.*, *no one*.

**num**, *interrog. adv.*, expecting the answer *no*, translated only by the form of the question; **num possum**, *can I? I can't, can I?*

**nūmen**, **nūminis** [cf. **nuō**, *nod*], *n.*, *divine will, divine power*.

**numerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**numerus**], *count out, pay*.

**numerus**, -i, *m.*, *number, amount, quantity*; **ad numerum**, *to the required number*; **aliquō numerō esse**, *be of some account*; **numerō** or in **numerō** with a gen., *as*.

**Numidae**, -ārum, *m.*, pl., *Numidians*, a barbarian people of Northern Africa. Numidian archers served as auxiliaries in Caesar's army.

**nummus**, -i, *m.*, *coin*.

**numquam** [**nē**, *not*, + **umquam**, *ever*], *adv.*, *never*; **nōn numquam**, *sometimes*.

**nunc**, *adv.*, *now*, always used of the present; cf. **iam**, which may be used also of the past or the future.

**nūntiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**nūntius**], *send news, report, announce*.

**nūntius**, **nūnti**, *m.*, *messenger*; *message*.

**nūper** [**for noviper**, from **novus**], *adv.*, *recently, lately*.

**nūtus**, -ūs [cf. **nuō**, *nod*], *m.*, *nod*;  
**ad nūtum**, *at a nod, at a mere hint*.  
**Nymphaeum**, -ī, *n.*, a port of the  
 Labeates in southwestern Illyricum.

## O

**ob**, *prep.* with acc., *on account of, for*.  
**obaeratus**, -ī [cf. **aes**, *money*], *m.*,  
*(liable for debt), debtor*.  
**obicīō**, obicere, obicēci, obiectus  
 [iaciō, *throw*], *throw up in front*,  
*blockade, set against, oppose, expose*;  
*cast in the teeth, taunt with*; *perf.*  
*part.*, *lying before or near, opposing*.  
**obiectātiō**, obiectātiōnis [obiectō],  
*f.*, *taunt, reproach*.  
**obiectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of  
 obicīō], *throw in one's face, taunt*;  
*famem nostris obiectāre, taunt*  
*our men with hunger*.  
**oblātus**, *part.* of offerō.  
**obliquē** [obliquus], *adv.*, *slantwise*.  
**obliquus**, -a, -um, *slanting, crosswise*.  
**oblīvīscor**, oblīvīscī, oblītus, *forget*.  
**obloquor**, obloquī, oblocūtus [loquor,  
*talk*], *talk abusively*.  
**obsecrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [sacrō,  
*regard as sacred*], *implore* (in the  
 name of something sacred), *entreat*.  
**observō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [servō,  
*keep*], *keep, mark*.  
**obses**, obsidis [ob, cf. **sedeō**, *sit*], *m.*,  
*(a guarded person), hostage, a per-*  
*son, generally of noble birth, often*  
*a child, deposited by one state with*  
*another as a pledge of fidelity*.  
**obsessiō**, obsessiōnis [cf. **obsideō**], *f.*,  
*besieging, blockade*.  
**obsideō**, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus  
 [sedeō, *sit*], (*sit down against*), *be-*  
*siege, blockade, block*.  
**obsidiō**, obsidiōnis [cf. **obsideō**], *f.*,  
*siege, blockade; oppression*.  
**obstringō**, obstringere, obstrinxī, ob-

**strictus** [stringō, *bind*], *bind* (lit.  
 or by favors), *entangle*.  
**obstruō**, obstruere, obstruxī, obstruc-  
 tus [struō, *arrange*], *block, stop up*,  
*barricade*.  
**obtegō**, obtegere, obtēxi, obtectus  
 [tego, *cover*], *cover over, protect*.  
**obtemperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [tem-  
 perō, *restrain one's self*], *comply*  
*with, submit to, obey*.  
**obtestor**, -ārī, -ātus [testor, *call to*  
*witness, cf. testis*], *appeal to*,  
*implore*.  
**obtinēō**, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus  
 [teneō, *hold*], *hold, possess, occupy*;  
*govern (a province)*; **rem obtinēre**,  
*be successful*.  
**obtulī**, *perf.* of offerō.  
**obveniō**, obvenire, obvēnī, obventurus  
 [veniō, *come*], *come to, meet* (by  
 chance), *fall to* (by lot).  
**occāsiō**, occāsiōnis [cf. **occidō**], *f.*,  
*opportunity*.  
**occāsus**, -ūs [cf. **occidō**], *m.*, in Caesar  
 always with sōlis, *sunset, the west*.  
**occidō**, occidere, occidī, occāsurus  
 [ob + cadō, *fall*], *fall, set*; **occidēns**  
 sōl, *sunset, west*; cf. **orior**.  
**occidō**, occidere, occidī, occisus [ob +  
 caedō, *cut*], *cut down, kill, slay*.  
**occultātiō**, occultātiōnis [occultō], *f.*,  
*concealment*.  
**occultē** [occultus], *adv.*, *secretly*.  
**occultō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of  
 occultō, *cover*], *hide, conceal*.  
**occultus**, -a, -um [part. of occultō,  
*cover*], *covered, hidden, concealed*,  
*secret*; in occultō, *in hiding*.  
**occupātiō**, occupātiōnis [occupō], *f.*,  
*employment, occupation, business*;  
**occupātiōnēs rei publicae**, *state*  
*business*.  
**occupō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob, cf.  
 capiō, *take*], *take possession of, seize*;

*fill up*; perf. part., *busy, engaged, occupied.*

**occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursurus** [ob + currō, *run*], *run to meet, meet, come upon, find, encounter, head off; run up, come up; come, suggest itself.*

**Oceanus, -i, m., the ocean.**

**Ocelum, -i, n.,** a town on the western frontier of Cisalpine Gaul, occupying the site of modern Drubiaglio or Avigliana.

**Octāvius, Octāvi, m.,** a Roman gentile or clan name. *Marcus Octavius*, a naval officer of Pompey; conqueror, with Libo, of Illyricum, 49 B.C.

**octāvus, -a, -um [octō], eighth.**

**octingenti, -ae, -a, or DCCC [cf. octō, centum, hundred], eight hundred.**

**octō or VIII, eight.**

**Octōdūrus, -i, m.,** a town of the Veragri, now Martigny.

**octōgintā or LXXX [octō], eighty.**

**octōni, -ae, -a [octō], distr. num., eight each, eight at a time.**

**oculus, -i, m., eye.**

**ōdi, ōdisse, perf. with pres. force, hate.**

**odium, odi [cf. ōdi], n., hatred.**

**odor, odōris, m., smell, stench.**

**offendō, offendere, offendi, offēnsus, hit against, hurt; meet with disaster; animum offendere, hurt the feelings, offend; in mē offendere, be displeased with me.**

**offēnsiō, offēnsiōnis [cf. offendō], f., a hurting, wounding; mishap; discredit, disfavor.**

**offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus [ob + ferō, bring], bring to, offer; expose.**

**officiū, offici [ob, cf. faciō, do], n., (a doing for somebody), service; obligatory service, duty; allegiance; business.**

**omittō, omittere, omīsi, omissus [ob + mittō, send], let go, give up, neglect.**

**omnīnō [omnis], adv., altogether, in all, only, entirely; with neg. ideas, at all, whatever.**

**omnis, omne, all, every, the whole of, whole.**

**onerārius, -a, -um [onus], for burdens; nāvis onerāria, transport; see Introd. § 48.**

**onerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [onus], load.**

**onus, oneris, n., load, burden, cargo; weight.**

**onustus, -a, -um [onus], laden, loaded. opera, -ae [opus], f., effort, work, pains; services; operam nāvāre, do one's best; operam dare, make an effort, render a service.**

**opēs, opum, f., pl., resources, means, power.**

**opīniō, opīniōnis [cf. opīnor, suppose], f., notion, fancy, opinion; expectation; esteem; reputation; opīniōnem praebēre, give an impression; minus opīniōne, less than is fancied.**

**oportet, oportēre, oportuit, impers., it is necessary, it is proper, it ought, it is due; Irī oportēre, they ought to go; pudētēs suspicārī oportet, men of honor ought to suspect.**

**oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidum], of or from the town; m. pl. as subst., townspeople.**

**oppidum, -i, n., town (with fortifications), stronghold.**

**oppleō, opplēre, opplēvi, opplētus [ob, cf. plēnus, full], fill or occupy completely.**

**oppōnō, oppōnere, opposuī, oppositus [ob + pōnō, put], set against, place opposite, oppose; perf. part., lying over against, opposite.**

- opportūnē** [opportūnus], *adv.*, *opportunately, advantageously.*
- opportunitās**, opportunitātis [opportūnus], *f.*, *fitness, suitability, advantage.*
- opportūnus**, -a, -um, *fit, advantageous, opportune.*
- opprimō**, opprimere, oppressi, oppressus [ob + premō, *press*], *crush, overwhelm; fall upon, surprise; oppressus somnō, dazed by sleep.*
- oppugnātiō**, oppugnātiōnis [oppugnō], *f.*, *attack, assault, storming.*
- oppugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob + pugnō, *fight*], *attack, storm.*
- optātus**, -a, -um [part. of optō, *wish for*], *wished for, desired, desirable.*
- optimē**, see bene.
- optimus**, see bonus.
- opulentus**, -a, -um [opēs], *rich.*
- opus**, operis, *n.*, *work*, both of the effort and of the product; **operum** atque artificiorum, *of crafts and trades*; in military sense, *works, fortifications*; in nom. or acc. with esse, *it is necessary, there is need*; **quantō opere . . . tantō opere**, *as much as . . . so much.*
- ōra**, -ae, *f.*, *shore, coast*; **ōra maritima**, *seacoast.*
- ōrātiō**, ōrātiōnis [ōrō, *talk*], *f.*, *talk, words, speech, address.*
- ōrātor**, ōrātoris [ōrō, *talk*], *m.*, *speaker; envoy.*
- orbis**, orbis, *m.*, *circle*; **orbis terrarum**, *world, the circle of lands round the Mediterranean, comprising the world as known to the early Romans.*
- Orcynius**, -a, -um, a Greek form for the Latin **Hercynius**.
- ōrdō**, ordinis, *m.*, *row, line, rank; company, century; order, arrangement; extra ordinem, out of order, irregularly; rank, grade, of centuries, see Intro. § 35.*
- Orgetorix**, Orgetorigis, *m.*, a Helvetian nobleman.
- Ōricius**, -a, -um, *of or near Oricum.*
- Ōricum**, -ī, *n.*, an important port on the upper coast of Epirus, now *Ericho.*
- orior**, oriri, ortus, *arise, rise, spring from, begin*; **oriēns sōl**, *sunrise, east, cf. occidō*; **ortā luce**, *at day-break.*
- ōrnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *furnish, equip*; perf. part. as *adj.*, *furnished, equipped.*
- ōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ōs, *mouth*], (*talk*), *beg, entreat.*
- ortus**, part. of **orior**.
- ōs**, ōris, *n.*, *face; mouth.*
- Osismī**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe in the northwestern corner of Gaul.
- ostendō**, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus [obs (= ob) + tendō, *stretch*], (*stretch towards*), *show, point out, disclose, declare*; **sē ostendere**, *appear.*
- ostentātiō**, ostentātiōnis [ostentō], *f.*, *display, show.*
- ostentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of ostendō], *display, exhibit, hold up.*
- Otācilius**, Otācili, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See **Crassus**.
- ōtiōsus**, -a, -um [ōtium], *at leisure, undisturbed.*
- ōtium**, ōti, *n.*, *leisure, idleness; peace.*
- ōvum**, -ī, *n.*, *egg.*

## P

**P.** = **Pūblius**, **Pūbli**, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

**pābulātiō**, pābulātiōnis [pābulor], *f.*, *foraging.*

- pābulātor**, pābulātōris [pābulator], *m.*, forager.
- pābulor**, -ārī, -ātus [pābulum], gather fodder, forage.
- pābulum**, -ī [cf. pāscō, feed], *n.*, fodder.
- pacīscor**, pacīscī, pactus, agree, stipulate; perf. part. with pass. force, agreed upon.
- pācō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pāx, peace], subdue (euphemistic, lit. = make peaceful; cf. "benevolently assimilate").
- pactiō**, pactiōnis [cf. pacīscor], *f.*, agreement.
- pactum**, -ī [part. of pacīscor], *n.*, agreement; way, manner.
- Paelignus**, -a, -um, Paelignian, of the Paelignians; *m. pl.* as subst., the Paelignians, a people inhabiting the mountains of central Italy. Corfinum was their capital.
- paene**, adv., nearly, almost.
- paenitet**, paenitēre, paenituit, *impers.*, it repents one; quōrum eōs paenitet, of which they repent; paenitet vōs quod, etc., do you regret that, etc.?
- pāgus**, -ī, *m.*, district, canton; division. The inhabitants of Helvetia were divided into four cantons, the Suebi into a hundred; but in the case of the Suebi the word is apparently applied only to the population, not at all to the territory. See 100, 9, and 15.
- Palaestē**, -ēs (with Greek endings), *f.*, a town on the coast of Epirus above Corcyra.
- palam**, adv., openly, publicly.
- palma**, -ae, *f.*, palm of the hand; palm tree.
- palūs**, palūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh.
- palūster**, palūstris, palūstre [palūs], swampy.
- pandō**, pandere, pandī, passus, spread out; passis manibus, with outstretched hands; passus capillus, disheveled hair.
- pānis**, pānis [cf. pāscō], *m.*, bread, loaf.
- pār**, paris, adj., like, equal, the same; a match for.
- parātus**, -a, -um [part. of parō], prepared, ready.
- parcē** [parcus, sparing], adv., sparingly, frugally.
- parcō**, parcere, peperci, —, spare; parcendō, by economizing.
- parēns**, parentis [cf. pariō, get], *m.*, parent.
- pārēō**, pārēre, pārui, —, obey, comply.
- pariō**, parere, peperī, partus, get, obtain, secure, win.
- Parisii**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe on the Seine (Sequana). Their name survives in Paris (the ancient Lutetia).
- pariter** [pār], adv., equally, at the same time.
- parō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, prepare, make ready, get ready for, procure, acquire.
- pars**, partis, *f.*, part, share, branch (of a river); district, place, division; side, direction; party, faction; *pl.*, rôle, duty; *ūnā ex parte*, on one side; *quā ex parte*, in which respect, and on this point; *magnā ex parte*, in great part; *aliā in partem*, in another direction; *maior pars*, the majority; *maximā partem*, chiefly; *omnibus partibus*, in all respects; *multis partibus*, many fold, far.
- Parthi**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., the Parthians, a barbarous people, whose empire, at the time of the Civil War, extended from the Euphrates to the

- Indus.** After the death of Mithridates, 63 B.C., they were the most formidable enemies of the Romans, their victory over the triumvir Crassus at Carrhae, 53 B.C., being one of the greatest disasters that ever befell a Roman army.
- Parthini**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Greek people near Dyrachium.
- particeps**, participis [*pars*, cf. *capio*, *take*], *m.*, *participant*, *partner*.
- partim** [old acc. of *pars*], *adv.*, *partly*, *in part*.
- partior**, partiri, partitus [*pars*], *part*, *divide*.
- partus**, part. of *pario*.
- parum**, *adv.*, *not enough*, *too little*, *not much*; *parum diligenter*, *not carefully enough*.
- parvulus**, -a, -um [dim. of *parvus*], *very small*, *very young*; *trivial*.
- parvus**, -a, -um, comp. *minor*, sup. *minimus*, *little*, *small*, *trifling*; *ā parvis*, *from childhood*; *n. comp.* as *subst.*, *less*; sup., *least*; *minimum posse*, *have very slight influence*.
- pascō**, pascere, pāvī, pāstus, *feed*, *pasture*.
- passim** [cf. *passus*, part. of *pandō*], *adv.*, *in all directions*, *at random*.
- passus**, -ūs, *m.*, *pace*, a measure of five Roman feet = four feet ten and one quarter inches; *mille passūs*, *mile*.
- passus**, part. of *pandō*.
- passus**, part. of *patior*.
- pāstor**, pāstoris [cf. *pascō*], *m.*, *shepherd*.
- patefaciō**, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactus [cf. *pateō*, *faciō*, *make*], *open up*, *open*.
- patefiō**, pass. of *patefaciō*.
- pateō**, patēre, patui, —, *be open*, *extend*; *tantundem patēre*, *be just as wide*.
- pater**, patris, *m.*, *father*.
- paternus**, -a, -um [*pater*], *of a father*, *paternal*.
- patiēns**, patientis [part. of *patior*], *adj.*, *patient*, *long-suffering*.
- patienter** [*patiēns*], *adv.*, *patiently*.
- patientia**, -ae [*patiēns*], *f.*, *endurance*.
- patior**, pati, passus, *suffer*, *endure*, *allow*, *permit*.
- patrius**, -a, -um [*pater*], *of a father*, *of their fathers*, *ancestral*.
- pauci**, -ae, -a, *adj.*, pl., *few*, *only a few*; as *subst.*, *a few*, *only a few*, *a few words*.
- paucitās**, paucitātis [*pauci*], *f.*, *small number*.
- paulatim** [cf. *paulum*], *adv.*, *little by little*, *gradually*.
- paulisper** [cf. *paulum*, *per*], *adv.*, *a little while*.
- paulō** [abl. of *paulus*, *little*], *adv.*, *a little*, *somewhat*.
- paulum** [*paulus*, *little*], *n.*, *a little*.
- paulum** [*n. acc.* of *paulus*, *little*], *adv.*, *a little*, *somewhat*; *a short distance*.
- pavimentum**, -ī [*paviō*, *beat*], *n.*, *hard floor*, *pavement*.
- pāx**, pācis, *f.*, *peace*.
- peccō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *do wrong*, *transgress*.
- pectus**, pectoris, *n.*, *breast*.
- pecuārius**, -a, -um [cf. *pecus*], *of cattle*; *rēs pecuāria*, *cattle*.
- pecūnia**, -ae [cf. *pecus*], *f.*, *property* (once chiefly represented by cattle), *money*, *sum of money*.
- pecus**, pecoris, *n.*, *cattle* (including sheep, goats, and swine); *meat*;
- pecore vivere**, *live on meat*.

**pedālis**, **pedāle** [pēs, *foot*], *of a foot, measuring a foot.*

**pedes**, **peditis** [pēs, *foot*], *m., foot-soldier; pl., infantry.*

**pedester**, **pedestris**, **pedestre** [pedes], *on foot; of infantry; on land.*

**peditātus**, -ūs [cf. **pedes**], *m., infantry.*

**pellis**, **pellis**, *f., hide, skin; sub pellibus*, *in tents*, made of skins spread like our canvas over wooden supports.

**pellō**, **pellere**, **pepulī**, **pulsus**, *strike; drive away, put to flight, rout.*

**Pēlūsium**, **Pēlūsi**, *n.*, a city of Egypt at the eastern mouth of the Nile, an important strategic point for the defense of Egypt against the East.

**pendō**, **pendere**, **pependī**, **pēnsus**, *suspend, weigh out; pay* (before coinage was adopted payment was made by weight; see 127, 16, and note).

**per**, *prep.* with *acc.*, *through, over, along; for, during; by means of, by, by the agency of, by reason of, with; per sē*, *of or by himself or themselves, independently; per virtutem*, *courageously.*

**peragō**, **peragere**, **perēgī**, **perāctus** [agō, *do*], *finish, carry through.*

**percellō**, **percellere**, **perculī**, **perculus**, *strike with terror, dishearten.*

**percipiō**, **percipere**, **percēpī**, **perceptus** [capiō, *take*], *seize entirely, obtain, gain; praemia percipere*, *reap the rewards.*

**percontātiō**, **percontātiōnis** [percontor, *inquire*], *f., inquiry, questioning.*

**percrēbrēscō**, **percrēbrēscere**, **percrēbrui**, — [cf. **crēber**, *thick*], *become frequent, be spread abroad.*

**perculusus**, *part. of percellō.*

**percurrō**, **percurrere**, **percurrī** or **percurri**, **perkursurus** [currō, *run*], *run through or along.*

**percutiō**, **percutere**, **percussī**, **percussus** [quatiō, *shake*], *strike through, run through, hit.*

**perdiscō**, **perdiscere**, **perdidici**, — [discō, *learn*], *learn thoroughly.*

**perditus**, -a, -um [part. of **perdō**, *ruin*], *ruined, abandoned, desperate.*

**perducō**, **perducere**, **perdūxī**, **perductus** [ducō, *lead*], *lead through, bring, bring over; continue; dig a ditch; nāvēs perducere*, *bring ships to port; ad sē perducere*, *win to their cause.*

**pereō**, **perire**, **perīi**, **peritūrus** [eō, *go*], *perish, be ruined.*

**perequitō**, -āre, -āvi, — [equitō, *be a horseman, ride*], *ride through, ride about.*

**perexiguus**, -a, -um [exiguus, *scanty*], *very small, very little.*

**perfacilis**, **perfacile** [facilis, *easy*], *very easy.*

**perferō**, **perferre**, **pertulī**, **perlātus** [ferō, *carry*], *carry through or over, bring; report; bear, endure, put up with.*

**perficiō**, **perficere**, **perfēcī**, **perfectus** [faciō, *make*], *make or do thoroughly, accomplish, bring about, carry through, finish, complete; uti dent perficit*, *he gets them to give.*

**perfidia**, -ae [perfidus, *faithless*], *f., faithlessness, treachery.*

**perfringō**, **perfringere**, **perfrēgī**, **perfractus** [frangō, *break*], *break through.*

**perfuga**, -ae [cf. **perfugiō**], *m., deserter.*

**perfugiō**, **perfugere**, **perfūgī**, **perfugitūrus** [fugiō, *flee*], *flee for refuge; desert.*

- perfugium**, perfugī [cf. **perfugiō**], *n.*, *refuge, place of refuge.*
- Pergamum**, -i, *n.*, capital of the Roman province of Asia, an important centre of art and learning. Its famous library was given by Antony to Cleopatra and carried to Alexandria to augment the library there.
- pergō**, pergere, perrexī, perrectus [regō, *keep straight*], *keep on, go on, proceed.*
- perclitor**, -āri, -ātus [periculum], *try, test.*
- periculōsus**, -a, -um [periculum], *dangerous.*
- periculum**, -i [cf. **experior**, *test*], *n.*, *trial, attempt; risk, danger.*
- peridōneus**, -a, -um [idōneus, *suitable*], *very suitable.*
- perītus**, -a, -um [cf. **experior**, *test*], (*tested*), *experienced, skilled, familiar with.*
- perluō**, perluere, perluī, perlūtus [luō, *wash*], *wash thoroughly; pass. used reflexively, bathe.*
- permaneō**, permanēre, permānsī, permānsūrus [maneō, *stay*], *stay through to the end, remain, continue.*
- permānō**, -āre, -āvī, — [mānō, *flow*], *flow through; reach the ears of (of reports).*
- permittō**, permittere, permisi, permissus [mittō, *send*], *allow, permit; intrust.*
- permovēō**, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus [moveō, *move*], *move thoroughly, rouse, influence, prevail upon; alarm.*
- permulcēō**, permulcēre, permulsi, permulsus [mulcēō, *stroke*], *soothe, quiet.*
- permultus**, -a, -um [multus, *much*], *very much; pl., very many.*
- perniciēs**, perniciēi [per, cf. **nox**, *violent death*], *f., destruction.*
- pernitās**, pernitātis [pernix, *nimble*], *f., nimbleness, speed.*
- perpaucī**, -ae, -a [pauci, *few*], *very few.*
- perpendiculum**, -i [perpendō, *weigh* (and so, *let hang down*)], *n., plumb-line; ad perpendiculum, perpendicular.*
- perpetior**, petiti, perpersus [patior, *suffer*], *bear patiently.*
- perpetuus**, -a, -um, *continuous, uninterrupted, endless, permanent; in perpetuum, forever.*
- perrumpō**, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptus [rumpō, *break*], *break through.*
- persequor**, persequi, persecūtus [sequor, *follow*], *follow up (through thick and thin), pursue; avenge.*
- persevērantia**, -ae [persevērans, *part. of persevērō*], *f., perseverance.*
- persevērō**, -āre, -āvī, ātūrus [persevērus, *very strict*], *persist; (of a ship) keep on its course.*
- persolvō**, persolvere, persolvī, persolūtus [solvō, *loose*], *pay in full; poenās persolvere, pay the penalty.*
- perspiciō**, perspicere, perspēxi, perspectus [speciō, *look*], *see through, see clearly, perceive, observe, examine, inspect, prove.*
- persuādēō**, persuādere, persuāsi, persuāsūrus [suādēō, *urge*], *persuade, convince, convince of.*
- perterreō**, perterrere, perterrui, perterritus [terreō, *frighten*], *frighten thoroughly, terrify, throw into a panic.*
- pertinācia**, -ae [pertināx, *persistent*], *f., persistency, stubbornness.*
- pertineō**, pertinere, pertinuī, — [per

- + **teneō**, *hold a course through to the end*, *reach, stretch, extend*; *tend, have to do with, belong to, be of concern to.*
- perturbātiō**, *perturbātiōnis* [*perturbō*], *f.*, *disturbance, alarm, confusion.*
- perturbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*turbō*, *to disorder*], *disturb, alarm, throw into confusion*; **perturbārī** with an indir. quest., *be in confusion and uncertainty whether.*
- pervagor**, -ārī, -ātus [*vagor, wander*], *roam about.*
- pervenīō**, *pervenīre, pervēnī, perventūrus* [*veniō, come*], *come through, come, arrive.*
- pēs**, *pedis, m.*, *foot*; as a measure, *a foot*; **pedibus proeliārī**, *fight on foot*; **ad pedēs dēsillire**, *leap to the ground (from on horseback).*
- pestilentia**, -ae [*pestilēns, unhealthy*], *f.*, *malaria, fever.*
- petō**, *petere, petīvī, petitus, seek, look for, go to get, make for*; *ask, beg*; **fugam petere**, *take to flight.*
- Petra**, -ae, *f.*, a hill on the Illyrian coast southeast of Dyrrachium.
- Petrocorii**, -ōrum, *m., pl.*, a tribe of southwestern Celtic Gaul.
- Petrōnius**, *Petrōnī, m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Marcus Petronius*, a centurion in Caesar's army.
- phalanx**, *phalangis, f.*, *phalanx, compact mass of troops.*
- Phoenicē**, -ēs (Greek form for Latin *Phoenicia*), *f.*, *Phoenicia*, a district along the coast of Syria. Tyre and Sidon were the chief cities.
- Pictionēs**, -um, *m., pl.*, a Celtic tribe south of the Loire (Liger), whose name is preserved in *Poitou*.
- pīlum**, -ī, *n.*, *javelin, the missile of the Roman legionary*; see *Intro. § 39.*
- pīlus**, -ī, *m.*, *first maniple of a cohort, regularly with primus, the first maniple of the first cohort of a legion*; **primi pīli centuriō** = *primipīlus, the first centurion of a legion*; see *Intro. § 35.*
- pinna**, -ae, *f.*, *battlement.*
- piscis**, *piscis, m.*, *fish.*
- Pisō**, *Pisōnis, m.*, a Roman family name. (1) *Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus*, consul 61 B.C. (2) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, lieutenant of Cassius, slain by the Tigurini, 107 B.C.; grandfather of No. 3. (3) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul 58 B.C. (4) *Piso*, a brave Aquitanian in Caesar's army.
- Placentia**, -ae, *f.*, principal city of Cisalpine Gaul, on the Po; the modern *Piacenza*.
- placet**, *placēre, placuit, impers., it pleases, seems best to*; **maiorī partī placuit**, *the majority voted or resolved.*
- plācō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*cf. placet*], *conciliate, appease.*
- plānē** [*plānus*], *adv.*, *flatly, plainly; quite, entirely.*
- plānitīēs**, *plānitīēi* [*plānus*], *f.*, a plain.
- plānus**, -a, -um, *flat.*
- plēbs** or **plēbēs**, *plēbis, f.*, *the common people, the commons, the masses.*
- plēnē** [*plēnus*], *adv.*, *fully, completely.*
- plēnus**, -a, -um [*cf. -pleō in compleō, fill*], *full.*
- plērumque**, [*n. acc. of plērusque*], *adv.*, *for the most part, generally.*
- plērusque**, -aque, -umque, *sing. rare, most, the greater part, most of.*

**Plōtius**, **Plōtī**, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Marcus Plotius*, a follower of Caesar in the Civil War.

**plumbum**, *-ī, n.*, *lead*; **plumbum album**, *tin.*

**plūrimum**, *adv.*, see **multum**.

**plūrimus**, see **multus**.

**plūs**, *adj.*, see **multus**; *adv.*, see **multum**.

**pluteus**, *ī, m.*, *screen*, of boards or wickerwork.

**pōculum**, *-ī, n.*, *drinking-cup*.

**poena**, *-ae* [cf. **pūniō**, *punish*], *f.*, *punishment, penalty*.

**pollex**, **pollicis**, *m.*, *thumb*; used also in apposition with **digitus**.

**polliceor**, **pollicēri**, **pollicitus** [**por-** (= **prō**) + **liceor**, *bid*], *offer, promise*; **liberāliter pollicitus**, *making generous promises*.

**pollicitatiō**, **pollicitatiōnis** [**pollicitor**, *freq.* of **polliceor**], *f.*, *promise*.

**Pompēianus**, *-a, -um*, *of Pompey, Pompey's, occupied by Pompey*; *m.* pl. as *subst.*, *Pompey's followers, Pompeians*.

**Pompēius**, **Pompēi**, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, Pompey the Great*; see **Introd.** §§ 19 ff. (2) *Gnaeus Pompeius*, elder son of (1), a naval officer on his father's side in the Civil War. He inflicted severe losses on Caesar's fleet in the winter and spring of 48 B.C. He was killed at Munda in Spain, 45 B.C.

**Pompēius**, *-a, -um*, *of Pompey, Pompeian*.

**pondus**, **ponderis** [cf. **pendō**, *weigh*], *n.*, *weight, mass*.

**pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positus**, *place, put*; *lay down*; *deposited*; *pitch*

*camp*; *build redoubts*; *station*; *pass. sometimes, be situated, lie*; *depend on*.

**pōns**, **pontis**, *m.*, *bridge*.

**pontō**, **pontōnis**, *m.*, a Gallic *trans-port*.

**Pontus**, *-ī, m.*, the northeastern district of Asia Minor, on the shore of the Black Sea. Its western part was organized with Bithynia by Pompey into a Roman province in 65 B.C.

**populātiō**, **populātiōnis** [**populor**], *f.*, *ravaging, devastating*.

**populor**, *-āri, ātus*, *devastate, ravage, plunder*.

**populus**, *-ī, m.*, a *people, nation*; **populus Rōmānus**, *Roman people, Rome*. Not used of *people* as individuals, which = **hominēs**.

**porrigō**, **porrigere**, **porrēxi**, **porrēctus** [**por-** (= **prō**) + **regō**, *keep straight*], *stretch forth or out*.

**porta**, *-ae, f.*, *gate, entrance*.

**portō**, *-āre, -āvi, -ātus*, *carry, take*.

**portōrium**, **portōri** [cf. **porta**], *n.*, *customs, duty, toll*; see on 63, 5.

**portus**, *-ūs* [cf. **pōrta**], *m.*, *harbor, port*.

**poscō**, **poscere**, **poposci**, —, *demand, call for*.

**possessiō**, **possessiōnis** [cf. **possideō**], *f.*, *possession*; *real estate*.

**possideō**, **possidēre**, **possēdi**, **possessus** [**por-** (= **prō**) + **sedeō**, *sit*], *possess, hold*.

**possidō**, **possidere**, **possēdi**, **possessus** [**por-** (= **prō**) + **sido**, *sit down*], *take possession of, seize*.

**possum**, **posse**, **potui**, — [**pote**, *able*, + **sum**, *be*], *be able, can*; *have power or influence or strength*; **plūrimum posse**, *be the most powerful, be very strong or influential*.

- post**, (1) *adv.*, afterwards, after; (2) *prep.* with *acc.*, after, behind;
- post diem quārtum quam**, three days after, see on 117, 11; **annō post**, a year later.
- postea** [post ea, after this], *adv.*, afterwards, hereafter; **postea . . . quam** (usually united, see **posteaquam**), after.
- posteaquam** [postea quam, later than], *conj.*, after.
- posterus**, -a, -um [cf. **post**], next, following; m. pl. as *subst.*, posterity.
- postquam** [post quam, later than], *conj.*, after.
- postrēmō** [abl. of **postrēmus** (sup. of **posterus**), last], *adv.*, at last, finally, in short.
- postridiē** [loc. **posterī diē**, on the next day], *adv.*, on the next day; **postridiē eius diēi**, on the next day, see on **diēi**, 66, 23.
- postulātum**, -i [part. of **postulō**], *n.*, demand, claim.
- postulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, demand, ask, claim, require; *expect* (see on **esse**, 108, 22); *accuse*.
- Postumus**, -i, a Roman family name. See **Fulvius**.
- potēns**, **potentis** [part. of **possum**], *adj.*, powerful; *comp.* as *subst.*, a man more powerful than others.
- potentia**, -ae [potēns], *f.*, might, political influence, power; cf. **potestās**.
- potestās**, **potestātis** [potis, able], *f.*, power (in general, esp. civil and magisterial; cf. **potentia**, might, political influence, imperium, military power), control; opportunity; **potestātem facere**, give an opportunity; **potestās vitae**, power over life.
- potiri**, **potiri**, **potitus** [potis, able], become master of, get possession of, acquire, obtain.
- potius**, *comp. adv.*, rather. Sup. **potissimum**, before all others, chiefly.
- prae** [cf. **prō**], *prep.* with *abl.*, before; in phrases of hindrance, on account of, for.
- praeacūtus**, -a, -um [acūtus, part. of **acuō**, sharpen], sharpened at the end, pointed.
- praebeō**, **praebere**, **praebuī**, **praebitus** [prae + **habeō**, have], (hold before), offer, furnish, afford.
- praecēdō**, **praecēdere**, **praecessī**, **praecessus** [cēdō, go], go before; surpass, be superior to.
- praiceps**, **praecipitis** [prae, cf. **caput**, head], *adj.*, headlong, in headlong haste; steep.
- praeceptum**, -i [part. of **praecipio**], *n.*, order, warning.
- praecipio**, **praecipere**, **praecēpi**, **praecēptus** [capiō, take], seize in advance, anticipate; order, instruct.
- praecipitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [praeceps], throw headlong; rush down, come to an end.
- praecipuē** [praecipuus (prae, cf. **capiō**, take), taken before others], *adv.*, especially.
- praeclūdō**, **praeclūdere**, **praeclūsi**, **praeclūsus** [claudō, shut], shut off, close up, close in the face of.
- Praecōninus**, -i, *m.*, a Roman family name. See **Valerius**.
- praecurrō**, **praecurrere**, **praecurri** or **praecurri**, **praecursurus** [currō, run], run on ahead, go or come before.
- praeda**, -ae [cf. **prēndō**, seize], *f.*, booty, plunder, prey.
- praedicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. **dicō**, say], make known, announce, report, declare, emphasize; boast.

**praedicō**, praedicere, praedixi, praedictus [dicō, say], tell beforehand, charge.

**praedō**, praedōnis [cf. praedor], *m.*, plunderer, pirate.

**praedor**, -āri, -ātus [praeda], plunder, get booty.

**praedūcō**, praedūcere, praedūxi, praeductus [dūcō, lead], lead before; build.

**praefectus**, -i [part. of praeficiō], *m.*, prefect, see Intro. § 37; officer.

**praefērō**, praeferre, praetuli, praelātus [ferō, carry], put before, carry in front, display; sē praeferre, show one's self superior.

**praeficiō**, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus [faciō, make], put before or over, put in command of.

**praefigō**, praefigere, praefixi, praefixus [figo, fix], fix in front, drive on the edge.

**praegredior**, praegredi, praegressus [gradior, step], go on ahead.

**praeiūdicium**, praeiūdicī [iūdicium, judgment], *n.*, (anticipatory judgment), precedent.

**praemetuō**, praemetuere, praemetui, — [metuō, fear], fear beforehand, be apprehensive or anxious.

**praemittō**, praemittere, praemisi, praemissus [mittō, send], send before or ahead.

**praemium**, praemi, *n.*, reward, prize.

**praemuniō**, praemūnīre, praemūnīvi, praemūnītus [mūniō, fortify], fortify (in front), secure.

**praecūpō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [occūpō, seize], seize beforehand, preoccupy, surprise.

**praecūptō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [optō, choose], choose rather, prefer.

**praeparō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [parō, prepare], prepare beforehand.

**praepōnō**, praepōnere, praeposui, praepositus [pōnō, put], put before, put in charge of, put in command.

**praeripiō**, praeripere, praeripui, praereptus [rapiō, seize], anticipate, forestall.

**praerumpō**, praerumpere, praerūpi, praeruptus [rumpō, break], break off.

**praeruptus**, -a, -um [part. of praerumpō], steep, precipitous.

**praesaepiō**, praesaepire, praesaepsi, praesaeptus [saepiō, hedge in], fence off, barricade.

**praescribō**, praescribere, praescripsi, praescriptus [scribō, write], write before or at the beginning, prescribe, order, direct.

**praescriptum**, -i [part. of praescribō], *n.*, previous instruction, order.

**praesēns**, part. of praesum.

**praesertim** [cf. serō, join], *adv.*, (put first), especially, particularly.

**praesidium**, praesidi [praeses, defender], *n.*, guard, garrison; camp, post; escort, convoy; protection, defense; praesidiō litterarum, with the help of writing.

**praestō**, praestāre, praestiti, praestitus [stō, stand], stand or put before, excel, surpass; grant, furnish, afford, give, show; be responsible for; officium praestāre, do a duty; praestat, impers., it is better.

**praestōlor**, -āri, -ātus, wait for.

**praesum**, praesesse, praefui, — [sum, be], be before or over, be in charge of, hold an office, have command of; pres. part. praesēns, present, at hand; in praesentia (sc. tempora), for the present.

**praeter**, prep. with acc., beyond, besides, except; contrary to.

- praetereā** [praeter ea, besides this], *adv.*, besides, further.
- praeterēō**, praeterire, praeterī, praeteritus [eō, go], *pass by or over*; *perf. part. as adj. or n. subst.*, past, the past.
- praetermittō**, praetermittere, praetermisi, praetermissus [mittō, send], *let go by, neglect, omit*.
- praeterquam** [praeter + quam, than], *adv.*, except, other than.
- praetervehor**, praetervehī, praetervectus [vehō, carry], *be carried past, sail past*.
- praetor**, praetōris [contr. from praetor, one who goes before], *m.*, commander; praetor, a Roman magistrate, next in rank to the consul; see on 230, I.
- praetōrium**, praetōri [praetor], *n.*, general's tent; see on 231, 27.
- praetōrius**, -a, -um [praetor], of a commander, of a praetor; porta praetoria, the front gate of a Roman camp, connected by a straight street with the general's tent (praetōrium) in the middle of the camp; see Intro. § 44.
- praetōrius**, praetōri [praetōrius], *m.*, ex-praetor.
- praetūra**, -ae [cf. praetor], *f.*, praetorship.
- praeustus**, -a, -um [ustus, part. of urō, burn], burnt at the end.
- precēs**, precum, *f.*, pl., prayers, entreaties.
- premō**, premere, pressī, pressus, *press*, press hard, oppress, embarrass, weigh down.
- prēndō**, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsus [contr. from prehēndō], seize, grasp.
- pretium**, preti, *n.*, price.
- prex**, see precēs.
- pridiē** [loc.; cf. prō, diēs, day; see postridiē], *adv.*, on the day before.
- primipilus**, -i [primus + pilus, first manipulus of a cohort], *m.*, the first centurion of a legion; see Intro. § 35.
- primō** [abl. of primus], *adv.*, at first, contrasted with what comes afterwards. Cf. primum.
- primum** [n. acc. of primus], *adv.*, first (in a series of events, cf. primō), in the first place; quam primum, as soon as possible.
- primus**, see prior.
- princeps**, principis [primus, cf. capiō, take], *adj.*, (taking first rank), first, chief; as *subst.*, leading man, leader, chief, spokesman or chairman (of an embassy); princeps prior, first centurion of the second manipulus; see Intro. § 35.
- principātus**, -ūs [cf. princeps], *m.*, chief position, leadership, implying personal influence merely, not official authority.
- prior**, prius [cf. prō], *comp. adj.*, former, first (of two), previous. Sup. primus, -a, -um, first, first part of; in primis, especially.
- pristinus**, -a, -um [for prius-tinus], former, of or in former times, previous.
- prius** [n. of prior], *adv.*, before, sooner, first, rather; nōn prius dimittere quam, not to let go until. Prius and quam are often united; see on 93, 17, and cf. priusquam.
- priusquam** [prius quam, sooner than], *conj.*, before.
- privatim** [cf. privātus], *adv.*, privately, as private citizens.
- privātus**, -a, -um [part. of privō], private; isolated; as *subst.*, private person.

**privō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**privus**, *one's own*], *deprive*.

**prō**, *prep.* with *abl.*, *in front of, before; in behalf of, for; instead of, as; in proportion to, according to, considering, for, in return for*.

**probō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**probus**, *good*], (*think good*), *approve, esteem, prove, show, make acceptable*.

**prōcēdō**, *prōcēdere*, *prōcessi*, *prōcessurus* [**cēdō**, *go*], *go forward, proceed, advance, go or come forth*.

**prōcōnsul**, *prōcōnsulis* [**prō** + **cōnsul**, *consul*], *m.*, *proconsul*, an ex-consul serving as governor of a Roman province.

**procul**, *adv.*, *in the distance, at some distance*.

**prōcumbō**, *prōcumbere*, *prōcubui*, — [**cf.** **cubō**, *lie*], *fall (forwards); lie down; lean*.

**prōcūrātiō**, *prōcūrātiōnis* [**prōcūrō**], *f.*, *management, charge*.

**prōcūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**cūrō**, *attend to*], *attend to, have charge of*.

**prōcurrō**, *prōcurrere*, *prōcurri* or *prōcucurri*, *prōcursurus* [**currō**, *run*], *'run forward, charge*.

**prōdeō**, *prōdire*, *prōdii*, *prōditurus* [**prōd-** (= **prō**) + **eō**, *go*], *go or come forth, go or come out*.

**prōditiō**, *prōditiōnis* [**prōdō**], *f.*, *betraying, betrayal*.

**prōditor**, *prōditoris* [**prōdō**], *m.*, *traitor*.

**prōdō**, *prōdere*, *prōdidī*, *prōditus* [**dō**, *put*], (*put forth*), *hand down (to posterity), transmit, publish; betray, abandon; memoriae prōdere, record*.

**prōdūcō**, *prōducere*, *prōdūxī*, *prōductus* [**dūcō**, *lead*], *lead forth or out, bring forward; prolong; lead on, induce*.

**proelior**, -ārī, -ātus [**proelium**], *fight*. **proelium**, *proeli*, *n.*, *battle, engagement, skirmish*.

**profectiō**, *profectiōnis* [**cf.** **proficiascor**], *f.*, *start, departure, going away*.

**prōferō**, *prōferre*, *prōtulī*, *prōlātus* [**ferō**, *bring*], *bring out*.

**prōficiō**, *prōficere*, *prōfēcī*, *prōfectus* [**faciō**, *make*], *make headway, gain, accomplish, be effective*.

**prōficiscor**, *prōficisci*, *prōfectus* [**cf.** **prōficiō**, *make headway*], *start, set out, depart, go*.

**prōfiteor**, *prōfiteri*, *professus* [**fateor**, *confess*], *confess freely, declare publicly, volunteer, promise*.

**prōfligō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**fligō**, *strike*], *rout*.

**prōfluō**, *prōfluere*, *prōflūxī*, — [**fluō**, *flow*], *flow forth, rise*.

**profugiō**, *profugere*, *profūgī*, *profugitūrus* [**fugiō**, *flee*], *flee, run away*.

**profundō**, *profundere*, *profūdī*, *profusus* [**fundō**, *pour*], *pour forth; sē profundere, rush forth*.

**prōgnātus**, -a, -um [**prō** + (**g**)**nātus**, *born*], *sprung, descended*.

**prōgredior**, *prōgredi*, *prōgressus* [**gradiōr**, *step*], *go forward, advance; proceed, go*.

**prohibeō**, *prohibēre*, *prohibui*, *prohibitus* [**habeō**, *have*], *hold off, keep off, hinder, prevent, keep, forbid; ab iniuriā prohibēre, protect from wrongs*.

**prōiciō**, *prōicere*, *prōiēcī*, *prōiectus* [**iaciō**, *throw*], *throw forward or down, cast, throw away; abandon; sē prōicere, throw himself down*.

**proinde** [**prō**, *forth*, + **inde**, *from there*], *adv.*, *therefore, and so; just; proinde ac si, just as if*.

- prōmineō**, **prōminēre**, **prōminui**, —, *lean forward or over.*
- prōmiscuē** [**prōmiscuus**, *mixed*], *adv.*, in common, together.
- prōmissus**, -a, -um [part. of **prōmittō**, *put forth*], *long* (of the hair).
- prōmoveō**, **prōmovēre**, **prōmōvi**, **prōmōtus** [**moveō**, *move*], *move forward.*
- prōptus**, -a, -um [part. of **prōmō**, *bring forth*], *at hand, ready, disposed.*
- prōmulgō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *bring forward, propose.*
- prōmunturium**, **prōmunturī** [cf. **prōmineō**], *n.*, headland, promontory.
- prōnē** [**prōnus**, *inclined*], *adv.*, leaning, inclined.
- prōnūtiātiō**, **prōnūtiātiōnis** [**prōnūtiō**], *f.*, announcement, declaration.
- prōnūtiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**nūtiō**, *report*], *set forth, report, make an announcement, declare, call out, proclaim.*
- prope**, (1) *adv.*, nearly, almost; (2) *prep.* with acc., near; comp. **propius**, as *adv.* or *prep.*, nearer; sup. **proximē**, most recently, last.
- prōpellō**, **prōpellere**, **prōpuli**, **prōpulus** [**pellō**, *drive*], *drive away, rout, put to flight.*
- properō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**properus**, *quick*], *hasten.*
- propinquitās**, **propinquitātis** [**propinquus**], *f.*, nearness.
- propinquus**, -a, -um [cf. **prope**], *near, neighboring*; as *subst.*, *m.* and *f.*, relative, kinsman, kinswoman.
- propius**, see **prope**.
- prōpōnō**, **prōpōnere**, **prōposui**, **prōpositus** [**pōnō**, *place*], *put forward, set forth, state, publish*; *set before, present, offer, put out, display* (of a flag); with or without **animō**, *purpose, intend.*
- prōpositum**, -ī [part. of **prōpōnō**], *n.*, plan, purpose.
- proprius**, -a, -um [cf. **prope**], *one's own, particular*; *characteristic*; *permanent, complete*; **proprium virtūtis**, a mark of valor.
- propter**, *prep.* with acc., on account of, owing to.
- propterea** [**propter ea**, on account of this], *adv.*, on that account; **propterea quod**, because.
- prōpugnātor**, **prōpugnātōris** [**prōpugnō**], *m.*, defender.
- prōpugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [**pugnō**], *fight in defense, repel an assault*; *hurl forth weapons.*
- prōpulsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of **prōpellō**], *drive off, repel, ward off.*
- prōra**, -ae, *f.*, prow of a ship.
- prōruō**, **prōruere**, **prōrui**, **prōrutus** [**ruō**, *dash down*], *demolish.*
- prōsequor**, **prōsequi**, **prōsecūtus** [**sequor**, *follow*], *follow up, pursue*; *escort, accompany.*
- prōspectus**, -ūs [cf. **prōspiciō**], *m.*, outlook, view, sight.
- prōspiciō**, **prōspicere**, **prōspēxi**, **prōspectus** [**speciō**, *look*], *look forward, provide for, look out for.*
- prōsternō**, **prōsternere**, **prōstrāvi**, **prōstrātus** [**sternō**, *strew*], *strew before*; *overthrow, ruin.*
- prōtegō**, **prōtegere**, **prōtēxi**, **prōtēctus** [**tegō**, *cover*], *cover over, protect.*
- prōterō**, **prōterere**, **prōtrivi**, **prōtritrus** [**terō**, *rub*], *tread under foot, trample down.*
- prōterreō**, **prōterrere**, **prōterrui**, **prōterritus** [**terreō**, *frighten*], *frighten away, drive off in fear.*
- prōtinus** [**prō**, *forth*, + **tenus**, *as far*

- as*], *adv.*, *right on; straightway, forthwith.*
- prōturbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [turbō, to disorder], *drive in confusion, repulse.*
- prout** [prō, in proportion to, + ut, as], *conj.*, *according as, as.*
- prōvehō**, prōvehere, prōvēxi, prōvectus [vehō, carry], *carry forward; in altum prōvectae, putting out to sea; Āfricō prōvectus, wasted by the southwest wind.*
- prōventus**, -ūs [cf. prōveniō, come forth], *m.*, *outcome, result.*
- prōvideō**, prōvidēre, prōvidi, prōvisus [videō, see], *foresee, look out for, provide; satis est prōvisum, sufficient provision has been made.*
- prōvincia**, -ae, *f.*, *province; often the Province in southern Gaul, subject to Rome since 120 B.C.*
- prōvolō**, -āre, -āvi, — [volō, fly], *fly forth, rush out.*
- proximē**, see *prope*.
- proximus**, -a, -um [sup. of propior, cf. prope], *nearest; of that which follows or precedes, next, last.*
- Ptiānii**, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, *a tribe of south central Aquitania.*
- Ptolomaeus**, -i, *m.*, *name of the kings of Egypt after about 300 B.C. (1) Ptolemy Auletes; see on 189, 19. At his death in 51 B.C. he left the throne to his son and his famous daughter, Cleopatra. (2) Ptolemy Dionysus, son of (1); see on 244, 20. He fell in the Alexandrine War against Caesar, 48-47 B.C.*
- Ptolomāis**, -idis, *f.*, *a city of Phoenicia south of Tyre, famous during the Crusades under the French name St. Jean d'Acre or simply Acre.*
- pūblicē** [pūblicus], *adv.*, *in the name of the state, for a state.*
- pūblicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pūblicus], *make public, confiscate, annex.*
- pūblicus**, -a, -um [cf. populus, people], *of the people or state, public; in pūblicō, in public; in pūblicum referre, display publicly.*
- pudēns**, pudētis [part. of pudeō, have a sense of shame], *adj.*, *sensitive, honorable; m. pl. as subst., men of honor.*
- pudor**, pudōris, *m.*, *sense of shame, decency, honor.*
- puer**, pueri, *m.*, *boy; pl., children (boys and girls); ā pueris, from childhood.*
- puerilis**, puerile [puer], *of a child; puerili aetate, during childhood.*
- pugna**, -ae, *f.*, *fight, combat, battle; fighting.*
- pugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pugna], *fight; often impers. pass., there is fighting, the battle rages or is carried on, etc.*
- pulcher**, pulchra, pulchrum, *comp. pulchrior, sup. pulcherrimus, beautiful, glorious.*
- Pullō**, -ōnis, *m.*, *a Roman family name. Titus Pullo, a centurion in Caesar's army in Gaul, who betrayed a division of his army and joined Pompey in the first year of the Civil War.*
- pulsus**, part. of pellō.
- pulsus**, -ūs [cf. pellō, strike], *m.*, *stroke.*
- pulvis**, pulveris, *m.*, *dust.*
- pūctum**, -i [part. of pungō, prick], *n*, *point; temporis pūctō, on the instant.*
- puppis**, puppis, *f.*, *stern of a ship.*
- pūrgō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pūrus, clean, cf. agō, drive], *clean, clear, excuse.*

**Puteolī**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., an old Greek city in Campania, on the bay of Naples, now *Pozzuoli*.

**puteus**, -ī, *m.*, well.

**putō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *think, believe, consider*.

**Pyrēnaeus**, -a, -um, of the Pyrenees; with **montēs**, the Pyrenees, between Gaul and Spain.

## Q

**Q.** = **Quīntus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

**quā** [abl. of **quī**, *rel.*, sc. *parte, district, or viā, way*], *adv.*, by which way, where.

**quadrāgēnī**, -ae, -a [cf. **quadrāgintā**], *distr. num.*, forty each, forty in each instance.

**quadrāgintā** or **XL** [cf. **quattuor**], *forty*.

**quadrīngentī**, -ae, -a, or **CCCC** [cf. **quattuor, centum, hundred**], *four hundred*.

**quadrirēmīs**, **quadrirēme** [cf. **quattuor; rēmus, oar**], with four banks of oars; *f. as subst.* (sc. *nāvis*), *quadrirēme*.

**quaerō**, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitus**, *look for, ask, inquire about*.

**quaestiō**, **quaestiōnis** [cf. **quaerō**], *f., inquiry, investigation*.

**quaestor**, **quaestōris** [cf. **quaerō**], *m., quaestor, quartermaster*; see *Introd.* § 33.

**quaestus**, -ūs [cf. **quaerō**], *m., acquisition, gain; ad quaestūs pecūniae, for pecuniary gains*.

**quālis**, **quāle**, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort, what, what sort of.

**quam**, *adv.*, how; than, as; **quādiū**, as long as; strengthening superlatives, **quam maximus**, the greatest possible, as great as possi-

ble; **post diem quārtum quam**, three days after; see on 117, 11.

**quamquam** [**quam** doubled, with generalizing force], *conj.*, however, although.

**quamvis** [**quam** + **vis** (from **volō**, wish)], *adv.*, as you will, however.

**quandō**, *adv.*, ever, at any time.

**quantum** [*n. acc. of quantus*], *adv.*, so far as, as much as.

**quantus**, -a, -um, how great, how much; as; **tantum . . . quantum**, so much or only so much . . . as.

**quantuscumque**, -tacumque, -tumcumque [**quantus** + **cumque**, with generalizing force], however great or much; **quantumcumque itineris**, as long a march as.

**quārē** [**quā rē**, by which thing], *adv.*, wherefore, accordingly; by reason of which, why.

**quārtus**, -a, -um [cf. **quattuor**], fourth; **post diem quārtum quam**, three days after; see on 117, 11.

**quasi** [**qua** (old *n. pl. acc. of the rel.*) + **sī**, if], *conj.*, as if.

**quattuor** or **IIII**, four.

**quattuordecim** or **XIII** [**quattuor** + **decem, ten**], fourteen.

**-que**, *conj.*, enclitic, and.

**queror**, **queri**, **questus**, *complain, complain of*.

**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.*, who, which, that; often implying an antecedent, he who, that which, etc.; frequently for a dem. or pers. pron. in Eng., this, that, this man, he, etc.; **quō**, with comparatives, the, **quō minus**, the less.

**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, *interrog. adj. pron.*, what? which? For the *interrog. subst. pron.*, see **quis**.

**quī**, **qua**, **quod**, *indef. adj. or subst. pron.*, any; anybody; generally

- follows *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, or *num*. Cf. *quis*, *indef.*
- quī** [old abl. of *quī*, *interrog.*], *interrog. adv.*, *how*?
- quicumque**; see *quisquam*.
- quicumque**, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque* [*quī*, *rel.*, + *cumque*, with generalizing force], *indef. pron.*, *whoever, whichever, whatever*.
- quidam**, *quaedam*, *quiddam* and (as *adj.*) *quoddam*, *indef. subst. or adj. pron.*, *a certain man or thing, some one, one; certain, some, a*.
- quidem**, *adv.* (emphasizing the word before it), *in fact, at least*, sometimes rendered merely by emphasizing the preceding word; *but, yet*; *nē... quidem* (inclosing the emphasized words), *not even, not... either*.
- quies**, *quīetis*, *f.*, *rest, repose*.
- quīetus**, -a, -um [part of *quīescō*, *to rest*], *quiet, still, unoccupied*.
- quīn** [*quī*, *how*, + *ne* = *nē*, *not*], *conj.*, *but that, that*, often best rendered by *from, of, to, without*; *who... not*; *quīn etiam*, *nay even, in fact*.
- Quīnctilius**, *Quīnctīlī*, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See *Vārus*.
- quīncūnx**, *quīncūncis* [*quīnque*, cf. *ūncia*, *ounce*], *f.* (the arrangement of dots marking a five-ounce piece of copper, ∴), *quincunx*; *in quīncūncem*, *in diagonal order*, ∴∴∴∴∴.
- quīndecim** or **XV** [*quīnque* + *decem*, *ten*], *fifteen*.
- quīngenti**, -ae, -a, or **D** [*quīnque* + *centum*, *hundred*], *five hundred*.
- quīni**, -ae, -a [*quīnque*], *distr. num.*, *five each, five at a time*.
- quīnquāgintā** or **L** [*quīnque*], *fifty*.
- quīnque** or **V**, *five*.
- quīntus**, -a, -um, or **v.** [*quīnque*], *fifth*.
- quis**, *quae*, *quid*, *interrog. subst. pron.*, *who? which? what? why?* For the *interrog. adj. pron.*, see *quī*.
- quis**, *qua*, *quid*, *indef. subst. or adj. pron.*, *anybody, anything; any*; generally follows *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, or *num*. Cf. *quī*, *indef.*
- quisnam**, *quaenam*, *quidnam* [*quis*, *interrog.*, + *nam*, with emphasizing force], *interrog. subst. pron.*, *who? what? who in the world?*
- quispiam**, *quaequam*, *quidpiam*, *indef. subst. pron.*, *anybody, anything*.
- quisquam**, —, *quicquam*, *indef. subst. pron.*, *anybody, anything*; *quicquam negōtī*, *any trouble or difficulty*.
- quisque**, *quaeque*, *quidque* and (as *adj.*) *quodque* [*quis*, *interrog.*, + *que*, with generalizing force], *indef. subst. or adj. pron.*, *each (of any number, cf. uterque), every; each man, every man; ut quisque est amplissimus, ita plurimōs clientēs habet, the more distinguished a man is, the more dependents he has*.
- quisquis**, —, *quicquid* [*quis* doubled, with generalizing force], *indef. rel. pron.*, *whoever, whatever*.
- quīvis**, *quaevis*, *quidvis* and (as *adj.*) *quodvis* [*quī*, *rel.*, + *vīs* (from *vold*, *wisk*)], *indef. subst. or adj. pron.*, *anybody you will; any whatsoever*.
- quō** [old dat. of *quī*, *rel.*; cf. *eo*, *thither*], *adv.*, *whither, where, to or into which (place)*.
- quō** [abl. of *quī*, *rel.*], *conj.*, *that, in order that, whereby*, usual only when there is a comparative in the clause; *quam quō*, *than because*; *quō minus*, *that not*, usually best translated by *from* and a verbal in -ing;

**tenēri quō minus . . . posset**, *to be kept from being able.*

**quoad** [quō, *whither*, + *ad*, *to*], *conj.*, (*to which point*), *until*; *as long as.*

**quod** [acc. of *qui*, *rel.*], *conj.*, *as to which*, *inasmuch as*, *because*; *in that*, *as to what*, *as for the fact that*; *that*, *the fact that*; **quod sī**, *but if.*

**quō minus**, see **quō**, *conj.*

**quoniam** [quom, old form of *cum*, *when*, *since*, + *iam*, *now*], *conj.*, *since*, *seeing that.*

**quoque**, *conj.*, *too*, *as well*, *also.* **Quoque** always follows the word it emphasizes, **etiam** usually precedes.

**quōque** [old dat. of *quisque*, cf. **eō**, *thither*], *adv.*, regularly followed by **versus**, *in every direction.*

**quot**, *indecl. adj.*, *how many.*

**quotannis** [quot + *annis*, *in how many* (i.e. *in all the*) *years there are*], *adv.*, *every year*, *yearly.*

**quotiens** [quot], *adv.*, *how often.*

## R

**rādix**, *rādicis*, *f.*, *root*; *pl.*, *foot* (of a hill); -ae *infimās rādicēs*, *at the very foot.*

**rādō**, *rādere*, *rāsī*, *rāsus*, *shave.*

**raeda**, -ae, *f.*, *wagon*, with four wheels.

**rāmus**, -ī, *m.*, *branch*, *bough.*

**rapiditās**, *rapiditātis* [*rapidus*, *swift*], *f.*, *swiftness*, *rapidity.*

**rapīna**, -ae [cf. **rapīō**, *seize*], *f.*, *plunder*, *plundering*, *pillaging.*

**rārus**, -a, -um, *thin*, *rare*; *infrequent*, *few*, *scattered*, *in small parties.*

**ratio**, *ratiōnis* [cf. **ratus**, *part. of reor*, *reckon*], *f.*, *reckoning*, *calculation*, *account*, *transaction*, *business*; *judgment*, *reasoning*, *reason*; *plan*, *style*, *manner*, *way*, *method*, *nature*; *the-*

*ory*; *system*; **ratiōnem habēre**, *keep an account*, *make a reckoning*, *have regard for*, *take care*, *consider*, *have a way*, *propose.*

**ratis**, *ratis*, *f.*, *raft.*

**Rauraci**, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, a tribe on both banks of the upper Rhine, north of the Helvetii.

**re-**, **red-** (before vowels), used only in composition, *back*, *again.*

**rebellō**, *rebelliōnis* [cf. **rebellō**, *renew hostilities*], *f.*, *renewal of hostilities.*

**Rebilus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. See **Caninius**.

**recēdō**, *recēdere*, *recessī*, *recessurus* [**cēdō**, *go*], *go back*, *retire.*

**recēns**, *recentis*, *adj.*, *fresh*, *new*, *recent.*

**recēnsēdō**, *recēnsēre*, *recēnsuī*, *recēnsus* [**cēnsēdō**, *estimate*], *review.*

**receptus**, -ūs [cf. **recipiō**], *m.*, *retreat*, *means of retreat.*

**recipiō**, *recipere*, *recēpī*, *receptus* [**capiō**, *take*], *take back*, *recover*; *receive*, *admit*, *meet with*, *take*; *take on board*; *take possession of*; *take responsibility*, *guarantee*; **sē recipere**, *retreat*, *retire*, *return*, *recover themselves*; **signum recipiendī**, *signal for retreat.*

**reclinō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**clinō**, *bend*], *bend back*; **reclinātus**, *leaning*; **sē reclināre**, *lean.*

**reconditus**, -a, -um [part. of **recondō**, *hide*], *hidden*, *sequestered.*

**recordor**, -ārī, -ātus [**re-**, *cor*, *heart*, *mind*], *recall to mind*, *recollect.*

**recreō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**creō**, *create*], *restore*, *revive.*

**rēctē** [**rēctus**], *adv.*, *straight*, *rightly*, *well.*

**rēctus**, -a, -um [part. of **regō**], *straight.*

- recuperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. *cupiō*, *desire*], *get back, recover*.
- recūsātiō**, **recūsātiōnis** [**recūsō**], *f.*, *objection, refusal*.
- recūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. *accūsō*, *accuse*], *bring objection against, decline, refuse*.
- reddō**, **reddere**, **reddidi**, **redditus** [**red-** (= *re-*) + **dō**, *put*], (*put back*), *restore, return; render, make, pay, observe*.
- redēō**, **redire**, **redīi**, **rediturus** [**red-** (= *re-*) + **eō**, *go*], *go back, return; be referred; fall to; ad gladiōs redire, take to their swords*.
- redigō**, **redigere**, **redēgi**, **redactus** [**red-** (= *re-*) + **agō**, *drive*], *drive back; reduce; make*.
- redimō**, **redimere**, **redēmī**, **redemptus** [**red-** (= *re-*) + **emō**, *buy*], *buy back, buy up, purchase*.
- redintegrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**red-** (= *re-*) + **integrō**, *make whole*], *renew, revive, restore*.
- reditiō**, **reditiōnis** [cf. **redeō**], *f.*, *a returning, return*.
- reditus**, -ūs [cf. **redeō**], *m.*, *a returning, return*.
- Redonēs**, -um, *m.*, *pl.*, *a tribe of north-western Gaul, whose name survives in Remnes*.
- redūcō**, **reducere**, **redūxī**, **reductus** [**dūcō**, *lead*], *lead or bring back*.
- referō**, **referre**, **rettulī**, **relātus** [**ferō**, *carry*], *carry back, bring back, bring, report; repay; referri or pedem referre, retreat; in publicum referre, display publicly; grātiā referre, make requital, repay a favor*.
- reficiō**, **reficere**, **refēcī**, **refectus** [**faciō**, *make*], *repair, refresh, rest, reënforce*.
- refugiō**, **refugere**, **refūgī**, **refugitūrus** [**fugiō**, *flee*], *flee back, take to flight*.
- Rēginus**, -i, *m.*, *a Roman family name; see Antistius*.
- regiō**, **regiōnis** [cf. **regō**], *f.*, *direction; district, region, territory; rēctā regiōne, in a straight direction, parallel with*.
- rēgius**, -a, -um [**rēx**], *of the king, king's, royal*.
- rēgnum**, -i [cf. **regō** and **rēx**], *n.*, *kingly rule, royal power, throne, kingdom*.
- regō**, **regere**, **rēxī**, **rēctus**, *keep straight, direct, control, manage*.
- reiciō**, **reicere**, **reiēcī**, **reiectus** [**iaciō**, *throw*], *throw back, drive back, repulse; refer*.
- relanguēscō**, **relanguēscere**, **relanguī**, — [**re-** + *inch.* of **languēō**, *be faint*], *become enfeebled, be weakened*.
- religiō**, **religiōnis** [cf. **ligō**, *bind*], *f.*, *religious scruple, sacred obligation; pl., matters of religion*.
- relinquō**, **relinquere**, **reliquī**, **relictus** [**linquō**, *leave*], *leave, leave behind, abandon; leave standing; pass., be left, remain, the result is*.
- reliquus**, -a, -um, *remaining, left, the rest of; pl., the others, all other, the rest; nihil reliquī, nothing left; reliquum tempus, the future. Cf. cēteri and alius*.
- remaneō**, **remanēre**, **remānsī**, **remānsūrus** [**maneō**, *stay*], *stay behind, remain*.
- remedium**, **remedi** [**re-**, cf. **medicor**, *heal*], *n.*, *remedy*.
- rēmex**, **rēmigis** [**rēmus**, cf. **agō**, *drive*], *m.*, *rower*.
- Rēmī**, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, *the Remi, a powerful tribe of southern Belgium, friendly to Rome. Their name sur-*

- vives in *Rheims* (the ancient Duro-cortorum).
- rēmīgō**, -āre, —, — [**rēmex**], row.
- remigrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [**migrō**, *move*], move back, return.
- reminiscor**, reminisci, — [re-, cf. **memini**, remember], recall to mind; remember.
- remissus**, -a, -um [part. of **remittō**], relaxed; **remissiōribus frigoribus**, the cold weather being less severe; **remissiōre ventō**, in a lighter wind.
- remittō**, remittere, remisi, remissus [**mittō**, send], send back, throw back; give back, return; relax, give up, (of wind) die down.
- remollēscō**, remollēscere, —, — [**mol-lēscō**, become soft, cf. **mollis**], become softened or enervated.
- removeō**, removēre, remōvi, remōtus [**moveō**, move], move back, send away, draw away.
- remulcum**, -i, n., tow-line.
- rēmūs**, -i, m., oar.
- rēnō**, rēnōnis, m., deer-skin.
- renovō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**novō**, renew, from **novus**, new], renew.
- renūntiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**nūntiō**, report], bring back word, report.
- repellō**, repellere, reppulī, repulsus [**pellō**, drive away], drive back, repulse.
- repente** [abl. of **repēns**, sudden], adv., suddenly.
- repentinus**, -a, -um [**repēns**, sudden], sudden, unexpected.
- reperiō**, reperire, repperī, repertus, find (by effort, cf. **inveniō**), discover, ascertain.
- repetō**, repetere, repetivī, repetitus [**petō**, look for], go back after; reckon backward.
- repōnō**, repōnere, reposuī, repositus [**pōnō**, put], put back, put.
- reportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**portō**, carry], carry back.
- reprehendō**, reprehendere, reprehendī, reprehēnsus [**prehendō**, seize], hold back; blame, censure.
- reprimō**, reprimere, repressī, repressus [**premō**, press], keep back, check.
- repudiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**repudium**, divorce], reject.
- repugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [**pugnō**, fight], resist, be opposed to.
- repulsus**, part. of **repellō**.
- requiēscō**, requiēscere, requiēvī, requiētus [**quiēscō**, rest], rest.
- requirō**, requirere, requisivī, requisitus [**quaerō**, look for, ask], look for, ask for.
- rēs**, rei, f., thing (in the most varied applications, to be translated according to the context); matter, affair, business; fact, circumstance, etc.; **rēs novae**, revolution; **omnibus rēbus**, in all respects; **rēs publica**, the state, the public welfare, public interests; **rēs gestae**, exploits.
- rescindō**, rescindere, rescidī, rescissus [**scindō**, cut], cut away or down, destroy, pull down.
- resciscō**, resciscere, rescivī or rescii, rescitus [**sciscō**, inquire], find out, learn.
- reservō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**servō**, keep], keep back, reserve.
- resideō**, residere, resedī, — [**sedeō**, sit], sit back, remain.
- resistō**, resistere, restitī, — [**sistō**, place (one's self)], make a stand, stop, stay; resist, oppose; **resistēns** sometimes as adj., resolute, firm.
- respiciō**, respicere, respēxī, respectus [**speciō**, look], look back, look (back) at, consider, have regard for; devolve upon.
- respondeō**, respondere, respondī, re-

spōnsus [*spondeo*, *promise*], *reply*, *answer*.  
 rēspōnsum, -ī [part. of *respondeo*], *n.*, *answer*, *reply*.  
 rēs pūblica, see *rēs*.  
 restāgnō, -āre, —, — [*stāgnō*, *overflow* and form a *stāgnum*, *pool*], *overflow*; *be overflowed*.  
 restitī, perf. of *resistō*.  
 restitūō, restituere, restitui, restitutus [*statuō*, *set up*], *restore*, *revive*.  
 retineō, retinēre, retinui, retentus [*teneō*, *hold*], *hold back*, *detain*, *keep*, *preserve*, *maintain*.  
 revellō, revellere, revelli, revulsus [*vellō*, *pluck*], *pull up*, *tear away*.  
 revertor, reverti, reversus [*vertō*, *turn*], *dep.*, except in the perf., plpf., and fut. perf., which have *reverti*, etc. (from *revertō*), *turn back*, *return*, *come again*.  
 revinciō, revincire, revīnxi, revīnctus [*vinciō*, *bind*], *bind back*, *make fast*, *fasten*.  
 revocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*vocō*, *call*], *call back*, *call off*.  
 rēx, rēgis [cf. *regō*], *m.*, *king*; pl., *monarchs* (king and queen).  
 Rhascypolis, -is, *m.*, a Macedonian, who joined Pompey's army with two hundred cavalymen.  
 Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, *the Rhine*.  
 Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, *the Rhone*.  
 Rhodius, -a, -um, *Rhodian*.  
 Rhodus, -ī, *f.*, *Rhodes*, an important maritime city on the island of Rhodes, a famous center of art and learning. The bronze colossus, some hundred feet in height, was one of the Seven Wonders of the world. The island retained its independence as an ally of Rome until the Emperor Claudius added it to the province of Asia, 44 A.D.

rīpa, -ae, *f.*, *bank* of a stream.  
 rīvus, -ī, *m.*, *stream*, *brook*.  
 rōbur, rōboris, *n.*, *oak*; *strength*.  
 rogātiō, rogātiōnis [*rogō*], *f.*, an asking of the people's will upon any matter, *proposal*, *bill*.  
 rogītō, -āre, -āvi, — [*freq.* of *rogō*], *ask for over and over again*.  
 rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *ask*.  
 Rōma, -ae, *f.*, *Rome*.  
 Rōmānus, -a, -um [*Rōma*], *Roman*, of *Rome*; pl. as *subst.*, *the Romans*.  
 rōs, rōris, *m.*, *dew*.  
 rōstrum, -ī [cf. *rōdō*, *gnaw*], *n.*, *beak* of a ship of war; see *Introd.* § 48.  
 rota, -ae, *f.*, *wheel*.  
 Roucillus, -ī, *m.*, an Allobrogan, paymaster in Caesar's Gallic cavalry.  
 rubus, -ī, *m.*, *bramble-bush*.  
 Rūfus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name; see *Sulpicius*, *Mārcius*, *Minucius*, *Vibullius*, *Acutius*.  
 rūmor, rūmōris, *m.*, *rumor*.  
 rūrsus [for *revorsus*, old part. of *revertor*], *adv.*, *back again*, *again*, *on the other hand*, *in turn*.  
 Rutēni, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of southern Gaul, partly in the Province. The name is preserved in the modern *Rodez*.  
 Rutilus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name; see *Semprōnius*.

## S

Sabinus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul.  
 Sabis, Sabis, *m.*, *the Sambre*, a river of Belgic Gaul flowing into the Meuse (*Mosa*).  
 Saburra, -ae, *m.*, an officer of Juba, king of Numidia, by whose tactics Curio was drawn into his disastrous battle, August, 49 B.C.

- sacerdōs**, sacerdōtis [**sacer**, *sacerd*], *m.*, *priest*.  
**sacerdōtium**, sacerdōti [**sacerdōs**], *n.*, *priesthood*.  
**sacrāmentum**, -ī [**sacrō**, *set apart as sacred*], *n.*, *oath*.  
**Sacrātivir**, Sacrātiviri, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Marcus Sacrātivir*, a Roman knight from Capua, in Caesar's army in the Civil War.  
**sacrificium**, sacrifici [**sacrificus**, *sacrificia*], *n.*, *sacrifice*.  
**Sadala**, -ae, *m.*, son of the Thracian king Cotys.  
**saepe**, *adv.*, *often*; comp. **saepius**, *too often, repeatedly*.  
**saepēs**, saepis, *f.*, *hedge*.  
**saeviō**, saevire, saevii, saevitūrus [**saevus**, *raging*], *rage*; *blow a gale*.  
**sagitta**, -ae, *f.*, *arrow*.  
**sagittārius**, sagittāri [**sagitta**], *m.*, *bowman, archer*.  
**sāl**, salis, *m.*, *salt*.  
**salinae**, -arum [**sāl**], *f.*, *pl.*, *salt-pits*.  
**saltus**, -ūs, *m.*, *mountain forest*.  
**salūbris**, salūbre, sup. **salūberrimus** [**salūs**], *healthful*.  
**salum**, -ī [**sāl**], *n.*, *sea*.  
**salūs**, salūtis [cf. **salvus**], *f.*, *safety, welfare, deliverance*; *place of safety*; **salūti esse**, *bring deliverance, save*.  
**salūtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**salūs**], *wish health, greet*.  
**salvus**, -a, -um [cf. **salūs**], *safe, well*.  
**sanciō**, sancīre, sanci, sanctus, *make sacred, establish unalterably, enact*.  
**sānctus**, -a, -um [part. of **sanciō**], *holy, sacred, inviolable*.  
**sanguis**, sanguinis, *m.*, *blood*.  
**sānō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**sānus**, *sound*], *make sound, restore to health*.  
**Santoni**, -orum, or **Santonēs**, -um, *m.*, *pl.*, a Celtic tribe on the west coast of Gaul. The name is preserved in *Saintes* and *Saintonge*; see on **Tolōsātium**, 57, 18.  
**sarcinae**, -arum, *f.*, *soldiers' packs or bundles*; see **Introd.** § 42.  
**sarciō**, sarcire, sarsi, sartus, *patch, mend, repair*.  
**Sardinia**, -ae, *f.*, *Sardinia*.  
**sarmentum**, -ī, *n.*, *twig, light branch*.  
**Sāsōn**, -ōnis, *f.*, a little island near Oricum and Apollonia, now *Saseno*.  
**satis**, *adv.*, *enough, sufficiently*; *rather*; the weak *very*; sometimes as pred. adj., or neuter subst. with partit. gen.  
**satisfaciō**, satisfacere, satisfēcī, satisfactus [**satis faciō**, *do enough*], *give satisfaction, make reparation*.  
**satus**, part. of **serō**.  
**saucius**, -a, -um, *wounded*.  
**saxum**, -ī, *n.*, *stone, rock*.  
**Scaeva**, -ae, *m.*, a brave centurion in Caesar's army; see 213, 25 and note.  
**scāla**, -ae [cf. **scandō**, *climb*], *f.*, *ladder, scaling-ladder*.  
**scapha**, -ae, *f.*, *ship's boat, skiff*.  
**scelerātus**, -a, -um [part. of **scelerō**, *pollute, from scelus*], *accursed, villainous*.  
**scelus**, sceleris, *n.*, *crime, guilt, wickedness*.  
**scientia**, -ae [**sciēs**, part. of **sciō**], *f.*, *knowledge, skill*.  
**scindō**, scindere, scidi, scissus, *cut, tear down a rampart by pulling up the stakes*.  
**sciō**, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know, understand*.  
**Scīpiō**, Scīpiōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Quintus Caecilius Metellus Pius Scipio*, Pompey's father-in-law from 52 B.C., and his colleague in the consulship the last five months of that year. Second to Pompey in

- command of the senatorial forces at Pharsalus, 48 B.C., and the chief commander at Thapsus, 46 B.C.
- scopulus**, -i, *m.*, *cliff, rock*.
- scribō**, scribere, scripsi, scriptus, *write*.
- Scribōnius**, Scribōnī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name; see **Libō**.
- scrobis**, scrobis, *m.* and *f.*, *pit, hole*.
- scutula**, -ae, *f.*, *wooden roller*.
- scūtum**, -i, *n.*, *shield*, of the Roman legionary soldier; see **Introd.** § 38.
- sē**, sēsē, see **sui**.
- sēclūdō**, sēclūdere, sēclūsī, sēclūsus [sē(d)], *old adv.*, *apart, by one's self*, + **claudō**, *shut*, *shut off, part*.
- sēcrētō** [abl. of **sēcrētus**, part. of **sēcerno**, *separate*], *adv.*, *in private, secretly*.
- sectūra**, -ae [cf. **secō**, *cut*], *f.*, *a cutting, quarry*.
- secundum** [*n.* acc. of **secundus**], *prep.* with acc., *along, following, according to*.
- secundus**, -a, -um [cf. **sequor**, *follow*], *second*; *favorable* (of winds, battles, etc.), *successful*; **secundae rēs**, *prosperity, success*.
- secūris**, secūris [cf. **secō**, *cut*], *f.*, *ax*.
- sed**, *conj.*, *but*.
- sēdecim** or **XVI** [**sex** + **decem**, *ten*], *sixteen*.
- sēdēs**, sēdis [cf. **sedeō**, *sit*], *f.*, *seat*; either sing. or pl., *dwelling-place, abode*.
- sēditiosus**, -a, -um [sēditio, *insurrection*], *insurrectionary, rebellious*.
- sēdō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. **sēdēs**], *allay, quiet*.
- Sedulus**, Sedulī, *m.*, a leader of the Lemovices.
- Sedūni**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., an Alpine tribe on the upper Rhone.
- Segontiaci**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a British tribe.
- Segovax**, -actis, *m.*, a British king in Kent.
- Segusiāvi**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe, adjoining the Province, with territory on both sides of the Saône (Arar).
- semel**, *num. adv.*, *once, the first time*.
- sēmentis**, sēmentis [sēmen, *seed*], *f.*, *sowing, planting*.
- sēmita**, -ae, *f.*, *path, byway*.
- semper**, *adv.*, *always, constantly*.
- Semprōnius**, Semprōnī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. **Marcus Sempronius Rutilus**, one of Caesar's cavalry officers.
- senātor**, senātoris [cf. **senex**], *m.*, *senator*.
- senātorius**, -a, -um [senātor], *of a senator, senatorial*.
- senātus**, -ūs [cf. **senex**], *m.*, *senate, council of elders*.
- senex**, senis, *m.*, *old man*.
- sēni**, -ae, -a [sex], *distr. num.*, *six each, six at a time*.
- Senonēs**, -um, *m.*, pl., a tribe of northern Celtic Gaul, on the Seine (Sequana). The name is preserved in **Sens**, the modern name of their chief city, Agedincum.
- sententia**, -ae [cf. **sentiō**], *f.*, *opinion, view, way of thinking, proposition, decision, vote*; **sententiam dicere**, *express an opinion*; **sententiam ferre**, *give a verdict*.
- sentēs**, sentium, *m.*, pl., *briers, thorns*.
- sentina**, -ae, *f.*, *bilge-water*.
- sentiō**, sentire, sēnsi, sēnsus, *perceive, see, be aware, feel, think, understand*.
- sēparātim** [cf. **sēparātus**], *adv.*, *separately*.
- sēparātus**, -a, -um [part. of **sēparō**, *separate*], *separate, distinct*.
- septem** or **VII**, *seven*.

**septendecim** or **XVII** [septem + decem, *ten*], *seventeen*.

**septentriō**, **septentriōnis** [septem + triō, a plow ox], *m.*, generally pl., *the north*; properly the seven stars forming the Dipper in the constellation of the Great Bear or the Wain.

**Septimius**, **Septimī**, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucius Septimius*, at one time a centurion in Pompey's army, later in the service of the Egyptian king; one of Pompey's murderers.

**septimus**, -a, -um [septem], *seventh*.  
**septingenti**, -ae, -a, or **DCC** [septem + centum, *hundred*], *seven hundred*.

**septuāgintā** or **LXX** [cf. septem], *seventy*.

**sepultura**, -ae [cf. sepeliō, *bury*], *f.*, *burial*.

**Sēquana**, *ae, f.*, *the Seine*.

**Sēquanus**, -ī, *m.*, a *Sequanian*; pl., *the Sequani* or *Sequanians*, a powerful tribe of Celtic Gaul, adjoining the Helvetii.

**sequor**, **sequī**, **secūtus**, *follow, pursue, attend*; **poena eum sequitur**, *punishment befalls him*; **fidem sequī**, *seek the protection*.

**Ser.** = **Servius**, **Servī**, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

**sermō**, **sermōnis** [cf. serō, *weave*], *m.*, *conversation* (words of two or more persons woven into continuous discourse), *remark, discussion*.

**serō**, **serere**, **sēvī**, **satus**, *sow, plant*.

**sērō** [abl. of sērus, *late*], *adv.*, *late*; comp. **sērius**, *too late*; quam sērisimē, *as late as possible*.

**Sertōrius**, **Sertōrī**, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Quintus Sertorius*, a leader of the Marian or

democratic party, bitterly opposed to the senatorial government established by Sulla. In Spain he made the first attempt to Romanize the people of a province by introducing Roman dress and having Latin taught in schools; see on 96, 18.

**servilis**, **servile** [servus], *of a slave*; in **servilem modum**, *in the way that is used with slaves*, i.e. by torture.

**Servilius**, **Servilī**, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Publius Servilius Vatia Isauricus*, consul with Caesar in 48 B.C., remaining in charge of affairs at Rome while Caesar conducted the war against Pompey.

**serviō**, **servīre**, **servivī**, **servitūrus** [servus], *be a slave to, follow blindly*; **auribus servīre**, *tickle the ears*.

**servitūs**, **servitūtis** [servus], *f.*, *slavery, bondage*; **sēsē in servitūtem dicāre**, *attach themselves as slaves*.

**servō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *save, keep, maintain, observe, keep watch of*.

**servus**, -ī, *m.*, *slave*.

**sescēnārius**, -a, -um [sescēni, *six hundred each*], *of six hundred men each*.

**sescenti**, -ae, -a, or **DC** [sex + centum, *hundred*], *six hundred*.

**sēsquipedālis**, **sēsquipedāle** [sēs-quipēs, *a foot and a half*, from sēsqui, *adv.*, *by a half*, + pēs, *foot*], *a foot and a half in thickness*.

**sētius**, *comp. adv.*, *less*; **nihilō sētius**, *none the less, nevertheless*.

**seu**, see **sive**.

**sevērē** [sevērus, *stern*], *adv.*, *sternly, sharply*.

**sēvocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [sē(d), *old*]

- adv.*, *apart, by one's self*, + *vocō*, *call*], *call apart, call away*.
- sex** or **VI**, *six*.
- sexāgintā** or **LX** [**sex**], *sixty*.
- Sextius**, **Sextī**, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion in Caesar's army. (2) *Titus Sextius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- Sextus**, **-i**, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.
- sī**, *conj.*, *if, whether; to see if*.
- Sibusātēs**, **-ium**, *m.*, *pl.*, a tribe of southwestern Aquitania.
- sic**, *adv.*, *so, thus, in this way; ut . . . sic, while . . . yet, as . . . so*.
- siccitās**, **siccitātis** [**siccus**, *dry*], *f.*, *dryness*.
- Sicilia**, **-ae**, *f.*, *Sicily*.
- sicut** or **sicutī** [**sic** + **uti**, *as*], *conj.*, *just as, as, as it were; sicutī . . . ita, while . . . still, not only . . . but even*.
- sīdus**, **sideris**, *n.*, *heavenly body*.
- signifer**, **signiferi** [**signum**, *cf. ferō*, *bear*], *m.*, *standard-bearer, color-sergeant*.
- significātiō**, **significātiōnis** [**significō**], *f.*, *signaling, signal, sign*.
- significō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [**signum**, *cf. faciō*, *make*], *make signs, show, indicate*.
- signum**, **-i**, *n.*, *signal; standard*, see *Introd. § 40*; **signa convertere**, *change front, face about*; **signa ferre** or **inferre**, *advance, charge*; **conversa signa inferre**, *face about and charge*; **ab signis discēdere**, *withdraw from the ranks*; **signa legiōnis cōsistunt**, *the legion halts*; **signa relinquere**, *run away*.
- silentium**, **silentī** [**silēns**, *silent*], *n.*, *silence*.
- Silius**, **Sili**, *m.*, an officer in Caesar's army.
- silva**, **-ae**, *f.*, *woods, forest*.
- silvestris**, **silvestre** [**silva**], *covered with woods, wooded*.
- similis**, *simile, like, similar*.
- similiter** [**similis**], *adv.*, *in the same way*.
- similitūdo**, **similitūdinis** [**similis**], *f.*, *likeness, resemblance*.
- simul**, *adv.*, *at the same time, at once; with or without atque, as soon as*; **simul . . . simul**, *partly . . . partly*.
- simulācrum**, **-ī** [**simulō**], *n.*, *likeness, image; usually of gods, cf. statua*.
- simulātiō**, **simulātiōnis** [**simulō**], *f.*, *pretense, deceit; equitum simulātiōne*, *making a pretense of being cavalrymen*; *per simulātiōnem vulnerum*, *by pretending to be wounded*.
- simulō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [*cf. similis*], *make like, pretend*.
- simultās**, **simultātis** [*cf. simul*], *f.*, *rivalry; enmity*.
- sīn** [**sī** + **ne** = **nē**, *not*], *conj.* (*if not*), *but if*.
- sine**, *prep.* with *abl.*, *without*.
- singillatim** [*cf. singulī*], *adv.*, *singly, individually*.
- singulāris**, **singulāre** [**singulī**], *one by one, unique, unparalleled, unequaled, extraordinary*.
- singulī**, **-ae**, **-a**, *distr. num.*, *one at a time, one by one; singly, severally, one apiece; single, separate; in annōs singulōs*, *for each year, for a year at a time*.
- sinister**, **sinistra**, **sinistrum**, *left*.
- sinistra**, **-ae** [**sinister**, *sc. manus*, *hand*], *f.*, *left hand*.
- sinistrorsus** [**sinister** + **vorsus**, *old*]

- form of *versus*, towards, cf. *rursus*], *adv.*, to the left.
- sinus**, -ūs, *m.*, bosom.
- situs**, -ūs, *m.*, situation, site.
- sive** or **seu** [si + -ve, or], *conj.*, or if;
- sive** (**seu**) . . . **sive** (**seu**), whether . . . or.
- socer**, *socerī*, *m.*, father-in-law.
- societās**, *societātis* [*socius*], *f.*, partnership, company; tax collecting company, see on 188, 27; alliance.
- socius**, *soci* [cf. *sequor*], *m.*, comrade, ally, partner.
- sōl**, *sōlis*, *m.*, the sun; personified, *Sol*, the Sun.
- soldurius**, *soldurī*, *m.*, retainer, follower; see 95, 26 ff.
- soleō**, *solēre*, *solutus sum*, semi-dep., be accustomed.
- solitūdō**, *solitūdinis* [*sōlus*], *f.*, loneliness; wilderness, desert waste.
- sollicitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*sollicitus*, all stirred up], rouse, incite, urge, tamper with.
- solum**, -ī, *n.*, bottom, soil; *agrī solum*, the bare ground.
- solum** [n. acc. of *sōlus*], *adv.*, only, merely.
- sōlus**, -a, -um, only, alone.
- solvō**, *solvere*, *solvī*, *solutus*, loosen; with or without *nāvēs*, set sail; pay.
- somnus**, -ī, *m.*, sleep.
- sonō**, *sonāre*, *sonuī*, *sonitus* [*sonus*], sound.
- sonus**, -ī, *m.*, sound.
- soror**, *sorōris*, *f.*, sister; **soror ex mātēre**, half-sister (on the mother's side).
- Sōtiātēs**, -ium, *m.*, pl., a strong tribe of north central Aquitania.
- spatium**, *spatī*, *n.*, space, distance, course; interval, time, period.
- speciēs**, *speciēi* [cf. *speciō*, look], *f.*, sight, appearance, semblance.
- speciō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of *speciō*, look], look, look at, regard, aim at; of countries, lie, face; **speciāns si posset**, aiming to see if he could.
- speculātor**, *speculātōris* [*speculor*, spy out], *m.*, spy, scout.
- speculātōrius**, -a, -um [*speculātor*], of a spy, for reconnoitring.
- spērō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*spēs*], hope, hope for.
- spēs**, *spei*, *f.*, hope, expectation, hopefulness; in *spem venīre*, hope.
- Spinther**, -eris, *m.*, a Roman family name; see on 232, 17.
- spiritus**, -ūs [cf. *spīrō*, breathe], *m.*, breath; *spīrit*, arrogance.
- spolia**, -ōrum, *n.*, pl., arms stripped from an enemy, spoils, trophies.
- spoliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*spolia*], strip, rob, despoil.
- sponte**, *abl.* only, *f.*, of one's own accord; by one's self, unaided.
- Staberius**, *Staberī*, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. Lucius Staberius, an officer of Pompey in the Civil War.
- stabilīō**, *stabilīre*, *stabilīvī*, *stabilītus* [*stabilis*, steady], make steady or firm.
- stabilitās**, *stabilitātis* [*stabilis*, steady], *f.*, steadiness.
- statim** [cf. *stō*], *adv.*, on the spot, forthwith, immediately, at once.
- statiō**, *statiōnis* [cf. *stō*], *f.* (a standing), guard, picket, sentry; outpost; anchorage, harbor; in *statiōne*, on guard.
- Stātius**, *Stātī*, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See **Marcus**.
- statīvus**, -a, -um [cf. *stō*], stationary, permanent.
- statua**, -ae [cf. *statuō*], *f.*, statue; usually of men, cf. *simulācrum*.
- statuō**, *statuere*, *statuī*, *statūtus*

- [status], *set up; decide, determine, think, make up one's mind.*
- statūra, -ae [cf. stō], *f. (a standing), stature, height.*
- status, -ūs [cf. stō], *m. (a standing), position, condition.*
- stimulus, -ī, *m., goad, spur.* This name was jokingly given by Caesar's soldiers to one of his defensive devices at Alesia; see 158, 6 ff.
- stipendium, stipendī [stips, contribution, cf. pendō, pay], *n., pay.*
- stipes, stipitis, *m., log, trunk.*
- stō, stāre, steti, stātūrus, *stand; of ships, lie at anchor; dēcrētō stāre, stand by or abide by a decision.*
- strāmentum, -ī [cf. sternō, spread out], *n., covering; pack-saddle.*
- streptus, -ūs [strepō, make a noise], *m., din, rattle.*
- stringō, stringere, strinxī, strictus, *strip off; unsheathe, draw a sword.*
- struō, struere, struxī, strūctus, *arrange, build.*
- studeō, studēre, studui, — [cf. studium], *be eager for, desire; pay attention to, be devoted to.*
- studiōsē [studiōsus, eager], *adv., eagerly.*
- studium, studi [cf. studeō], *n., zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, energy, devotion; pursuit (to which devotion is given).*
- stultitia, -ae [stultus], *f., folly.*
- stultus, -a, -um, *foolish.*
- sub, *prep. (1) with abl. (of position), under, at the foot of; sub sinistrā, at the left; (2) with acc. (of motion), under; of time, just before.*
- subducō, subducere, subduxī, subductus [ducō, lead], *lead up from a lower position; of ships, draw up on shore.*
- subductiō, subductiōnis [cf. subducō], *f., a drawing up on shore, beaching.*
- subeō, subire, subii, subitus [eō, go], *go under, undergo; come up (from below, or to a wall), come up to, meet.*
- subiciō, subicere, subiēcī, subiectus [iaciō, throw], *put underneath; throw or thrust (from below); expose, subject, bring up to; perf. part., below, near.*
- subigō, subigere, subēgī, subāctus [agō, drive], *(drive under), reduce, constrain.*
- subitō [abl. of subitus], *adv., suddenly, unexpectedly.*
- subitus, -a, -um [part. of subeō, come up unexpectedly], *sudden, unexpected.*
- sublātus, *part. of tollō.*
- sublevō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [levō, lift], *lift up; support, relieve, assist; sē sublevāre, rise.*
- sublica, -ae, *f., pile, stake.*
- subluō, subluere, subluī, sublūtus [luō, wash], *(wash below), wash, wash the base of.*
- subnūbilus, -a, -um [sub, a little, + nūbilus, cloudy], *rather cloudy.*
- subruō, subruere, subruī, subrutus [ruō, cause to fall], *undermine.*
- subsequor, subsequi, subsecūtus [sequor, follow], *follow on, follow, come on after, bring up the rear of.*
- subsidiū, subsidi [cf. sedeō, sit], *n. (a sitting in reserve), reserve, reinforcement; help, aid, relief, resources.*
- subsīdō, subsīdere, subsēdī, subsessūrus [sīdō, sit down], *settle down, crouch down and watch, lie in ambush.*
- subsistō, subsistere, substiti, — [sistō, place (one's self)], *make a stand, halt, stop.*

**substrūctiō**, **substrūctiōnis** [cf. **substruō**, *build under*], *f.*, *substructure*.

**subsum**, **subesse**, —, — [sum], *be under; be near, be near at hand*.

**subvehō**, **subvehere**, **subvēxi**, **subvectus** [vehō, *carry*], *bring up*.

**subveniō**, **subvenire**, **subvēni**, **subventūrus** [veniō, *come*], *come to the rescue or to the assistance of*.

**succēdō**, **succedere**, **successi**, **successūrus** [sub + cēdō, *go*], *come up (from below), approach; take the place of, succeed; ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubii, on a second side the Ubii come next to them (lit., come up to a second side); in stationem succedere, to take their turn on guard*.

**succendō**, **succendere**, **succendi**, **succēnsus** [sub, cf. **candēō**, *shine*], *set on fire*.

**succidō**, **succidere**, **succidi**, **succisus** [sub + caedō, *cut*], *cut off below, cut down*.

**succumbō**, **succumbere**, **succubui**, **succubitūrus** [cf. **cubō**, *lie*], *lie down (under), give in, succumb*.

**succurrō**, **succurrere**, **succurri**, **succursūrus** [sub + currō, *run*], *run to one's aid, run up (to aid); impers. pass., aid comes up*.

**sudis**, **sudis**, *f.*, *stake*.

**Suēbī**, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, a powerful German tribe, or confederation of tribes. The name is preserved in the modern *Swabia*.

**suffodiō**, **suffodere**, **suffodi**, **suffossus** [sub + fodiō, *dig*], *dig under, stab underneath, undermine*.

**suffrāgium**, **suffrāgi**, *n.*, *vote*.

**Sugambri**, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, a German tribe opposite Belgium.

**suī**, **sibi**, **sē** or **sēsē**, *reflexive pron. of*

third pers., *himself, herself, he, him, etc.*; with *inter* in reciprocal idea, *from, to, or with each other*.

**Sulla**, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name.

(1) **Lucius Cornelius Sulla**, commander against Mithridates, 88–84 B.C., dictator, 81–79 B.C. (2) **Publius Cornelius Sulla**, nephew of (1), a lieutenant of Caesar in the Civil War, in command of the right wing at the battle of Pharsalus. See also on 212, 8.

**Sulpicius**, **Sulpici**, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) **Publius Sulpicius Rufus**, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul. (2) **Servius Sulpicius**, a Roman senator.

**sum**, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, *be, exist; happen; suī esse imperi, belong to his control*.

**summa**, -ae [summus, *sc. rēs*, *thing*], *f.*, *sum total, total; chief control, general management; substance; summa imperi, the chief command; in summā, in general; summa rei or rerum, the general situation*.

**summē** [summus], *adv.*, *very earnestly*.

**summergō**, **summergere**, **summersi**, **summersus** [sub + mergō, *dip*], *dip under, sink*.

**sumministrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [sub + ministrō, *wait upon*], *supply, furnish*.

**summittō**, **summittere**, **summissi**, **summissus** [sub + mittō, *send*], *send up, send as aid, send*.

**summoveō**, **summovēre**, **summovi**, **summōtus** [sub + moveō, *move*], *remove, drive back, dislodge*.

**summus**, see **superior**.

**sūmō**, **sūmere**, **sūmpsi**, **sūmptus** [sub + emō, *take*], *take; spend (of exertion); supplicium sūmere dē*,

- inflict punishment on*; *sibi sūmere*, take upon himself, assume.
- sūmptuosus**, -a, -um [*sūmptus*], *expensive, costly, lavish*.
- sūmptus**, -ūs [cf. *sūmō*], *m., expense*.
- super**, *prep.* with acc., *above, over, upon*.
- superior**, *superius* [cf. *super*], *comp. adj., higher, upper; superior, stronger; former, earlier, previous*. Sup. **summus**, *highest; top of; most important, chief; utmost, extreme; very great; summis cōpiis*, in full force; *ab summō*, at the end.
- superō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*superus*, *higher*], *overtop; overpower, conquer; surpass, be superior; outlive, survive; pass., be at a disadvantage, be overpowered*.
- supersum**, *superesse*, *superfui*, *superfuturus* [*sum*], ("be over and above"), *be left, remain, survive; be in excess*.
- suppetō**, *suppetere*, *suppetivi*, *suppetitūrus* [*sub* + *petō*, *seek*], *be on hand, be available, hold out*.
- supplēmentum**, -i [*suppleō*, *fill out*], *n., substitutes*.
- supplex**, *supplicis* [*sub*, cf. *plicō*, *fold*], *m. and f. (one who bends the knee), suppliant*.
- supplicātiō**, *supplicātiōnis* [*supplicō*, *kneel*], *f., public prayer, thanksgiving*.
- suppliciter** [*supplex*], *adv., supplicantly, as a suppliant*.
- supplicium**, *supplici* [*supplex*], *n. (kneeling in supplication or to be punished), punishment, penalty*.
- supportō**; -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*sub* + *portō*, *carry*], *bring up, furnish*.
- suprā** [cf. *super*], *adv., and prep. with acc., above; before*.
- suscipiō**, *suscipere*, *suscēpi*, *susceptus* [*subs* (= *sub*) + *capiō*, *take*], (*take up from beneath*), *take up, undertake*.
- suspiciō**, *suspiciōnis* [cf. *suspiciō*, *look askance at*], *f., suspicion, ground for believing, suspicious action; in suspiciōnem venire*, look suspicious.
- suspīcor**, -ārī, -ātus [cf. *suspiciō*, *look askance at*], *suspect*.
- sustentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of *sustineō*], *uphold, support, mitigate*.
- sustineō**, *sustinēre*, *sustinui*, *sustentus* [*subs* (= *sub*) + *teneō*], *hold up (from below), support, endure; check, withstand; without obj., hold out, hold firm, stand their ground; se sustinēre*, stand.
- sustulī**, *perf. of tollō*.
- suus**, -a, -um, *poss. pron. (reflexive, referring to subject), his, her, its, their; his own, etc.; his favorable, his characteristic, favorable, suitable; sui*, his (their) men, friends, people; *sua*, his (their) possessions.
- Syria**, -ae, *f.*, organized by Pompey, in 64 B.C., as a Roman province, lying along the eastern coast of the Mediterranean.
- Syriacus**, -a, -um, *Syrian*.

## T

- T.** = **Titus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.
- tabella**, -ae [*tabula*], *f.*, *tablet, ballot*.
- tabernāculum**, -ī [*taberna*, *hut*], *n., tent*.
- tabula**, -ae, *f.*, *board; writing tablet, list; account book; novae tabulae*, new accounts, abolition of debts. See on 71, 1.
- taceo**, *tacēre*, *tacui*, *tacitus*, *be silent, say nothing; say nothing about*.
- taeter**, *taetra*, *tætrum*, *foul, repulsive*.
- tālea**, -ae, *f.*, *rod, bar, stake*.

- tam**, *adv.*, *so*.
- tamen**, *adv.*, *yet, still, however, nevertheless, anyhow*.
- Tamesis**, *-is, m.*, the Thames.
- tametsi** [tam + etsi, *although*], *conj.*, *although, though*.
- tandem**, *adv.*, *at length, finally*.
- tantulus**, *-a, -um* [dim. of **tantus**], *so small, so trivial*.
- tantum** [n. acc. of **tantus**], *adv.*, *so far, to such an extent, only so far, so*.
- tantummodo** [tantum modo, *so much only*], *adv.*, *only, merely*.
- tantundem** [tantus], *adv.*, *just so far; the same distance*.
- tantus**, *-a, -um* [cf. tam], *so great, so much, such a great, that great; only so much, so few*.
- Tarbelli**, *-ōrum, m., pl.*, a tribe of southwestern Aquitania. The name survives in the modern *Tarbes*.
- Tarcondārius**, see **Castor**.
- tardē** [tardus], *adv.*, *slowly*.
- tardō**, *-āre, -āvi, -ātus* [tardus], *retard, check, hinder*.
- tardus**, *-a, -um, slow*.
- Tarusātēs**, *-ium, m., pl.*, a tribe in west central Aquitania.
- taurus**, *-i, m.*, *bull*.
- Taximagulus**, *-i, m.*, a Briton, king of a part of Kent.
- Tectosagēs**, *-um, m.*, see **Volcae**.
- tegimentum**, *-i* [tegō], *n.*, *covering*.
- tegō**, *tegere, tēxi, tēctus*, *cover; hide, conceal; shelter, protect*.
- tēlum**, *-i, n.*, *spear, javelin, weapon*.
- temerārius**, *-a, -um* [cf. **temere**], *rash, thoughtless, inconsiderate*.
- temere**, *adv.*, *casually, without strong reasons, rashly*.
- temeritās**, *temeritātis* [cf. **temere**], *f.*, *rashness, foolhardiness*.
- tēmō**, *tēmōnis, m.*, *pole of a chariot or wagon*.
- temperantia**, *-ae* [temperāns, *moderate*], *f.*, *moderation, self-control*.
- temperātus**, *-a, -um* [part. of **temperō**], *temperate, mild*.
- temperō**, *-āre, -āvi, -ātus* [tempus, *a division of time*], (*observe due proportion*), *restrain one's self, refrain*.
- tempestās**, *tempestātis* [tempus], *f.*, *weather; bad weather, storm*.
- templum**, *-i, n.*, *temple*.
- temptō**, *-āre, -āvi, -ātus* [tentus, *part. of teneō*; for *p*, cf. *Thompson* (*Tom's son*)], *handle; test, attempt, tempt; assail, attack*.
- tempus**, *temporis, n.*, *time; season; circumstances; in reliquum tempus, for the future; ad tempus, promptly; ex tempore, according to circumstances*.
- Tēncterī**, *-ōrum, m., pl.*, a German tribe which entered Belgium and was annihilated by Caesar, 55 B.C.
- tendō**, *tendere, tetendī, tentus*, *stretch out, stretch; pitch a tent*.
- tenebrae**, *-ārum, f., pl.*, *darkness*.
- teneō**, *tenēre, tenui* (-tentus only in cpds.), *hold, keep, occupy, have; detain; restrain, bind; sē tenēre, remain; XI millia passuum tenēre, extend eleven miles*.
- tener**, *tenera, tenerum, tender, young*.
- tenuis**, *tenuē, thin, narrow*.
- tenuiter** [tenuis], *adv.*, *thinly*.
- teres**, *teretis* [cf. **terō**, *rub*], *adj.*, *well-rounded, round, smooth*.
- tergum**, *-i, n.*, *back; terga vertere, turn and run; post tergum, behind them (him, etc.); ā tergō, in the rear*.
- terni**, *-ae, -a* [cf. **trēs**], *distr. num.*, *three each, three at a time*.
- terra**, *-ae* [cf. **torreō**, *dry up*], *f.*, *earth, ground; land, region; pl., the earth, world; in terris, on earth*.

- Terrasidius**, *Terrasidī*, *m.*, an officer in Caesar's army.
- terrēō**, *terrēre*, *terrui*, *territus*, *frighten*, *terrify*.
- terrestris**, *terrestre* [*terra*], *on land*, *land*.
- terror**, *terrōris* [cf. *terrēō*], *m.*, *fright*, *alarm*, *terror*.
- tertiō** [abl. of *tertius*], *adv.*, *in the third place*, *thirdly*.
- tertius**, *-a*, *-um*, *third*; *post diem tertium*, *in two days*, see on 104, 17; *tertius decimus*, *thirteenth*.
- testimōnium**, *testimōnī* [*testis*], *n.*, *evidence*, *testimony*.
- testis**, *testis*, *m.* and *f.*, *witness*.
- testūdō**, *testūdinis*, *f.*, *tortoise*; *tortoise-covering*, formed by soldiers in ranks holding their shields above their heads so as to overlap and ward off missiles thrown down from above; see *Introductio*. § 47.
- tetrarchēs**, *-ae* [Greek = *ruler of a fourth part*], *m.*, *tetrarch*.
- Teutomatus**, *-i*, *m.*, a king of the Nitiobroges.
- Teutonēs**, *-um*, *m.*, *pl.*, a German people; see on 161, 24.
- theātrum**, *-i*, *n.*, *theatre*.
- Theophanēs**, *-is*, *m.*, a Greek historian, confidant of Pompey; see on 198, 29.
- Thessali**, *-ōrum*, *m.*, *pl.*, *Thessalians*.
- Thessalia**, *-ae*, *f.*, *Thessaly*, the northeastern district of Greece, included in the province of Macedonia in 148 B.C.
- Thracēs**, *-um*, *m.*, *pl.*, *the Thracians*.
- Thracia**, *-ae*, *f.*, *Thrace*, the country between Macedonia and the Black Sea, conquered by Rome in 73 B.C., but left practically independent under native princes.
- Tiburtius**, *Tiburtī*, *m.*, a Roman gen-
- tile or clan name. *Lucius Tiburtius*, a follower of Caesar in the Civil War.
- tignum**, *-i*, *n.*, *log*, *timber*.
- Tigurinus**, *-a*, *-um*, *of the Tigurini*; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, *the Tigurini*, one of the four cantons of the Helvetii, living near Zurich.
- Tillius**, *Tilli*, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Quintus Tillius*, one of Caesar's followers in the Civil War.
- timeō**, *timēre*, *timui*, —, *fear*, *be afraid*.
- timidē** [*timidus*, *fearful*], *adv.*, *with fear*, *timidly*; *nōn timidē*, *with no sign of fear*.
- timor**, *timōris* [cf. *timeō*], *m.*, *fear*; *timōre perterritus*, *panic-stricken*.
- tīrō**, *tīrōnis*, *m.*, *raw recruit*.
- Titūrius**, *Titūrī*, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See *Sabinus*.
- tolerō**, *-āre*, *-āvi*, *-ātus* [cf. *tollō*], *bear*, *support*, *endure*; *keep alive*; *famem tolerāre*, *keep from starving*.
- tollō**, *tollere*, *sustuli*, *sublātus*, *lift*, *raise*; *take on board*; *weigh* (of anchors); *elate*, *inspirit*; *take away*, *remove*, *dispel*, *annul*, *dismiss*, *quash*; *clāmōre sublātō*, *shouts arising*.
- Tolōsa**, *-ae*, *f.*, *Toulouse*, an important city in the western part of the Province.
- Tolōsātēs**, *-ium*, *m.*, *pl.*, the people of Toulouse (Tolosa), a city in the western part of the Province.
- tormentum**, *-i* [cf. *torqueō*, *twist*], *n.*, *hurling engine*, worked by twisted ropes; also *missile from a hurling engine*; *torture* (on the rack).
- Torquātus**, *-ī*, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Lucius Manlius Torquatus*, an officer of Pompey in the Civil War.

**tot**, *indecl. adj.*, so many.

**totidem** [cf. **tot**], *indecl. adj.*, just as many, the same number.

**tōtus**, -a, -um, the whole, the whole of, all.

**trabs**, **trabis**, *f.*, timber, beam.

**tractō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **trahō**, draw], handle, discuss.

**trādō**, **trādere**, **trādidi**, **trāditus** [trāns + **dō**, put], (put across), hand over, deliver up; hand down, teach; pass on a report.

**trādūcō**, **trādūcere**, **trādūxī**, **trāductus** [trāns + **dūcō**, lead], lead across or over, lead; bring over, win over; promote.

**trāgula**, -ae, *f.*, a Gallic lance.

**trāciō**, **trācere**, **trāieci**, **trāiectus** [trāns + **iaciō**, throw], throw across, take over; pierce, run through (with a javelin).

**trāiectus**, -ūs [cf. **trāciō**], *m.*; crossing over, passage.

**Trallēs**, -ium, *f.*, pl., a city of western Asia Minor, near Ephesus.

**tranquillitās**, **tranquillitātis** [tranquillus, still], *f.*, stillness, quiet, calm; **summa tranquillitās**, a dead calm.

**trāns**, *prep.* with acc., across, over; beyond.

**trāscendō**, **trāscendere**, **trāscendi**, **trāscēnsus** [trāns + **scandō**, climb], climb over, board, cross.

**trānseō**, **trānsire**, **trānsiī**, **trānsitus** [eō, go], go across, pass over, cross, march through; of time, pass, go by.

**trānsferō**, **trānsferre**, **trānstulī**, **trāns-lātus** [ferō, carry], carry across, bring over, transfer.

**trānsfigō**, **trānsfigere**, **trānsfixī**, **trānsfixus** [figō, fix], pierce, thrust through.

**trānsfodiō**, **trānsfodere**, **trānsfodi**, **trānsfossus** [fodiō, dig], (dig through), pierce through, wound.

**trānsfodiō**, **trānsfodere**, **trānsfodi**, **trānsfossus** [gradior, step], go across or over, cross.

**trānsfodiō**, **trānsfodere**, **trānsfodi**, **trānsfossus**, part. of **trānsferō**.

**trānsmarīnus**, -a, -um [trāns mare, across the sea], from across the sea, foreign.

**trānsmissus**, -ūs [cf. **trānsmittō**, send across], *m.*, passage; **parī spatiō trānsmissus**, lying just as far away (lit., with the same interval of passage).

**Trānspadānus**, -a, -um [trāns Padum, across the Po], beyond the Po, i.e. from the point of view of the Romans; applied to territory between the Po and the Alps.

**trānsportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [portō, carry], carry across, bring over, transport.

**Trānsrhēnānus**, -a, -um [trāns Rhēnum, across the Rhine], beyond the Rhine; *m. pl.* as subst., people beyond the Rhine.

**trānstrum**, -ī [trāns], *n.*, cross-beam; see on 89, 8.

**trānsvehō**, **trānsvehere**, **trānsvēxī**, **trānsvectus** [vehō, carry], carry or bring across.

**trānsversus**, -a, -um [versus, part. of vertō, turn], turned across, cross-wise.

**Trebius**, **Trebi**, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. **Marcus Trebius Gallus**, an officer in Caesar's army.

**Trebōnius**, **Trebōni**, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. **Gaius Trebonius**, a lieutenant of Caesar in the Gallic and the Civil wars, who afterwards joined the conspiracy against his life.

**trecenti**, -ae, -a, or CCC [trēs + centum, hundred], three hundred.

**trēs**, tria, or III, three.

**Trēveri**, -ōrum, m., pl., a tribe of Celtic Gaul bordering on the Rhine, south of Belgium.

**Triārius**, Triāri, m., a Roman family name. *Gaius Valerius Triarius*, a naval officer of Pompey in the Civil War.

**Triboci**, -ōrum, m., pl., a German tribe, probably occupying territory on both banks of the Rhine south of the Treveri.

**tribūnus**, -i, m., *tribune*, (1) an officer in the Roman army; see *Intro.* § 34. (2) **tribūnus plēbis**, *tribune of the commons*, originally a protector of the plebeians against patricians, but becoming in time the most powerful of the civil officials of Rome. Ten tribunes were elected each year. By their right of veto they could block all legislation and all acts of magistrates. It was unconstitutional to injure or interfere with a tribune.

**tribuō**, tribuere, tribui, tributus [tribus, tribe (a third part)], (divide by threes), assign, ascribe, give, devote.

**tributum**, -i [part. of tribuō], n. (amount assigned to be paid), tribute, tax.

**trichila**, -ae, f., bower, summer-house.

**trīdūm**, trīdūi [trēs, cf. diēs, day], n., three days.

**triennium**, triennī [trēs, annus, year], n., a period of three years.

**trīgintā** or XXX [trēs], thirty.

**trīni**, -ae, -a [trēs], *distr. num.*, three each; with words used only in the pl., three.

**Trinovantēs**, -um, m., a tribe of Britain, on the east coast just north of the Thames.

**tripertitō** [abl. of triperitūsus (from trēs + partitus, divided)], divided into three parts], adv., in three divisions.

**triplex**, triplicis [trēs, cf. plicō, fold], adj., threefold, triple.

**triquetrus**, -a, -um, three-cornered, triangular.

**trirēmis**, trirēme [trēs, rēmus, oar], with three banks of oars; f. as subst. (sc. nāvis), *trireme*, a long and narrow ship of war, propelled by about fifty rowers sitting on three levels or banks; sometimes with, sometimes without, a complete deck; see *Intro.* § 48.

**Troucillus**, -i, a distinguished Gaul; see *Valerius*.

**truncus**, -i, m., trunk of a tree.

**tū**, tui, pl. vōs, pers. pron., you.

**tuba**, -ae, f., trumpet, straight with flaring end.

**tueor**, tuērī, tūtus, watch, protect, guard, defend.

**Tulingi**, -ōrum, m., a German tribe, northern neighbors of the Helvetii.

**Tullius**, Tulli, m., a Roman gentile or clan name; see *Cicerō*.

**Tullus**, -i, m., a Roman family name; see *Volcācius*.

**tum**, adv., then, at that time; cum . . . tum, not only . . . but furthermore, but also.

**tumultuōsē** [tumultuōsus, turbulent], adv., turbulently, noisily.

**tumultus**, -ūs, m., uproar, confusion, disorder; sudden attack.

**tumulus**, -i [cf. tumeō, swell], m., mound, hillock.

**tunica**, -ae, f., tunic, the ordinary garment of the Roman when at home

- or working; it had short sleeves and reached to the knees.
- turba**, -ae, *f.*, *disorder, turmoil.*
- turma**, -ae, *f.*, *troop, squadron*, of cavalry, consisting of about thirty men.
- turmātim** [turma], *adv.*, *by squadrons.*
- Turonī**, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, a tribe of west central Gaul, on the Loire (Liger). Their name survives in *Tours*.
- turpis**, *turpe*, *shameful, disgraceful.*
- turpiter** [turpis], *adv.*, *shamefully, disgracefully.*
- turpitūdō**, turpitūdinis [turpis], *f.*, *disgrace.*
- turris**, turris, *f.*, *tower*; see *Introd.* § 47.
- tūtē** [tūtus], *adv.*, *safely.*
- Tuticānus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name. *Tuticanus Gallus*, a senator's son in Caesar's army in the Civil War.
- tūtō** [abl. of tūtus], *adv.*, *in safety.*
- tūtus**, -a, -um [part. of tueur], *protected, safe, secure.*
- tympānum**, -ī, *n.*, *tambourine.*
- U**
- ubi**, *adv.* and *conj.*, *where; when, whenever; ubi primum*, *as soon as.*
- Ubiī**, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, a German tribe opposite Belgium and the Treveri, friendly to Caesar.
- ubique** [ubi + que, with generalizing force, cf. *quisque*], *adv.*, *anywhere, everywhere.*
- ulcīscor**, ulcīscī, ultus, *avenge, punish.*
- ūllus**, -a, -um [for ūnulus, dim. of ūnus, one], *any, any one.*
- ulterior**, ulterius [cf. *ultrā*], *comp. adj.*, *farther, more distant; ulterior Gallia* or *prōvincia*, *farther Gaul*, i.e. on the side of the Alps farther from Rome. Sup. *ultimus*, -a, -um, *farthest, most distant.*
- ultrā**, *prep.* with acc., *beyond.*
- ultrō**, *adv.*, *voluntarily, without provocation; moreover.*
- ululātus**, -ūs [ululō, yell], *m.*, *yelling, yell.*
- umerus**, -ī, *m.*, *shoulder.*
- umquam**, *adv.*, *ever.*
- ūnā** [ūnus], *adv.*, *at one and the same time, at the same time, together; ūnā cum*, *together with, along with.*
- unde**, *adv.*, *whence, from which.*
- ūndecim** or **XI** [ūnus + decem, ten], *eleven.*
- ūndecimus**, -a, -um [ūndecim], *eleventh.*
- ūndēvigintī** or **XVIII** [ūnus dē vigintī, one from twenty], *nineteen.*
- undique** [unde + que, with generalizing force], *from every side, on all sides.*
- ūniversus**, -a, -um [ūnus + part. of vertō, turn], *all together, all in a body, the whole of.*
- ūnus**, -a, -um, *one, only one, a single, alone, only; ad ūnum*, *to a man.*
- ūnusquisque**, ūnuscuiusque [ūnus + quisque, each], *indef. subst. pron.*, *each one, every man.*
- urbānus**, -a, -um [urbs], *of or in the city.*
- urbs**, urbis, *f.*, *city*; often *the city*, of Rome.
- urgēō**, urgēre, ursī, —, *press, press hard.*
- ūrus**, -ī, *m.*, *wild ox.*
- Usipetēs**, -um, *m.*, *pl.*, a German tribe, which entered Belgium and was annihilated by Caesar, 55 B.C.
- usque**, *adv.*, *all the way, uninterruptedly.*
- ūsus**, -ūs [cf. ūtor], *m.*, *use, practice, employment; experience; need, ne-*

*cessity; service, advantage; ūsus est, there is need; esse ūsū, be of use; ex ūsū, of advantage.*  
**ut, utī, adv. and conj.**, with indic., as, when; with subj., *that, in order that, so that; supposing, although; ut victoriā explorātā, as if victory were certain; ut . . . sic (ita), as . . . so, while . . . yet; ut quī, in causal rel. clauses, since he.* With obj. clauses of purpose best rendered by *to* and an infinitive; with appositive clauses, by *of* and a verbal in *-ing*.  
**uter, utra, utrum, interrog. or rel. adj.**, which (of two).  
**uterque, utraque, utrumque** [uter + que, with generalizing force], each (of two only, cf. *quisque*), both, either; pl. of two groups, *utrique, both peoples, both sides.*  
**utī, see ut.**  
**Utica, -ae, f.**, the oldest Phoenician settlement in Africa, on the west shore of the Gulf of Carthage. It became the capital of the Roman province of Africa, organized in 146 B.C.  
**Uticēnsēs, -ium, m., pl.**, the citizens of Utica.  
**ūtīlis, ūtile** [ūtōr], useful, serviceable.  
**ūtīlītās, ūtīlītātis** [ūtīlis], *f.*, usefulness, advantage.  
**ūtōr, ūtī, ūsus, use, adopt, avail one's self of, employ, show, practice, have, enjoy, receive, accept, find; finibus ūtī, remain in possession of territory; aequiōre imperiō ūtī, have juster government.  
**utrimque** [cf. *uterque*], *adv.*, on both sides; *bīnis utrimque fibulīs, by two fasteners on each pair of logs.*  
**utrum** [*n.* of *uter*], *conj.*, whether.  
**uxor, uxōris, f.**, wife.**

## V

**v = quinque, five; v. = quintus, fifth; VI = sex; VIII = novem.**  
**Vacalus, -ī, m.**, the Waal, the south mouth of the Rhine, flowing into the Meuse (Mosa).  
**vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus** [cf. *vacuus*], *be vacant or unoccupied, be free.*  
**vacuus, -a, -um** [cf. *vacō*], *empty, clear, free, unoccupied.*  
**vadum, -ī, n.**, ford; shoal, shallow.  
**vāgīna, -ae, f.**, scabbard, sheath.  
**vagor, -ārī, -ātus, wander, rove, roam about.**  
**valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, be strong, have weight or influence; tend.**  
**Valerius, Valerī, m.**, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Gaius Valerius Tropicillus*, an eminent Gaul of the Province, interpreter for Caesar. (2) *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus*, a Roman lieutenant, killed in Aquitania, otherwise unknown. (3) *Lucius Valerius Flaccus*, father and son. See on 213, 18.  
**valētūdō, valētūdinis** [cf. *valeō*], *f.*, state of health (good or bad), sickness.  
**vallēs or vallis, vallis, f.**, valley.  
**vāllum, -ī** [*n.* of *vāllus*], *n.*, fence of stakes, palisade; rampart, wall, of earth set with stakes, the usual Roman fortification; see *Intro. § 43.*  
**vāllus, -ī, m.**, stake; sometimes = *vāllum, rampart, wall.*  
**valvae, -ārum, f., pl.**, leaves of a folding door, door.  
**varietās, varietātis** [*varius*], *f.*, variety, variety in color.  
**varius, -a, -um, various, different, varying.**  
**Varrō, -ōnis, m.**, a Roman family

- name. *Aulus Terentius Varro*, one of Pompey's soldiers.
- Vārus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. (1) *Publius Attius Varus*, a Pompeian officer in the Civil War. He was besieged by Curio in Utica, but was relieved by Juba, 49 B.C. See also on 170, 3. (2) *Sextus Quinctilius Varus*, a Pompeian officer in the Civil War. See on 174, 4.
- vāstō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*vāstus*], *lay waste, devastate*.
- vāstus**, -a, -um, *waste; vast*.
- Vatinius**, *Vatini*, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Publius Vatinius*, a political supporter of Caesar, and his lieutenant in Gaul and in the Civil War. See also on 199, 13.
- ve**, *conj.*, enclitic, *or*.
- vectigal**, *vectigālis* [*cf. vehō, carry*], *n.*, *tribute; tax, revenue; see on 63, 6*.
- vectigālis**, *vectigāle* [*vectigal*], *tributary*.
- vectis**, *vectis* [*cf. vehō, carry*], *m.*, *bar, lever*.
- vectōrius**, -a, -um [*vector, carrier, cf. vehō, carry*], *carrying; vectōria nāvigia, transports*.
- vectūra**, -ae [*cf. vehō, carry*], *f.*, *carrying, transportation*.
- vehementer** [*vehemēns, violent*], *adv.*, *violently, furiously, exceedingly, earnestly, very greatly*.
- vel** [old imper. of *volō, wish*], *conj.*, *or (if you wish); vel . . . vel, either . . . or*.
- Velānius**, *Velāni*, *m.*, an officer in Caesar's army.
- Vellocassī**, -ōrum, or **Vellocassēs**, -ium, *m.*, pl., a Belgic tribe on the lower Seine (Sequana).
- Vellāvīi**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a small tribe of southern Gaul, bordering on the Province, dependents of the Arverni. The name survives in the modern *Velay*.
- vēlōcitās**, *vēlōcitātis* [*vēlōx, swift*], *f.*, *swiftness, speed*.
- vēlum**, -ī, *n.*, *sail*.
- vēnātiō**, *vēnātiōnis* [*vēnor, hunt*], *f.*, *hunting; in vēnātiōnibus, on hunting trips*.
- vēnātor**, *vēnātōris* [*vēnor, hunt*], *m.*, *hunter*.
- vēndō**, *vēndere*, *vēndidī*, *vēnditus* [*vēnum dō, put to sale*], *sell*.
- Venellī**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe on the northern coast of Gaul.
- Venetī**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a powerful maritime nation of northwestern Gaul, with whom Caesar fought the only naval battle of the Gallic War.
- Venetia**, -ae, *f.*, the country of the Veneti, in modern Bretagne or Brittany.
- Veneticus**, -a, -um [*Venetī*], *of or with the Veneti, Venetan*.
- veniō**, *venire*, *vēni*, *ventūrus*, *come*.
- venitō**, -āre, -āvi, — [freq. of *veniō*], *come often, resort, keep coming*.
- ventus**, -ī, *m.*, *wind; sē ventō dare, run before the wind*.
- Veragrī**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., an Alpine tribe southeast of Lake Geneva (Lacus Lemannus).
- Verbigenus**, -ī, *m.*, one of the four cantons or divisions of the Helvetii.
- verbum**, -ī, *n.*, *word*.
- Vercassivellaunus**, -ī, *m.*, an Arvernian noble, one of the Gallic commanders in the great uprising of 52 B.C.
- Vercingetorix**, *Vercingetorīgis*, *m.*, an Arvernian prince, commander-in-chief of the Gauls in their last great

- struggle for freedom, 52 B.C.; see summary of *B. G. VII*, p. 364 ff.
- vērē** [vērus], *adv.*, truly, really.
- vereor**, verērī, veritus, *fear, be afraid.*
- vergō**, -ere, —, —, *incline, slope, lie.*
- vergobretus**, -ī, *vergobret*, the chief magistrate of the Haedui.
- vērō** [abl. of vērus], (1) *adv.*, in truth, in fact; (2) *conj.*, but, while as to; *equites vērō*, while as to the cavalrymen, they, etc.; *tum vērō*, now at that very time.
- versō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of *vertō*], *turn often, treat; fortuna utrumque versāvit*, fortune sported with both of them; *pass. as dep.*, turn one's self round and round, be engaged, be busy, be.
- versus**, -ūs [cf. *vertō*], *m.*, verse, line (the turning of the rhythm in poetry to begin anew).
- versus** [part. of *vertō*], *adv.*, towards; *quōque versus*, in every direction; *Lārisam versus*, towards Larissa.
- vertō**, *vertere*, *verti*, *versus*, *turn*; *intr.*, *turn, change; sē vertere*, change, wheel about; *terga vertere*, turn and run.
- Verucloetius**, *Verucloeti*, *m.*, a Helvetian nobleman.
- vērus**, -a, -um, *true*; *right*; *n.* as *subst.*, truth, in pl., facts; *vērī simile*, probable.
- verūtum**, -ī [verū, a *spīf*], *n.*, dart, light spear.
- vesper**, *vesperī*, *abl.* *vespere*, *m.*, evening.
- Vespillō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name; see *Lucretius*.
- vester**, *vestra*, *vestrum*, *poss. pron.*, your, yours.
- vēstīgium**, *vēstīgī*, *n.*, footprint, track; *spot, place*; in or *ex vēstīgīō*, on the spot, instantly; *vēstīgīō temporis*, in a moment.
- vestiō**, *vestire*, *vestivī*, *vestitus* [vestis], *clothe*; *pass.*, wear.
- vestis**, *vestis*, *f.*, clothing.
- vestītus**, -ūs [vestiō], *m.*, clothing.
- veterānus**, -a, -um [vetus], *veteran.*
- vetō**, *vetāre*, *vetui*, *vetitus*, *forbid.*
- vetus**, *vetis*, *adj.*, old, former, of long standing.
- vexillum**, -ī, *n.*, banner, flag; see *Introd.* § 40.
- vexō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *harry, overrun.*
- via**, -ae, *f.*, way, route, road; *journey*; *tridui via*, a three days' journey.
- viātor**, *viātōris* [as if from a verb *viāre*, from *via*], *m.*, wayfarer, traveler.
- Vibullius**, *Vibullī*, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucius Vibullius Rufus*, a prefect of Pompey in the Civil War.
- vicēni**, -ae, -a [cf. *vīginti*], *distr. num.*, twenty each, twenty.
- vicēsīmus**, -a, -um [cf. *vīginti*], *twentieth.*
- viciēs** [cf. *vīginti*], *num. adv.*, twenty times; *viciēs centum millium passuum*, two thousand miles.
- vicia**, *vicis*, *f.*, change, turn; in *Caesar* only in *vicem*, in turn.
- victima**, -ae, *f.*, victim, sacrifice.
- victor**, *victōris* [cf. *vincō*], *m.*, conqueror, victor; as *adj.*, victorious.
- victōria**, -ae [victor], *f.*, victory; personified as a goddess, *Victory*.
- vīctus**, -ūs [cf. *vivō*], *m.*, living; (means of living), food.
- vīcus**, -ī [akin to Eng. -wick or -wich; *Norwich* = north village], *m.*, village.
- videō**, *vidēre*, *vidī*, *visus*, *see*; *pass.* often as *dep.*, seem, appear, seem best.

**vigilla**, -ae [vigil, awake], *f.*, watch.

The Romans did not divide the night like the day into twelve hours, but into four equal watches from sunset to sunrise; *dē tertiā vigiliā* early in the third watch, = 12-1 A.M.

**viginti** or **XX**, twenty.

**vimen**, viminis, *n.*, plant twig, withes, osier.

**vimineus**, -a, -um [vimen], of twigs.

**vincō**, vincere, vicī, victus, conquer, defeat, win.

**vinculum**, -i [cf. vincō, bind], *n.*, chain, bond.

**vindicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vindex, a maintainer], maintain a claim, demand; in aliquem vindicāre, punish somebody (euphemistic, lit., maintain a claim against one).

**vineā**, -ae, *f.*, shed, used as a shelter for soldiers in attacking fortified places; see *Introd.* § 47.

**vinum**, -i, *n.*, wine.

**violō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. vis], treat violently, injure.

**vir**, viri, *m.*, man; husband.

**virgō**, virginis, *f.*, maiden, virgin.

**virgulta**, -ōrum, *n.*, pl., thicket; brush-wood.

**Viridomārus**, -i, *m.*, a Haeduan noble, one of the Gallic commanders in the great uprising of 52 B.C.

**Viridovix**, -icis, *m.*, a chief of the Venelli.

**viritim** [vir], *adv.*, man by man, to each man separately.

**Viromandui**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of Belgic Gaul south of the Nervii.

**virtūs**, virtutis [vir], *f.*, manliness, courage, valor, merit, spirit.

**vis**, —, vim, vi, pl. virēs, -ium, etc., *f.*, force, might, violence;

influence; quantity; pl., strength; per vim, forcibly; summā vi, with might and main; vis pulveris, cloud of dust.

**visus**, part. of videō.

**vita**, -ae [cf. vivō], *f.*, life.

**vitium**, viti, *n.*, fault, defect; discom-fort.

**vītō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, avoid, shun; escape.

**vitrum**, -i, *n.*, wood, a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue.

**vivō**, vivere, vixi, victurus, live; lacte vivere, live on milk.

**vīvus**, -a, -um [cf. vivō], living, alive.

**vix**, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely.

**Vocātēs**, -ium, *m.*, pl., a tribe in northern Aquitania.

**vocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. vōx], call, summon; name.

**Vocontii**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe in the eastern part of the Province.

**Volcācius**, Volcāci, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. Gaius Volcācius Tullus, an officer of Caesar in the Gallic and the Civil Wars.

**Volcae**, -ārum, *m.*, a Gallic people in the Roman province. There were two branches, the **Arecomici** just west of the Rhone, and the **Tectosagēs** north of the Pyrenees. A part of the latter tribe was settled in southern Germany. See 143, 1 ff., and notes on 143, 1 and 4.

**volō**, velle, volui, —, wish, be willing.

**voluntārius**, -a, -um [volēs, part. of volō], willing, volunteer.

**voluntās**, voluntātis [volēs, part. of volō], *f.*, wish, will, willingness, good-will, approval, consent.

**voluptās**, voluptātis [cf. volō], *f.*, pleasure, enjoyment.

**Volusēnus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus*, a military tribune and cavalry officer of Caesar in the Gallic and the Civil Wars.

**Vorēnus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Lucius Vorenius*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

**Vosegus**, -ī, *m.*, the *Vosges Mountains*, in eastern Gaul, along the Rhine; see on 104, 24.

**voveō**, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus, *vow, promise solemnly.*

**vōx**, vōcis [cf **vocō**, *call*], *f.*, *voice, word*; pl., *talk, remarks.*

**Vulcānus**, -ī, *m.*, *Vulcan*, the Roman god of fire and of the forge.

**vulgō** [abl. of **vulgus**], *adv.*, *in a crowd, generally, everywhere.*

**vulgus**, -ī, *n.*, *crowd, multitude, masses, commons*; in **vulgus efferri**, *become common property.*

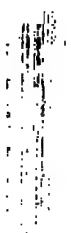
**vulnerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**vulnus**], *wound.*

**vulnus**, vulneris, *n.*, *wound.*

## X

**x** = *decem, ten*; **xv** = *quīndecim*;

**xx** = *viginti*; **xxx** = *trīgintā*; **xl** = *quadrāgintā.*



# LANE'S LATIN GRAMMAR

## REVISED EDITION

\$1.50

By **GEORGE M. LANE, PH.D., LL.D.**

*Professor Emeritus of Latin, Harvard University*

**S**INCE its first publication this work has been used more widely than any other Latin grammar for advanced study and reference. It is approached by no other American publication in completeness and authoritativeness, and is conspicuous for its originality, sound scholarship, accurate analysis of constructions, copious illustrations, and clear arrangement. The revision has been conducted under the direction of Professor Morris H. Morgan, who edited and completed the original edition, left unfinished by the death of the distinguished author. The chapter on Sound has been rewritten and enlarged by Professor Hanns Oertel, of Yale, and the views concerning the nature and kinds of vowels and consonants, the Latin accent, and the phonetic laws under which changes of vowel and consonant should take place, have been modified to conform to present usage. Many changes have also been made in the chapter on Inflection and Formation. Throughout the book the working of "hidden quantities" has been completely revised. For the most part, however, no alterations have been found necessary in the treatment of broad general principles or in the method of presentation.

---

# LANE AND MORGAN'S

## SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR

\$1.00

Prepared by **MORRIS H. MORGAN, PH.D., LL.D.**

*Professor of Classical Philology in Harvard University*

**T**HIS book is intended for the use of students of Latin during their course in secondary schools. It is based on Lane's Latin Grammar and furnishes abundant material for careful training in Latin pronunciation, for the study of the leading principles under which Latin words are formed, for thorough drill in inflections, and for acquiring a good working knowledge of the most important principles of Latin syntax and composition. The arrangement of the material is clear and logical, with cross-references to the larger grammar.

---

**AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY**

**NEW YORK**

**CINCINNATI**

**CHICAGO**

# Latin Prose Writing

WITH FULL INTRODUCTORY NOTES ON IDIOM

By MAURICE W. MATHER, Ph.D.

Formerly Instructor in Latin in Harvard University

and ARTHUR L. WHEELER, Ph.D.

Instructor in Latin in Yale University

Half Leather, 12mo, 216 pages . . . . . Price \$1.00

---

The present book furnishes all the essential material for the writing of average passages in Latin Prose. It is not intended to teach how to write isolated sentences, illustrative of given constructions, but the book assumes that the pupil, after a year or more of such practice, is ready to learn the art of writing connected narrative in Latin. The authors have based their exercises on Caesar's Gallic War Books III and IV, Nepos's Alcibiades and Hannibal, and Cicero's Manilian Law and Archias, inasmuch as these are not only models of good style, but are usually read in schools. As the book is not for beginners, the individual exercises have not been made vehicles for teaching any one or two constructions, but the authors have felt at liberty to introduce at any time even the more difficult constructions; indirect discourse, for instance, being taken up at the very beginning.

While, in general, the vocabulary and the constructions for any exercise are supplied in the Latin text on which the given exercise is based, yet enough variation from the language of the model is required to give the pupil abundant practice in handling forms and constructions. By this means the pupil's power of observation is increased, his interest is quickened by the pleasure of discovery, and he will remember the word much better than if he found it ready at hand in a dictionary.

A number of recent examination papers from various colleges have been inserted in the belief that they will be found useful for sight tests and occasional examinations. The notes accompanying some of the papers belong to the original examinations. At the end of the book are indexes of words and constructions, and of English words and phrases with references to sections of the Notes on Idiom in Part I.

---

*Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.*

American Book Company

New York

•

Cincinnati

•

Chicago

(241)

HARKNESS AND FORBES'S

# Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War

With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary. By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., LL.D.,  
Professor Emeritus in Brown University. Assisted by CHARLES H. FORBES, A. B.,  
Professor of Latin in Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass.  
Price, \$1.25

---

**T**HIS WORK is preëminently a student's edition of Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War, and has been prepared with special reference to the present needs of preparatory and secondary schools. While it is remarkable for its simplicity, yet it contains everything which is needed for studying the author. Attention is called particularly to the following special features of the book :

**1. This edition** is furnished with an Introduction containing an outline of the life of Caesar, a description in brief of the scenes of his military operations in Gaul, Germany, and Britain, and a short treatise on the military system of the Romans, together with a list of valuable works on subjects treated in the Introduction.

**2. The text** is chiefly that of the critical edition of H. Meusel, Berlin, 1894, now quite generally accepted as the standard. Each important chapter begins with a brief summary in English.

**3. The notes** are intended to guide the faithful efforts of the student and to interest him in the stirring events recorded in the Commentaries. Special attention has been given to the difficult subjects of the subjunctive mood and of the indirect discourse.

**4. The vocabulary** gives special attention to etymology, but the treatment is made as simple as possible with the sole aim of aiding the student in understanding and appreciating the significant elements of words. The important subject of idioms and phrases receives due attention.

**5. The illustrations** are entirely appropriate and unlike those in most other works of a similar nature. They have in no instance been introduced merely for purposes of decoration. Among the most striking features of the work are the nine colored plates illustrative of the military system of the Romans, which have been made only after consultation with the highest authorities, and are here reproduced in their natural colors. Besides these, there are many other illustrations, eleven plans of battles, seven campaign maps, and a general map of Gaul.

---

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY  
(257) PUBLISHERS

**REVISED EDITION**

# **VIRGIL'S AENEID**

With an Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary by **HENRY S. FRIEZE**, late Professor of Latin in the University of Michigan. Revised by **WALTER DENNISON**, Professor of Latin in the University of Michigan.

**First Six Books . . . . \$1.30    Complete . . . . . \$1.50**  
**Complete Text Edition . . . . . \$0.50**

**This Work** differs in many respects from the former edition. Such changes and alterations have been introduced as are necessary to make the book conform to modern demands, and many important additions have also been made.

**The Introduction** has been enlarged by the addition of sections on the life and writings of Virgil, the plan of the Aeneid, the meter, manuscripts, editions, and helpful books of reference.

**The Text** has been corrected to conform to the readings that have become established, and the spellings are in accord with the evidence of inscriptions of the first century A.D. To meet the need of early assistance in reading the verse metrically, the long vowels in the first two books are fully indicated.

**The Notes** have been thoroughly revised and largely added to. The old grammar references are corrected and new ones (to Harkness's Complete, Lane & Morgan's, and Bennett's Grammars) added. The literary appreciation of the poet is increased by parallel quotations from English literature. The irregularities of scansion in each book are also given with sufficient explanations.

**The Vocabulary** has been made as simple as possible and includes only those words occurring in the Aeneid. The parts of compound words are not indicated separately when they appear unmodified in the compound form. The principal parts of verbs are given which are understood to be in actual use.

**The Illustrations** for the most part are new and fresh, and have been selected with great care with a view to assisting directly in the interpretation of the text. There are also maps showing the wanderings of Aeneas, the vicinity of Cumae, and pre-historic Rome, and a full-page facsimile of one of the best manuscripts of Virgil, the Codex Palatinus.

**American Book Company, Publishers**

(256)

# Cicero's Orations

## AND SELECTIONS FROM THE LETTERS

EDITED BY

WILLIAM R. HARPER, Ph.D., D.D., LL.D.  
President of the University of Chicago

AND

FRANK A. GALLUP, A.M.  
Professor of Latin, Colgate Academy

Half Leather, 12mo, 566 pages, with Maps and Illustrations. Price, \$1.30

This edition of Cicero contains in addition to selected letters all the orations required by all the colleges throughout the country. It is intended to be distinctly practical and aims solely to meet the needs of secondary and preparatory schools.

The Orations have been arranged in the order in which it is thought they can be read to the best advantage and include, besides the four against Catiline, those for Archais, Milo, Marcellus, and Ligarius, Pompey's Commission, and the Fourteenth Philippic.

The Letters have been selected with special reference to their fitness for reading at sight and for this purpose they have no equal in Roman literature.

The Introduction includes a well balanced life of Cicero with a just estimate of his standing and character and many helpful features which will give the student a comprehensive knowledge of Roman life and politics.

The Notes suggest rather than tell the student and help him to get, instead of getting for him, that acquaintance with the orator and with the language which is the result of true study.

The Vocabulary shows great care and thoroughness and meets the requirements of the average student.

The Maps are accurate and drawn especially for this work and the Illustrations are happily chosen to illustrate both text and time.

---

*Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.*

American Book Company

New York  
(260)

• Cincinnati •

Chicago

# Latin Dictionaries

---

## HARPER'S LATIN DICTIONARY

Founded on the translation of "Freund's Latin-German Lexicon."

Edited by E. A. ANDREWS, LL.D. Revised, Enlarged, and in great part Rewritten by CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D., and CHARLES SHORT, LL.D.

Royal Octavo, 2030 pages . Sheep, \$6.50; Full Russia, \$10.00

The translation of Dr. Freund's great Latin-German Lexicon, edited by the late Dr. E. A. Andrews, and published in 1850, has been from that time in extensive and satisfactory use throughout England and America. Meanwhile great advances have been made in the science on which lexicography depends. The present work embodies the latest advances in philological study and research, and is in every respect the most complete and satisfactory Latin Dictionary published.

## LEWIS'S LATIN DICTIONARY FOR SCHOOLS

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.

Large Octavo, 1200 pages . Cloth, \$4.50; Half Leather, \$5.00

This dictionary is not an abridgment, but an entirely new and independent work, designed to include all of the student's needs, after acquiring the elements of grammar, for the interpretation of the Latin authors commonly read in school.

## LEWIS'S ELEMENTARY LATIN DICTIONARY

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.

Crown Octavo, 952 pages. Half Leather . . . . \$2.00

This work is sufficiently full to meet the needs of students in secondary or preparatory schools, and also in the first and second years' work in colleges.

## SMITH'S ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY

A Complete and Critical English-Latin Dictionary. By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D., and THEOPHILUS D. HALL, M.A., Fellow of University College, London. With a Dictionary of Proper Names.

Royal Octavo, 765 pages. Sheep . . . . \$4.00

---

*Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.*

**American Book Company**

New York  
(278)

Cincinnati

Chicago

# Latin Literature of the Empire

Selected and Edited with Revised Texts and Brief Introductions

By ALFRED GUDEMAN, Ph.D.

Associate Professor of Classical Philology, University of Pennsylvania

In Two Volumes. Cloth, 12mo. Per Volume, \$1.80

VOL. I—PROSE. Selections from Velleius, Curtius, Seneca Rhetor, Justinus (Trogus Pompeius), Seneca, Petronius, including Cena Trimalchionis, Pliny the Elder, Quintilian, Tacitus, Pliny the Younger, Suetonius, Minucius Felix Octavius, Apuleius—Ammianus Marcellinus, and Boethius.

VOL. II—POETRY. Pseudo Vergiliana, Aetna, Manilius, Calpurnius, Nemesianus, Phaedrus, Lucan, Valerius Flaccus, Seneca, the Octavia (anonymous), Persius, Statius, Silius Italicus, Martial, Juvenal, Pervigilium Veneris, Ausonius, and Claudianus.

---

The works of Latin Literature of the post-Augustan period have hitherto, with a few notable exceptions, been virtually excluded from the classical curricula of colleges and universities.

The present collection has been made primarily for the use of students in higher classes in colleges. The selections will be found useful as collateral reading in connection with lectures on classical literature, and will also furnish suitable material for sight reading.

The selections themselves contain nothing that is not eminently worthy of perusal. They are in every case sufficiently extensive to give a continuous and coherent story, which at the same time exhibits the author at his best. The text follows the best modern editions, the deviations from the standard texts being briefly recorded in critical appendices.

---

*Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.*

American Book Company

New York  
(963)

• Cincinnati •

Chicago

# Greek Dictionaries

---

## LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON

Revised and Enlarged. Compiled by HENRY GEORGE LIDDELL, D.D., and ROBERT SCOTT, D.D., assisted by HENRY DRISLER, LL.D. Large Quarto, 1794 pages. Sheep . . . \$10.00

The present edition of this great work has been thoroughly revised, and large additions made to it. The editors have been favored with the co-operation of many scholars and several important articles have been entirely rewritten.

## LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON—Intermediate

Revised Edition. Large Octavo, 910 pages.

Cloth, \$3.50; Half Leather, \$4.00

This Abridgment is an entirely new work, designed to meet the ordinary requirements of instructors. It differs from the smaller abridged edition in that it is made from the last edition of the large Lexicon, and contains a large amount of new matter.

## LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON—Abridged

Revised Edition. Crown Octavo, 832 pages. Half Leather \$1.25

This Abridgment is intended chiefly for use by students in Secondary and College Preparatory Schools.

## THAYER'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON OF THE NEW TESTAMENT

Being Grimm's Wilke's Clavis Novi Testamenti, Translated, Revised, and Enlarged by JOSEPH HENRY THAYER, D.D., LL.D. Royal Quarto, 727 pages. Cloth, \$5.00; Half Leather, \$6.50

This great work embodies and represents the results of the latest researches in modern philology and biblical exegesis. It traces historically the signification and use of all words used in the New Testament, and carefully explains the difference between classical and sacred usage.

## YONGE'S ENGLISH-GREEK LEXICON

By C. D. YONGE. Edited by HENRY DRISLER, LL.D.

Royal Octavo, 903 pages. Sheep . . . \$4.50

## AUTENRIETH'S HOMERIC DICTIONARY

Translated and Edited by ROBERT P. KEEP, Ph.D. New Edition.

Revised by ISAAC FLAGG, Ph.D.

12mo, 312 pages. Illustrated. Cloth . . . \$1.10

---

*Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.*

American Book Company

New York  
(310)

• Cincinnati •

Chicago

# Classical Dictionaries

---

## HARPER'S DICTIONARY OF CLASSICAL LITERATURE AND ANTIQUITIES

Edited by H. T. PECK, Ph.D., Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Columbia University.

Royal Octavo, 1716 pages. Illustrated.

One Vol. Cloth . . .	\$6.00	Two Vols. Cloth . . .	\$7.00
One Vol. Half Leather . .	8.00	Two Vols. Half Leather . .	10.00

An encyclopaedia, giving the student, in a concise and intelligible form, the essential facts of classical antiquity. It also indicates the sources whence a fuller and more critical knowledge of these subjects can best be obtained. The articles, which are arranged alphabetically, include subjects in biography, mythology, geography, history, literature, antiquities, language, and bibliography. The illustrations are, for the most part, reproductions of ancient objects. The editor in preparing the book has received the co-operation and active assistance of the most eminent American and foreign scholars.

## SMITH'S DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES

Edited by WILLIAM SMITH, Ph.D. Revised by CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. Octavo, 1133 pages. Illustrated. Sheep \$4.25

Carefully revised, giving the results of the latest researches in the history, philology, and antiquities of the ancients. In the work of revision, the American editor has had the assistance of the most distinguished scholars and scientists.

## STUDENTS' CLASSICAL DICTIONARY

A Dictionary of Biography, Mythology, and Geography. Abridged.

By WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.

12mo, 438 pages. Cloth . . . . . \$1.25

Designed for those schools and students who are excluded from the use of the larger Classical Dictionary, both by its size and its price. All names have been inserted which one would be likely to meet with at the beginning of classical study.

---

*Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.*

American Book Company

New York  
(311)

Cincinnati

Chicago

# A Descriptive Catalogue of High School and College Text-Books

---

**W**E issue a complete descriptive catalogue of our text-books for secondary schools and higher institutions, illustrated with authors' portraits. For the convenience of teachers, separate sections are published, devoted to the newest and best books in the following branches of study:

ENGLISH  
MATHEMATICS  
HISTORY AND POLITICAL SCIENCE  
SCIENCE  
MODERN LANGUAGES  
ANCIENT LANGUAGES  
PHILOSOPHY AND EDUCATION

If you are interested in any of these branches, we shall be very glad to send you on request the catalogue sections which you may wish to see. Address the nearest office of the Company.

---

## AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Publishers of School and College Text-Books

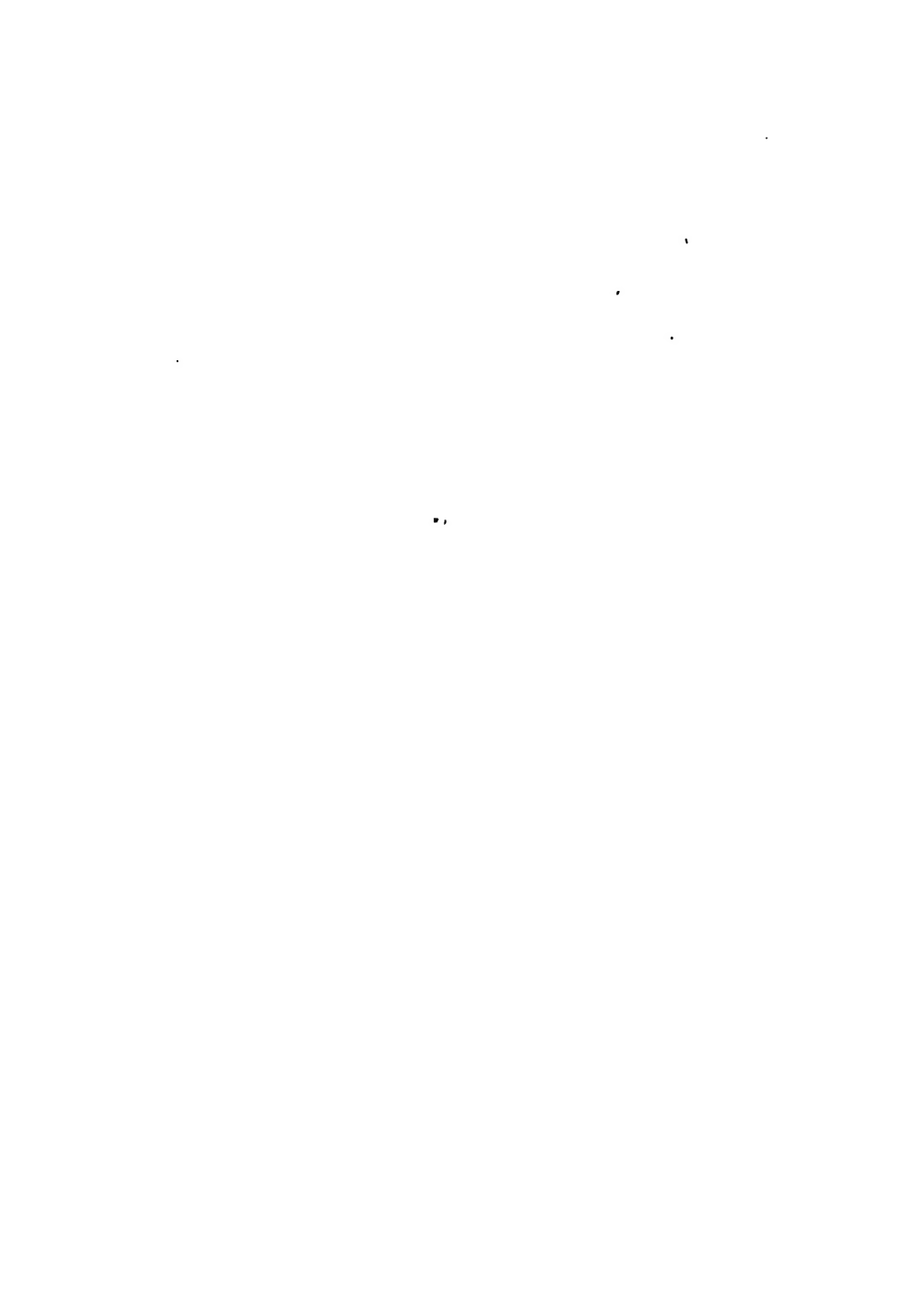
NEW YORK	CINCINNATI	CHICAGO
BOSTON	ATLANTA	DALLAS
(322)		SAN FRANCISCO



13

51



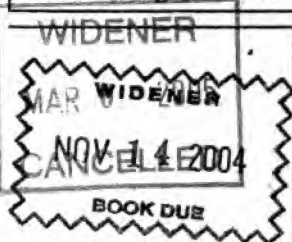




The borrower must return this item on or before the last date stamped below. If another user places a recall for this item, the borrower will be notified of the need for an earlier return.

*Non-receipt of overdue notices does **not** exempt the borrower from overdue fines.*

**Harvard College Widener Library**  
**Cambridge, MA 02138 617-495-2413**



**Please handle with care.**  
Thank you for helping to preserve  
library collections at Harvard.

